M0101823-12 (en-us)
February 2024

Operation and Maintenance Manual

374 Excavator

TNX 1-UP (374)
JGP 1-UP (374)
NLN 1-UP (374)

Language: Original Instructions

Scan to find and purchase genuine Cat® parts and related service information.

Important Safety Information

Most accidents that involve product operation, maintenance and repair are caused by failure to observe basic safety rules or precautions. An accident can often be avoided by recognizing potentially hazardous situations before an accident occurs. A person must be alert to potential hazards, including human factors that can affect safety. This person should also have the necessary training, skills and tools to perform these functions properly.

Improper operation, lubrication, maintenance or repair of this product can be dangerous and could result in injury or death.

Do not operate or perform any lubrication, maintenance or repair on this product, until you verify that you are authorized to perform this work, and have read and understood the operation, lubrication, maintenance and repair information.

Safety precautions and warnings are provided in this manual and on the product. If these hazard warnings are not heeded, bodily injury or death could occur to you or to other persons.

The hazards are identified by the “Safety Alert Symbol” and followed by a “Signal Word” such as “DANGER”, “WARNING” or “CAUTION”. The Safety Alert “WARNING” label is shown below.

The meaning of this safety alert symbol is as follows:

Attention! Become Alert! Your Safety is Involved.

The message that appears under the warning explains the hazard and can be either written or pictorially presented.

A non-exhaustive list of operations that may cause product damage are identified by “NOTICE” labels on the product and in this publication.

Caterpillar cannot anticipate every possible circumstance that might involve a potential hazard. The warnings in this publication and on the product are, therefore, not all inclusive. You must not use this product in any manner different from that considered by this manual without first satisfying yourself that you have considered all safety rules and precautions applicable to the operation of the product in the location of use, including site-specific rules and precautions applicable to the worksite. If a tool, procedure, work method or operating technique that is not specifically recommended by Caterpillar is used, you must satisfy yourself that it is safe for you and for others. You should also ensure that you are authorized to perform this work, and that the product will not be damaged or become unsafe by the operation, lubrication, maintenance or repair procedures that you intend to use.

The information, specifications, and illustrations in this publication are on the basis of information that was available at the time that the publication was written. The specifications, torques, pressures, measurements, adjustments, illustrations, and other items can change at any time. These changes can affect the service that is given to the product. Obtain the complete and most current information before you start any job. Cat dealers have the most current information available.

NOTICE

When replacement parts are required for this product Caterpillar recommends using original Caterpillar® replacement parts.

Other parts may not meet certain original equipment specifications.

When replacement parts are installed, the machine owner/user should ensure that the machine remains in compliance with all applicable requirements.

In the United States, the maintenance, replacement, or repair of the emission control devices and systems may be performed by any repair establishment or individual of the owner's choosing.

Table of Contents

Foreword 5

Safety Section

Safety Messages 7
Additional Messages 21
General Hazard Information 28
Crushing Prevention and Cutting Prevention .. 31
Burn Prevention 32
Fire Prevention and Explosion Prevention 33
Fire Safety 36
Fire Extinguisher Location 37
Track Information 37
High Pressure Fuel Lines 37
Electrical Storm Injury Prevention 38
Before Starting Engine 38
Visibility Information 38
Restricted Visibility 39
Engine Starting 41
Before Operation 41
Work Tools 42
Assist and E-Fence 42
Operation 43
Engine Stopping 46
Lifting Objects 47
Demolition 47
Parking 47
Slope Operation 48
Equipment Lowering with Engine Stopped 49
Sound Information and Vibration Information . 49
Operator Station 52
Guards (Operator Protection) 52

Product Information Section

General Information 54
Identification Information 151

Operation Section

Before Operation 158
Machine Operation 161
Engine Starting 234
Operation 238
Operating Techniques 245
Parking 285
Transportation Information 288
Towing Information 310
Engine Starting (Alternate Methods) 313

Maintenance Section

Maintenance Access 317
Lubricant Viscosities and Refill Capacities ... 319
Maintenance Support 329
Maintenance Interval Schedule 337

Warranty Section

Warranty Information 433

Reference Information Section

Reference Materials 434

Index Section

Index 435

Foreword

California Proposition 65 Warning

Diesel engine exhaust and some of its constituents are known to the State of California to cause cancer, birth defects, and other reproductive harm.

WARNING – This product can expose you to chemicals including ethylene glycol, which is known to the State of California to cause birth defects or other reproductive harm. For more information go to:

www.P65Warnings.ca.gov

Do not ingest this chemical. Wash hands after handling to avoid incidental ingestion.

WARNING – This product can expose you to chemicals including lead and lead compounds, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer, birth defects, or other reproductive harm. For more information go to:

www.P65Warnings.ca.gov

Wash hands after handling components that may contain lead.

Literature Information

This manual should be stored in the operator's compartment in the literature holder or seat back literature storage area.

This manual contains safety information, operation instructions, transportation information, lubrication information, and maintenance information.

Some photographs or illustrations in this publication show details or attachments that can be different from your machine. Guards and covers might have been removed for illustrative purposes.

Continuing improvement and advancement of product design might have caused changes to your machine which are not included in this publication. Read, study, and keep this manual with the machine.

Whenever a question arises regarding your machine, or this publication, please consult your Cat dealer for the latest available information.

Safety

The safety section lists basic safety precautions. In addition, this section identifies the text and locations of warning signs and labels used on the machine.

Read and understand the basic precautions listed in the safety section before operating or performing lubrication, maintenance, and repair on this machine.

Operation

The operation section is a reference for the new operator and a refresher for the experienced operator. This section includes a discussion of gauges, switches, machine controls, attachment controls, transportation, and towing information.

Photographs and illustrations guide the operator through correct procedures of checking, starting, operating, and stopping the machine.

Operating techniques outlined in this publication are basic. Skill and techniques develop as the operator gains knowledge of the machine and its capabilities.

Maintenance

The maintenance section is a guide to equipment care. The Maintenance Interval Schedule (MIS) lists the items to be maintained at a specific service interval. Items without specific intervals are listed under the "When Required" service interval. The Maintenance Interval Schedule lists the page number for the step-by-step instructions required to accomplish the scheduled maintenance. Use the Maintenance Interval Schedule as an index or "one safe source" for all maintenance procedures.

Maintenance Intervals

Use the service hour meter to determine servicing intervals. Calendar intervals shown (daily, weekly, monthly, etc.) can be used instead of service hour meter intervals if the calendar intervals provide more convenient servicing schedules and approximate the indicated service hour meter reading. Perform the recommended service at the interval that occurs first.

Under severe, dusty, or wet operating conditions, more frequent lubrication than is specified in the maintenance intervals chart might be necessary.

Perform service on items at multiples of the original requirement. For example, at every 500 service hours or 3 months, also service those items listed under every 250 service hours or monthly and every 10 service hours or daily.

Certified Engine Maintenance

Proper maintenance and repair are essential to keep the engine and machine systems operating correctly. As the heavy-duty off-road diesel engine owner, you are responsible for the performance of the required maintenance listed in the Owner Manual, Operation and Maintenance Manual, and Service Manual.

It is prohibited for any person engaged in the business of repairing, servicing, selling, leasing, or trading engines or machines to remove, alter, or to render inoperative, any emission-related device or element of design installed on or in an engine or machine that is in compliance with all applicable regulations of the intended country to which it has been shipped. Certain elements of the machine and engine such as the exhaust system, fuel system, electrical system, intake air system, and cooling system may be emission-related and should not be altered unless approved by Caterpillar.

Machine Capacity

Additional attachments or modifications may exceed machine design capacity which can adversely affect performance characteristics. Included would be stability and system certifications such as brakes, steering, and rollover protective structures (ROPS). Contact your Cat dealer for further information.

Product Identification Number

Effective First Quarter 2001 the Product Identification Number (PIN) has changed from 8 to 17 characters. To provide uniform equipment identification, construction equipment manufacturers are moving to comply with the latest version of the product identification numbering standard. Non-road machine PINs are defined by ISO 10261. The new PIN format will apply to all machines and generator sets. The PIN plates and frame marking will display the 17 character PIN. The new format will look like the following:

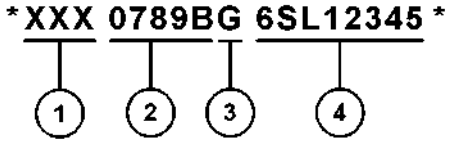


Illustration 1 g03891925

Where:

1. World Manufacturing Code (characters 1-3)

2. Machine Descriptor (characters 4-8)

3. Check Character (character 9)

4. Machine Indicator Section (MIS) or Product Sequence Number (characters 10-17). These were previously referred to as the Serial Number.

Machines and generator sets produced before First Quarter 2001 will maintain their 8 character PIN format.

Components such as engines, transmissions, axles, and work tools will continue to use an 8 character Serial Number (S/N).

Safety Section

i10111109

Safety Messages

SMCS Code: 7000; 7405

There are several specific safety messages on this machine. The exact location of the hazards and the description of the hazards are reviewed in this section. Become familiarized with all safety messages.

Make sure that all the safety messages are legible. Clean the safety messages or replace the safety messages if you cannot read the words. Replace the illustrations if the illustrations are not visible. When you clean the safety messages, use a cloth, water, and soap. Do not use solvent, gasoline, or other harsh chemicals to clean the safety messages. Solvents, gasoline, or harsh chemicals could loosen the adhesive that secures the safety message. Loose adhesive will allow the safety message to fall.

Replace any safety message that is damaged, or missing. If a safety message is attached to a part that is replaced, install a safety message on the replacement part. Any Cat ® dealer can provide new safety messages.

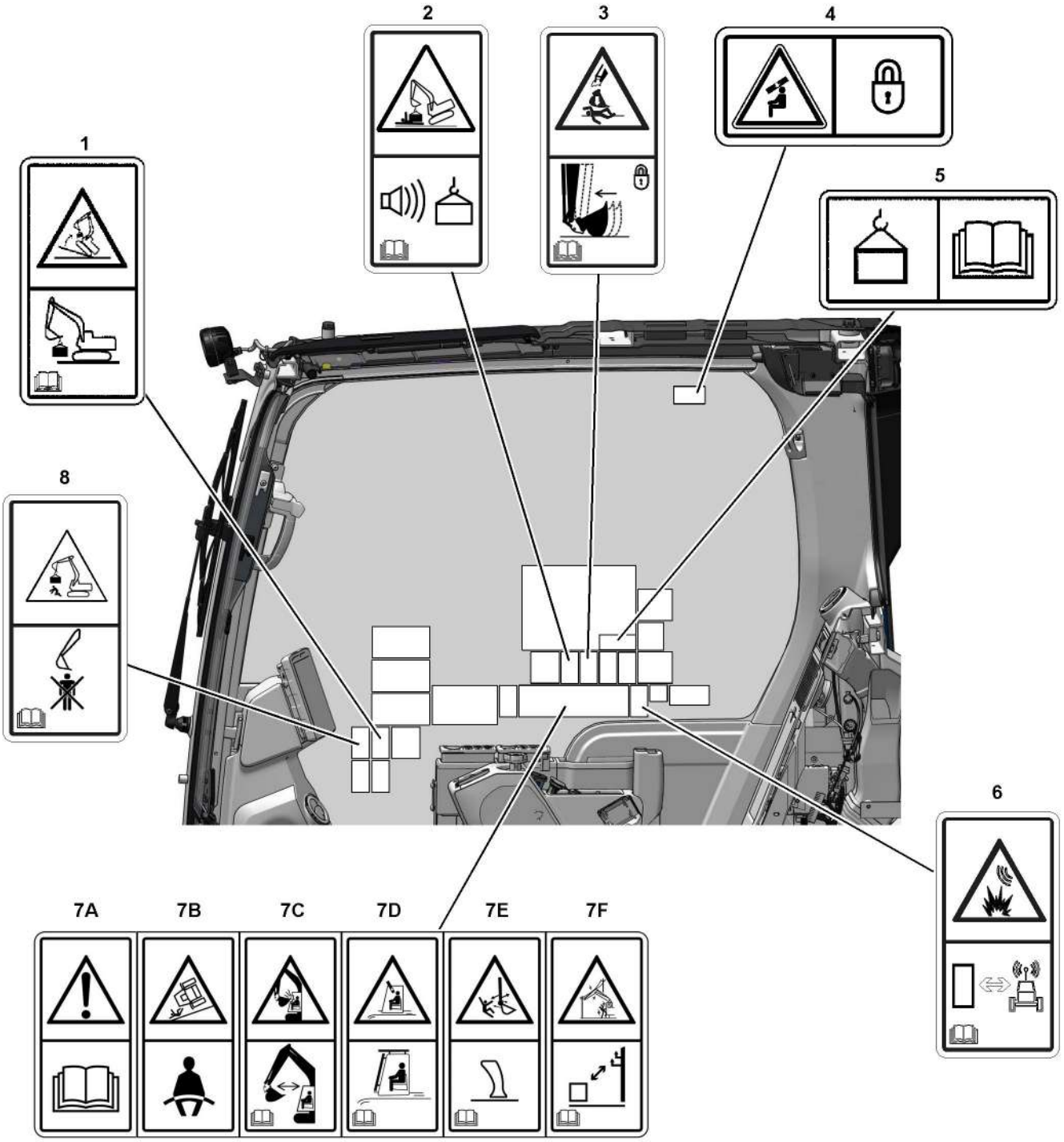


Illustration 2 g06532979

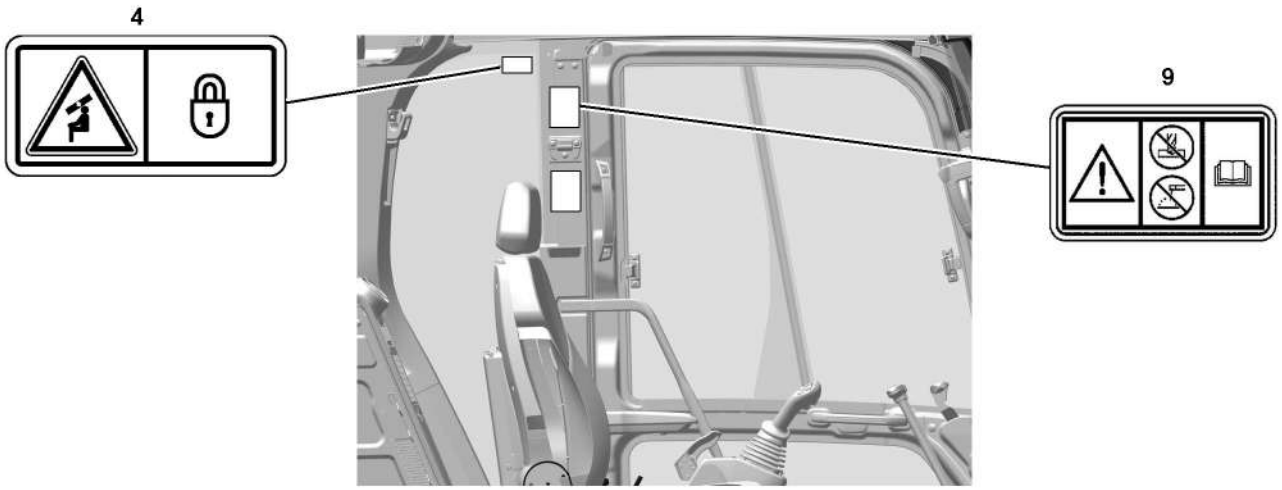


Illustration 3 g07056027

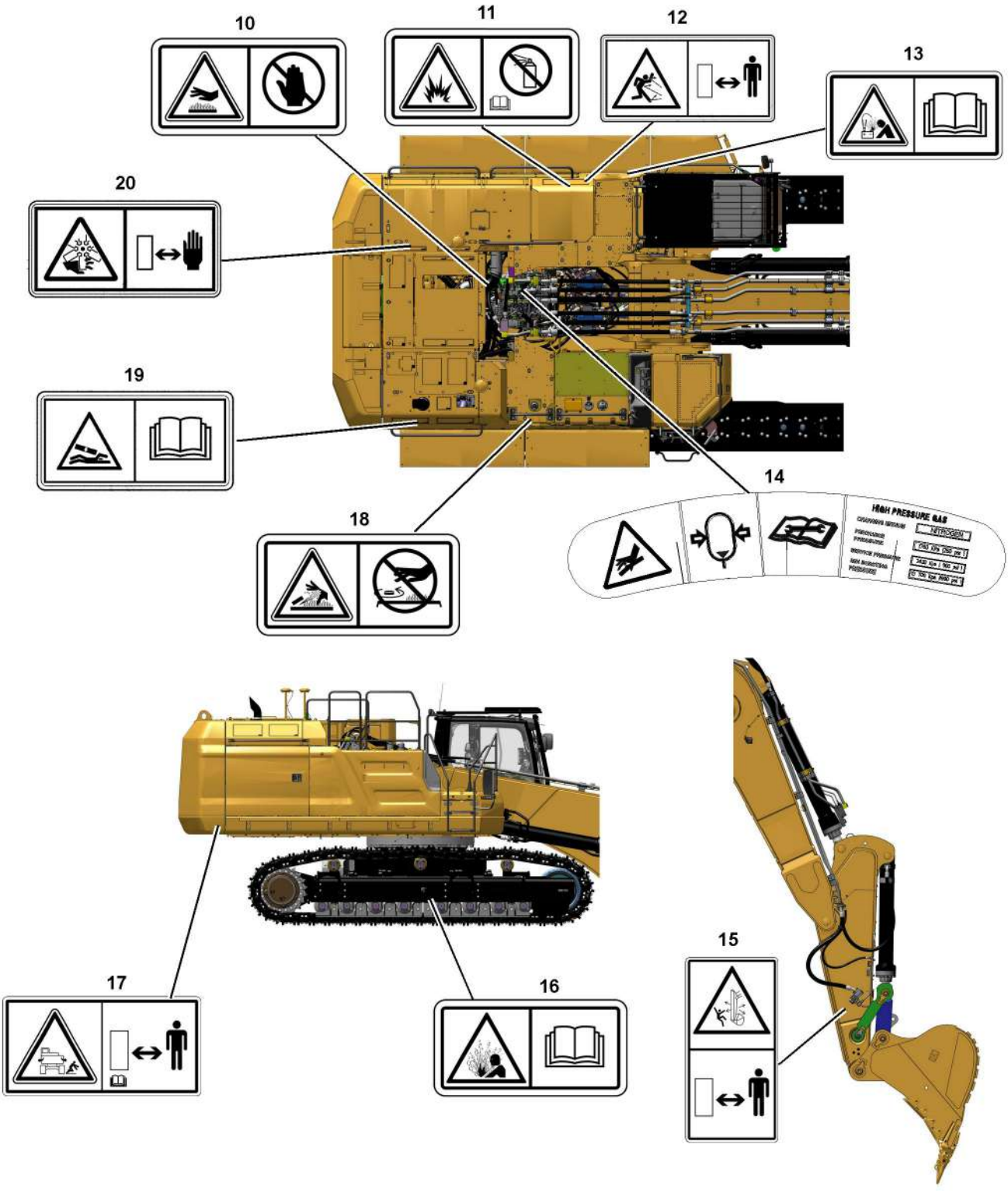


Illustration 4 g06598660

Illustration 5 g06598674

Lifting Level Warning (1)

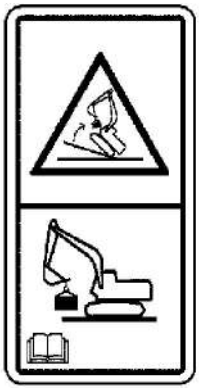


Illustration 6 g06289488

Overload Warning Device (2)

If equipped, this safety message is located in the cab on the right side window.

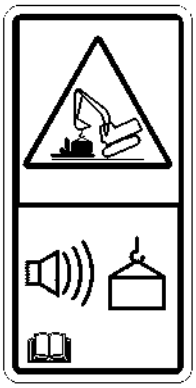


Illustration 7 g06224998

WARNING

Overloading the machine could impact the machine's stability which could result in a tipover hazard. A tipover hazard could result in serious injury or death. Always activate the overload warning device before you handle or lift objects.

Refer to “Operator Controls“ for further information.

Crushing Injury (3)

If equipped, this safety message is located in the cab on the right side window.

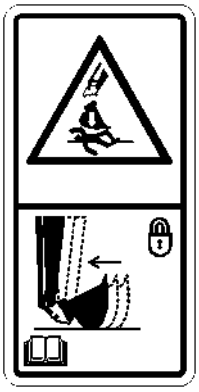


Illustration 8 g06188540

WARNING

Crush injury. Could cause serious injury or death. Always confirm that the quick coupler is engaged onto the pins. Read the Operator's Manual.

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Quick Coupler Operation” for further information.

Crushing Hazard (4)

These safety messages are on the left and right side cab windows.

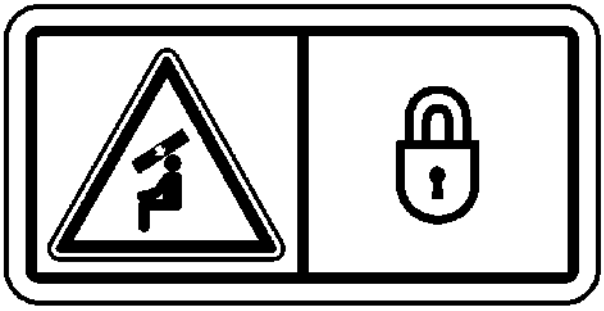


Illustration 9 g02061339

WARNING

Personal injury can result if the window is not latched in the overhead position; ensure the auto lock is engaged.

Refer to “Window (Front)“ for further information.

Lifting Notice (5)

If equipped, this safety message is located in the cab on the right side window.

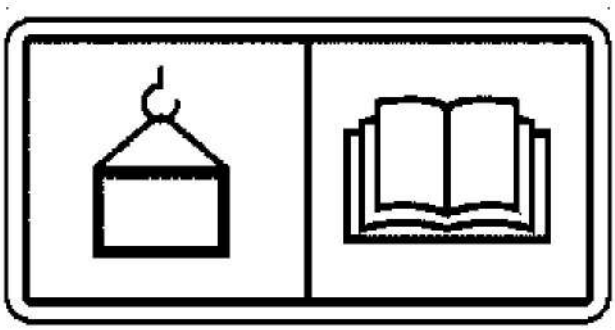


Illustration 10 g06289554

WARNING

When operating the machine's lift tool, read Operation and Maintenance Manual first for lifting capabilities.

Product Link (6)

If equipped, this safety message is located in the cab on the right side window.

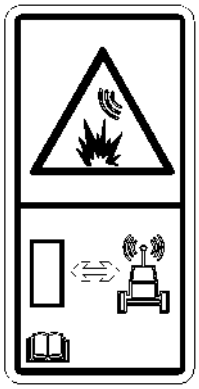


Illustration 11 g06188657

WARNING

This machine is equipped with a Caterpillar Product Link communication device. When electric detonators are used, this communication device should be deactivated within 12 m (40 ft) of a blast site for satellite-based systems and within 3 m (10 ft) of a blast site for cellular based systems, or within the distance mandated under applicable legal requirements. Failure to do so could cause interference with blasting operations and result in serious injury or death.

In cases where the type of Product Link module cannot be identified, Caterpillar recommends that the device be disabled no less than 12 m (40 ft) from the blast perimeter.

Refer to “Product Link“ for further information.

Do Not Operate (7A)

This safety message is located in the cab on the right side window.

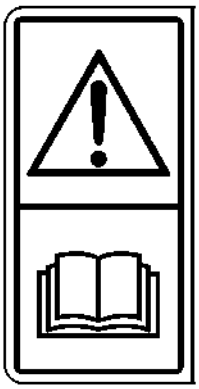


Illustration 12 g06188661

WARNING

Do not operate or work on this machine unless you have read and understand the instructions and warnings in the Operation and Maintenance Manual. Failure to follow the instructions or heed the warnings could result in injury or death. Contact any Caterpillar dealer for replacement manuals. Proper care is your responsibility.

Seat Belt (7B)

This safety message is located in the cab on the right side window.

Illustration 13 g06188642

WARNING

A seat belt should be worn at all times during machine operation to prevent serious injury or death in the event of an accident or machine overturn. Failure to wear a seat belt during machine operation may result in serious injury or death.

Crushing Hazard (7C)

This safety message is located in the cab on the right side window.

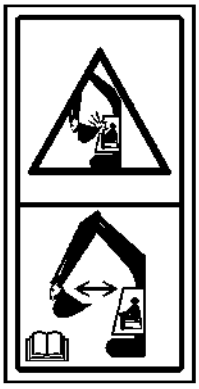


Illustration 14 g06188644

WARNING

Crushing Hazard! Certain machine front linkage combinations (boom, stick, quick coupler, work tool) may require keeping the work tool away from the cab during operation. Personal injury or death may result if the work tool contacts the cab during operation.

Crushing Hazard (7D)

This safety message is located in the cab on the right side window.

Illustration 15 g06188652

WARNING

The impact from objects that strike the front of the cab or the top of the cab could result in a crushing hazard with the potential for personal injury or death.

The front guard and the top guard should be installed on the cab for applications where the hazard of falling objects exist. Read the Operation and Maintenance Manual.

Refer to “Guards“ for further information.

Joystick Controls Alternate Patterns (7E)

If equipped, this safety message is located in the cab on the right side window.

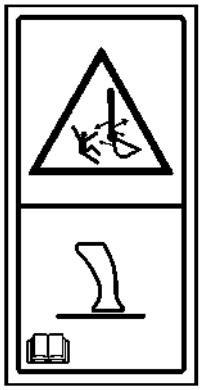


Illustration 16 g06188665

WARNING

Crush Hazard. Improper joystick setting could cause possible unexpected movement of the boom, stick, or worktool which could result in serious injury or death. Confirm that the joystick settings are properly configured before you operate the machine. Read the Operation and Maintenance Manual.

Refer to “Joystick Controls Alternate Patterns“ for further information.

Electrical Power Lines (7F)

This safety message is located in the cab.

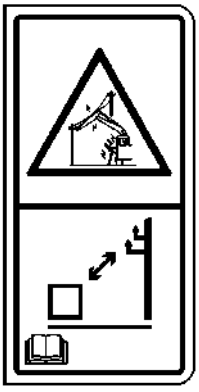


Illustration 17 g06188667

DANGER

Electrocution Hazard! Keep the machine and attachments a safe distance from electrical power. Stay clear 3 m (10 ft) plus twice the line insulator length. Read and understand the instructions and warnings in the Operation and Maintenance Manual. Failure to follow the instructions and warnings will cause serious injury or death

Refer to “Specifications“ for further information.

Do Not Lift Over Personnel (8)

This safety message is located in the cab on the right side window.

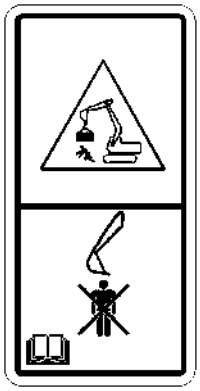


Illustration 18 g06188697

Do not lift

Do Not Weld or Drill on Operator Protective Structure (OPS) (9)

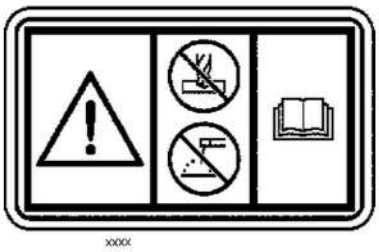


Illustration 19 g07056029

If equipped, this safety message is on the left side pillar in the cab.

WARNING

Structural damage, an overturn, modification, alteration, or improper repair, can impair this structure's protective capability thereby voiding this certification. Do not weld on or drill holes in the structure. Consult a Caterpillar dealer to determine this structure's limitations without voiding its certification.

This safety message is on the left side of the machine near the cab door.

Certification for Rollover Protective Structure (ROPS) and for Falling Object Protective Structure (FOPS)

The unaltered ROPS or the FOPS structure meets the following standards for the ROPS at the time of installation: “ISO 3471-2008” and “GB/T 17922-2014”. Also, the FOPS canopy meets the following standards at the time of installation: “ISO 3449-2005 LEVEL II” and “GB/T 17771-2010 LEVEL II”.

Refer to “Guards“ for more information.

Hot Surface (10)

This message is on the outside of the engine hood and inside the engine hood.

Illustration 20 g01372256

WARNING

Engine hood and engine hood parts can be hot while engine is running or immediately after engine shutdown. Hot parts or hot components can cause burns or personal injury. Do not allow these parts to contact your skin, when engine is running or immediately after engine shutdown. Use protective clothing or protective equipment to protect your skin.

Aerosol Starting Aid (11)

This safety message is located near the precleaner. The following information is not applicable to machines that are equipped with an ether starting aid.

Illustration 21 g01372254

WARNING

Explosion hazard! Do not use ether! This machine is equipped with an air inlet heater. Using ether can create explosions or fires that can cause personal injury or death. Read and follow the starting procedure in the Operation and Maintenance Manual.

Refer to “Engine Starting“ for the proper starting procedure.

Flying Debris (12)

This safety message is on the left side near the rear of the machine.

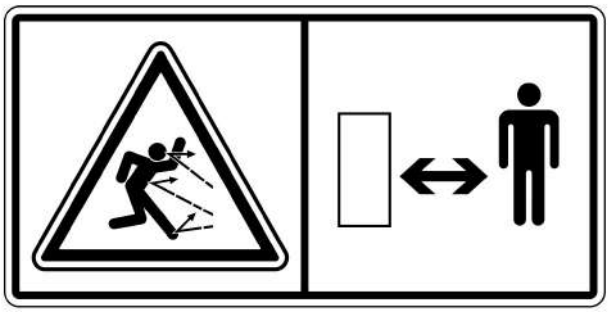


Illustration 22 g01404266

WARNING

During operation of the reversing fan, flying debris could be discharged from the machine which could result in personal injury or death. Stay clear of the reversing fan discharge area during reversing fan operation.

Jump-Start Cables (13)

This safety message is positioned on the circuit breaker panel.

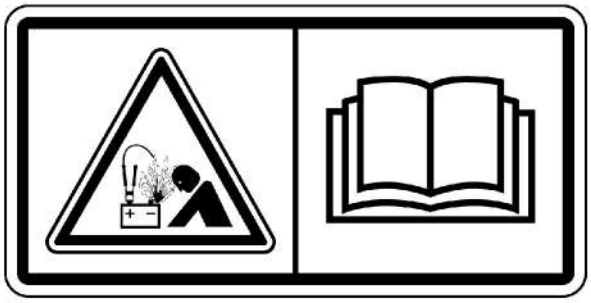


Illustration 23 g01370909

WARNING

Explosion Hazard! Improper jumper cable connections can cause an explosion resulting in serious injury or death. Batteries may be located in separate compartments. Refer to the Operation and Maintenance Manual for the correct jump starting procedure.

Refer to “Engine Starting with Jump Start Cables“ for further information.

High-Pressure Gas (14)

This safety message is positioned on the accumulator.

Illustration 24 g06188756

WARNING

Pressurized System!

Hydraulic accumulators contain gas and oil under high pressure. DO NOT disconnect lines or disassemble any component of a pressurized accumulator. All gas pre-charge must be removed from the accumulator as instructed by the service manual before servicing or disposing of the accumulator or any accumulator component.

Failure to follow the instructions and warnings could result in personal injury or death.

Only use dry nitrogen gas to recharge accumulators. See your Cat dealer for special equipment and detailed information for accumulator service and charging.

Refer to “Equipment Lowering with Engine Stopped“ for further information.

Crushing Hazard (15)

This safety message is on both sides of the stick.

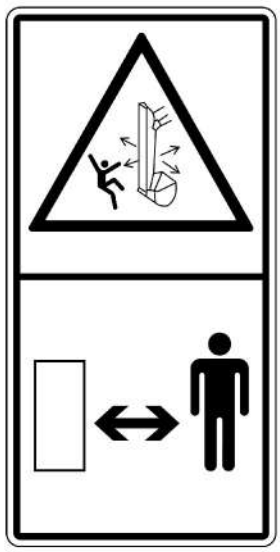


Illustration 25 g01385579

WARNING

A crushing hazard exists when the stick and boom are in motion and when the machine is being used in object handling applications. Failure to stay clear of the stick and boom when the machine is in operation can result in personal injury or death. Stay clear of the stick and boom when the machine is in operation.

Vapor Explosion (16)

If equipped, this safety message is on the storage compartment for the fuel transfer pump.

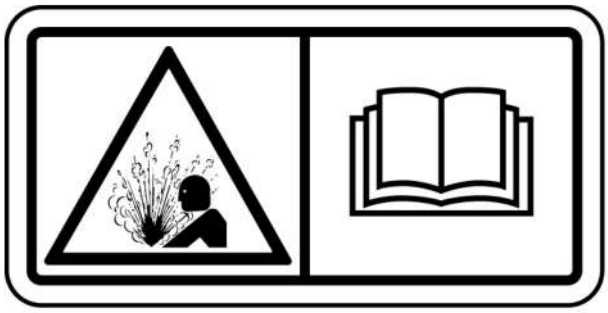


Illustration 26 g01407639

WARNING

Explosion hazard! Fuel vapors can accumulate in the refueling pump compartment and can be ignited by improper operation of the refueling pump. Failure to follow the operating instructions for the refueling pump could result in personal injury or death. Read and follow the operating instructions for the refueling pump in the Operation and Maintenance Manual.

Refer to “Fuel Transfer Pump (Refueling)“ for further information.

Crushing Hazard (17)

This safety message is on the rear of each side of the machine.

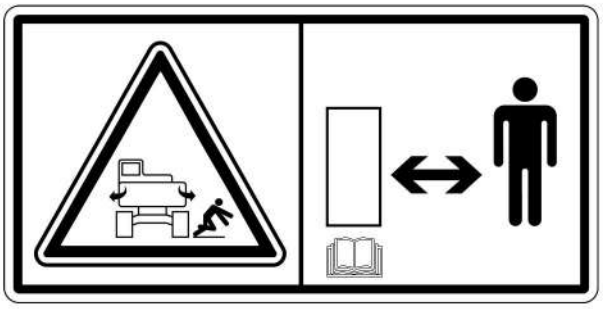


Illustration 27 g06219420

WARNING

Machine swings. Stay back. Crushing hazard could cause serious injury or death.

Relieve Hydraulic Tank Pressure (18)

This safety message is on top of the hydraulic tank.

Illustration 28 g01371640

WARNING

Hot Fluid Under Pressure!

Do NOT remove pressure cap when hot. Hot oil could cause serious injury or death.

Crushing Hazard (Counterweight) (19)

If equipped, this safety message is on the right side of the machine inside the access door.

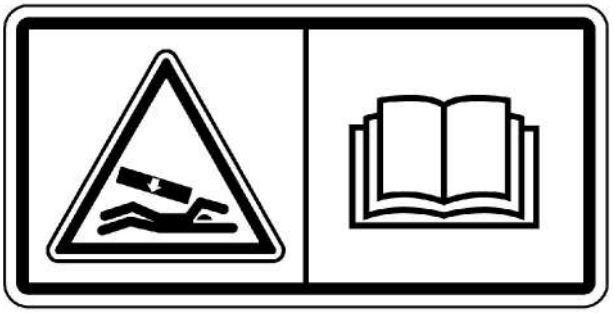


Illustration 29 g01435553

WARNING

Crushing Hazard! When the counterweight is in the fully extended position for servicing the machine, secure the extended counterweight with the counterweight lock lever.

Use the counterweight lock lever to avoid possible personnel injury or death from crushing.

Refer to “Counterweight Removal and Installation“ for further information.

Rotating Fan (20)

This safety message is located near the engine fan.

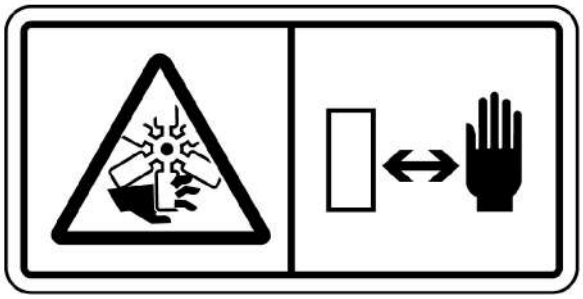


Illustration 30 g01385578

WARNING

Cutting Hazard! Keep hands clear of fan while engine is running. May cause serious injury or death.

Falling Object Guard Structure (21)

If equipped, this safety message is on top of the front falling object guard structure. This safety message is also on the left side of the falling object guard structure on the top of the cab.

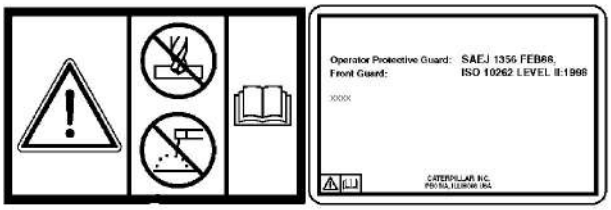


Illustration 31 g06289969

WARNING

Structural damage, an overturn, modification, alteration, or improper repair can impair this structure's protection capability thereby voiding this certification. Do not weld on or drill holes in the structure. Consult a Caterpillar dealer to determine this structure's limitations without voiding its certification.

The unaltered ROPS or the FOPS structure meets the following standards for the ROPS at the time of installation: “ISO 3471-2008” and “GB/T 17922-2014”. Also, the FOPS canopy meets the following standards at the time of installation: “ISO 3449-2005 LEVEL II” and “GB/T 17771-2010 LEVEL II”.

Refer to “Guards“ for more information.

i10111113

Additional Messages

SMCS Code: 7000; 7405

There are several specific messages on this machine. The exact location of the messages and the description of the information are reviewed in this section. Become familiar with all messages.

Make sure that all the messages are legible. Clean the messages or replace the messages if you cannot read the words. Replace the illustrations if the illustrations are not legible. When you clean the messages, use a cloth, water, and soap. Do not use solvent, gasoline, or other harsh chemicals to clean the messages. Solvents, gasoline, or harsh chemicals could loosen the adhesive that secures the messages. Loose adhesive will allow the messages to fall.

Replace any message that is damaged, or missing. If a message is attached to a part that is replaced, install a message on the replacement part. Any Cat ® dealer can provide new messages.

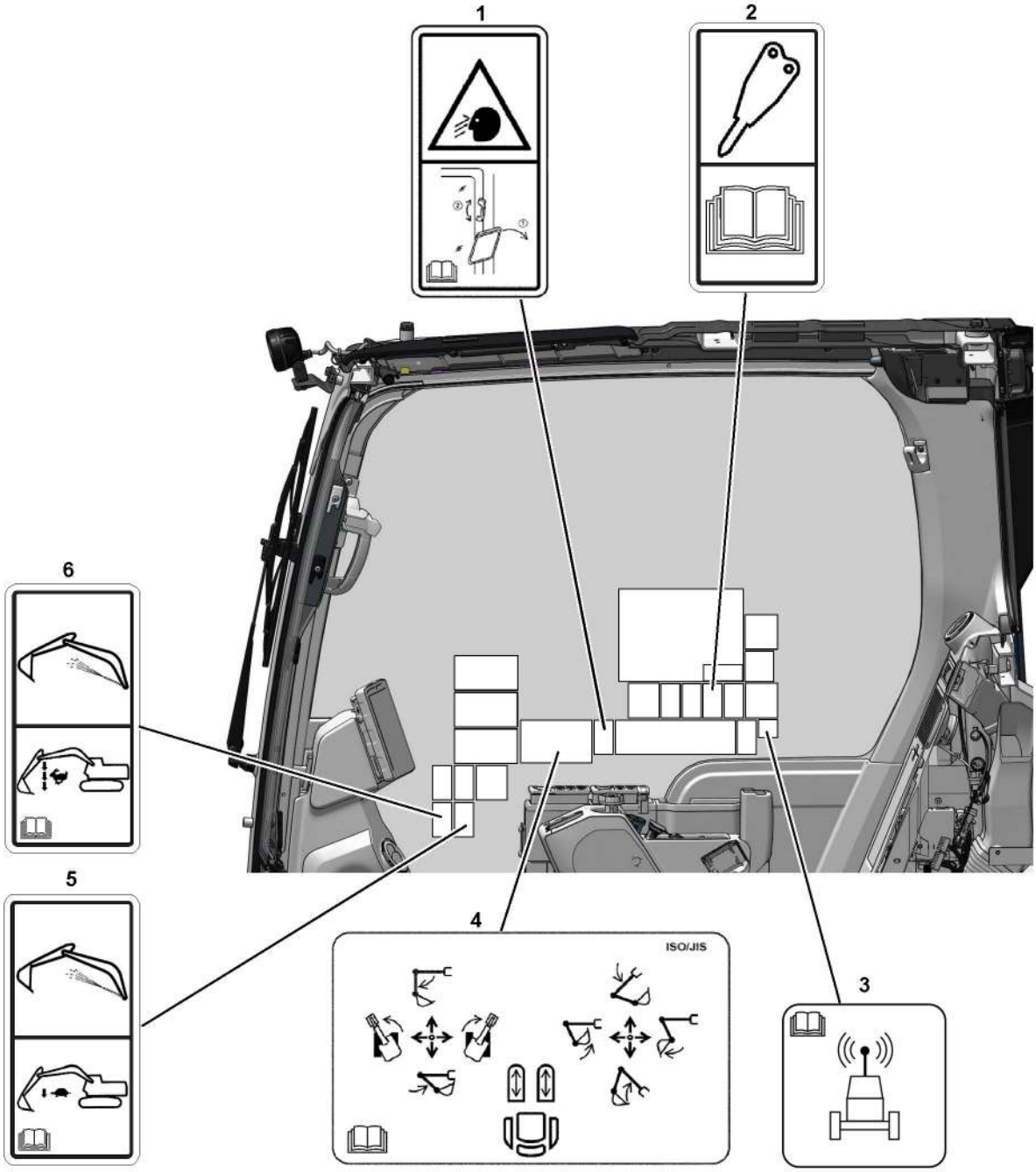


Illustration 32 g06187617

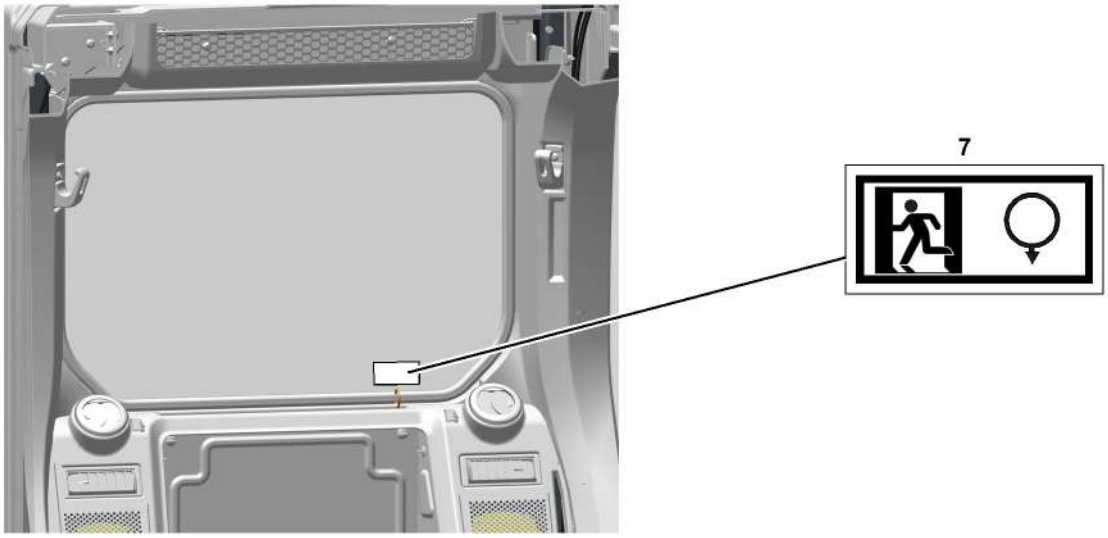


Illustration 33 g06189121

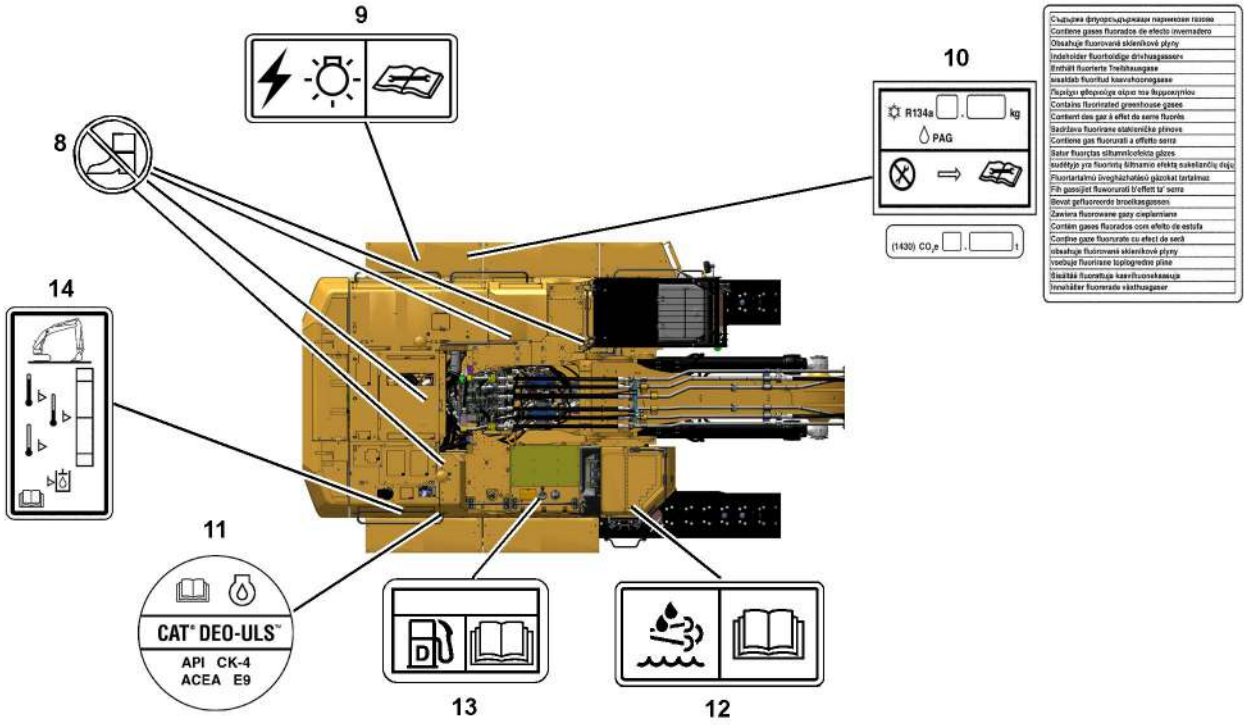


Illustration 34 g06598944

Front Window Usage (1)

For machines equipped with the Cat Grade monitor, the monitor must be moved downward before lifting or lowering the front window. The monitor is in the path of the window track when the monitor is in the normal position.

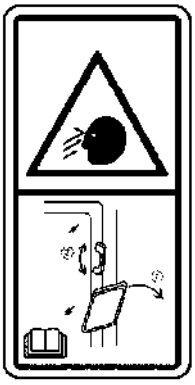


Illustration 35 g06214810

Hammer Operation (2)

This message is located on the window on the right side of the cab.

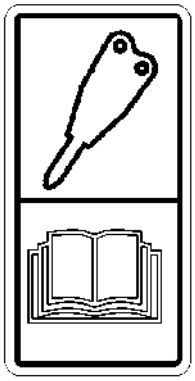


Illustration 36 g06189240

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Hammer Operation” within , “Work Tool Control (One-Way Flow)" for instructions on hammer operation.

Also, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Hydraulic Hammer Control (Foot Switch)” within , “Work Tool Control (One-Way Flow)" for instructions on hammer operation.

Product Link (3)

Illustration 37 g01418953

The Product Link System is a satellite communication device that transmits information regarding the machine back to Caterpillar and Cat ® dealers and customers. All logged events and diagnostic codes that are available on the Cat ® data link can be sent to the satellite. Information can also be sent to the Product Link System. The information is used to improve Cat ® products and Cat ® services.

Refer to “Product Link“ for more information.

Joystick Controls Alternate Patterns (4)

If equipped, this message is located on the right side window of the cab.

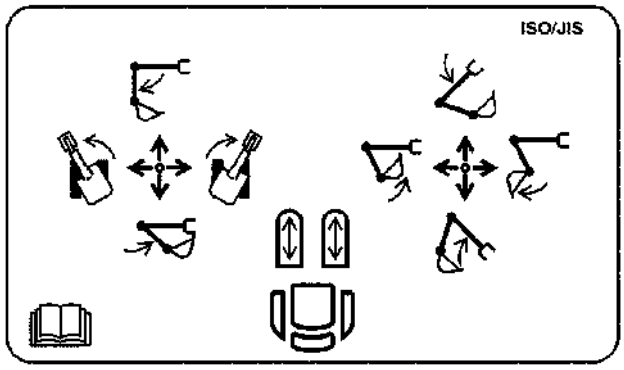


Illustration 38 g06214805

Refer to “Joystick Controls Alternate Patterns“ for further information.

Hose Burst (5)

If equipped, this message is located on the right side window of the cab.

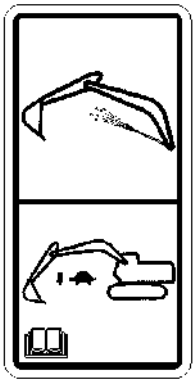


Illustration 39 g06189238

Hose Burst (6)

If equipped, this message is located on the right side window of the cab.

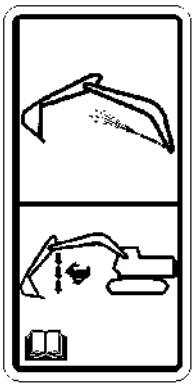


Illustration 40 g06189239

Alternate Exit (7)

If equipped, this message is located on the rear window of the cab in the lower left-hand corner.

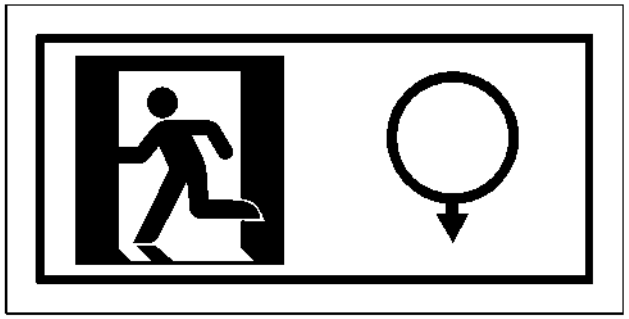


Illustration 41 g06189112

Pull the ring to pull out the seal. Push the window out of the cab and exit through the opening.

Refer to “Alternate Exit“ for further information.

No Step (8)

This message is on various places on the upper structure and covers. The message is also on the engine valve cover.

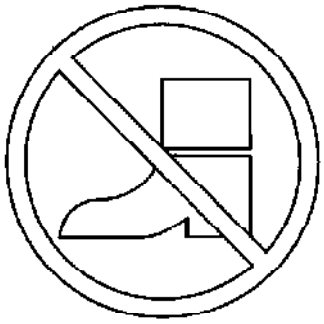


Illustration 42 g00911158

Do not step in this area.

DEF Purge Indicator Lamp (9)

This message is located behind the cab near the disconnect switch and pertains to the Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) system.

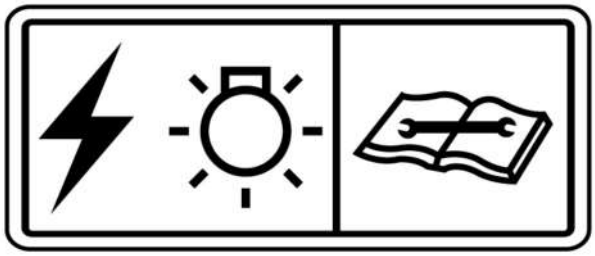


Illustration 43 g03796564

NOTICE
After the engine is shutdown apply the battery disconnect switch. Applying the battery disconnect too soon will prevent the DEF system from being purged and could cause DEF to freeze in the lines.

Note: This film is applicable only to machines equipped with Tier 4 engines.

Air Conditioner (10)

These messages are positioned on the left door behind the cab.

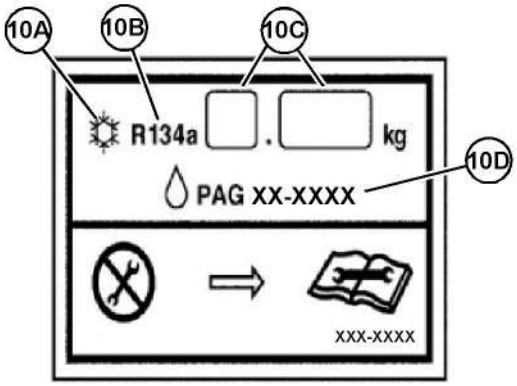


Illustration 44 g06684930

(10A) Air conditioning symbol
(10B) R134a (Refrigerant type common name)
(10C) Refrigerant quantity
(10D) PAG (polyalkylene glycol) lubricating oil part number

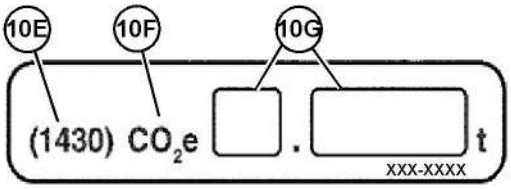


Illustration 45 g06684942

If equipped, this plate provides the below more greenhouse gas information.

(10E) (1430) - The Global Warming Potential of R134a
(10F) CO_2 equivalent
(10G) CO_2 equivalent in metric tonne based on the R134a charged amount

Illustration 46 g06684949

(10H) If equipped, this film provides the required language translations of the text “Contains fluorinated greenhouse gases” .

These messages for the air conditioner system have the appropriate information for the following services: the air conditioner lubricant, the refrigerant charge, and the refrigerant capacity.

Engine Oil Requirements (11)

This message is located on top of the engine.

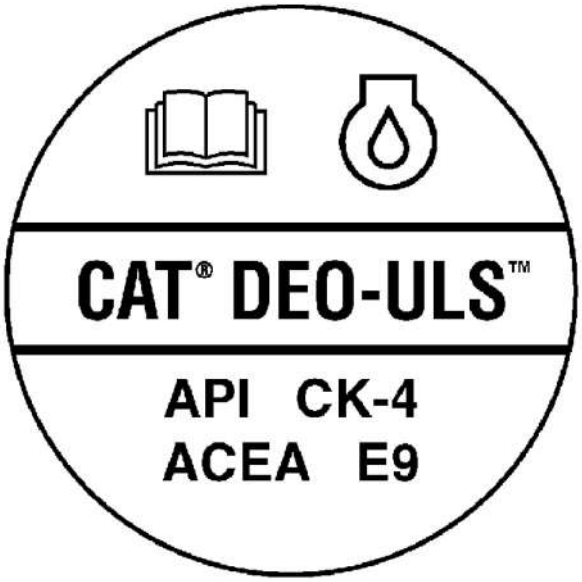


Illustration 47 g06208149

Tier 4 Engines

Refer to “Lubricant Viscosities“.

Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) (12)

This message is located by the DEF tank.

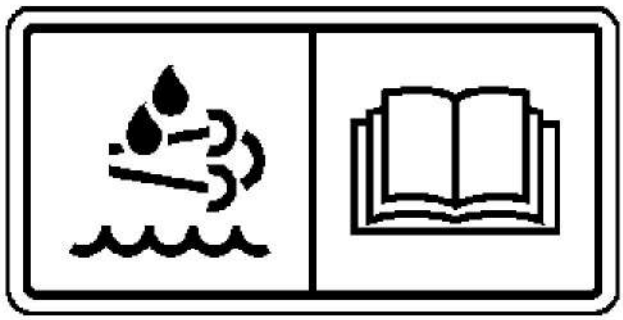


Illustration 48 g06289604

DEF is used in the SCR system. Refer to “Lubricant Viscosities“.

Diesel Fuel Requirements (13)

This message is located by the fuel tank.

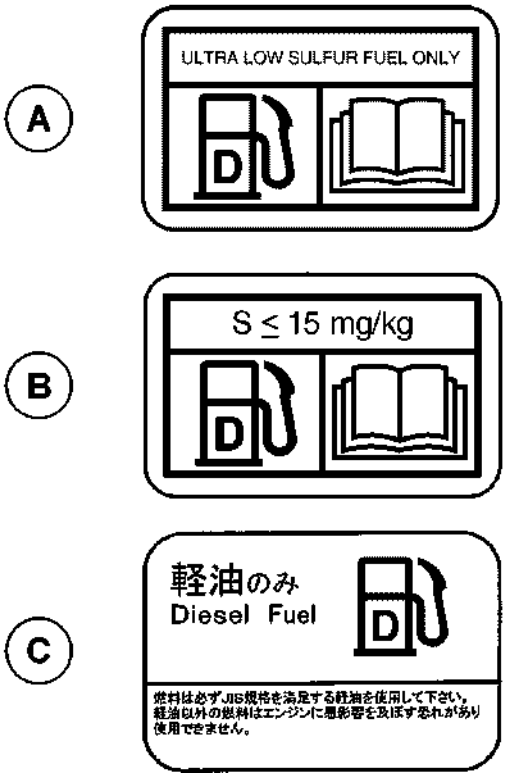


Illustration 49 g03218956

(A) North America film
(B) China, Europe, Africa, Middle East film
(C) Japan film

Hydraulic Oil Level Check (14)

This message is located in the right access compartment next to the sight gauge for the hydraulic oil .

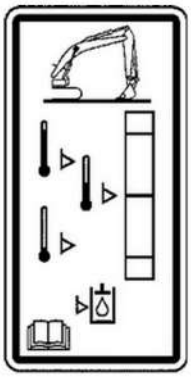


Illustration 50 g06586141

Check hydraulic oil level daily. Refer to “Hydraulic System Oil Level - Check“ for details.

i08313103

General Hazard Information

SMCS Code: 7000

Illustration 51 g00104545

Typical example

Attach a “Do Not Operate” warning tag or a similar warning tag to the start switch or to the controls. Attach the warning tag before you service the equipment or before you repair the equipment. Warning tag SEHS7332 is available from your Cat dealer.

⚠ WARNING

Operating the machine while distracted can result in the loss of machine control. Use extreme caution when using any device while operating the machine. Operating the machine while distracted can result in personal injury or death.

Know the width of your equipment to maintain proper clearance when you operate the equipment near fences or near boundary obstacles.

Be aware of high-voltage power lines and power cables that are buried. If the machine comes in contact with these hazards, serious injury or death may occur from electrocution.

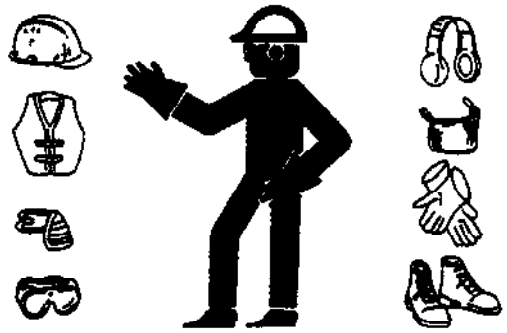


Illustration 52 g00702020

Wear a hard hat, protective glasses, and other protective equipment, as required.

Do not wear loose clothing or jewelry that can snag on controls or on other parts of the equipment.

Make sure that all protective guards and all covers are secured in place on the equipment.

Keep the equipment free from foreign material. Remove debris, oil, tools, and other items from the deck, from walkways, and from steps.

Secure all loose items such as lunch boxes, tools, and other items that are not a part of the equipment.

Know the appropriate work site hand signals and the personnel that are authorized to give the hand signals. Accept hand signals from one person only.

Do not smoke when you service an air conditioner. Also, do not smoke if refrigerant gas may be present. Inhaling the fumes that are released from a flame that contacts air conditioner refrigerant can cause bodily harm or death. Inhaling gas from air conditioner refrigerant through a lighted cigarette can cause bodily harm or death.

Never put maintenance fluids into glass containers. Drain all liquids into a suitable container.

Obey all local regulations for the disposal of liquids.

Use all cleaning solutions with care. Report all necessary repairs.

Do not allow unauthorized personnel on the equipment.

Unless you are instructed otherwise, perform maintenance with the equipment in the servicing position. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual for the procedure for placing the equipment in the servicing position.

When you perform maintenance above ground level, use appropriate devices such as ladders or man lift machines. If equipped, use the machine anchorage points and use approved fall arrest harnesses and lanyards.

Pressurized Air and Water

Pressurized air and/or water can cause debris and/or hot water to be blown out. The debris and/or hot water could result in personal injury.

When pressurized air and/or pressurized water is used for cleaning, wear protective clothing, protective shoes, and eye protection. Eye protection includes goggles or a protective face shield.

The maximum air pressure for cleaning purposes must be reduced to 205 kPa (30 psi) when the nozzle is deadheaded and the nozzle is used with an effective chip deflector and personal protective equipment. The maximum water pressure for cleaning purposes must be below 275 kPa (40 psi).

Avoid direct spraying of water on electrical connectors, connections, and components. When using air for cleaning, allow the machine to cool to reduce the possibility of fine debris igniting when re-deposited on hot surfaces.

Trapped Pressure

Pressure can be trapped in a hydraulic system. Releasing trapped pressure can cause sudden machine movement or attachment movement. Use caution if you disconnect hydraulic lines or fittings. High-pressure oil that is released can cause a hose to whip. High-pressure oil that is released can cause oil to spray. Fluid penetration can cause serious injury and possible death.

Fluid Penetration

Pressure can be trapped in the hydraulic circuit long after the machine has been stopped. The pressure can cause hydraulic fluid or items such as pipe plugs to escape rapidly if the pressure is not relieved correctly.

Do not remove any hydraulic components or parts until pressure has been relieved or personal injury may occur. Do not disassemble any hydraulic components or parts until pressure has been relieved or personal injury may occur. Refer to the Service Manual for any procedures that are required to relieve the hydraulic pressure.

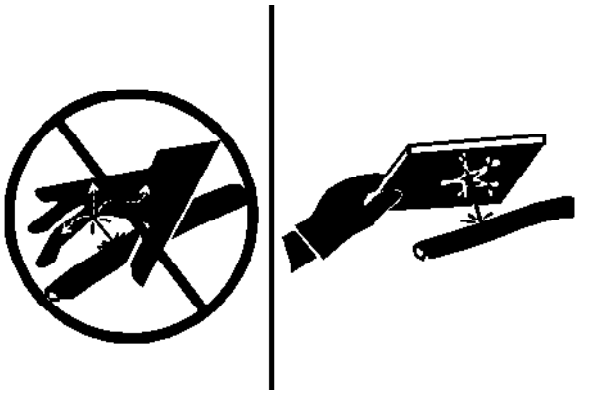


Illustration 53 g00687600

Always use a board or cardboard when you check for a leak. Leaking fluid that is under pressure can penetrate body tissue. Fluid penetration can cause serious injury and possible death. A pin hole leak can cause severe injury. If fluid is injected into your skin, you must get treatment immediately. Seek treatment from a doctor that is familiar with this type of injury.

Containing Fluid Spillage

Care must be taken in order to ensure that fluids are contained during performance of inspection, maintenance, testing, adjusting, and repair of the equipment. Prepare to collect the fluid with suitable containers before opening any compartment or disassembling any component that contains fluids.

Refer to Special Publication, NENG2500, “Cat dealer Service Tool Catalog” for the following items:

- Tools that are suitable for collecting fluids and equipment that is suitable for collecting fluids
- Tools that are suitable for containing fluids and equipment that is suitable for containing fluids

Obey all local regulations for the disposal of liquids.

Inhalation

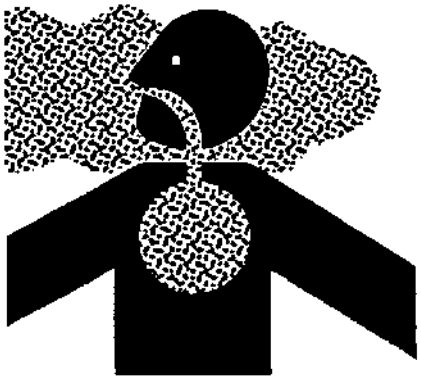


Illustration 54 g02159053

Exhaust

Use caution. Exhaust fumes can be hazardous to your health. If you operate the machine in an enclosed area, adequate ventilation is necessary.

Asbestos Information

Cat equipment and replacement parts that are shipped from Caterpillar are asbestos free. Caterpillar recommends the use of only genuine Cat replacement parts. Use the following guidelines when you handle any replacement parts that contain asbestos or when you handle asbestos debris.

Use caution. Avoid inhaling dust that might be generated when you handle components that contain asbestos fibers. Inhaling this dust can be hazardous to your health. The components that may contain asbestos fibers are brake pads, brake bands, lining material, clutch plates, and some gaskets. The asbestos that is used in these components is bound in a resin or sealed in some way. Normal handling is not hazardous unless airborne dust that contains asbestos is generated.

If dust that may contain asbestos is present, there are several guidelines that should be followed:

- Never use compressed air for cleaning.
- Avoid brushing materials that contain asbestos.
- Avoid grinding materials that contain asbestos.
- Use a wet method in order to clean up asbestos materials.
- A vacuum cleaner that is equipped with a high efficiency particulate air filter (HEPA) can also be used.

- Use exhaust ventilation on permanent machining jobs.
- Wear an approved respirator if there is no other way to control the dust.
- Comply with applicable rules and regulations for the work place. In the United States, use Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) requirements. These OSHA requirements can be found in “29 CFR 1910.1001”. In Japan, use the requirements found in the “Ordinance on Prevention of Health Impairment due to Asbestos” in addition to the requirements of the Industrial Safety and Health Act.
- Obey environmental regulations for the disposal of asbestos.
- Stay away from areas that might have asbestos particles in the air.

Hexavalent Chromium Information

Cat equipment and replacement parts comply with applicable regulations and requirements where originally sold. Caterpillar recommends the use of only genuine Cat replacement parts.

Hexavalent chromium has occasionally been detected on exhaust and heat shield systems on Cat engines. Although lab testing is the only accurate way to know if hexavalent chromium is, in fact, present, the presence of a yellow deposit in areas of high heat (for example, exhaust system components or exhaust insulation) may be an indication of the presence of hexavalent chromium.

Use caution if you suspect the presence of hexavalent chromium. Avoid skin contact when handling items that you suspect may contain hexavalent chromium, and avoid inhalation of any dust in the suspect area. Inhalation of, or skin contact with, hexavalent chromium dust may be hazardous to your health.

If such yellow deposits are found on the engine, engine component parts, or associated equipment or packages, Caterpillar recommends following local health and safety regulations and guidelines, utilizing good hygiene, and adhering to safe work practices when handling the equipment or parts. Caterpillar also recommends the following:

- Wear appropriate personal protective equipment (PPE).
- Wash your hands and face with soap and water prior to eating, drinking, or smoking, and also during rest room breaks, to prevent ingestion of any yellow powder.
- Never use compressed air for cleaning areas suspected of containing hexavalent chromium.
- Avoid brushing, grinding, or cutting materials suspected of containing hexavalent chromium.
- Obey environmental regulations for the disposal of all materials that may contain or have come into contact with hexavalent chromium.
- Stay away from areas that might have hexavalent chromium particles in the air.

Dispose of Waste Properly

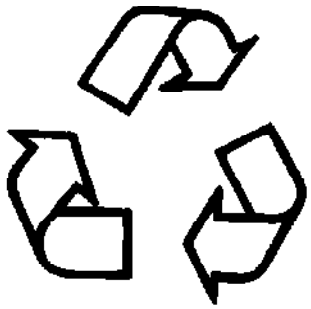


Illustration 55 g00706404

Improperly disposing of waste can threaten the environment. Potentially harmful fluids should be disposed of according to local regulations.

Always use leakproof containers when you drain fluids. Do not pour waste onto the ground, down a drain, or into any source of water.

i01359664

Crushing Prevention and Cutting Prevention

SMCS Code: 7000

Support the equipment properly before you perform any work or maintenance beneath that equipment. Do not depend on the hydraulic cylinders to hold up the equipment. Equipment can fall if a control is moved, or if a hydraulic line breaks.

Do not work beneath the cab of the machine unless the cab is properly supported.

Unless you are instructed otherwise, never attempt adjustments while the machine is moving or while the engine is running.

Never jump across the starter solenoid terminals in order to start the engine. Unexpected machine movement could result.

Whenever there are equipment control linkages the clearance in the linkage area will change with the movement of the equipment or the machine. Stay clear of areas that may have a sudden change in clearance with machine movement or equipment movement.

Stay clear of all rotating and moving parts.

If it is necessary to remove guards in order to perform maintenance, always install the guards after the maintenance is performed.

Keep objects away from moving fan blades. The fan blade will throw objects or cut objects.

Do not use a kinked wire cable or a frayed wire cable. Wear gloves when you handle wire cable.

When you strike a retainer pin with force, the retainer pin can fly out. The loose retainer pin can injure personnel. Make sure that the area is clear of people when you strike a retainer pin. To avoid injury to your eyes, wear protective glasses when you strike a retainer pin.

Chips or other debris can fly off an object when you strike the object. Make sure that no one can be injured by flying debris before striking any object.

i07746334

Burn Prevention

SMCS Code: 7000

Do not touch any part of an operating engine. Allow the engine to cool before any maintenance is performed on the engine. Relieve all pressure in the air system, in the oil system, in the lubrication system, in the fuel system, or in the cooling system before any lines, fittings, or related items are disconnected.

Coolant

When the engine is at operating temperature, the engine coolant is hot. The coolant is also under pressure. The radiator and all lines to the heaters or to the engine contain hot coolant.

Any contact with hot coolant or with steam can cause severe burns. Allow cooling system components to cool before the cooling system is drained.

Check the coolant level only after the engine has been stopped.

Ensure that the filler cap is cool before removing the filler cap. The filler cap must be cool enough to touch with a bare hand. Remove the filler cap slowly to relieve pressure.

Cooling system conditioner contains alkali. Alkali can cause personal injury. Do not allow alkali to contact the skin, the eyes, or the mouth.

Oils

Hot oil and hot components can cause personal injury. Do not allow hot oil to contact the skin. Also, do not allow hot components to contact the skin.

Remove the hydraulic tank filler cap only after the engine has been stopped. The filler cap must be cool enough to touch with a bare hand. Follow the standard procedure in this manual to remove the hydraulic tank filler cap.

Batteries

The liquid in a battery is an electrolyte. Electrolyte is an acid that can cause personal injury. Do not allow electrolyte to contact the skin or the eyes.

Do not smoke while checking the battery electrolyte levels. Batteries give off flammable fumes which can explode.

Always wear protective glasses when you work with batteries. Wash hands after touching batteries. The use of gloves is recommended.

i06179517

Fire Prevention and Explosion Prevention

SMCS Code: 7000

Illustration 56 g00704000

Regeneration

The exhaust gas temperatures during regeneration will be elevated. Follow proper fire prevention instructions and use the disable regeneration function (if equipped) when appropriate.

General

All fuels, most lubricants, and some coolant mixtures are flammable.

To minimize the risk of fire or explosion, Caterpillar recommends the following actions.

Always perform a Walk-Around Inspection, which may help you identify a fire hazard. Do not operate a machine when a fire hazard exists. Contact your Cat dealer for service.

Understand the use of the primary exit and alternative exit on the machine. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Alternative Exit”.

Do not operate a machine with a fluid leak. Repair leaks and clean up fluids before resuming machine operation. Fluids that are leaking or spilled onto hot surfaces or onto electrical components can cause a fire. A fire may cause personal injury or death.

Remove flammable material such as leaves, twigs, papers, trash, and so on. These items may accumulate in the engine compartment or around other hot areas and hot parts on the machine.

Keep the access doors to major machine compartments closed and access doors in working condition in order to permit the use of fire suppression equipment, in case a fire should occur.

Clean all accumulations of flammable materials such as fuel, oil, and debris from the machine.

Do not operate the machine near any flame.

Keep shields in place. Exhaust shields (if equipped) protect hot exhaust components from oil spray or fuel spray in a break in a line, in a hose, or in a seal. Exhaust shields must be installed correctly.

Do not weld or flame cut on tanks or lines that contain flammable fluids or flammable material. Empty and purge the lines and tanks. Then clean the lines and tanks with a nonflammable solvent prior to welding or flame cutting. Ensure that the components are properly grounded in order to avoid unwanted arcs.

Dust that is generated from repairing nonmetallic hoods or fenders may be flammable and/or explosive. Repair such components in a ventilated area away from open flames or sparks. Use suitable Personal Protection Equipment (PPE).

Inspect all lines and hoses for wear or deterioration. Replace damaged lines and hoses. The lines and the hoses should have adequate support and secure clamps. Tighten all connections to the recommended torque. Damage to the protective cover or insulation may provide fuel for fires.

Store fuels and lubricants in properly marked containers away from unauthorized personnel. Store oily rags and flammable materials in protective containers. Do not smoke in areas that are used for storing flammable materials.

Illustration 57 g03839130

Use caution when you are fueling a machine. Do not smoke while you are fueling a machine. Do not fuel a machine near open flames or sparks. Do not use cell phones or other electronic devices while you are refueling. Always stop the engine before fueling. Fill the fuel tank outdoors. Properly clean areas of spillage.

Avoid static electricity risk when fueling. Ultra low sulfur diesel (ULSD) poses a greater static ignition hazard than earlier diesel formulations with a higher sulfur content. Avoid death or serious injury from fire or explosion. Consult with your fuel or fuel system supplier to ensure that the delivery system is in compliance with fueling standards for proper grounding and bonding practices.

Never store flammable fluids in the operator compartment of the machine.

Battery and Battery Cables

Illustration 58 g03839133

Caterpillar recommends the following in order to minimize the risk of fire or an explosion related to the battery.

Do not operate a machine if battery cables or related parts show signs of wear or damage. Contact your Cat dealer for service.

Follow safe procedures for engine starting with jump-start cables. Improper jumper cable connections can cause an explosion that may result in injury. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Engine Starting with Jump Start Cables” for specific instructions.

Do not charge a frozen battery. This may cause an explosion.

Gases from a battery can explode. Keep any open flames or sparks away from the top of a battery. Do not smoke in battery charging areas. Do not use cell phones or other electronic devices in battery charging areas.

Never check the battery charge by placing a metal object across the terminal posts. Use a voltmeter in order to check the battery charge.

Daily inspect battery cables that are in areas that are visible. Inspect cables, clips, straps, and other restraints for damage. Replace any damaged parts. Check for signs of the following, which can occur over time due to use and environmental factors:

- Fraying

- Abrasion
- Cracking
- Discoloration
- Cuts on the insulation of the cable
- Fouling
- Corroded terminals, damaged terminals, and loose terminals

Replace damaged battery cable(s) and replace any related parts. Eliminate any fouling, which may have caused insulation failure or related component damage or wear. Ensure that all components are reinstalled correctly.

An exposed wire on the battery cable may cause a short to ground if the exposed area comes into contact with a grounded surface. A battery cable short produces heat from the battery current, which may be a fire hazard.

An exposed wire on the ground cable between the battery and the disconnect switch may cause the disconnect switch to be bypassed if the exposed area comes into contact with a grounded surface. This may result in an unsafe condition for servicing the machine. Repair components or replace components before servicing the machine.

⚠ WARNING

Fire on a machine can result in personal injury or death. Exposed battery cables that come into contact with a grounded connection can result in fires. Replace cables and related parts that show signs of wear or damage. Contact your Cat dealer.

Wiring

Check electrical wires daily. If any of the following conditions exist, replace parts before you operate the machine.

- Fraying
- Signs of abrasion or wear
- Cracking
- Discoloration
- Cuts on insulation
- Other damage

Make sure that all clamps, guards, clips, and straps are reinstalled correctly. This will help to prevent vibration, rubbing against other parts, and excessive heat during machine operation.

Attaching electrical wiring to hoses and tubes that contain flammable fluids or combustible fluids should be avoided.

Consult your Cat dealer for repair or for replacement parts.

Keep wiring and electrical connections free of debris.

Lines, Tubes, and Hoses

Do not bend high-pressure lines. Do not strike high-pressure lines. Do not install any lines that are bent or damaged. Use the appropriate backup wrenches in order to tighten all connections to the recommended torque.

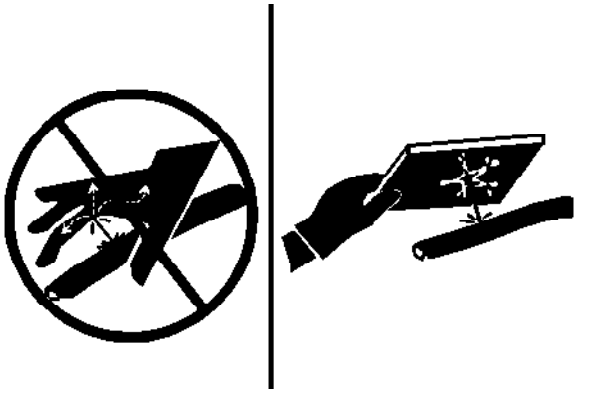


Illustration 59 g00687600

Check lines, tubes, and hoses carefully. Wear Personal Protection Equipment (PPE) in order to check for leaks. Always use a board or cardboard when you check for a leak. Leaking fluid that is under pressure can penetrate body tissue. Fluid penetration can cause serious injury and possible death. A pin hole leak can cause severe injury. If fluid is injected into your skin, you must get treatment immediately. Seek treatment from a doctor that is familiar with this type of injury.

Replace the affected parts if any of the following conditions are present:

- End fittings are damaged or leaking.
- Outer coverings are chafed or cut.
- Wires are exposed.
- Outer coverings are swelling or ballooning.
- Flexible parts of the hoses are kinked.
- Outer covers have exposed embedded armoring.
- End fittings are displaced.

Make sure that all clamps, guards, and heat shields are installed correctly. During machine operation, this will help to prevent vibration, rubbing against other parts, excessive heat, and failure of lines, tubes, and hoses.

Do not operate a machine when a fire hazard exists. Repair any lines that are corroded, loose, or damaged. Leaks may provide fuel for fires. Consult your Cat dealer for repair or for replacement parts. Use genuine Cat parts or the equivalent, for capabilities of both the pressure limit and temperature limit.

Ether

Ether (if equipped) is commonly used in cold-weather applications. Ether is flammable and poisonous.

Only use approved Ether canisters for the Ether dispensing system fitted to your machine, do not spray Ether manually into an engine, follow the correct cold engine starting procedures. Refer to the section in the Operation and Maintenance Manual with the label “Engine Starting” .

⚠ WARNING

Manually spraying Ether into an engine with a Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) may result in the accumulation of Ether in the DPF and an explosion. This in conjunction with other factors may result in an injury or death.

Use ether in ventilated areas. Do not smoke while you are replacing an ether cylinder.

Do not store ether cylinders in living areas or in the operator compartment of a machine. Do not store ether cylinders in direct sunlight or in temperatures above 49° C (120.2° F). Keep ether cylinders away from open flames or sparks.

Dispose of used ether cylinders properly. Do not puncture an ether cylinder. Keep ether cylinders away from unauthorized personnel.

Fire Extinguisher

As an additional safety measure, keep a fire extinguisher on the machine.

Be familiar with the operation of the fire extinguisher. Inspect the fire extinguisher and service the fire extinguisher regularly. Follow the recommendations on the instruction plate.

Consider installation of an aftermarket Fire Suppression System, if the application and working conditions warrant the installation.

i07041871

Fire Safety

SMCS Code: 7000

Note: Locate secondary exits and how to use the secondary exits before you operate the machine.

Note: Locate fire extinguishers and how to use a fire extinguisher before you operate the machine.

If you find that you are involved in a machine fire, your safety and that of others on site are the top priority. The following actions should only be performed if the actions do not present a danger or risk to you and any nearby people. Assess the risk of personal injury and move away to a safe distance as soon as you feel unsafe.

Move the machine away from nearby combustible material such as fuel/oil stations, structures, trash, mulch, and timber.

Lower any implements and turn off the engine as soon as possible. If you leave the engine running, the engine will continue to feed a fire. The fire will be fed from any damaged hoses that are attached to the engine or pumps.

If possible, turn the battery disconnect switch to the OFF position. Disconnecting the battery will remove the ignition source in the event of an electrical short. Disconnecting the battery will eliminate a second ignition source if electrical wiring is damaged by the fire, resulting in a short circuit.

Notify emergency personnel of the fire and your location.

If your machine is equipped with a fire suppression system, follow the manufacturers procedure for activating the system.

Note: Fire suppression systems need to be regularly inspected by qualified personnel. You must be trained to operate the fire suppression system.

If you are unable to do anything else, shut off the machine before exiting. By shutting off the machine, fuels will not continue to be pumped into the fire.

If the fire grows out of control, be aware of the following risks:

- Tires on wheeled machines pose a risk of explosion as tires burn. Hot shrapnel and debris can be thrown great distances in an explosion.
- Tanks, accumulators, hoses, and fittings can rupture in a fire, spraying fuels and shrapnel over a large area.

- Remember that nearly all the fluids on the machine are flammable, including coolant and oils. Additionally, plastics, rubbers, fabrics, and resins in fiberglass panels are also flammable.

i08251210

Fire Extinguisher Location

SMCS Code: 7000; 7419

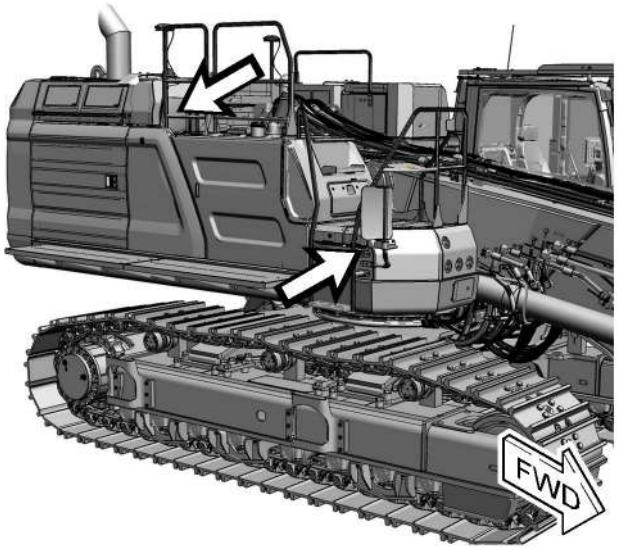


Illustration 60 g06600667

Make sure that a fire extinguisher is available. Be familiar with the operation of the fire extinguisher. Inspect the fire extinguisher and service the fire extinguisher regularly. Obey the recommendations on the instruction plate.

The recommended location for mounting the fire extinguisher is in the storage box. The fire extinguisher may also be mounted on the upper handrail on the right side of the machine.

i01329108

Track Information

SMCS Code: 4170; 7000

Track adjusting systems use either grease or oil under high pressure to keep the track under tension.

Grease or oil under high pressure coming out of the relief valve can penetrate the body causing injury or death. Do not watch the relief valve to see if grease or oil is escaping. Watch the track or track adjustment cylinder to see if the track is being loosened.

The pins and bushings in a dry track pin joint can become very hot. It is possible to burn the fingers if there is more than brief contact with these components.

i02546320

High Pressure Fuel Lines

SMCS Code: 1000; 1274; 7000

⚠ WARNING

Contact with high pressure fuel may cause fluid penetration and burn hazards. High pressure fuel spray may cause a fire hazard. Failure to follow these inspection, maintenance and service instructions may cause personal injury or death.

The high pressure fuel lines are the fuel lines that are between the high pressure fuel pump and the high pressure fuel manifold and the fuel lines that are between the fuel manifold and cylinder head. These fuel lines are different from fuel lines on other fuel systems.

This is because of the following differences:

- The high pressure fuel lines are constantly charged with high pressure.
- The internal pressures of the high pressure fuel lines are higher than other types of fuel system.
- The high pressure fuel lines are formed to shape and then strengthened by a special process.

Do not step on the high pressure fuel lines. Do not deflect the high pressure fuel lines. Do not bend or strike the high pressure fuel lines. Deformation or damage of the high pressure fuel lines may cause a point of weakness and potential failure.

Do not check the high pressure fuel lines with the engine or the starting motor in operation. After the engine has stopped allow 10 minutes to pass in order to allow the pressure to be purged before any service or repair is performed on the engine fuel lines.

Do not loosen the high pressure fuel lines in order to remove air from the fuel system. This procedure is not required.

Visually inspect the high pressure fuel lines before the engine is started. This inspection should be each day.

If you inspect the engine in operation, always use the proper inspection procedure in order to avoid a fluid penetration hazard. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “General hazard Information”.

- Inspect the high pressure fuel lines for damage, deformation, a nick, a cut, a crease, or a dent.

- Do not operate the engine with a fuel leak. If there is a leak do not tighten the connection in order to stop the leak. The connection must only be tightened to the recommended torque. Refer to Disassembly and Assembly for your engine.
- If the high pressure fuel lines are torqued correctly and the high pressure fuel lines are leaking the high pressure fuel lines must be replaced.
- Ensure that all clips on the high pressure fuel lines are in place. Do not operate the engine with clips that are damaged, missing or loose.
- Do not attach any other item to the high pressure fuel lines.
- Loosened high pressure fuel lines must be replaced. Also removed high pressure fuel lines must be replaced. Refer to Disassembly and Assembly for your engine.

i01122596

Electrical Storm Injury Prevention

SMCS Code: 7000

When lightning is striking in the vicinity of the machine, the operator should never attempt the following procedures:

- Mount the machine.
- Dismount the machine.

If you are in the operator's station during an electrical storm, stay in the operator's station. If you are on the ground during an electrical storm, stay away from the vicinity of the machine.

i00771840

Before Starting Engine

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

Start the engine only from the operator compartment. Never short across the starter terminals or across the batteries. Shorting could damage the electrical system by bypassing the engine neutral start system.

Inspect the condition of the seat belt and of the mounting hardware. Replace any parts that are worn or damaged. Regardless of appearance, replace the seat belt after three years of use. Do not use a seat belt extension on a retractable seat belt.

Adjust the seat so that full pedal travel can be achieved with the operator's back against the back of the seat.

Make sure that the machine is equipped with a lighting system that is adequate for the job conditions. Make sure that all machine lights are working properly.

Before you start the engine and before you move the machine, make sure that no one is underneath the machine, around the machine, or on the machine. Make sure that the area is free of personnel.

i08473852

Visibility Information

SMCS Code: 7000

Before you start the machine, perform a walk-around inspection to ensure that there are no hazards around the machine.

While the machine is in operation, constantly survey the area around the machine to identify potential hazards as hazards become visible around the machine.

Your machine may be equipped with visual aids. Some examples of visual aids are Closed Circuit Television (CCTV) and mirrors. Before operating the machine, ensure that the visual aids are in proper working condition and that the visual aids are clean. Shut down the machine until damaged or nonfunctional visual aid(s) are repaired (if applicable) or until appropriate job site organization is used to minimize hazards that are caused by any resulting restricted visibility. Adjust the visual aids using the procedures that are located in this Operation and Maintenance Manual. If equipped, the Work Area Vision System shall be adjusted according to Operation and Maintenance Manual, SEBU8157, “Work Area Vision System”. If equipped, the Cat Detect Object Detection shall be adjusted according to the Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Cat Detect Object Detection” for your machine.

It may not be possible to provide direct visibility on large machines to all areas around the machine. Appropriate job site organization is required to minimize hazards that are caused by restricted visibility. Job site organization is a collection of rules and procedures that coordinates machines and people that work together in the same area. Examples of job site organization include the following:

- Safety instructions
- Controlled patterns of machine movement and vehicle movement
- Workers that direct safe movement of traffic
- Restricted areas
- Operator training

- Warning symbols or warning signs on machines or on vehicles
- A system of communication
- Communication between workers and operators prior to approaching the machine

Modifications of the machine configuration by the user that result in a restriction of visibility shall be evaluated.

i08201608

Restricted Visibility

SMCS Code: 7000

The size and the configuration of this machine may result in areas that cannot be seen when the operator is seated. For restricted visibility areas, an appropriate job site organization must be utilized to minimize hazards of this restricted visibility. For more information regarding job site organization refer to “Visibility Information“.

Illustrations 61 - 64 provide an approximate visual indication of the areas at ground level inside a radius of 24 m (79 ft) from the operator of significant restricted visibility for various machine configurations. Refer to the correct illustration for your machine configuration. All restricted visibility areas less than 300 mm wide may not be shown. These illustrations do not indicate areas of restricted visibility for distances outside of the shown radius. The areas of restricted visibility shown in the illustrations are with the track and work tool of the machine in the Travel position. Illustration 65 shows the position of the work tool in the travel position. The Cat ® authorized work tool that resulted in the largest visibility restriction was used.

Illustration 61 indicates restricted visibility areas at ground level inside the shown radius from the operator without the use of visual aids that may be optional for this product in some markets.

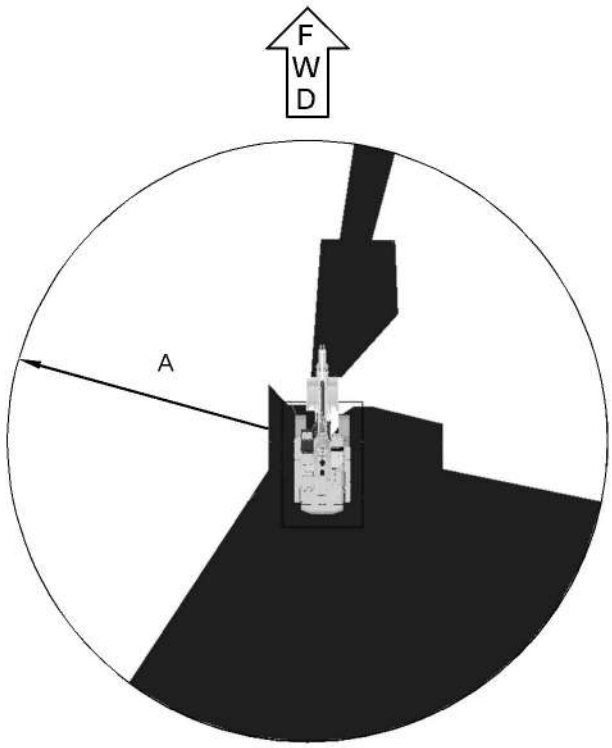


Illustration 61 g06586527

Top view of the machine, ground level visibility without use of optional visual aids

(A) 24 m (79 ft)

Note: The shaded areas indicate the approximate location of areas with significant restricted visibility.

Illustration 62 indicates restricted visibility areas at ground level inside the shown radius from the operator with the use of available rear camera, right side mirror, and left side mirrors installed.

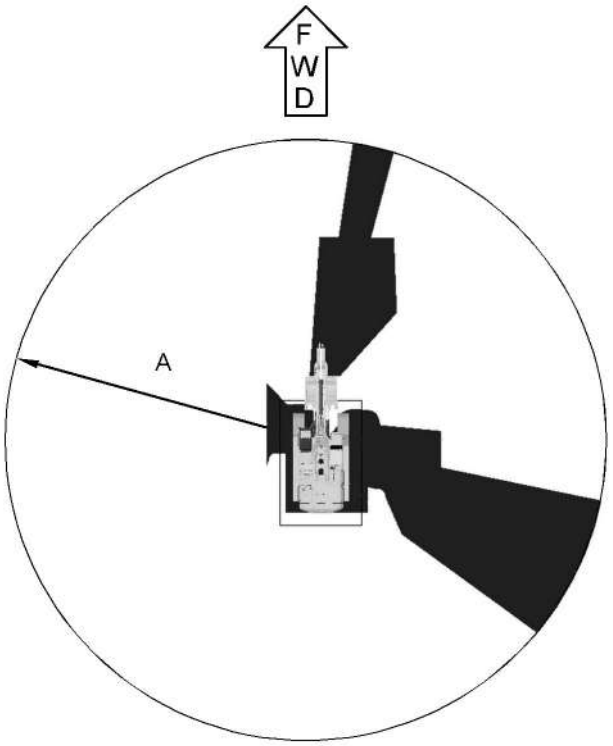


Illustration 62 g06586530

Top view of the machine, ground level visibility with available camera, right side mirror, and left side mirrors

(A) 24 m (79 ft)

Note: The shaded areas indicate the approximate location of areas with significant restricted visibility.

Illustration 63 indicates restricted visibility areas at ground level inside the shown radius from the operator with the use of available rear camera, right side camera (if equipped), left side mirrors installed.

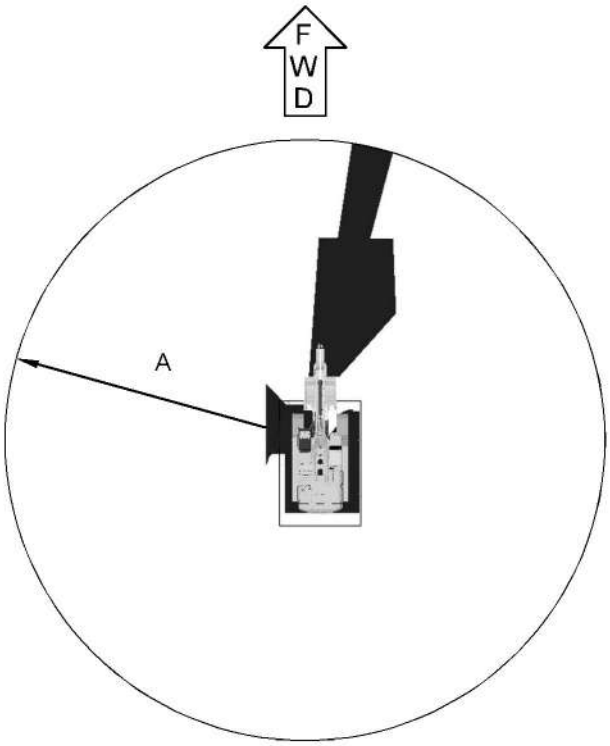


Illustration 63 g06586538

Top view of the machine, ground level visibility with available rear camera, right side camera, right side mirror, and left side mirrors.

(A) 24 m (79 ft)

Note: The shaded areas indicate the approximate location of areas with significant restricted visibility.

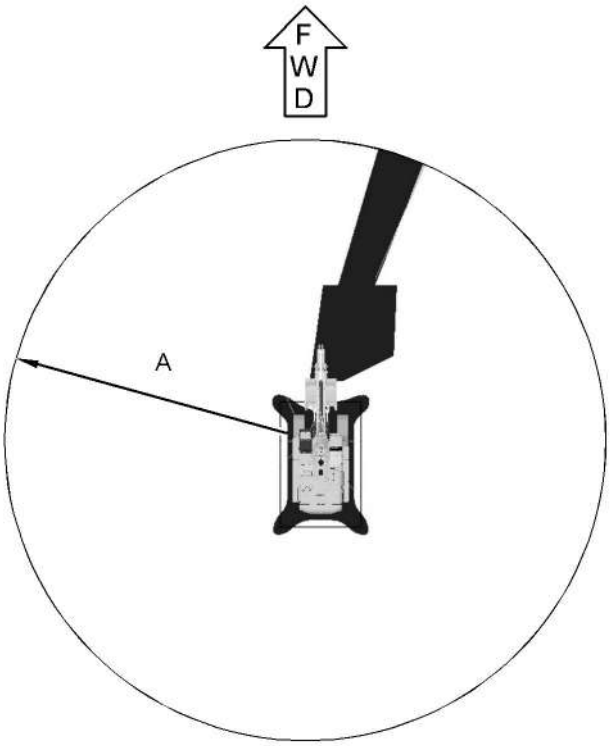


Illustration 64 g06586541

Top view of the machine, 360 visibility with available cameras.

Note: The shaded areas indicate the approximate location of areas with significant restricted visibility.

Restricted visibility is measured when the front linkage of the machine is in the travel position. Illustration 65 shows the machine in the travel position.

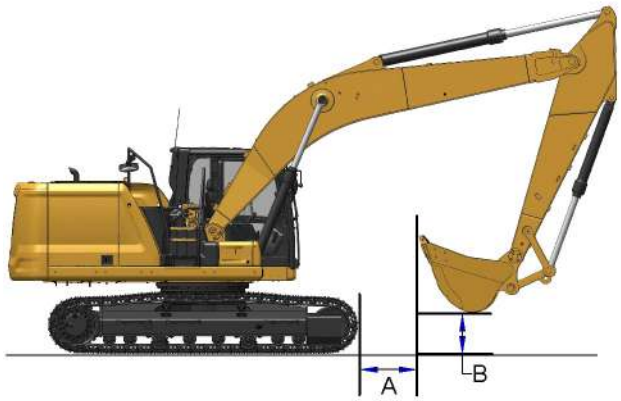


Illustration 65 g06181081

Typical example

(A) 1 m (3.0 ft) from the front of the machine to the bucket
(B) 0.5 m (1.6 ft) from ground level

i03562260

Engine Starting

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

If a warning tag is attached to the engine start switch or to the controls, do not start the engine. Also, do not move any controls.

Make sure that you are seated before you start the engine.

Move all hydraulic controls to the HOLD position before you start the engine. Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position. For further details on this procedure, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Operator Controls”.

Diesel engine exhaust contains products of combustion which can be harmful to your health. Always run the engine in a well ventilated area. If you are in an enclosed area, vent the exhaust to the outside.

Briefly sound the horn before you start the engine.

i01340061

Before Operation

SMCS Code: 7000

Clear all personnel from the machine and from the area.

Clear all obstacles from the machine's path. Beware of hazards (wires, ditches, etc).

Be sure that all windows are clean. Secure the doors and the windows in the open position or in the shut position.

Adjust the rearview mirrors (if equipped) for the best visibility close to the machine. Make sure that the horn, the travel alarm (if equipped), and all other warning devices are working properly.

Fasten the seat belt securely.

Warm up the engine and the hydraulic oil before operating the machine.

Before moving the machine, check the position of the undercarriage. The normal travel position is with the idler wheels to the front under the cab and the drive sprockets to the rear. When the undercarriage is in the reversed position, the directional controls must be operated in opposite directions.

i04159629

Work Tools

SMCS Code: 6700

Only use work tools that are recommended by Caterpillar for use on Cat machines.

Use of work tools, including buckets, which are outside of Caterpillar's recommendations or specifications for weight, dimensions, flows, pressures, and so on. may result in less-than-optimal vehicle performance, including but not limited to reductions in production, stability, reliability, and component durability. Caterpillar recommends appropriate work tools for our machines to maximize the value our customers receive from our products. Caterpillar understands that special circumstances may lead a customer to use tools outside of our specifications. In these cases, customers must be aware that such choices can reduce vehicle performance and will affect their ability to claim warranty in the event of what a customer may perceive as a premature failure.

Work tools and work tool control systems, that are compatible with your Cat machine, are required for safe machine operation and/or reliable machine operation. If you are in doubt about the compatibility of a particular work tool with your machine, consult your Cat dealer.

Make sure that all necessary guarding is in place on the host machine and on the work tool.

Keep all windows and doors closed on the host machine. A polycarbonate shield must be used when the host machine is not equipped with windows and when a work tool could throw debris.

Do not exceed the maximum operating weight that is listed on the ROPS certification.

If your machine is equipped with an extendable stick, install the transport pin when you are using the following work tools: hydraulic hammers, augers and compactors

Always wear protective glasses. Always wear the protective equipment that is recommended in the operation manual for the work tool. Wear any other protective equipment that is required for the operating environment.

To prevent personnel from being struck by flying objects, ensure that all personnel are out of the work area.

While you are performing any maintenance, any testing, or any adjustments to the work tool stay clear of the following areas: cutting edges, pinching surfaces and crushing surfaces.

Never use the work tool for a work platform.

i07199415

Assist and E-Fence

SMCS Code: 5050

⚠ WARNING

Personal Responsibility

When the Assist System is engaged, the Assist System will control various machine functions. The Assist System is not a substitute for the personal judgment of an operator for the present work site situation or work site conditions. Failure to pay attention to work site situations or work site conditions with the Assist System engaged could result in personal injury or death. Always be aware of the work site situation and work site conditions when operating the machine with the Assist System engaged.

⚠ WARNING

Be Alert

Due to system limitations with the Assist System, warnings from the Assist System may be issued late, improperly, or not at all. Failure to respond to warnings from the Assist System with appropriate action could result in personal injury or death. Always be alert when operating a machine with the Assist System engaged and be ready to intervene to prevent an accident.

Operation Guidance

- Ground personnel should maintain a safe distance from the machine. Remain out of the swing radius/ swing zone, and always check for ground personnel in the swing radius/swing zone. Do not operate with ground personnel in the swing radius/ swing zone.
- When setting height or load restrictions, make sure that any work tools that are attached are in the least favorable position.
- Check for the correct operation once the restriction has been set.
- Validate proper settings both initially and periodically during machine operation.
- Do not move the (machine) quickly when close to a restriction setting.
- Do not operate the machine in a reckless manner.
- Do not travel with the restriction set.
- Reset the load restriction if the machine is moved to a different location.
- Always check settings or reestablish desired settings after leaving the machine for any period to ensure desired performance.
- If the proper setting procedure has been followed, but the system does not appear to be functioning properly, consult your Cat dealer.

Hazard recommendations:

- Return the joysticks to the neutral position once a limit has been reached
- Operate the machine at a slow speed
- Do not travel

Lifting operations with the machine

- Ensure that Lift Mode is selected during lifting operations
- Operate the machine at a safe speed
- Take special care when traveling with a load attached
- Do not operate the machine in a reckless manner

i08481684

Operation

SMCS Code: 7000

Sound the horn and allow adequate time for bystanders to clear the area before moving the machine into a restricted visibility area. Follow local practices for your machine application. For more information refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, Restricted Visibility.

Machine Operating Temperature Range

The machine must function satisfactorily in the anticipated ambient temperature limits that are encountered during operation. The standard machine configuration is intended for use within an ambient temperature range of −18 °C (0 °F) to 43 °C (109 °F). Special configurations for different ambient temperatures may be available. Consult your Cat dealer for additional information on special configurations of your machine.

Limiting Conditions and Criteria

Limiting conditions are immediate issues with this machine that must be addressed prior to continuing operation.

The Operation and Maintenance Manual, Safety Section describes limiting condition criteria for replacing items such as safety messages, seat belt and mounting hardware, lines, tubes, hoses, battery cables and related parts, electrical wires, and repairing any fluid leak.

The Operation and Maintenance Manual, Maintenance Interval Schedule describes limiting condition criteria that require repair or replacement for items (if equipped) such as alarms, horns, braking system, steering system, and rollover protective structures.

The Operation and Maintenance Manual, Monitoring System (if equipped) provides information on limiting condition criteria, including a Warning Category 3 that requires immediate shutdown of the engine.

Critical Failures

The following table provides summary information on several limiting conditions found in this Operation and Maintenance Manual. The table provides criteria and required action for the limiting conditions listed. Each System or Component in this table, together with the respective limiting condition, describes a potential critical failure that must be addressed. Not addressing limiting conditions with required actions may, in conjunction with other factors or circumstances, result in a risk of personal injury or death. If an accident occurs, notify emergency personnel and provide location and description of accident.

Table 1

System or Component Name	Limiting Condition	Criteria for Action	Required Action
Line, tubes, and hoses	End fittings are damaged or leaking. Outer coverings are chafed or cut. Wires are exposed. Outer coverings are swelling or ballooning. Flexible parts of the hoses are kinked. Outer covers have exposed embedded armoring. End fittings are displaced.	Visible corrosion, loose, or damaged lines, tubes, or hoses. Visible fluid leaks.	Immediately repair any lines, tubes, or hoses that are corroded, loose, or damaged. Immediately repair any leaks as these may provide fuel for fires.
Electrical Wiring	Signs of fraying, abrasion, cracking, discoloration, cuts on the insulation	Visible damage to electrical wiring	Immediately replace damaged wiring
Battery cable(s)	Signs of fraying, abrasion, cracking, discoloration, cuts on the insulation of the cable, fouling, corroded terminals, damaged terminals, and loose terminals	Visible damage to battery cable(s)	Immediately replace damaged battery cables
Operator Protective Structure	Structures that are bent, cracked, or loose. Loose, missing, or damaged bolts.	Visible damage to structure. Loose, missing, or damaged bolts.	Do not operate machine with damaged structure or loose, missing, or damaged bolts. Contact your Cat dealer for inspection and repair or replacement options.
Seat Belt	Worn or damaged seat belt or mounting hardware	Visible wear or damage	Immediately replace parts that are worn or damaged.
Seat Belt	Age of seat belt	Three years after date of installation	Replace seat belt three years after date of installation
Safety Messages	Appearance of safety message	Damage to safety messages making them illegible	Replace the illustrations if illegible.
Audible Warning Device(s) (if equipped)	Sound level of audible warning	Reduced or no audible warning present	Immediately repair or replace audible warning devices not working properly.
Camera(s) (if equipped)	Dirt or debris on camera lens	Dirt or debris obstructing camera view	Clean camera before operating machine.
Cab Windows (if equipped)	Dirt, debris, or damaged windows	Dirt or debris obstructing operator visibility. Any damaged windows.	Clean windows before operating machine. Repair or replace damaged windows before operating machine.
Mirrors (if equipped)	Dirt, debris, or damaged mirror	Dirt or debris obstructing operator visibility. Any damaged mirrors.	Clean mirrors before operating machine. Repair or replace damaged mirrors before operating machine.

(continued)

(Table 1, contd)

System or Component Name	Limiting Condition	Criteria for Action	Required Action
Braking System	Inadequate braking performance	System does not pass Braking System - Test(s) included in Maintenance Section or in the Testing and Adjusting Manual	Contact your Cat dealer to inspect and, if necessary, repair the brake system.
Cooling System	The coolant temperature is too high.	Monitoring System displays Warning Category 3	Stop the engine immediately. Check the coolant level and check the radiator for debris. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, Cooling System Coolant Level - Check. Check the fan drive belts for the water pump. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, Belts - Inspect/Adjust/ Replace. Make any necessary repairs.
Engine Oil System	A problem has been detected with the engine oil pressure.	Monitoring System displays Warning Category 3	If the warning stays on during low idle, stop the engine and check the engine oil level. Perform any necessary repairs as soon as possible.
Engine system	An engine fault has been detected by the engine ECM.	Monitoring System displays Warning Category 3	Stop the engine immediately. Contact your Cat dealer for service.
Fuel System	A problem has been detected with the fuel system.	Monitoring System displays Warning Category 3	Stop the engine. Determine the cause of the fault and perform any necessary repairs.
Hydraulic Oil System	The hydraulic oil temperature is too high.	Monitoring System displays Warning Category 3	Stop the engine immediately. Check the hydraulic oil level and check the hydraulic oil cooler for debris. Perform any necessary repairs as soon as possible.
Steering System	A problem has been detected with the steering system. (If equipped with steering system monitoring.)	Monitoring System displays Warning Category 3	Move machine to a safe location and stop the engine immediately. Contact your Cat dealer to inspect and, if necessary, repair the steering system.
Overall Machine	Machine service is required.	Monitoring System displays Warning Category 3	Stop the engine immediately. Contact your Cat dealer for service.

Machine Operation

Only operate the machine while you are in a seat. The seat belt must be fastened while you operate the machine. Only operate the controls while the engine is running.

Check for proper operation of all controls and of all protective devices while you operate the machine slowly in an open area.

When the machine is moving watch the clearance of the boom. Uneven ground can cause the boom to move in all directions.

Make sure that no personnel will be endangered before you move the machine. Do not allow riders on the machine unless the machine has an additional seat with a seat belt.

Report any machine damage that was noted during machine operation. Make any necessary repairs.

Never use the work tool for a work platform.

Hold attachments approximately 40 cm (15 inches) above ground level while you drive the machine. Do not drive the machine close to an overhang, to the edge of a cliff, or to the edge of an excavation.

If the machine begins to sideslip on a grade, immediately dump the load and turn the machine downhill.

Be careful to avoid any ground condition which could cause the machine to tip. Tipping can occur when you work on hills, on banks, or on slopes. Tipping can also occur when you cross ditches, ridges, or other unexpected obstructions.

When possible, operate the machine up slopes and down slopes with the final drive sprockets facing down the slope. Avoid operating the machine across the slope. Place the heaviest end of the machine uphill when you are working on an incline.

Keep the machine under control. Do not overload the machine beyond capacity.

Avoid changing the direction of travel on a slope. Changing the direction of travel on a slope could result in tipping or side slipping of the machine.

Bring the load close to the machine before traveling any distances.

Bring the load close to the machine before swinging the load.

Lifting capacity decreases as the load is moved further from the machine.

Make sure that the towing eyes and the towing devices are adequate for your needs.

Only connect trailing equipment to a drawbar or to a hitch.

Never straddle a wire cable. Never allow other personnel to straddle a wire cable.

When you maneuver in order to connect the equipment, make sure that no personnel are between the machine and trailing equipment. Block up the hitch of the trailing equipment in order to align the equipment with the drawbar.

Check the local regulations, state codes, and/or directives of the job site for a specific minimum distance from obstacles.

Before you operate the machine, check with local utilities for the locations of underground pipes and for the locations of buried cables.

Know the maximum dimensions of your machine.

Watch the load at all times.

Do not operate the machine without the counterweight. The machine can tip when the boom is over the side.

The clamshell, the grapple, or the magnet can swing in all directions. Move the joysticks in a continuous motion. Failure to move the joysticks in a continuous motion can cause the clamshell, the grapple, or the magnet to swing into the cab or into a person in the work area. This will result in personal injury.

Certain machine front linkage combinations (boom, stick, quick coupler, work tool) can allow the work tool to contact the machine undercarriage, swing frame, boom, boom hydraulic cylinder and or the cab. Be aware of the position of the work tool while you operate the machine.

Shut down the machine until damaged or non-functioning visibility aid(s) is repaired (if applicable) or until appropriate job site organization is used to minimize hazards that are caused by any resulting restricted visibility.

Machine Operation when the Machine is not Completely Assembled

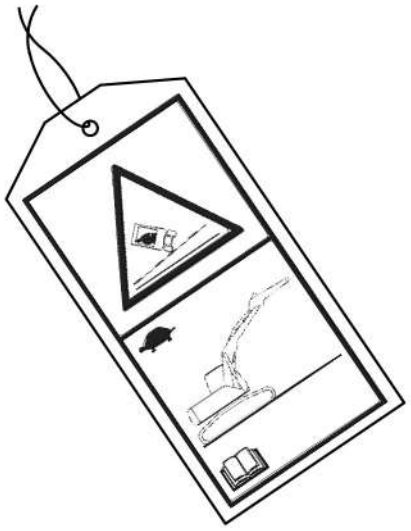


Illustration 66 g02202544

Attach the tag to the controls of the machine. When the tag is attached to the controls, operate the machine as described below.

If the machine needs to be operated without the boom, stick, and/or counterweight being installed, the machine should be operated slowly on flat, stable ground or pavement by qualified operators. Avoid any machine operations which could affect machine stability, including the swing function. The ROPS structural certification depends on the support of the boom, stick, and counterweight in the event of a machine tip over or a machine rollover incident.

i06299648

Engine Stopping

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

Do not stop the engine immediately after the machine has been operated under load. Stopping the engine immediately can cause overheating and accelerated wear of engine components.

After the machine is parked and the parking brake is engaged, allow the engine to run at low idle for 5 minutes before shutdown. Running the engine allows hot areas of the engine to cool gradually.

i08482599

Lifting Objects

SMCS Code: 7000

There may be local regulations and/or government regulations that govern the use of machines which lift heavy objects. Obey all local and government regulations.

Regional regulations may require the use of an overload warning device and boom and stick lowering control valves when used to lift objects.

If this machine is used to lift objects within Japan , Japanese regulations require the machine to be equipped with a shovel crane configuration.

Contact your Cat dealer for additional information.

i08482613

Demolition

SMCS Code: 6700

There maybe local regulations and/or government regulations that govern the use of machines which are designed and used as demolition machinery.

Note: Obey all local and government regulations.

Demolition machinery is designed for demolishing by pushing or pulling, or fragmenting. Demolition is done by crushing or shearing, buildings and/or other civil engineering structures and component parts and/or separating the resultant debris.

If this machine is used for demolition, regional regulations may require the machine to be equipped with:

- Rollover Protective Structure (ROPS, not required for demolition excavators)
- Boom Lowering Control Valve (BLCV) / Stick Lowering Control Valve (SLCV)
- Top Guard / Front Guard
- Bottom / Motor / Swivel Guard
- EN 356 class P5A front window glass
- If a roof window is used to provide visibility to the working area, then roof window shall be equipped with motorized windscreen wipers and washers.

Demolition applications may generate flying debris. Ensure that there are no personnel in the area around the machine where flying debris may travel.

Demolition applications may generate airborne dust that can be hazardous to your health. If you operate the machine in a dust generating applications, use appropriate safeguarding or adequate ventilation to minimize risk.

i07393520

Parking

SMCS Code: 7000

The hydraulic system controls remain pressurized if the accumulator is charged. This condition is true even when the engine is not running. The hydraulic control system pressure should decrease in a short time (approximately 1 minute). While the hydraulic controls maintain a charge, the hydraulic work tools and machine controls remain functional.

There can be residual pressure within the hydraulic system even when the accumulator is empty. Refer to this Operation and Maintenance Manual, “System Pressure Release” before any service is performed to the hydraulic system.

Machine movement that is sudden and unexpected will occur if any of the controls are moved. Machine movement that is sudden and unexpected, can cause personal injury or death.

Always move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position before you shut off the engine or immediately after the engine stops running.

Park the machine on a hard, level surface. If you must park the machine on a grade, chock the tracks of the machine.

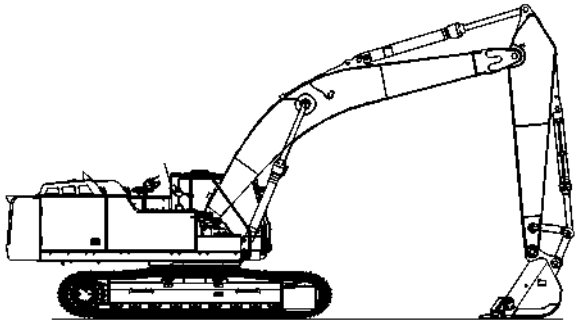


Illustration 67 g02280104

Place the machine in the servicing position.

Note: Make sure that all work tools are in the recommended servicing position before servicing the machine.

Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position.

Stop the engine.

Turn the engine start switch to the OFF position and remove the engine start switch key.

Turn the battery disconnect switch to the OFF position.

Note: Do not turn the battery disconnect switch OFF until the “Wait to Disconnect Lamp” has turned off. If the battery disconnect switch is turned off before the lamp has shut off, the DEF system will not purge. DEF could freeze and damage the pump and lines.

Remove the disconnect switch key if you do not operate the machine for an extended period. This will prevent drainage of the battery. A battery short circuit, any current draw from certain components, and vandalism can cause drainage of the battery.

Install barriers or lighting as required to prevent interference in road traffic.

Select places free of danger by flooding and other water damage.

i07746366

Slope Operation

SMCS Code: 7000

Machines that are operating safely in various applications depend on these criteria: the machine model, configuration, machine maintenance, operating speed of the machine, conditions of the terrain, fluid levels, and tire inflation pressures. The most important criteria are the skill and judgment of the operator.

A well trained operator that follows the instructions in the Operation and Maintenance Manual has the greatest impact on stability. Operator training provides a person with the following abilities: observation of working and environmental conditions, feel for the machine, identification of potential hazards and operating the machine safely by making appropriate decisions.

When you work on side hills and when you work on slopes, consider the following important points:

Speed of travel – At higher speeds, forces of inertia tend to make the machine less stable.

Roughness of terrain or surface – The machine may be less stable with uneven terrain.

Direction of travel – Avoid operating the machine across the slope. When possible, operate the machine up the slopes and operate the machine down the slopes. Place the heaviest end of the machine uphill when you are working on an incline.

Mounted equipment – Balance of the machine may be impeded by the following components: equipment that is mounted on the machine, machine configuration, weights, and counterweights.

Nature of surface – Ground that has been newly filled with earth may collapse from the weight of the machine.

Surface material – Rocks and moisture of the surface material may drastically affect the machine's traction and machine's stability. Rocky surfaces may promote side slipping of the machine.

Slippage due to excessive loads – This may cause downhill tracks or downhill tires to dig into the ground, which will increase the angle of the machine.

Width of tracks or tires – Narrower tracks or narrower tires further increase the digging into the ground which causes the machine to be less stable.

Implements attached to the drawbar – This may decrease the weight on the uphill tracks. This may also decrease the weight on the uphill tires. The decreased weight will cause the machine to be less stable.

Height of the working load of the machine – When the working loads are in higher positions, the stability of the machine is reduced.

Operated equipment – Be aware of performance features of the equipment in operation and the effects on machine stability.

Operating techniques – Keep all attachments or pulled loads low to the ground for optimum stability.

Machine systems have limitations on slopes – Slopes can affect the proper function and operation of the various machine systems. These machine systems are needed for machine control.

Note: Operators with lots of experience and proper equipment for specific applications are also required. Safe operation on steep slopes may also require special machine maintenance. Refer to Lubricant Viscosities and Refill Capacities in this manual for the proper fluid level requirements and intended machine use. Fluids must be at the correct levels to ensure that systems will operate properly on a slope.

i08229294

Equipment Lowering with Engine Stopped

SMCS Code: 7000-II

Before lowering any equipment with the engine stopped, clear the area around the equipment of all personnel. The procedure to use will vary with the type of equipment to be lowered. Keep in mind most systems use a high pressure fluid or air to raise or lower equipment. The procedure will cause high pressure air, hydraulic, or some other media to be released in order to lower the equipment. Wear appropriate personal protective equipment and follow the established procedure in the Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Equipment Lowering with Engine Stopped” in the Operation Section of the manual.

i09547400

Sound Information and Vibration Information

SMCS Code: 7000

Sound Level Information

Hearing protection may be needed when the machine is operated with an open operator station, in a noisy environment, with a cab that is not properly maintained, or when the doors and windows are open for extended periods of time.

Table 2

Sound Level		Test Method
Operator Sound Pressure Level	73 dB(A)	“ISO 6396:2008” (1)
Exterior Sound Power Level	108 dB(A)	“ISO 6395:2008” (2)

(1) The measurement was conducted at 70% of the maximum engine cooling fan speed. The sound level may vary at different engine cooling fan speeds. The measurement was conducted with the cab doors and the cab windows closed. The cab was properly installed and maintained.
(2) The measurement was conducted at 70% of the maximum engine cooling fan speed. The sound level may vary at different engine cooling fan speeds.

The sound levels listed above include both measurement uncertainty and uncertainty due to production variation. Typical measurement uncertainty for this type of machinery is 2 dB(A) in accordance with “ISO 4871”.

Sound Level Information for Machines Required by the Applicable Regional Regulations

- **European Union Countries**
- **United Kingdom**
- **Eurasian Economic Union Countries**
- **Ukraine**
- **Countries that Adopt the “EU Directives”**

The information below applies to only the machine configurations that contain regional product marking on or near the Product Identification Plate noted in the “Regional Product Marking” section of this manual.

Table 3

Declared Dynamic Operator Sound Pressure Level		
Region	**Sound Level**	**Test Method**
European Union	73 dB(A)	“ISO 6396:2008” (1)
United Kingdom	73 dB(A)	“ISO 6396:2008” (1)
Eurasian Economic Union	73 dB(A)	“ISO 6396:2008” (1)

(1) The measurement was conducted at 70% of the maximum engine cooling fan speed. The sound level may vary at different engine cooling fan speeds. The measurement was conducted with the cab doors and the cab windows closed. The cab was properly installed and maintained.

Table 4

Declared Exterior Sound Power Level		
Region	**Sound Level**	**Test Method**
European Union	108 dB(A)	“ISO 6395:1988” (1)
United Kingdom	108 dB(A)	“ISO 6395:1988” (1)
Eurasian Economic Union	108 dB(A)	“ISO 6395:2008” (1)
Ukraine	108 dB(A)	“ISO 6395:1988” (1)

(1) The measurement was conducted at 70% of the maximum engine cooling fan speed. The sound level may vary at different engine cooling fan speeds.

The declared sound levels listed above include both measurement uncertainty and uncertainty due to production variation.

The machine sound power level meets the criteria that are specified in the applicable regional regulation. For example:

- “European Directive 2000/14 EC” amended by “2005/88/EC”
- “United Kingdom 2001 No. 1701” amended by “2005 No. 3525”
- “Ukraine Technical Regulation of the Noise Emission in the Environment by Equipment for Use Outdoors”

The criteria are specified on the certificate of the conformance and the accompanying labels.

Vibration Information Applicable to Regional Regulations

- “**European Union Directive: 2002/44/EC - Physical Agents (Vibration)** ”
- “**United Kingdom: 2005 No. 1093 - The Control of Vibration at Work Regulation 2005** ”

Vibration Data for Track Type Excavator

Information Concerning Hand/Arm Vibration Level

When the machine is operated according to the intended use, the hand/arm vibration of this machine is below 2.5 meter per second squared.

Information Concerning Whole Body Vibration Level

This section provides vibration data and a method for estimating the vibration level for track type excavators.

Note: Vibration levels are influenced by many different parameters. Many items are listed below.

- Operator training, behavior, mode, and stress
- Job site organization, preparation, environment, weather, and material
- Machine type, quality of the seat, quality of the suspension system, attachments, and condition of the equipment

It is not possible to get precise vibration levels for this machine. The expected vibration levels can be estimated with the information in Table 5 to calculate the daily vibration exposure. A simple evaluation of the machine application can be used.

Estimate the vibration levels for the three vibration directions. For typical operating conditions, use the average vibration levels as the estimated level. With an experienced operator and smooth terrain, subtract the Scenario Factors from the average vibration level to obtain the estimated vibration level. For aggressive operations and severe terrain, add the Scenario Factors to the average vibration level to obtain the estimated vibration level.

Note: All vibration levels are in meter per second squared.

Table 5

"ISO Reference Table A - Equivalent vibration levels of whole body vibration emission for earthmoving equipment."							
Machine Type	**Typical Operating Activity**	**Vibration Levels**			**Scenario Factors**		
		X axis	**Y axis**	**Z axis**	**X axis**	**Y axis**	**Z axis**
Track Type Excavators	excavating	0.44	0.27	0.30	0.24	0.16	0.17
	hydraulic breaker application	0.53	0.31	0.55	0.30	0.18	0.28
	mining application	0.65	0.42	0.61	0.21	0.15	0.32
	transfer	0.48	0.32	0.79	0.19	0.20	0.23

Note: Refer to "ISO/TR 25398 Mechanical Vibration - Guideline for the assessment of exposure to whole body vibration of ride on operated earthmoving machines" for more information about vibration. This publication uses data that is measured by international institutes, organizations, and manufacturers. This document provides information about the whole body exposure of operators of earthmoving equipment. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, SEBU8257, "The European Union Physical Agents (Vibration) Directive 2002/44/EC" for more information about machine vibration levels. EAEU typical measurement uncertainty for this type of machinery is 1.25 m/s^2 (4.101 ft/s^2) in accordance with "EN 12096".

The Cat ® suspension seat meets the criteria of "ISO 7096". This represents vertical vibration level under severe operating conditions.

Guidelines for Reducing Vibration Levels on Earthmoving Equipment

Properly adjust machines. Properly maintain machines. Operate machines smoothly. Maintain the conditions of the terrain. The following guidelines can help reduce the whole body vibration level:

1. Use the right type and size of machine, equipment, and attachments.

2. Maintain machines according to the manufacturer recommendations.

a. Tire pressures

b. Brake and steering systems

c. Controls, hydraulic system, and linkages

3. Keep the terrain in good condition.

a. Remove any large rocks or obstacles.

b. Fill any ditches and holes.

c. Provide machines and schedule time to maintain the conditions of the terrain.

4. Use a seat that meets "ISO 7096". Keep the seat maintained and adjusted.

a. Adjust the seat and suspension for the weight and the size of the operator.

b. Inspect and maintain the seat suspension and adjustment mechanisms.

5. Perform the following operations smoothly.

a. Steer

b. Brake

c. Accelerate

d. Shift the gears

6. Move the attachments smoothly.

7. Adjust the machine speed and the route to minimize the vibration level.

a. Drive around obstacles and rough terrain.

b. Slow down when driving over rough terrain.

8. Minimize vibrations for a long work cycle or a long travel distance.

a. Use machines that are equipped with suspension systems.

b. Use the ride control system on track type excavators.

c. If no ride control system is available, reduce speed to prevent bounce.

d. Haul the machines between workplaces.

9. Less operator comfort may be caused by other risk factors. The following guidelines can be effective to provide better operator comfort:

a. Adjust the seat and adjust the controls to achieve good posture.

b. Adjust the mirrors to minimize twisted posture.

c. Provide breaks to reduce long periods of sitting.

d. Avoid jumping from the cab.

e. Minimize repeated handling of loads and lifting of loads.

f. Minimize any shocks and impacts during sports and leisure activities.

Sources

The vibration information and the calculation procedure are based on “ISO/TR 25398 Mechanical Vibration - Guideline for the assessment of exposure to whole body vibration of ride on operated earthmoving machines”. Harmonized data is measured by international institutes, organizations, and manufacturers.

This literature provides information about assessing the whole body vibration exposure of operators of earthmoving equipment. The method is based on measured vibration emission under real working conditions for all machines.

Check the original directive. This document summarizes part of the content of the applicable law. This document is not meant to substitute the original sources. Other parts of these documents are based on information from the United Kingdom Health and Safety Executive.

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, SEBU8257, “The European Union Physical Agents (Vibration) Directive 2002/44/EC” for more information about vibration.

Consult your local Cat ® dealer for more information about machine features that minimize vibration levels. Consult your local Cat dealer about safe machine operation.

Use the following web site to find your local dealer:

Caterpillar, Inc.
www.cat.com

i07746362

Operator Station

SMCS Code: 7300; 7301; 7325

Any modifications to the inside of the operator station should not project into the operator space or into the space for the companion seat (if equipped). The addition of a radio, fire extinguisher, and other equipment must be installed so that the defined operator space and the space for the companion seat (if equipped) is maintained. Any item that is brought into the cab should not project into the defined operator space or the space for the companion seat (if equipped). A lunch box or other loose items must be secured. Objects must not pose an impact hazard in rough terrain or in the event of a rollover.

i07746359

Guards
(Operator Protection)

SMCS Code: 7000; 7150

There are different types of guards that are used to protect the operator. The machine and the machine application determine the type of guard that should be used.

A daily inspection of the guards is required in order to check for structures that are bent, cracked, or loose. Never operate a machine with a damaged structure.

The operator becomes exposed to a hazardous situation if the machine is used improperly or if poor operating techniques are used. This situation can occur even though a machine is equipped with an appropriate protective guard. Follow the established operating procedures that are recommended for your machine.

Rollover Protective Structure (ROPS), Falling Object Protective Structure (FOPS) or Tip Over Protection Structure (TOPS)

The ROPS/FOPS Structure (if equipped) on your machine is specifically designed, tested and certified for that machine. Any alteration or any modification to the ROPS/FOPS Structure could weaken the structure. This places the operator into an unprotected environment. Modifications or attachments that cause the machine to exceed the weight that is stamped on the certification plate also place the operator into an unprotected environment. Excessive weight may inhibit the brake performance, the steering performance and the ROPS. The protection that is offered by the ROPS/FOPS Structure will be impaired if the ROPS/FOPS Structure has structural damage. Damage to the structure can be caused by an overturn, a falling object, a collision, etc.

Do not mount items (fire extinguishers, first aid kits, work lights, etc) by welding brackets to the ROPS/FOPS Structure or by drilling holes in the ROPS/FOPS Structure. Welding brackets or drilling holes in the ROPS/FOPS Structures can weaken the structures. Consult your Cat dealer for mounting guidelines.

The Tip Over Protection Structure (TOPS) is another type of guard that is used on mini hydraulic excavators. This structure protects the operator in the event of a tipover. The same guidelines for the inspection, the maintenance and the modification of the ROPS/FOPS Structure are required for the Tip Over Protection Structure.

Other Guards (If Equipped)

Protection from flying objects and/or falling objects is required for special applications. Logging applications and demolition applications are two examples that require special protection.

A front guard needs to be installed when a work tool that creates flying objects is used. Mesh front guards that are approved by Caterpillar or polycarbonate front guards that are approved by Caterpillar are available for machines with a cab or an open canopy. On machines that are equipped with cabs, the windows should also be closed. Safety glasses are recommended when flying hazards exist for machines with cabs and machines with open canopies.

If the work material extends above the cab, top guards and front guards should be used. Typical examples of this type of application are listed below:

- Demolition applications
- Rock quarries
- Forestry products

Additional guards may be required for specific applications or work tools. The Operation and Maintenance Manual for your machine or your work tool will provide specific requirements for the guards. Refer to Operation Maintenance manual, "Demolition" for additional information. Consult your Cat dealer for additional information.

Product Information Section

General Information

i07105852

Regulatory Information (Japan)

SMCS Code: 7000

Qualifications for Machine Operation

The following qualifications are required for the operation of this machine:

Excavation and Loading

Completion of the construction machines (for land leveling, hauling, loading, and excavation) operation skill training course. (Qualification by the Industrial Safety and Health Act)

Demolition

Completion of the construction machines (for demolition) operation skill training course. (Qualification by the Industrial Safety and Health Act)

Mining Jobs

Certification by the Director General or Deputy Director General of Bureau of Mine Safety after completion of the safety training course. (Qualification by the Mine Safety Act)

Crane Slinging for the Bucket with a Hook

Completion of the special slinging training for the crane for loads weighing less than 1 ton. (Qualification by the Industrial Safety and Health Act)

Trailer Transportation

In principle, this machine should be transported by a trailer. Select the appropriate trailer regarding the machine weight and measurements shown in the major specifications in the specification part of this manual. Be aware machine weight and transportation measurements differ depending on the various types of attachments.

- In the event heavy items are to be transported, observe the related laws. These laws include Road Traffic Law, Road Laws, Road Transportation Vehicle Laws, and Vehicle Restriction Laws.
- Conduct prior investigation of the road width, ground clearance of road/railway bridges, weight restrictions etc. of the planned transportation route, to confirm the viability of the transportation execution.

Load

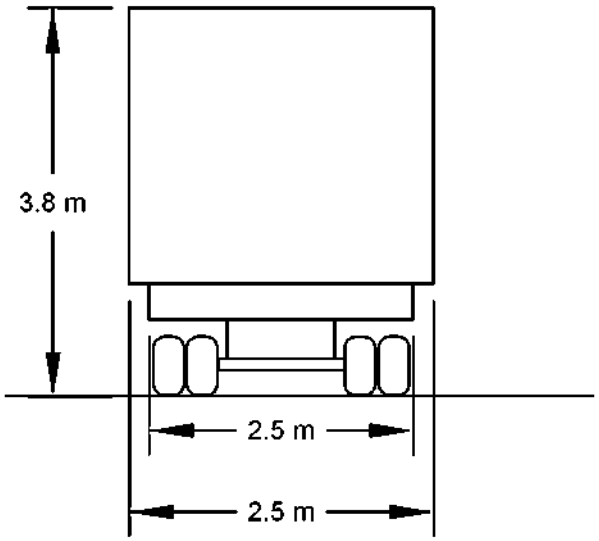


Illustration 68 g02698738

- Not more than 3.8 m (12 ft 6 inch)
- Not more than 2.5 m (8 ft 2 inch)(Safety Standard)
- Not more than 2.5 m (8 ft 2 inch) (Vehicle Restriction Laws)
- Items that protrude out are not allowed. (Government ordinance for Road Traffic Laws)

Transportation weight and measurements are restricted by the Vehicle Restriction Laws. If the actual weight/measurements exceed the limitation figures, you must submit the restriction relaxation request to the pertinent governmental agencies. For details, consult your Cat dealer.

Table 6

Total Length	Not more than 12 m (39 ft 4 inch)
Total Width (A)	Not more than 2.5 m (8 ft 2 inch)

(continued)

(Table 6, contd)

Total Height (B)	Not more than 3.8 m (12 ft 6 inch) when loaded on the trailer.
Total Weight	20 to 25 ton (depending on road, axle, and vehicle length)

Operation of Construction Equipment and the Governing Laws and Regulations

NOTICE
Various laws and regulations, including Industrial Safety and Health Act, are enforced to ensure prevention of injuries on and around construction equipment and safe and comfortable operation of equipment. Be sure to obey them.

NOTICE
The notices regarding machine operation, inspection, maintenance, and safety contained in this manual are applicable only to cases in which the machine is used for the specified jobs. It is impossible for this kind of manual to cover every kind of operation. Therefore, the content of this manual does not necessarily explain all possible cases. Be sure to pay careful attention also to the items not covered by this manual and confirm the safety before starting jobs to prevent human injury and machine damage accidents.

Qualification of Operators

Operation of construction equipment is limited to persons who have any of the following licenses by law.

Note: Employers will face imprisonment up to a maximum of 6 months or a fine of up to a maximum of five hundred thousand yen if they let unqualified personnel operate equipment. Unqualified operators will also be fined up to a maximum of five hundred thousand yen.

- One who completed an operating skill course for vehicle-type construction equipment at a registered training institution.
- One who passed the construction equipment and technologies license examination (Type 1-3) defined by the Construction Industry Law.
- One who completed an operating training course for construction equipment defined by the Vocational Training Law.
- One who took a special training (rules and skills) at a registered training institution to operate equipment weighing less than 3 tons.
- With an auto-drivers license, an operator does not need to complete an operating skill course for construction equipment to operate equipment on the roads that apply to the rules of the Road Traffic Act. However, the operator needs to complete the course to engage in snow clearing or excavating on the roads.
- The operator must be qualified under the Mine Safety Act to operate construction equipment in a mine.

Acquisition of the Qualifications

The company offers training courses for construction machine operation, in addition to other skills. For details, contact the company's dealer in your area.

Regarding machine operation qualifications, also refer to the laws related to the construction machines shown at the end of this manual.

Subsidy System

Small-to-medium-sized construction business companies are eligible to receive a subsidy for a part of training fees and wages when they have their employees attend a training course to improve skills.

Operation of Construction Equipment and the Governing Laws and Regulations

NOTICE
Information about operating skill course for vehicle-type construction equipment (for ground leveling, transporting, loading, excavating).

Industrial Safety and Health Act requires operators of construction equipment weight 3 tons and over to acquire a certificate of completion of an operating skill course. Registered with and authorized by the respective directors general of the regional labor bureaus, we offer operating skill courses for vehicle-type construction equipment and special trainings.

Request for Periodical Self-Inspection

Rules of Periodical Self-Inspection

The employer shall, as provided for by the Ordinance of the Ministry of Health, Labor and Welfare, conduct self-inspection periodically. The employer shall keep the records of the results in respect to construction equipment such as tractor shovels and power shovels, etc., specified by Cabinet Order. (from Article 45, Industrial Safe and Health Act)

Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Hygiene

Periodical self-inspections Article 167

(1) The employer shall, as regards a vehicle type construction machine, carry out self-inspections for the following matters periodically once every period within a year. However, this shall not apply to the non-use period of a vehicle type construction machine, which is not used for a period exceeding 1 year.

(2) The employer shall, as regards a vehicle type construction machine set forth in the proviso of the proceeding paragraph, carry out self-inspection for abnormalities in each part of a construction machine before resuming the operation.

Periodical self-inspections Article 168

(1) The employer shall, as regards a vehicle type construction machine, carry out self-inspections for the following matters periodically once every period within a month. However, this shall not apply to the non-use period of a vehicle type construction machine, which is not used for a period exceeding one month:

- (i) Abnormalities in a brake, a clutch, a controlling device, and working devices.
- (ii) Damage in a wire, rope, and a chain
- (iii) Damage in a bucket, a dipper, etc.

(2) The employer shall, as regards to the vehicle type construction machine set forth in the proviso of the preceding paragraph, carry out self-inspection for the matters listed in each item of the same paragraph before resuming the operation.

Record of Periodical Self-Inspections Article 169

The employer shall, when having carried out the self-inspections set forth in the preceding two Articles, record the results and retain the records for 3 years.

Specified Self-Inspection Article 169-2

The specified self-inspection pertaining to the vehicle type construction machine shall be the self-inspection (prescribed by Article 167) and carried out by qualified personnel. The employer shall, when having carried out the specified self-inspection pertaining to a vehicle type construction machine, affix an inspection sticker stating the month and year when the said specified self-inspection was carried out at a readily visible location of the said machine.

- Caterpillar Japan has a supporting program for self-inspection as a registered inspection agency. Qualified personnel and inspection equipment are available to help customers who do not conduct internal inspections or do not have time to conduct the specified self-inspections. Contact a Cat dealer near you for details.
- Maintenance and inspection record book for a record-saving purpose can be purchased at Caterpillar Japan.
- Penalty: Employer who fails to carry out self-inspections and to record the results will face a fine of up to five hundred thousand yen.

Checkup before Commencing the Work Article 170

The employer shall, when carrying out the work using a vehicle type construction machine, check functions of a brake and a clutch before commencing the work for the day.

Other Rules

Besides qualification for operating equipment and self inspections, the following obligations are set forth in the Industrial Safety and Health Act:

- To conduct health and safety training for new recruits and shop foremen.
- To appoint the operation leader or supervisor, and establish health and safety management system.
- To inform employees of a chain of command at the worksite, communication and signal rules, traveling route of equipment, speed limits, signs of restricted areas, etc. for securing safety in the workplace.

The Industrial Safety and Health Act further also set obligations related to mechanical structures and rental activities of equipment.

Safety comes before anything else. Establish a workplace where no injuries occur by observing the governing laws and by referring to this manual, specifically the descriptions on safety.

Construction Equipment and Environmental Laws

Prohibition of Emissions and Obligations to Recover Fluorocarbons

Law Concerning the Recovery and Destruction of Fluorocarbons (Enforcement date: April 1, 2015)

Being emitted into the atmosphere, Fluorocarbons, used as refrigerants of air conditioning, destroy the ozone layer and accelerate the global warming as a cause of environmental destruction. Follow the instructions below required by law when handling air conditioners to protect the global environment.

1. 1. Do not arbitrarily emit the encapsulated refrigerant installed on the product into the atmosphere.

2. 2. Recover the encapsulated refrigerant when disposing of the product.

Note: Violators of the law will face a maximum one-year imprisonment or a fine up to a maximum of five hundred thousand yen.

When you need to fill, recover a refrigerant or dispose of a product with an encapsulated refrigerant installed, please ask a filling-recovery operator registered with the government of the local prefecture as "class-1 filling-recovery operator." And carry out the simple inspection of air conditioner and keep the record.

Class-1 Specified products sold after October 1, 2015 shall have the label inside of the cab showing the type and quantity of refrigerant, GWP (Global Warming Potential), and precautions for use. (Refer to the fluorocarbon label in the OMM safety section)

Standard Certificate of Transfer

Dear Customers

Japan Construction Equipment Manufacturers Association

Standard Certificate of Transfer

Issued by the Japan Construction Equipment Manufacturers Association

Standard Certificate of Transfer issued by the Japan Construction Equipment Manufacturers Association proves the ownership of your equipment. Request us to issue the certificate as a proof of transfer of ownership.

Commercial transactions of construction equipment are generally made on a long-term installment plan basis with a special provision of reservation of ownership that the seller retains the ownership of the sold equipment until the buyer completely pays off the installments.

Ownership of some construction equipment can be proved with a vehicle inspection certificate, but the certificate is not issued for most of the equipment. Therefore, the buyer will need to present a third party with a proof of ownership of the sold equipment.

Japan Construction Equipment Manufacturers Association launched a system of standard certificate of transfer in 1971 to normalize trading in construction equipment and establishes a business practice relating to transfer of ownership. Customers are kindly requested to understand the intent of the system and request your seller to issue a certificate of transfer.

1. About the standard certificate of transfer

a. Japan Construction Equipment Manufacturers Association (hereinafter referred to as CEMA) sets the rules and form of standard certificate of transfer (hereinafter referred to as certificate of transfer), and members of the CEMA issue the certificate of transfer. A certificate of transfer proves the ownership of equipment.

2. Purpose of issuance

a. A certificate of transfer will be issued for the purpose of clarifying the ownership of equipment and preventing misconduct such as trades of stolen equipment or fraud.

3. Issuer

a. A certificate of transfer will be issued by a distributor (Primary transferer) who sells new construction equipment and is authorized by the CEMA.

4. Eligibility

a. A certificate of transfer will be issued for the equipment, which is sold by CEMA-member distributors and defined as construction equipment by the CEMA

5. Issuance

a. A certificate of transfer will be issued and directly given to a buyer upon the buyer's request when he/she buys eligible equipment from an issuer.

b. A certificate of transfer may not be issued for the equipment, which was sold as new merchandise more than 10 years ago.

c. A certificate of transfer is not permitted to substitute a vehicle inspection certificate.

6. Prohibition of reissuance

a. Certificate of transfer should be safely stored as it will not be reissued under any circumstances.

7. In case a certificate description runs out of space

a. Discretionary page/s to the certificate will be valid with a tally seal of the issuer at the joint of two pages.

Contact CEMA-member companies or distributors for more details of the system.

Industrial Safety and Health Act

Article 164 (Extracted) of Industrial Safety and Health Act (Restriction on use Other Than Main Application)

Article 164

Business Operator must not use construction machineries of vehicle type for applications other than main application of the applicable construction machineries of vehicle type such as: lifting cargos by hydraulic excavator or lifting/lowering workers using the clamshell.

[2] The previous clause will not be applied for any of the following cases:

1. In performing cargo lifting, any one of the following may be applicable.

a. Cannot be avoided due to the nature of the work or necessary in view of performing work in safe.

b. When working with attachments installed for metals of hook or shackle etc or other devices for lifting application applicable to any one of the following as implements for boom or bucket etc

- Enough strength is retained bearable for loads to be applied.
- Load lifted up is not feared to be dropped from the applicable instrument used, due to provided locking device is in use or etc.
- Load not feared of disengaging from the implement.

2. In performing work other than cargo lifting, nothing is feared to do harm to the workers.

[3] The business operator must take the following measures, in performing cargo lifting work applicable to Items 1a and 1b of Step 1 above. To prevent any danger of workers from contact with lifted cargo, drop of lifted cargo or turnover or falling down of construction machineries of vehicle type.

1. Designate one person who issues a sign as well as setting up fixed signs related to cargo lifting work, and follow his signs.

2. Perform work on a flat ground.

3. Keep any worker away from any place where is feared to cause any danger to worker due to contact with a cargo or drop of lifted cargo.

[4] Do not perform any work applying load exceeding the allowed rated max load specified according to structure or materials of the applicable construction machineries of the vehicle type.

[5] In using wire rope in slinging device, use wire rope applicable to every item of the followings.

- Safety coefficient is 6 or more. (The safety coefficient here must be the same as specified in Article 213 item 2 in Safety Rules on Crane Works (Article 34 in Ordinance of Ministry of Labor, 1972) etc. Hereinafter called as "Crane Rules")
- Among wire rope 1 strands, numbers of cut strands (other than filler) are less than 10%.
- Reduction of diameter is 7% or less than nominal diameter.
- Free from kinking.
- Free from badly collapse and corrosion.

[6] In using lifting chain as slinging device, the chain is applicable to every item of the followings.

- Safety coefficient is 5 or more.
- Elongation is 5% or less than the length when the applicable lifting chain was fabricated.
- Reduction of diameter of the cross section of link is 10% or less than diameter of cross section of the applicable link when the applicable lifting chain was manufactured.
- Free from cracks.

[7] In using those other than wire rope and lifting chain as slinging device, they must be free from bad damage and corrosion.

i09563406

Specifications

SMCS Code: 7000

Intended Use

The intended use of this machine is for excavating with a bucket or working with approved work tools. The machine should be operated with the undercarriage in a stationary position since the upper structure is normally capable of 360 degree swing with mounted equipment. This machine can be used in object handling applications that are within the lift capacity of the machine. When this machine is used in object handling applications, ensure that the machine is properly configured and operated properly. Obey any local governmental regulations and regional governmental regulations. Only lift objects from approved lifting points and with approved lifting devices.

Expected Life

The expected life, defined as total machine hours, of this machine is dependent upon many factors including the machine owner’s desire to rebuild the machine back to factory specifications. The expected life interval of this machine is 10,000 service hours. The expected life interval corresponds to the service hours to engine overhaul or replacement. Service hours to engine overhaul or replacement may vary based on overall machine duty cycle. At the expected life interval, remove the machine from operation and consult your Cat ® dealer for inspect, repair, rebuild, install remanufactured, install new components, or disposal options and to establish a new expected life interval. If a decision is made to remove this machine from service, refer to “Decommissioning and Disposal“.

The following items are required to obtain an economical expected life of this machine:

- Perform regular preventive maintenance procedures as described in the Operation and Maintenance Manual.
- Perform machine inspections as described in the Operation and Maintenance Manual and correct any problems discovered.
- Perform system testing as described in the Operation and Maintenance Manual and correct any problems discovered.
- Ensure that machine application conditions comply with Caterpillar’s recommendations.
- Ensure that the operating weight does not exceed limits set by manufacturer.

- Ensure that all frame cracks are identified, inspected, and repaired to prevent further development.

Application/Configuration Restrictions

The maximum travel operating slope for machine lubrication is 35 degrees.

Specification Data

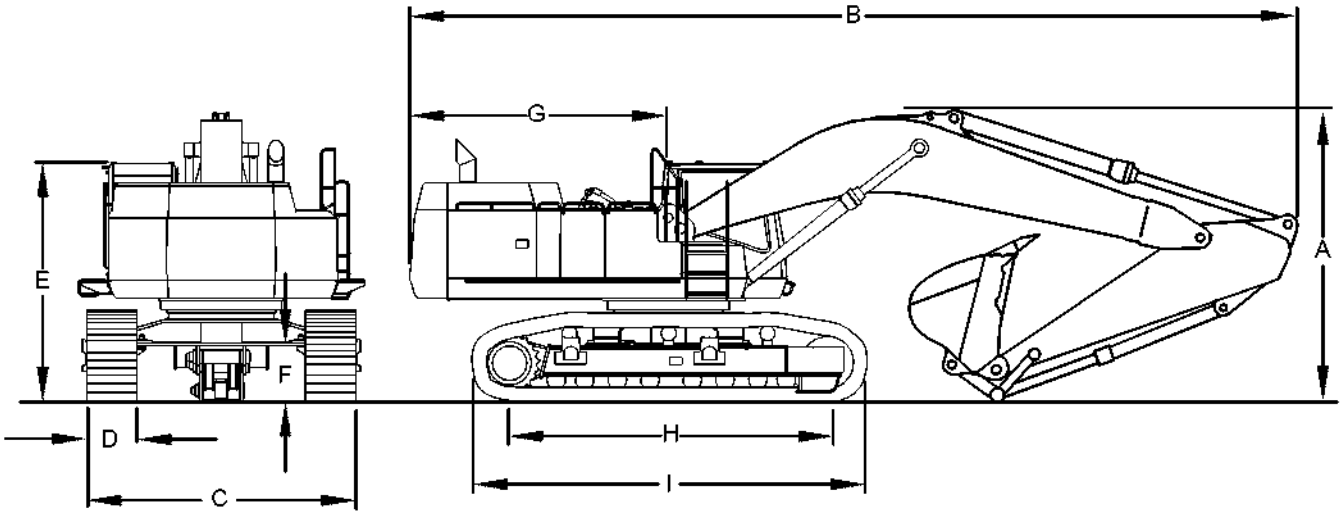


Illustration 69 g02150559

Table 7

374 Excavator				
	7.80 m (25 ft 7 inch) Reach Boom			
	4.67 m (15 ft 4 inch) Stick	4.15 m (13 ft 7 inch) Stick	3.60 m (11 ft 10 inch) Stick	2.84 m (9 ft 4 inch) Stick
Bucket	3.30 m^3 (4.32 yd^3)			
Approximate Weights	72100 kg (159000 lb)(1) 72800 kg (160500 lb)(2) 73800 kg (162700 lb)(3)	72000 kg (158700 lb)(3) 72700 kg (160200 lb)(2) 73700 kg (162500 lb)(1)	71700 kg (158200 lb)(3) 72400 kg (159700 lb)(2) 73400 kg (161900 lb)(1)	71600 kg (158200 lb)(3) 72300 kg (159700 lb)(2) 73300 kg (161900 lb)(1)
Shipping Height (A)	3.56 m (11 ft 8 inch)			
Shipping Length (B)	13.53 m (44 ft 6 inch)	13.54 m (44 ft 5 inch)	13.65 m (44 ft 9 inch)	13.59 m (44 ft 7 inch)
Shipping Width (C)	4.33 m (14 ft 3 inch)			
Track Shoe Width (D)	900 mm (36 inch) 750 mm (30 inch) 650 mm (26 inch)			
Cab Height (E)	3.55 m (11 ft 8 inch)			

(continued)

(Table 7, contd)

Ground Clearance (F)	0.78 m (2 ft 7 inch)
Tail Swing Radius (G)	4.17 m (13 ft 8 inch)
Length to Center of Rollers (H)	4.70 m (15 ft 5 inch)
Track Length (I)	5.87 m (19 ft 3 inch)
Track Gauge	3.41 m (11 ft 2 inch)(4) 2.75 m (9 ft 0 inch)(5)

(1) 650 mm (26 inch) double grouser track shoes
(2) 750 mm (30 inch) double grouser track shoes
(3) 900 mm (36 inch)double grouser track shoes
(4) Extended (working) position
(5) Retracted (shipping) position

Table 8

374 Excavator		
	7.0 m (23 ft) Mass Boom	
	3.0 m (9 ft 10 inch) Stick	**2.57 m (8 ft 5 inch) Stick**
Bucket	**4.40 m^3 (5.75 yd^3)**	
Approximate Weights	**71600 kg (158200 lb)(1)** **72300 kg (159700 lb)(2)** **73300 kg (161900 lb)(3)**	**74800 kg (164800 lb)(3)** **75400 kg (166300 lb)(2)** **76400 kg (168500 lb)(1)**
Shipping Height (A)	3.56 m (11 ft 8 inch)	
Shipping Length (B)	12.85 m (42 ft 2 inch)	12.97 m (42 ft 7 inch)
Shipping Width (C)	4.33 m (14 ft 3 inch)	
Track Shoe Width (D)	900 mm (36 inch) 750 mm (30 inch) 650 mm (26 inch)	
Cab Height (E)	3.55 m (11 ft 8 inch)	
Ground Clearance (F)	0.78 m (2 ft 7 inch)	
Tail Swing Radius (G)	4.17 m (13 ft 8 inch)	
Length to Center of Rollers (H)	4.70 m (15 ft 5 inch)	
Track Length (I)	5.87 m (19 ft 3 inch)	
Track Gauge	3.41 m (11 ft 2 inch)(4) 2.75 m (9 ft 0 inch)(5)	

(1) 650 mm (26 inch) track shoes
(2) 750 mm (30 inch) track shoes
(3) 900 mm (36 inch) track shoes
(4) Retracted (shipping) position
(5) Extended (working) position

Working Ranges

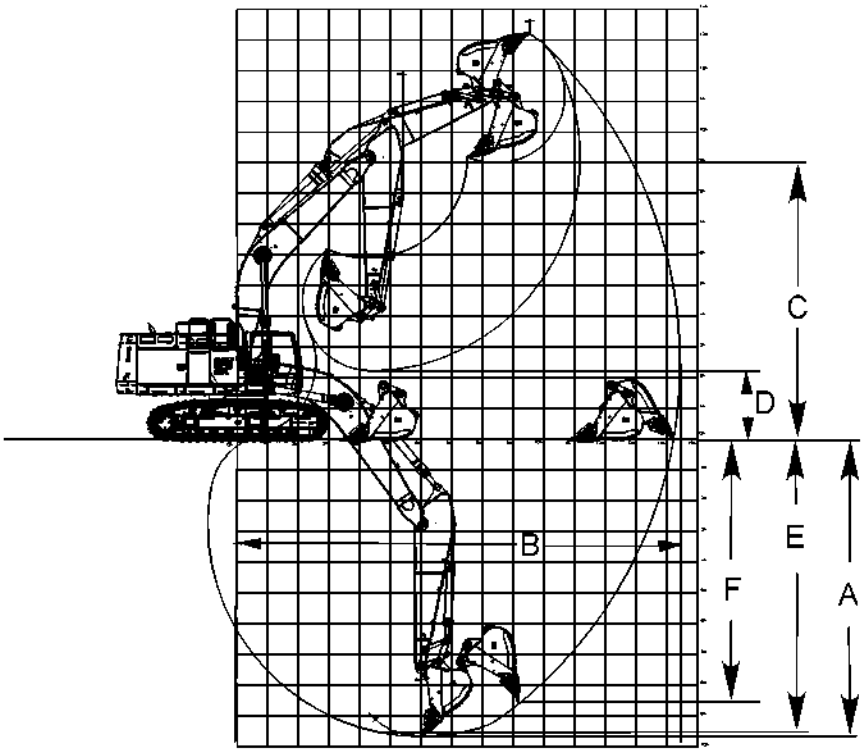


Illustration 70 g03570437

Table 9

374 Excavator				
	7.80 m (25 ft 7 inch) Reach Boom			
	4.67 m (15 ft 4 inch)Stick	**4.15 m (13 ft 7 inch) Stick**	**3.6 m (11 ft 10 inch) Stick**	**2.84 m (9 ft 4 inch) Stick**
Bucket	**3.30 m^3 (4.32 yd^3)**			
Maximum Digging Depth (A)	9.64 m (31 ft 8 inch)	9.12 (29 ft 11 inch)	8.57 (28 ft 1 inch)	7.81 (25 ft 7 inch)
Maximum Reach at Ground Level (B)	14.22 m (46 ft 8 inch)	13.68 (44 ft 11 inch)	13.16 (43 ft 2 inch)	12.58 (41 ft 1 inch)
Maximum Loading Height (C)	9.01 m (29 ft 7 inch)	8.66 m (28 ft 5 inch)	8.43 m (27 ft 5 inch)	8.26 m (27 ft 1 inch)
Minimum Loading Height (D)	2.25 m (7 ft 5 inch)	2.76 m (9 ft 1 inch)	3.31 m (10 ft 10 inch)	4.07 m (13 ft 4 inch)

(continued)

(Table 9, contd)

Maximum Cut Depth (E)(1)	9.53 m (31 ft 3 inch)	9.00 m (29 ft 6 inch)	8.44 m (27 ft 8 inch)	7.66 m (25 ft 2 inch)
Maximum Digging Depth (Vertical wall) (F)	8.30 m (27 ft 3 inch)	7.61 m (25 ft 0 inch)	6.91 m (22 ft 8 inch)	6.45 m (21 ft 2 inch)

(1) 2440 mm (8 ft) level bottom

Table 10

374 Excavator		
	7.0 m (23 ft) Mass Boom	
	3.0 m (9 ft 10 inch) Stick	**2.57 m (8 ft 5 inch) Stick**
Bucket	**4.40 m^3 (5.75 yd^3)**	
Maximum Digging Depth (A)	7.66 m (25 ft 4 inch)	7.24 m (23 ft 9 inch)
Maximum Reach at Ground Level (B)	11.86 m (38 ft 11 inch)	11.46 m (37 ft 7 inch)
Maximum Loading Height (C)	7.22 m (23 ft 8 inch)	7.05 m (23 ft 2 inch)
Minimum Loading Height (D)	3.05 m (10 ft 0 inch)	3.47 m (11 ft 5 inch)
Maximum Cut Depth (E)(1)	7.52 m (24 ft 8 inch)	7.08 m (23 ft 3 inch)
Maximum Digging Depth (Vertical wall) (F)	3.97 m (13 ft 0 inch)	3.62 m (11 ft 11 inch)

(1) 2440 mm (8 ft) level bottom

Basic Machine

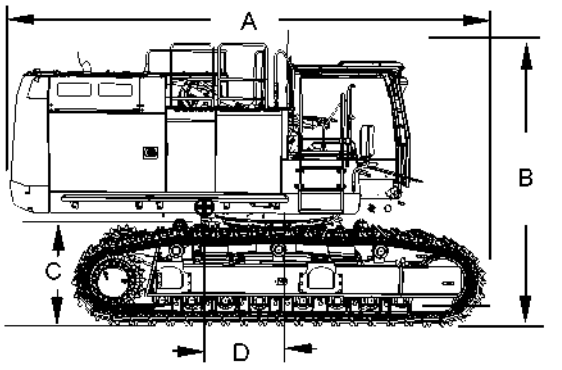


Illustration 71 g03377210

Table 11

374 Excavator(1)	
Weight	56025 kg (123514 lb)
Width	3900 mm (12 ft 10 inch)
Length (A)	7035 mm (23 ft 1 inch)
Height (B)	3560 mm (11 ft 8 inch)
Center of Gravity (C)	1506 mm (4 ft 11 inch)
Center of Gravity (D)	1131 mm (3 ft 8 inch)

(continued)

(Table 11, contd)

(1) These specifications are for machines that have 650 mm (26 inch) track shoes, a fully retracted track, and a 10 percent full fuel tank.

Carbody

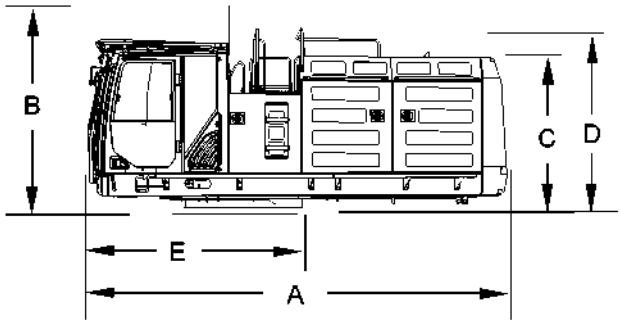


Illustration 72 g03435781

Table 12

374 Excavator	
Weight	22150 kg (48832 lb)
Length (A)	5500 mm (18 ft 1 inch)
Height (B)	2870 mm (9 ft 5 inch)

(continued)

(Table 12, contd)

374 Excavator	
Height (C)	2040 mm (6 ft 8 inch)
Height (D)	2190 mm (7 ft 2 inch)
Length (E)	2100 mm (6 ft 11 inch)

Track Frame

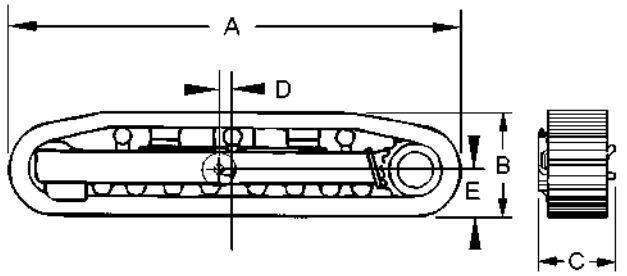


Illustration 73 g02571599

Table 13

374 Excavator(1) These specifications are for each track.	
Weight (Each Track Frame)	10280 kg (22663 lb)
Length (A)	5870 mm (19 ft 3 inch)
Height (B)	1360 mm (4 ft 6 inch)
Width (C)	1170 mm (3 ft 10 inch)
Center of Gravity (D)	24 mm (1 inch)
Center of Gravity (E)	600 mm (2 ft)

(continued)

(Table 13, contd)

(1) These specifications are for machines that have 650 mm (26 inch) triple grouser track shoes .

Counterweight

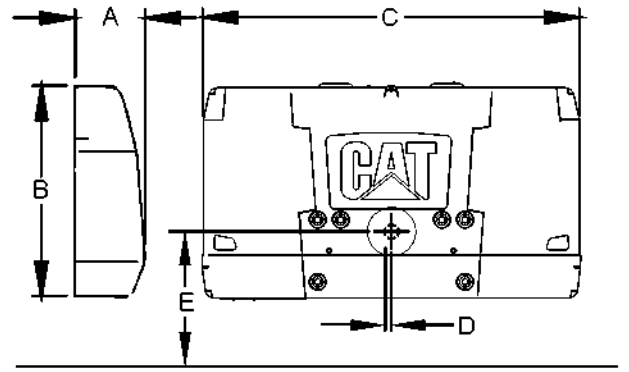


Illustration 74 g03629216

Table 14

Standard Counterweight	
Weight	11236 kg (24771 lb)
Length (A)	819 mm (2 ft 8 inch)
Height (B)	2110 mm (6 ft 11 inch)
Width (C)	3470 mm (11 ft 5 inch)

(continued)

(Table 14, contd)

Standard Counterweight	
Center of Gravity (D)	0 mm (0 inch)
Center of Gravity (E)	2378 mm (7 ft 10 inch)

Boom with Stick Cylinder

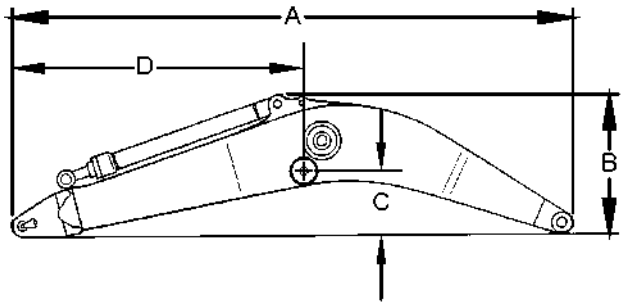


Illustration 75 g02765979

Table 15

	7.80 m (25 ft 7 inch) Reach Boom	6.59 m (21 ft 7 inch) Mass Boom
Weight	7050 kg (15542 lb)	7510 kg (16557 lb)
Width	1220 m (4 ft)	1220 m (4 ft)
Length (A)	8120 mm (26 ft 8 inch)	7320 mm (24 ft)
Height (B)	2170 mm (7 ft 1 inch)	2500 mm (8 ft 2 inch)

(continued)

(Table 15, contd)

	7.80 m (25 ft 7 inch) Reach Boom	6.59 m (21 ft 7 inch) Mass Boom
Center of Gravity (C)	930 mm (3 ft 1 inch)	1061 mm (3 ft 6 inch)
Center of Gravity (D)	3870 mm (12 ft 8 inch)	3478 mm (12 ft 5 ft)

Stick with Bucket Cylinder

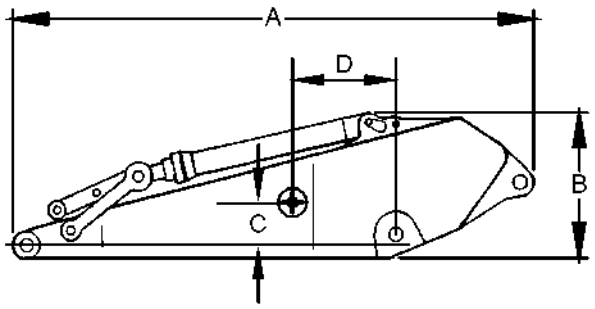


Illustration 76 g02765978

Table 16

	Long Stick (VB) for Reach Boom 4.67 m (15 ft 4 inch)	Medium Stick (VB) for Reach Boom 3.60 m (11 ft 10 inch)	Short Stick (VB) for Reach Boom 2.84 m (9 ft 4 inch)	Long Stick (WB) for Mass Boom 3.00 m (9 ft 10 inch)	Short Stick (WB) for Mass Boom 2.57 m (8 ft 5 inch)
Weight	4180 kg (9215 lb)	3790 kg (8355 lb)	3580 kg (7892 lb)	4370 kg (9634 lb)	4080 kg (8995 lb)
Width	745 mm (2 ft 5 inch)	745 mm (2 ft 5 inch)	740 mm (2 ft 5 inch)	825 mm (2 ft 5 inch)	825 mm (2 ft 5 inch)
Length (A)	6170 mm (20 ft 1 inch)	5100 mm (16 ft 9 inch)	4260 mm (14 ft)	4510 mm (14 ft 10 inch)	4180 mm (13 ft 9 inch)
Height (B)	1380 mm (4 ft 6 inch)	1370 mm (4 ft 6 inch)	1570 mm (5 ft 2 inch)	1640 mm (5 ft 5 inch)	1620 mm (5 ft 4 inch)

(continued)

(Table 16, contd)

	Long Stick (VB) for Reach Boom 4.67 m (15 ft 4 inch)	Medium Stick (VB) for Reach Boom 3.60 m (11 ft 10 inch)	Short Stick (VB) for Reach Boom 2.84 m (9 ft 4 inch)	Long Stick (WB) for Mass Boom 3.00 m (9 ft 10 inch)	Short Stick (WB) for Mass Boom 2.57 m (8 ft 5 inch)
Center of Gravity (C)	601 mm (2 ft)	601 mm (2 ft)	659 mm (2 ft 2 inch)	678 mm (2 ft 3 inch)	683 mm (2 ft 3 inch)
Center of Gravity (D)	1868 mm (6 ft 2 inch)	1307 mm (4 ft 3 inch)	814 mm (2 ft 8 inch)	1021 mm (3 ft 4 inch)	755 mm (2 ft 6 inch)

Bucket

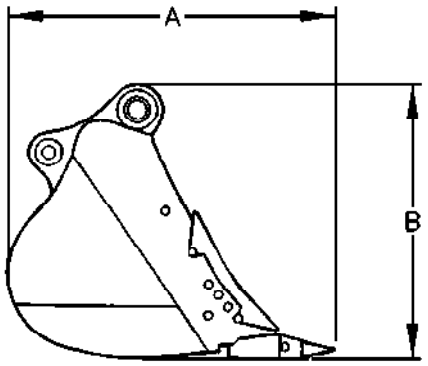


Illustration 77 g00612093

Table 17

Application	Capacity of Bucket	Bucket Family	Length (A)	Height (B)	Width	Weight
Heavy-Duty Rock	4.60 m^3 (6.00 yd^3)	WB	2600 mm (102 inch)	2070 mm (82 inch)	2220 mm (87 inch)	5444 kg (12002 lb)
Heavy-Duty	3.80 m^3 (5.00 yd^3)	VB	2490 mm (98 inch)	1935 mm (76 inch)	2000 mm (79 inch)	3923 kg (8649 lb)

Boom Cylinders

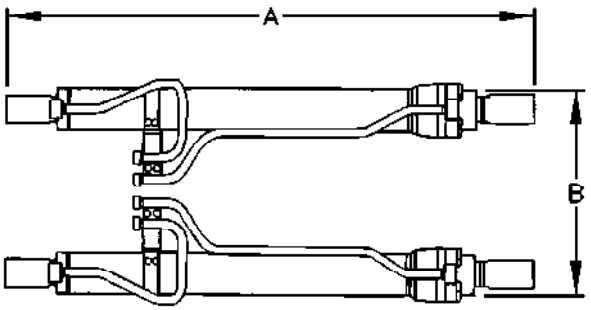


Illustration 78 g00589456

Table 18

Weight (Each Boom Cylinder)	698 kg (1539 lb)
Length (A)	2800 mm (9 ft 2 inch)
Height (B)	1300 mm (4 ft 3 inch)

Walkway

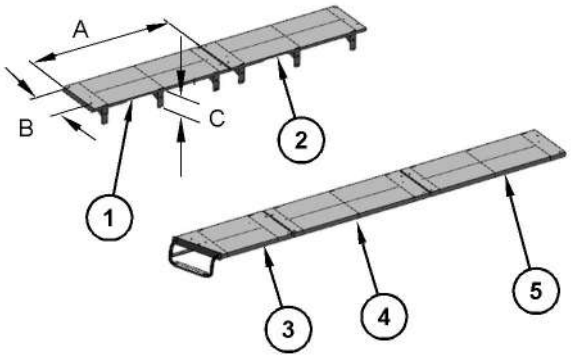


Illustration 79 g06600532

Table 19

	Walkway (1)	Walkway (2)	Walkway (3)	Walkway (4)	Walkway (5)
Weight	25 kg (55 lb)	25 kg (55 lb)	20 kg (44 lb)	25 kg (55 lb)	25 kg (55 lb)
Length (A)	1.68 m (5 ft 6 inch)	1.68 m (5 ft 6 inch)	1.2 m (3 ft 11 inch)	1.68 m (5 ft 6 inch)	1.68 m (5 ft 6 inch)
Width (B)	370 mm (1 ft 3 inch)	370 mm (1 ft 3 inch)	370 mm (1 ft 3 inch)	370 mm (1 ft 3 inch)	370 mm (1 ft 3 inch)
Height (C)	205 mm (8 inch)	205 mm (8 inch)	205 mm (8 inch)	205 mm (8 inch)	205 mm (8 inch)

Lightweight Towing

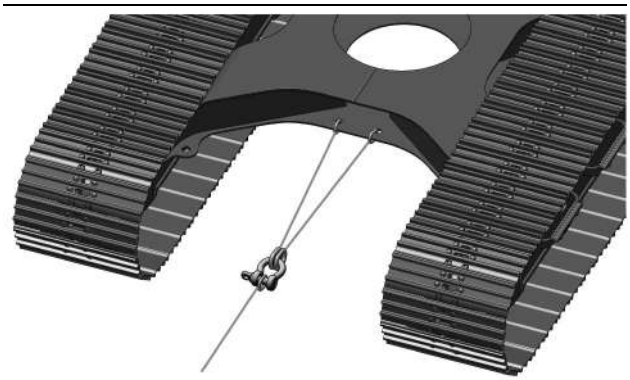


Illustration 80 g06186106

Table 20

Maximum Load	245500 N (55191 lb)

i08200982

Boom/Stick/Bucket Combinations

SMCS Code: 6000; 6700

This machine can be equipped with a large variety of boom-stick-bucket combinations in order to meet the needs of various applications.

Buckets are grouped into different families by capacity. As a rule, use a bucket with a smaller capacity when you are using a longer stick and/or a longer boom. Conversely, use a bucket with a larger capacity when you are using a shorter stick and/or a shorter boom. This rule ensures better machine stability and protection against structural machine damage.

A stick is designed to match only one specific family of buckets.

Note: The selection of a compatible boom-stick-bucket combination is a guide. Work tools, uneven ground conditions, soft ground conditions, or poor ground conditions have effects on machine performance. The operator is responsible for being aware of these effects.

Consult your Cat dealer for information on selecting the correct boom-stick-bucket combination.

The following tables show various compatible boom-stick-bucket combinations. Select an optimum combination according to the working conditions and according to the type of work that is being done.

Without Coupler

Table 21

374 (without Coupler)											
Undercarriage			**Long VG**								
Emission			**Tier 4**								
Counter Weight			**11 m ton**				**10.1 m ton with counterweight removal**				
Boom			**7800 mm (307 inch) Reach Boom**			**7000 mm (276 inch) Mass Boom**	**7800 mm (307 inch) Reach Boom**			**7000 mm (276 inch) Mass Boom**	
Stick			**Reach Boom with 3.6 m (12 ft 10 inch) Stick**	**Reach Boom with 4.15 m (14 ft 7 inch) Stick**	**Reach Boom with 4.67 m (15 ft 4 inch) Stick**	**Mass Boom with 2.57 m (8 ft 5 inch) Stick**	**Reach Boom with 3.6 m (12 ft 10 inch) Stick**	**Reach Boom with 4.15 m (14 ft 7 inch) Stick**	**Reach Boom with 4.67 m (15 ft 4 inch) Stick**	**Mass Boom with 2.57 m (8 ft 5 inch) Stick**	
Bucket											
Type	**ISOCapacity**	**Width**									
General Duty (GD)	3.80 m^3 (4.97 y^3)	2000 mm (79 inch)	(1)	(3)	(3)		(2)	(3)	(3)		
General Duty Extra Large (GD-XL)	4.60 m^3 (6.02 y^3)	2050 mm (82 inch)	(3)	(4)	(4)		(5)	(6)	(4)		
Heavy Duty (HD)	2.20 m^3 (2.88 y^3)	1300 mm (52 inch)	(7)	(4)	(4)		(4)	(4)	(4)		
	3.30 m^3 (4.32 y^3)	1750 mm (70 inch)	(8)	(1)	(1)		(9)	(1)	(1)		
	3.80 m^3 (4.97 y^3)	2000 mm (79 inch)	(3)	(3)		2000 mm (79 inch)	(3)	(3)			
Severe Duty (SD)	1.90 m^3 (2.49 y^3)	1150 mm (47 inch)	(4)	(4)	(4)		(4)	(4)	(4)		
	2.90 m^3 (3.70 y^3)	1600 mm (64 inch)	(4)	(9)	(9)		(4)	(9)	(9)		
	3.30 m^3 (4.32 y^3)	1750 mm (70 inch)	(4)	(9)	(1)		(4)	(9)	(1)		
	3.80 m^3 (4.97 y^3)	2000 mm (79 inch)	(9)	(1)	(3)		(9)	(1)	(3)		

(continued)

(Table 21, contd)

374 (without Coupler)											
Undercarriage			**Long VG**								
Emission			**Tier 4**								
Counter Weight			**11 m ton**				**10.1 m ton with counterweight removal**				
Boom			**7800 mm (307 inch) Reach Boom**			**7000 mm (276 inch) Mass Boom**	**7800 mm (307 inch) Reach Boom**			**7000 mm (276 inch) Mass Boom**	
Stick			**Reach Boom with 3.6 m (12 ft 10 inch) Stick**	**Reach Boom with 4.15 m (14 ft 7 inch) Stick**	**Reach Boom with 4.67 m (15 ft 4 inch) Stick**	**Mass Boom with 2.57 m (8 ft 5 inch) Stick**	**Reach Boom with 3.6 m (12 ft 10 inch) Stick**	**Reach Boom with 4.15 m (14 ft 7 inch) Stick**	**Reach Boom with 4.67 m (15 ft 4 inch) Stick**	**Mass Boom with 2.57 m (8 ft 5 inch) Stick**	
Bucket											
Type	**ISOCapacity**	**Width**									
Extreme Duty (XD)	3.84 m^3 (5.02 y^3)	2000 mm (79 inch)	(1)	(3)	(4)		(1)	(3)	(4)		
Severe Duty Spade (SDS)	4.10 m^3 (5.36 y^3)	1950 mm (77 inch)				(4)				(4)	
	4.40 m^3 (5.75 y^3)	2050 mm (81 inch)				(4)				(4)	
	4.60 m^3 (6.02 y^3)	2150 mm (85 inch)				(9)				(9)	
Extreme Duty Spade (XDS)	4.60 m^3 (6.02 y^3)	2150 mm (85 inch)				(1)				(1)	

(1) 1500 kg/m^3 (2500 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(2) 1500 kg/m^3 (2500 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(3) 1200 kg/m^3 (2000 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(4) 900 kg/m^3 (1500 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(5) 1200 kg/m^3 (2000 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(6) 900 kg/m^3 (1500 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(7) 2100 kg/m^3 (3500 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(8) 1800 kg/m^3 (3000 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(9) 1800 kg/m^3 (3000 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.

With Pin Grabber Coupler

Table 22

374with Pin Grabber Coupler										
Undercarriage			**Long VG**							
Emission			**Tier 4**							
Counter Weight			**11 m ton**				**10.1 m ton with counterweight removal**			
Boom			**7800 mm (307 inch) Reach Boom**			**7000 mm (276 inch) Mass Boom**	**7800 mm (307 inch) Reach Boom**			**7000 mm (276 inch) Mass Boom**
Stick			**Reach Boom with 3.6 m (12 ft 10 inch) Stick**	**Reach Boom with 4.15 m (14 ft 7 inch) Stick**	**Reach Boom with 4.67 m (15 ft 4 inch) Stick**	**Mass Boom with 2.57 m (8 ft 5 inch) Stick**	**Reach Boom with 3.6 m (12 ft 10 inch) Stick**	**Reach Boom with 4.15 m (14 ft 7 inch) Stick**	**Reach Boom with 4.67 m (15 ft 4 inch) Stick**	**Mass Boom with 2.57 m (8 ft 5 inch) Stick**
Bucket										
Type	**ISOCapacity**	**Width**								
General Duty (GD)	3.80 m^3 (4.97 y^3)	2000 mm (79 inch)	(1)	(2)	(1)		(1)	(2)	(2)	
General Duty Extra Large (GD-XL)	4.60 m^3 (6.02 y^3)	2050 mm (82 inch)	(2)	(3)	(1)		(2)	(1)	(1)	
Heavy Duty (HD)	2.20 m^3 (2.88 y^3)	1300 mm (52 inch)	(4)	(4)	(5)		(1)	(4)	(9)	
	3.30 m^3 (4.32 y^3)	1750 mm (70 inch)	(6)	(1)	(2)		(6)	(1)	(2)	
	3.80 m^3 (4.97 y^3)	2000 mm (79 inch)	(1)	(2)	(1)		(1)	(2)	(1)	

(continued)

(Table 22, contd)

374with Pin Grabber Coupler										
Undercarriage			**Long VG**							
Emission			**Tier 4**							
Counter Weight			**11 m ton**				**10.1 m ton with counterweight removal**			
Boom			**7800 mm (307 inch) Reach Boom**			**7000 mm (276 inch) Mass Boom**	**7800 mm (307 inch) Reach Boom**			**7000 mm (276 inch) Mass Boom**
Stick			**Reach Boom with 3.6 m (12 ft 10 inch) Stick**	**Reach Boom with 4.15 m (14 ft 7 inch) Stick**	**Reach Boom with 4.67 m (15 ft 4 inch) Stick**	**Mass Boom with 2.57 m (8 ft 5 inch) Stick**	**Reach Boom with 3.6 m (12 ft 10 inch) Stick**	**Reach Boom with 4.15 m (14 ft 7 inch) Stick**	**Reach Boom with 4.67 m (15 ft 4 inch) Stick**	**Mass Boom with 2.57 m (8 ft 5 inch) Stick**
Bucket										
Type	**ISOCapacity**	**Width**								
Severe Duty (SD)	1.90 m^3 (2.49 y^3)	1150 mm (47 inch)	(4)	(4)	(4)		(4)	(4)	(4)	
	2.90 m^3 (3.79 y^3)	1600 mm (64 inch)	(5)	(6)	(1)		(5)	(6)	(1)	
	3.30 m^3 (4.32 y^3)	1750 mm (70 inch)	(6)	(1)	(2)		(6)	(1)	(2)	
	3.80 m^3 (4.97 y^3)	2000 mm (79 inch)	(1)	(2)	(2)		(1)	(2)	(2)	
Extreme Duty (XD)	3.84 m^3 (5.02 y^3)	2000 mm (79 inch)	(1)	(2)	(1)		(1)	(2)	(1)	

(1) 1200 kg/m^3 (2000 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(2) 900 kg/m^3 (1500 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(3) Not Recommended
(4) 2100 kg/m^3 (3500 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(5) 1800 kg/m^3 (3000 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(6) 1500 kg/m^3 (2500 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.

Without Coupler

Table 23

374 without Coupler				
Undercarriage			**Long VG**	
Emission			**Tier 3**	
Counter Weight			**11 m ton**	
Boom			**7000 mm (276 inch) Mass Boom**	
Stick			**Mass Boom with2.57 m (8 ft 5 inch) Stick**	
Bucket				
Type	**ISOCapacity**	**Width**	**Mass Boom with 2.57 m (8 ft 5 inch) Stick**	**Mass Boom with3.0 m (10 ft 10 inch) Stick**
Severe Duty Spade (SDS)	4.10 m^3 (5.36 y^3)	1950 mm (77 inch)	(1)	(2)
	4.40 m^3 (5.75 y^3)	2050 mm (81 inch)	(1)	(1)
	4.60 m^3 (6.02 y^3)	2150 mm (85 inch)	(1)	(3)
Extreme Duty Spade (XDS)	4.60 m^3 (6.02 y^3)	2150 mm (85 inch)	(3)	(4)

(1) 2100 kg/m^3 (3500 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(2) 1800 kg/m^3 (3000 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(3) 1500 kg/m^3 (2500 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(4) 1200 kg/m^3 (2000 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.

With CW-70

Table 24

374 with CW-70				
Undercarriage			**Long VG**	
Emission			**Tier 3**	
Counter Weight			**11 m ton**	
Boom			**7000 mm (276 inch) Mass Boom**	
Stick			**Mass Boom with2.57 m (8 ft 5 inch) Stick**	
Bucket				
Type	**ISOCapacity**	**Width**	**Mass Boom with 2.57 m (8 ft 5 inch) Stick**	**Mass Boom with3.0 m (10 ft 10 inch) Stick**
Severe Duty Spade (SDS)	4.00 m^3 (5.23 y^3)	1950 mm (77 inch)	(1)	(2)
	4.40 m^3 (5.75 y^3)	2050 mm (81 inch)	(4)	(3)
Extreme Duty Spade (XDS)	4.40 m^3 (5.75 y^3)	2050 mm (81 inch)	(4)	(1)

(1) 1800 kg/m^3 (3000 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(2) 1500 kg/m^3 (2500 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(3) 1200 kg/m^3 (2000 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.

Without Coupler

Table 25

374 (without Coupler)								
Undercarriage			**Long VG**					
Emission			**Tier 4**					
Counter Weight			**11 m ton**			**10.1 m ton with counterweight removal**		
Boom			**7800 mm (307 inch) Reach Boom**	**7000 mm (276 inch) Mass Boom**		**7800 mm (307 inch) Reach Boom**	**7000 mm (276 inch) Mass Boom**	
Stick			**Reach Boom with 3.6 m (12 ft 10 inch) Stick**	**Mass Boom with2.57 m (8 ft 5 inch) Stick**	**Mass Boom with3.0 m (10 ft 10 inch) Stick**	**Reach Boom with 3.6 m (12 ft 10 inch) Stick**	**Mass Boom with2.57 m (8 ft 5 inch) Stick**	**Mass Boom with3.0 m (10 ft 10 inch) Stick**
Bucket								
Type	**ISOCapacity**	**Width**						
General Duty (GD)	3.80 m^3 (4.97 y^3)	2000 mm (79 inch)	(1)			(1)		
Heavy Duty (HD)	3.80 m^3 (4.97 y^3)	2000 mm (79 inch)	(1)			(1)		
General Duty (GD)	5.00 m^3 (6.54 y^3)	2150 mm (85 inch)		(2)	(1)		(2)	(1)
Heavy Duty (HD)	5.00 m^3 (6.54 y^3)	2150 mm (85 inch)		(2)	(1)		(2)	(1)
Severe Duty Spade (SDS)	4.10 m^3 (5.36 y^3)	1950 mm (77 inch)		(3)	(2)		(4)	(2)
	4.40 m^3 (5.75 y^3)	2050 mm (81 inch)		(4)	(2)		(4)	(2)
	4.60 m^3 (6.02 y^3)	2150 mm (85 inch)		(2)	(1)		(2)	(1)
	5.00 m^3 (6.54 y^3)	2250 mm (89 inch)		(1)	(1)		(1)	(1)
Extreme Duty Spade (XDS)	4.40 m^3 (5.75 y^3)	2050 mm (81 inch)		(2)	(1)		(2)	(1)
	4.40 m^3 (6.02 y^3)	2150 mm (85 inch)		(1)	(1)		(1)	(1)
	5.00 m^3 (6.54 y^3)	2250 mm (89 inch)		(1)	(4)		(1)	(6)

(1) 1500 kg/m^3 (2500 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(2) 1800 kg/m^3 (3000 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(3) 2100 kg/m^3 (3500 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(4) 1200 kg/m^3 (2000 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.

With Pin Grabber Coupler

Table 26

374 (with Pin Grabber Coupler)								
Undercarriage			**Long VG**					
Emission			**Tier 4**					
Counter Weight			**11 m ton**			**10.1 m ton with counterweight removal**		
Boom			**7800 mm (307 inch) Reach Boom**	**7000 mm (276 inch) Mass Boom**		**7800 mm (307 inch) Reach Boom**	**7000 mm (276 inch) Mass Boom**	
Stick			**Reach Boom with 3.6 m (12 ft 10 inch) Stick**	**Mass Boom with2.57 m (8 ft 5 inch) Stick**	**Mass Boom with3.0 m (10 ft 10 inch) Stick**	**Reach Boom with 3.6 m (12 ft 10 inch) Stick**	**Mass Boom with2.57 m (8 ft 5 inch) Stick**	**Mass Boom with3.0 m (10 ft 10 inch) Stick**
Bucket								
Type	**ISOCapacity**	**Width**						
General Duty (GD)	3.80 m^3 (4.97 y^3)	2000 mm (79 inch)	(1)			(1)		
Heavy Duty (HD)	3.80 m^3 (4.97 y^3)	2000 mm (79 inch)	(1)			(1)		

(1) 1200 kg/m^3 (2000 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.

With CW-70

Table 27

374 (with CW-70)								
Undercarriage			Long VG					
Emission			Tier 4					
Counter Weight			11 m ton			10.1 m ton with counterweight removal		
Boom			7800 mm (307 inch) Reach Boom	7000 mm (276 inch) Mass Boom		7800 mm (307 inch) Reach Boom	7000 mm (276 inch) Mass Boom	
Stick			Reach Boom with 3.6 m (12 ft 10 inch) Stick	Mass Boom with2.57 m (8 ft 5 inch) Stick	Mass Boom with3.0 m (10 ft 10 inch) Stick	Reach Boom with 3.6 m (12 ft 10 inch) Stick	Mass Boom with2.57 m (8 ft 5 inch) Stick	Mass Boom with3.0 m (10 ft 10 inch) Stick
Bucket								
Type	ISOCapacity	Width						
Severe Duty Spade (SDS)	4.10 m^3 (5.36 y^3)	1950 mm (77 inch)	(1)	(2)			(1)	(2)
	4.40 m^3 (5.75 y^3)	2050 mm (81 inch)	(2)	(2)			(2)	(2)
Extreme Duty Spade (XDS)	4.40 m^3 (5.75 y^3)	2050 mm (81 inch)	(2)	(3)			(2)	(5)

(1) 1800 kg/m^3 (3000 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(2) 1500 kg/m^3 (2500 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(3) 1200 kg/m^3 (2000 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.

Without Coupler

Table 28

374 (without Coupler)						
Undercarriage			**Long VG**			
Emission			**Tier 3**			
Counter Weight			**11 m ton**			
Boom			**7800 mm (307 inch) Reach Boom**		**7000 mm (276 inch) Mass Boom**	
Stick			**Reach Boom with 3.6 m (12 ft 10 inch) Stick**	**Reach Boom with 4.67 m (15 ft 4 inch) Stick**	**Mass Boom with2.57 m (8 ft 5 inch) Stick**	**Mass Boom with3.0 m (10 ft 10 inch) Stick**
Bucket						
Type	**ISOCapacity**	**Width**				
General Duty (GD)	3.80 m^3 (4.97 y^3)	2000 mm (79 inch)	(1)	(2)		
Heavy Duty (HD)	3.80 m^3 (4.97 y^3)	2000 mm (79 inch)	(2)	(4)		
General Duty (GD)	5.00 m^3 (6.54 y^3)	2150 mm (85 inch)			(3)	(2)
Heavy Duty (HD)	5.00 m^3 (6.54 y^3)	2150 mm (85 inch)			(2)	(2)
Severe Duty Spade (SDS)	4.10 m^3 (5.36 y^3)	1950 mm (77 inch)			(4)	(6)
	4.40 m^3 (5.75 y^3)	2050 mm (81 inch)			(6)	(6)
	4.60 m^3 (6.02 y^3)	2150 mm (85 inch)			(6)	(2)
	5.00 m^3 (6.54 y^3)	2250 mm (89 inch)			(2)	(2)
Extreme Duty Spade (XDS)	4.40 m^3 (5.75 y^3)	2050 mm (81 inch)			(6)	(2)
	4.40 m^3 (6.02 y^3)	2150 mm (85 inch)			(2)	(4)
	5.00 m^3 (6.54 y^3)	2250 mm (89 inch)			(2)	(4)

(1) 1500 kg/m^3 (2500 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(2) 1200 kg/m^3 (2000 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(3) 1800 kg/m^3 (3000 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(4) 2100 kg/m^3 (3500 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.

With CW-70

Table 29

374 (without Coupler)						
Undercarriage			**Long VG**			
Emission			**Tier 3**			
Counter Weight			**11 m ton**			
Boom			**7800 mm (307 inch) Reach Boom**		**7000 mm (276 inch) Mass Boom**	
Stick			**Reach Boom with 3.6 m (12 ft 10 inch) Stick**	**Reach Boom with 4.67 m (15 ft 4 inch) Stick**	**Mass Boom with2.57 m (8 ft 5 inch) Stick**	**Mass Boom with3.0 m (10 ft 10 inch) Stick**
Bucket						
Type	**ISOCapacity**	**Width**				
Severe Duty Spade (SDS)	4.10 m^3 (5.36 y^3)	1950 mm (77 inch)			(1)	(2)
	4.40 m^3 (5.75 y^3)	2050 mm (81 inch)			(2)	(3)
Extreme Duty Spade (XDS)	4.40 m^3 (5.75 y^3)	2050 mm (81 inch)			(2)	(5)

(1) 1800 kg/m^3 (3000 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(2) 1500 kg/m^3 (2500 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(3) 1200 kg/m^3 (2000 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.

Without Coupler

Table 30

374 (without Coupler)						
Undercarriage			**Long VG**			
Emission			**Tier 3**			
Counter Weight			**11 m ton**		**10.1 m ton (with counterweight removal)**	
Boom			**7000 mm (276 inch) Mass Boom**		**7000 mm (276 inch) Mass Boom**	
Stick			**Mass Boom with2.57 m (8 ft 5 inch) Stick**	**Mass Boom with3.0 m (10 ft 10 inch) Stick**	**Mass Boom with2.57 m (8 ft 5 inch) Stick**	**Mass Boom with3.0 m (10 ft 10 inch) Stick**
Bucket						
Type	**ISOCapacity**	**Width**				
General Duty (GD)	3.80 m^3 (4.97 y^3)	2000 mm (79 inch)				
Heavy Duty (HD)	3.80 m^3 (4.97 y^3)	2000 mm (79 inch)				
General Duty (GD)	5.00 m^3 (6.54 y^3)	2150 mm (85 inch)	(1)	(2)	(1)	(2)
Heavy Duty (HD)	5.00 m^3 (6.54 y^3)	2150 mm (85 inch)	(2)	(2)	(2)	(2)
Severe Duty Spade (SDS)	4.10 m^3 (5.36 y^3)	1950 mm (77 inch)	(3)	(1)	(3)	(1)
	4.40 m^3 (5.75 y^3)	2050 mm (81 inch)	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)
	4.60 m^3 (6.02 y^3)	2150 mm (85 inch)	(1)	(2)	(1)	(2)
	5.00 m^3 (6.54 y^3)	2250 mm (89 inch)	(2)	(2)	(2)	(2)
Extreme Duty Spade (XDS)	4.40 m^3 (5.75 y^3)	2050 mm (81 inch)	(1)	(2)	(1)	(2)
	4.40 m^3 (6.02 y^3)	2150 mm (85 inch)	(2)	(4)	(2)	(3)
	5.00 m^3 (6.54 y^3)	2250 mm (89 inch)	(2)	(4)	(2)	(4)

(1) 1800 kg/m^3 (3000 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(2) 1500 kg/m^3 (2500 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(3) 2100 kg/m^3 (3500 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(4) 1200 kg/m^3 (2000 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.

With CW-70

Table 31

374 (with CW-70)						
Undercarriage			**Long VG**			
Emission			**Tier 3**			
Counter Weight			**11 m ton**		**10.1 m ton (with counterweight removal)**	
Boom			**7000 mm (276 inch) Mass Boom**		**7000 mm (276 inch) Mass Boom**	
Stick			**Mass Boom with2.57 m (8 ft 5 inch) Stick**	**Mass Boom with3.0 m (10 ft 10 inch) Stick**	**Mass Boom with2.57 m (8 ft 5 inch) Stick**	**Mass Boom with3.0 m (10 ft 10 inch) Stick**
Bucket						
Type	**ISOCapacity**	**Width**				
Severe Duty Spade (SDS)	4.10 m^3 (5.36 y^3)	1950 mm (77 inch)	(1)	(2)	(1)	(2)
	4.40 m^3 (5.75 y^3)	2050 mm (81 inch)	(2)	(3)	(2)	(3)
Extreme Duty Spade (XDS)	4.40 m^3 (5.75 y^3)	2050 mm (81 inch)	(2)	(3)	(2)	(3)

(1) 1800 kg/m^3 (3000 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(2) 1500 kg/m^3 (2500 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(3) 1200 kg/m^3 (2000 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.

Without Coupler

Table 32

374 (without Coupler)				
Undercarriage			**Long VG**	
Emission			**Tier 3**	
Counter Weight			**11 m ton**	
Boom			**7000 mm (276 inch) Mass Boom**	
Stick			**Mass Boom with 2.57 m (8 ft 5 inch) Stick**	**Mass Boom with3.0 m (10 ft 10 inch) Stick**
Bucket				
Type	**ISOCapacity**	**Width**		
Severe Duty Spade (SDS)	4.10 m^3 (5.36 y^3)	1950 mm (77 inch)	(1)	(2)
	4.40 m^3 (5.75 y^3)	2050 mm (81 inch)	(1)	(1)
	4.60 m^3 (6.02 y^3)	2150 mm (85 inch)	(1)	(3)
	4.60 m^3 (6.02 y^3)	2200 mm (87 inch)	(1)	(2)
	5.00 m^3 (6.54 y^3)	2250 mm (89 inch)	(2)	(2)
Extreme Duty Spade (XDS)	4.40 m^3 (5.75 y^3)	2050 mm (81 inch)	(1)	(2)
	4.40 m^3 (5.75 y^3)	2200 mm (87 inch)	(1)	(2)
	4.60 m^3 (6.02 y^3)	2150 mm (85 inch)	(2)	(3)
	5.00 m^3 (6.54 y^3)	2250 mm (89 inch)	(2)	(3)
Extreme Duty Spade (XDS)	4.60 m^3 (6.02 y^3)	2150 mm (85 inch)	(2)	(4)

(1) 2100 kg/m^3 (3500 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(2) 1800 kg/m^3 (3000 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(3) 1500 kg/m^3 (2500 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(4) 1200 kg/m^3 (2000 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.

Without Coupler

Table 33

374 (without Coupler)				
Undercarriage			**Long VG**	
Emission			**Tier 3**	
Counter Weight			**11 m ton**	
Boom			**7800 mm (307 inch) Reach Boom**	**7000 mm (276 inch) Mass Boom**
Stick			**Reach Boom with 2.84 m (9 ft 4 inch) Stick**	**Mass Boom with 2.57 m (8 ft 5 inch) Stick**
Bucket				
Type	**ISOCapacity**	**Width**		
Severe Duty (SD)	3.00 m^3 (3.92 y^3)	1950 mm (77 inch)	(1)	
Severe Duty Spade (SDS)	4.60 m^3 (6.02 y^3)	2200 mm (87 inch)		(2)
	5.00 m^3 (6.54 y^3)	2250 mm (89 inch)		(3)
Extreme Duty Spade (XDS)	4.40 m^3 (5.75 y^3)	2200 mm (87 inch)		(2)

(1) 2100 kg/m^3 (3500 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(2) 1800 kg/m^3 (3000 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(3) 1500 kg/m^3 (2500 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.

Without Coupler

Table 34

374 (without Coupler)				
Undercarriage			**Long VG**	
Emission			**Tier 3**	
Counter Weight			**11 m ton**	
Boom			**7800 mm (307 inch) Reach Boom**	**7000 mm (276 inch) Mass Boom**
Stick			**Reach Boom with 2.84 m (9 ft 4 inch) Stick**	**Mass Boom with 2.57 m (8 ft 5 inch) Stick**
Bucket				
Type	**ISOCapacity**	**Width**		
Severe Duty (SD)	3.00 m^3 (3.92 y^3)	1950 mm (77 inch)	(1)	
Severe Duty Spade (SDS)	4.60 m^3 (6.02 y^3)	2200 mm (87 inch)		(2)
	5.00 m^3 (6.54 y^3)	2250 mm (89 inch)		(3)
Extreme Duty Spade (XDS)	4.40 m^3 (5.75 y^3)	2200 mm (87 inch)		(4)

(1) 2100 kg/m^3 (3500 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(2) 1800 kg/m^3 (3000 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(3) 1500 kg/m^3 (2500 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.

Without Coupler

Table 35

374 (without Coupler)				
Undercarriage			**Long VG**	
Emission			**Tier 3**	
Counter Weight			**11 m ton**	
Boom			**7800 mm (307 inch) Reach Boom**	**7000 mm (276 inch) Mass Boom**
Stick			**Reach Boom with 3.6 m (12 ft 10 inch) Stick**	**Mass Boom with 2.57 m (8 ft 5 inch) Stick**
Bucket				
Type	**ISOCapacity**	**Width**		
Severe Duty (SD)	3.00 m^3 (3.92 y^3)	1950 mm (77 inch)	(1)	
Severe Duty Spade (SDS)	4.60 m^3 (6.02 y^3)	2200 mm (87 inch)		(2)
	5.00 m^3 (6.54 y^3)	2250 mm (89 inch)		(2)
Extreme Duty Spade (XDS)	4.40 m^3 (5.75 y^3)	2200 mm (87 inch)		(2)

(1) 2100 kg/m^3 (3500 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(2) 1500 kg/m^3 (2500 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.

Without Coupler

Table 36

374 (without Coupler)						
Undercarriage				**Long VG**		
Emission				**Tier 4**		
Counter Weight				**11 m ton**		
Boom			**7800 mm (307 inch) Reach Boom**			**7000 mm (276 inch) Mass Boom**
Stick			**Reach Boom with2.84 m (9 ft 4 inch) Stick**	**Reach Boom with3.6 m (12 ft 10 inch) Stick**	**Reach Boom with4.67 m (15 ft 4 inch) Stick**	**Mass Boom with3.0 m (10 ft 10 inch) Stick**
Bucket						
Type	**ISOCapacity**	**Width**				
Severe Duty (SD)	2.90 m^3 (3.79 y^3)	1600 mm (64 inch)	(1)	(1)	(2)	
	3.30 m^3 (4.32 y^3)	1750 mm (70 inch)	(1)	(1)	(3)	
	3.80 m^3 (4.97 y^3)	2000 mm (79 inch)	(1)	(2)	(4)	
Severe Duty Spade (SDS)	4.60 m^3 (6.02 y^3)	2150 mm (85 inch)				(2)
	4.60 m^3 (6.02 y^3)	2200 mm (87 inch)				(2)
Extreme Duty Spade (XDS)	4.40 m^3 (5.75 y^3)	2050 mm (81 inch)				(2)
	4.60 m^3 (6.02 y^3)	2150 mm (85 inch)				(3)

(1) 2100 kg/m^3 (3500 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(2) 1800 kg/m^3 (3000 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(3) 1500 kg/m^3 (2500 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(4) 1200 kg/m^3 (2000 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.

With Pin Grabber Coupler

Table 37

374 (with Pin Grabber Coupler)						
Undercarriage				**Long VG**		
Emission				**Tier 4**		
Counter Weight				**11 m ton**		
Boom			**7800 mm (307 inch) Reach Boom**			**7000 mm (276 inch) Mass Boom**
Stick			**Reach Boom with2.84 m (9 ft 4 inch) Stick**	**Reach Boom with3.6 m (12 ft 10 inch) Stick**	**Reach Boom with4.67 m (15 ft 4 inch) Stick**	**Mass Boom with3.0 m (10 ft 10 inch) Stick**
Bucket						
Type	**ISOCapacity**	**Width**				
Severe Duty (SD)	2.90 m^3 (3.79 y^3)	1600 mm (64 inch)	(1)	(2)	(3)	
	3.30 m^3 (4.32 y^3)	1750 mm (70 inch)	(1)	(4)	(5)	
	3.80 m^3 (4.97 y^3)	2000 mm (79 inch)	(4)	(3)	(5)	

(1) 2100 kg/m^3 (3500 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(2) 1800 kg/m^3 (3000 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(3) 1200 kg/m^3 (2000 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(4) 1500 kg/m^3 (2500 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(5) 900 kg/m^3 (1500 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.

Without Coupler

Table 38

374 (without Coupler)				
Undercarriage			**Long VG**	
Emission			**Tier 4**	
Counter Weight			**11 m ton**	
Boom			**7800 mm (307 inch) Reach Boom**	**7000 mm (276 inch) Mass Boom**
Stick			**Reach Boom with 3.6 m (12 ft 10 inch) Stick**	**Mass Boom with3.0 m (10 ft 10 inch) Stick**
Bucket				
Type	**ISOCapacity**	**Width**		
Severe Duty (SD)	2.50 m^3 (3.27 y^3)	1650 mm (65 inch)	(1)	
	3.00 m^3 (3.92 y^3)	1950 mm (77 inch)	(3)	
	3.30 m^3 (4.32 y^3)	1750 mm (70 inch)	(3)	
Severe Duty (SD)	4.10 m^3 (5.36 y^3)	1950 mm (77 inch)		(2)
Extreme Duty (XD)	4.40 m^3 (5.75 y^3)	2050 mm (81 inch)		(3)

(1) 2100 kg/m^3 (3500 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(2) 1800 kg/m^3 (3000 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.
(3) 1500 kg/m^3 (2500 lb/yd^3) is the maximum density of material.

i08505000

Lifting Capacities

SMCS Code: 7000

WARNING

Failure to comply to the rated load can cause possible personal injury or property damage. This includes the risk of unintended boom lowering. Review the rated load of a particular work tool before performing any operation. Make adjustments to the rated load as necessary for non-standard configurations.

There may be local regulations and/or government regulations that govern the use of excavators which lift heavy objects. Obey all local and government regulations.

Lifting capacities should be used as a guide. Work tools, uneven ground conditions, soft ground conditions, or poor ground conditions have effects on lifting capacities. The operator is responsible for being aware of these effects.

The lifting capacities are defined by “ISO 10567 2007”. The lifting capacities are defined as the lower value of 75% of the static tipping capacity or 87% of the hydraulic lift capacity.

Note: Lifting capacities are based upon a standard machine with the following conditions:

- Lift point: Stick nose without bucket
- Lubricants full
- Fuel tank full
- Steel track
- Complete cab with a 75 kg (165 lb) operator

Lifting capacities will vary with different work tools and attachments. The weight of a work tool attachment must be subtracted from the lift capacity. Consult your Cat ® dealer regarding the lifting capacities for specific work tools and attachments.

This machine may be equipped with various sticks. Lifting capacities may vary between the different sticks. Measure the distance on the stick between the boom hinge pin and the work tool hinge pin. This distance will inform you of the size of the stick that is equipped on the machine.

Use the lifting eye that is provided on the stick nose in order to lift objects. When the lifting eye is used, the connection must be made with a sling or shackle.

Note: Japan regulations require a shovel crane configuration in order to lift certain objects. A shovel crane has a rated load capacity, therefore, the lift capacities discussed below do not apply to a shovel crane configuration. Contact your Cat dealer for additional information.

Note: Regional regulations may require the use of an overload warning device and boom and stick lowering control valves during object handling applications.

Contact your Cat dealer for additional information.

Symbols Found in the Lifting Capacity Charts

Below are symbols that are commonly found on lifting capacity charts for track excavators.

Note: Depending on the machine configuration, some symbols may not be used.

(mm)
(inch) **Measurements are provided in millimeters and inches**

Lift Capacities are provided in kilograms and pounds

* **Load is limited by hydraulic lifting capacity rather than by a tipping load**

Lift point radius

Lift point height

Lifting capacity over the front of the machine

Lifting capacity over the side of the machine

Heavy Lift ON

Reach Boom

Reach Boom with a 7800 mm (307 inch) Boom and 4670 mm (184 inch) Stick

(mm) (ft'inch")	1500 5'0"		3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"		10500 35'0"		12000 40'0"				
kg / Lb																			(mm) (ft'inch")
10500											* 12350	* 12350					* 11400	* 11400	9210
35'0"																	* 25300	* 25300	29'8"
9000											* 13150	* 13150					* 10750	* 10750	10330
30'0"											* 28950	* 28950					* 23750	* 23750	33'6"
7500											* 13500	* 13500	* 12950	11800			* 10450	* 10450	11140
25'0"											* 29450	* 29450	* 28050	25300			* 23050	* 23050	36'4"
6000											* 14250	* 14250	* 13250	11600			* 10400	9550	11700
20'0"											* 31000	* 31000	* 28950	24900			* 22900	21150	38'3"
4500					* 28050	* 28050	* 21150	* 21150	* 17500	* 17500	* 15300	14450	* 13800	11300	* 10950	9000	* 10550	8900	12050
15'0"							* 45600	* 45600	* 37900	* 37900	* 33200	31150	* 30050	24250			* 23200	19700	39'5"
3000							* 24400	* 24400	* 19400	18250	* 16400	13850	* 14450	10950	12150	8800	* 10900	8550	12200
10'0"							* 52650	* 52650	* 41950	39300	* 35550	29850	* 31350	23500	* 24000	18850	* 23950	18850	40'0"
1500							* 26850	23950	* 20950	17350	* 17350	13300	14700	10600	12000	8600	* 11500	8450	12160
5'0"							* 58050	51650	* 45300	37350	* 37600	28650	31600	22750			* 25250	18600	39'10"
0					* 18250	* 18250	* 28050	23050	* 21850	16700	* 17950	12850	14400	10300			11950	8550	11930
0					* 42150	* 42150	* 60750	49550	* 47350	35900	* 38900	27700	31000	22200			26300	18850	39'1"
-1500			* 13200	* 13200	* 24000	* 24000	* 28000	22600	* 22050	16300	17750	12600	14200	10150			12550	8950	11500
-5'0"			* 29800	* 29800	* 54900	* 54900	* 60650	48550	* 47700	35050	38250	27100	30650	21850			27600	19750	37'8"
-3000	* 16250	* 16250	* 20800	* 20800	* 32550	* 32550	* 26750	22500	* 21300	16150	* 17350	12500	* 14050	10150			* 13200	9750	10850
-10'0"	* 36350	* 36350	* 46950	* 46950	* 74400	* 74400	* 57900	48350	* 46050	34800	* 37400	26950	* 29900	21900			* 29050	21550	35'5"
-4500			* 30050	* 30050	* 30750	* 30750	* 24200	22700	* 19400	16250	* 15500	12650					* 13000	11150	9920
-15'0"			* 68000	* 68000	* 66500	* 66500	* 52250	48800	* 41750	35050	* 33000	27250					* 28550	24750	32'4"
-6000			* 31350	* 31350	* 24850	* 24850	* 19900	* 19900	* 15700	* 15700							* 12250	* 12250	8640
-20'0"			* 67000	* 67000	* 53150	* 53150	* 42450	* 42450	* 33050	* 33050							* 26750	* 26750	27'11"

Illustration 81 g06585783

Lift Chart Above: 374, Reach boom with a 7800 mm (307 inch) boom and 4670 mm (184 inch) stick, 900 mm (35 inch) DG track shoes and Heavy lift function OFF.

(mm) (ft'inch")	1500 5'0"		3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"		10500 35'0"		12000 40'0"				
+ℓ																			(mm) (ft'inch")
10500 35'0"											* 12750 * 26050	* 12750 * 26050					* 11750 * 26050	* 11750 * 26050	9210 29'8"
9000 30'0"											* 13600 * 29950	* 13600 * 29950					* 11050 * 24450	* 11050 * 24450	10330 33'6"
7500 25'0"											* 13950 * 30500	* 13950 * 30500	* 13400 * 28900	11800 25300			* 10750 * 23750	10550 23500	11140 36'4"
6000 20'0"											* 14750 * 32100	* 14750 * 32100	* 13750 * 30000	11600 24900			* 10700 * 23600	9550 21150	11700 38'3"
4500 15'0"					* 29000	* 29000	* 21900 * 47150	* 21900 * 47150	* 18100 * 39250	* 18100 * 39250	* 15850 * 34350	14450 31150	* 14300 * 31150	11300 24250	* 11300	9000	* 10850 * 23900	8900 19700	12050 39'5"
3000 10'0"							* 25250 * 54500	* 25250 * 54500	* 20050 * 43400	18250 39300	* 17000 * 36800	13850 29850	* 14950 32350	10950 23500	12150 * 24750	8800 18850	* 11250 * 24700	8550 18850	12200 40'0"
1500 5'0"							* 27800 * 60100	23950 51650	* 21700 * 46900	17350 37350	* 18000 * 38950	13300 28650	14700 31600	10600 22750	12000	8600	11750 25850	8450 18600	12160 39'10"
0 0					* 18800 * 43350	* 18800 * 43350	* 29050 * 62900	23050 49550	* 22650 * 49050	16700 35900	18050 38900	12850 27700	14400 31000	10300 22200			11950 26300	8550 18850	11930 39'1"
-1500 -5'0"			* 13600 * 30700	* 13600 * 30700	* 24700 * 56450	* 24700 * 56450	* 29000 * 62850	22600 48550	* 22850 * 49450	16300 35050	17750 38250	12600 27100	14200 30650	10150 21850			12550 27600	8950 19750	11500 37'8"
-3000 -10'0"	* 16700 * 37400	* 16700 * 37400	* 21400 * 48300	* 21400 * 48300	* 33450 * 76450	* 33450 * 76450	* 27750 * 60000	22500 48350	* 22100 * 47750	16150 34800	17650 38050	12500 26950	14250 30700	10150 21900			13650 30150	9750 21550	10850 35'5"
-4500 -15'0"			* 30900 * 69950	* 30900 * 69950	* 31900 * 68950	* 31900 * 68950	* 25100 * 54200	22700 48800	* 20150 * 43300	16250 35050	* 16100 * 34300	12650 27250					* 13500 * 29650	11150 24750	9920 32'4"
-6000 -20'0"			* 32600 * 69700	* 32600 * 69700	* 25800 * 55250	* 25800 * 55250	* 20700 * 44100	* 20700 * 44100	* 16300 * 34400	* 16300 * 34400							* 12750 * 27850	* 12750 * 27850	8640 27'11"

Illustration 82 g06585785

Lift Chart Above: 374, Reach boom with a 7800 mm (307 inch) boom and 4670 mm (184 inch) stick, 900 mm (35 inch) DG track shoes and Heavy lift function ON.

(mm) (ft'inch")	1500 5'0"		3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"		10500 35'0"		12000 40'0"				
																			(mm) (ft'inch")
10500 35'0"											* 12350 * 12350						* 11400 * 25300	* 11400 * 25300	9210 29'8"
9000 30'0"											* 13150 * 28950	* 13150 * 28950					* 10750 * 23750	* 10750 * 23750	10330 33'6"
7500 25'0"											* 13500 * 29450	* 13500 * 29450	* 12950 * 28050	11650 24950			* 10450 * 23050	10400 * 23050	11140 36'4"
6000 20'0"											* 14250 * 31000	* 14250 * 31000	* 13250 * 28950	11450 24550			* 10400 * 22900	9400 20850	11700 38'3"
4500 15'0"					* 28050	* 28050	* 21150 * 45600	* 21150 * 45600	* 17500 * 37900	* 17500 * 37900	* 15300 * 33200	14300 30750	* 13800 * 30050	11150 23900	* 10950	8850	* 10550 * 23200	8800 19400	12050 39'5"
3000 10'0"							* 24400 * 52650	* 24400 * 52650	* 19400 * 41950	18000 38750	* 16400 * 35550	13650 29450	* 14450 * 31350	10750 23150	12000 * 24000	8650 18550	* 10900 * 23950	8450 18550	12200 40'0"
1500 5'0"							* 26850 * 58050	23650 50900	* 20950 * 45300	17100 36800	* 17350 * 37600	13100 28250	14450 31100	10450 22400	11800	8500	* 11500 * 25250	8300 18300	12160 39'10"
0 0					* 18250 * 42150	* 18250 * 42150	* 28050 * 60750	22700 48850	* 21850 * 47350	16450 35400	17800 38300	12650 27300	14200 30500	10150 21850			11750 25900	8450 18550	11930 39'1"
-1500 -5'0"			* 13200 * 29800	* 13200 * 29800	* 24000 * 54900	* 24000 * 54900	* 28000 * 60650	22250 47850	* 22050 * 47700	16050 34550	17500 37650	12400 26700	14000 30150	10000 21500			12350 27200	8850 19450	11500 37'8"
-3000 -10'0"	* 16250 * 36350	* 16250 * 36350	* 20800 * 46950	* 20800 * 46950	* 32550 * 74400	* 32550 * 74400	* 26750 * 57900	22150 47650	* 21300 * 46050	15900 34250	* 17350 * 37400	12300 26500	14000 * 29900	10000 21550			* 13200 * 29050	9600 21200	10850 35'5"
-4500 -15'0"			* 30050 * 68000	* 30050 * 68000	* 30750 * 66500	* 30750 * 66500	* 24200 * 52250	22350 48100	* 19400 * 41750	16000 34550	* 15500 * 33000	12450 26850					* 13000 * 28550	11000 24400	9920 32'4"
-6000 -20'0"			* 31350 * 67000	* 31350 * 67000	* 24850 * 53150	* 24850 * 53150	* 19900 * 42450	* 19900 * 42450	* 15700 * 33050	* 15700 * 33050							* 12250 * 26750	* 12250 * 26750	8640 27'11"

Illustration 83 g06585786

Lift Chart Above: 374, Reach boom with a 7800 mm (307 inch) boom and 4670 mm (184 inch) stick, 900 mm (35 inch) DG track shoes and Heavy lift function OFF.

(mm) (ft'inch")	1500 5'0"		3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"		10500 35'0"		12000 40'0"				
+2																			(mm) (ft'inch")
10500 35'0"											* 12750 	* 12750 					* 11750 * 26050	* 11750 * 26050	9210 29'8"
9000 30'0"											* 13600 * 29950	* 13600 * 29950					* 11050 * 24450	* 11050 * 24450	10330 33'6"
7500 25'0"											* 13950 * 30500	* 13950 * 30500	* 13400 * 28900	11650 24950			* 10750 * 23750	10400 23150	11140 36'4"
6000 20'0"											* 14750 * 32100	* 14750 31900	* 13750 * 30000	11450 24550			* 10700 * 23600	9400 20850	11700 38'3"
4500 15'0"					* 29000 	* 29000 	* 21900 * 47150	* 21900 * 47150	* 18100 * 39250	* 18100 * 39250	* 15850 * 34350	14300 30750	* 14300 * 31150	11150 23900	* 11300 	8850 	* 10850 * 23900	8800 19400	12050 39'5"
3000 10'0"							* 25250 * 54500	25150 54150	* 20050 * 43400	18000 38750	* 17000 * 36800	13650 29450	14850 31900	10750 23150	12000 * 24750	8650 18550	* 11250 * 24700	8450 18550	12200 40'0"
1500 5'0"							* 27800 * 60100	23650 50900	* 21700 * 46900	17100 36800	* 18000 * 38950	13100 28250	14450 31100	10450 22400	11800 	8500 	11550 25450	8300 18300	12160 39'10"
0 0					* 18800 * 43350	* 18800 * 43350	* 29050 * 62900	22700 48850	* 22650 * 49050	16450 35400	17800 38300	12650 27300	14200 30500	10150 21850			11750 25900	8450 18550	11930 39'1"
-1500 -5'0"			* 13600 * 30700	* 13600 * 30700	* 24700 * 56450	* 24700 * 56450	* 29000 * 62850	22250 47850	* 22850 * 49450	16050 34550	17500 37650	12400 26700	14000 30150	10000 21500			12350 27200	8850 19450	11500 37'8"
-3000 -10'0"	* 16700 * 37400	* 16700 * 37400	* 21400 * 48300	* 21400 * 48300	* 33450 * 76450	* 33450 76350	* 27750 * 60000	22150 47650	* 22100 * 47750	15900 34250	17400 37450	12300 26500	14000 30200	10000 21550			13400 29650	9600 21200	10850 35'5"
-4500 -15'0"			* 30900 * 69950	* 30900 * 69950	* 31900 * 68950	* 31900 * 68950	* 25100 * 54200	22350 48100	* 20150 * 43300	16000 34550	* 16100 * 34300	12450 26850					* 13500 * 29650	11000 24400	9920 32'4"
-6000 -20'0"			* 32600 * 69700	* 32600 * 69700	* 25800 * 55250	* 25800 * 55250	* 20700 * 44100	* 20700 * 44100	* 16300 * 34400	* 16300 * 34400							* 12750 * 27850	* 12750 * 27850	8640 27'11"

Illustration 84 g06585789

Lift Chart Above: 374, Reach boom with a 7800 mm (307 inch) boom and 4670 mm (184 inch) stick, 900 mm (35 inch) DG track shoes and Heavy lift function ON.

(mm) (ft'inch")	1500 5'0"		3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"		10500 35'0"		12000 40'0"				
																			(mm) (ft'inch")
10500 35'0"											* 12350 * 12350						* 11400 * 25300	* 11400 * 25300	9210 29'8"
9000 30'0"											* 13150 * 28950	* 13150 * 28950					* 10750 * 23750	* 10750 * 23750	10330 33'6"
7500 25'0"											* 13500 * 29450	* 13500 * 29450	* 12950 * 28050	11550 24700			* 10450 * 23050	10300 22950	11140 36'4"
6000 20'0"											* 14250 * 31000	* 14250 * 31000	* 13250 * 28950	11350 24350			* 10400 * 22900	9300 20600	11700 38'3"
4500 15'0"					* 28050	* 28050	* 21150 * 45600	* 21150 * 45600	* 17500 * 37900	* 17500 * 37900	* 15300 * 33200	14150 30450	* 13800 * 30050	11050 23700	* 10950	8750	* 10550 * 23200	8700 19200	12050 39'5"
3000 10'0"							* 24400 * 52650	* 24400 * 52650	* 19400 * 41950	17800 38400	* 16400 * 35550	13550 29150	* 14450 * 31350	10650 22900	11850 * 24000	8550 18350	* 10900 * 23950	8350 18350	12200 40'0"
1500 5'0"							* 26850 * 58050	23400 50450	* 20950 * 45300	16900 36450	* 17350 * 37600	13000 27950	14300 30800	10300 22200	11650	8400	11450 25200	8200 18100	12160 39'10"
0 0					* 18250 * 42150	* 18250 * 42150	* 28050 * 60750	22450 48350	* 21850 * 47350	16250 35050	17600 37900	12550 27000	14050 30200	10050 21600			11650 25650	8350 18350	11930 39'1"
-1500 -5'0"			* 13200 * 29800	* 13200 * 29800	* 24000 * 54900	* 24000 * 54900	* 28000 * 60650	22000 47350	* 22050 * 47700	15900 34200	17300 37300	12250 26400	13850 29850	9900 21300			12200 26900	8750 19250	11500 37'8"
-3000 -10'0"	* 16250 * 36350	* 16250 * 36350	* 20800 * 46950	* 20800 * 46950	* 32550 * 74400	* 32550 * 74400	* 26750 * 57900	21950 47150	* 21300 * 46050	15750 33900	17250 37100	12200 26250	13850 * 29900	9900 21350			* 13200 * 29050	9500 20950	10850 35'5"
-4500 -15'0"			* 30050 * 68000	* 30050 * 68000	* 30750 * 66500	* 30750 * 66500	* 24200 * 52250	22150 47600	* 19400 * 41750	15850 34200	* 15500 * 33000	12300 26550					* 13000 * 28550	10850 24150	9920 32'4"
-6000 -20'0"			* 31350 * 67000	* 31350 * 67000	* 24850 * 53150	* 24850 * 53150	* 19900 * 42450	* 19900 * 42450	* 15700 * 33050	* 15700 * 33050							* 12250 * 26750	* 12250 * 26750	8640 27'11"

Illustration 85 g06585791

Lift Chart Above: 374, Reach boom with a 7800 mm (307 inch) boom and 4670 mm (184 inch) stick, 900 mm (35 inch) DG track shoes and Heavy lift function OFF.

(mm) (ft'inch")	1500 5'0"		3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"		10500 35'0"		12000 40'0"				
+ℓ																			(mm) (ft'inch")
10500 35'0"											* 12750 * 12750	* 12750 * 12750					* 11750 * 26050	* 11750 * 26050	9210 29'8"
9000 30'0"											* 13600 * 29950	* 13600 * 29950					* 11050 * 24450	* 11050 * 24450	10330 33'6"
7500 25'0"											* 13950 * 30500	* 13950 * 30500	* 13400 * 28900	11550 24700			* 10750 * 23750	10300 22950	11140 36'4"
6000 20'0"											* 14750 * 32100	14700 31650	* 13750 * 30000	11350 24350			* 10700 * 23600	9300 20600	11700 38'3"
4500 15'0"					* 29000 * 29000		* 21900 * 47150	* 21900 * 47150	* 18100 * 39250	* 18100 * 39250	* 15850 * 34350	14150 30450	* 14300 * 31150	11050 23700	* 11300	8750	* 10850 * 23900	8700 19200	12050 39'5"
3000 10'0"							* 25250 * 54500	24900 53700	* 20050 * 43400	17800 38400	* 17000 * 36800	13550 29150	14700 31600	10650 22900	11850 * 24750	8550 18350	* 11250 * 24700	8350 18350	12200 40'0"
1500 5'0"							* 27800 * 60100	23400 50450	* 21700 * 46900	16900 36450	* 18000 38950	13000 27950	14300 30800	10300 22200	11650	8400	11450 25200	8200 18100	12160 39'10"
0 0					* 18800 * 43350	* 18800 * 43350	* 29050 * 62900	22450 48350	* 22650 * 49050	16250 35050	17600 37900	12550 27000	14050 30200	10050 21600			11650 25650	8350 18350	11930 39'1"
-1500 -5'0"			* 13600 * 30700	* 13600 * 30700	* 24700 * 56450	* 24700 * 56450	* 29000 * 62850	22000 47350	22750 48950	15900 34200	17300 37300	12250 26400	13850 29850	9900 21300			12200 26900	8750 19250	11500 37'8"
-3000 -10'0"	* 16700 * 37400	* 16700 * 37400	* 21400 * 48300	* 21400 * 48300	* 33450 * 76450	* 33450 75600	* 27750 * 60000	21950 47150	* 22100 * 47750	15750 33900	17250 37100	12200 26250	13850 29900	9900 21350			13300 29350	9500 20950	10850 35'5"
-4500 -15'0"			* 30900 * 69950	* 30900 * 69950	* 31900 * 68950	* 31900 * 68950	* 25100 * 54200	22150 47600	* 20150 * 43300	15850 34200	* 16100 * 34300	12300 26550					* 13500 * 29650	10850 24150	9920 32'4"
-6000 -20'0"			* 32600 * 69700	* 32600 * 69700	* 25800 * 55250	* 25800 * 55250	* 20700 * 44100	* 20700 * 44100	* 16300 * 34400	16300 * 34400							* 12750 * 27850	* 12750 * 27850	8640 27'11"

Illustration 86 g06585794

Lift Chart Above: 374, Reach boom with a 7800 mm (307 inch) boom and 4670 mm (184 inch) stick, 900 mm (35 inch) DG track shoes and Heavy lift function ON.

Reach Boom with a 7800 mm (307 inch) Boom and 4150 mm (163 inch) Stick

(mm) (ft'inch")	1500 5'0"		3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"		10500 35'0"				
kg / lb																	(mm) (ft'inch")
10500 35'0"															* 13150 * 29200	* 13150 * 29200	8480 27'3"
9000 30'0"											* 14100 * 31100	* 14100 * 31100			* 12350 * 27350	* 12350 * 27350	9690 31'5"
7500 25'0"											* 14300 * 31250	* 14300 * 31250	* 12450	11650	* 12050 * 26550	11550 25700	10550 34'4"
6000 20'0"									* 16700 * 36200	* 16700 * 36200	* 15000 * 32650	14900 32000	* 13900 * 30450	11500 24700	* 12000 * 26450	10350 22950	11140 36'5"
4500 15'0"							* 22550 * 48600	* 22550 * 48600	* 18450 * 39900	* 18450 * 39900	* 15950 * 34650	14350 30900	* 14350 * 31300	11250 24150	* 12250 * 26950	9650 21250	11500 37'8"
3000 10'0"							* 25600 * 55200	25050 54050	* 20150 * 43650	18050 38900	* 17000 * 36800	13800 29700	* 14900 32300	10900 23450	12750 * 28000	9250 20350	11660 38'2"
1500 5'0"							* 27650 * 59800	23750 51200	* 21550 * 46600	17250 37150	* 17800 * 38600	13300 28600	14700 31650	10600 22800	12650 27800	9100 20050	11620 38'1"
0 0					* 17800 * 41150	* 17800 * 41150	* 28400 * 61500	23000 49500	* 22200 * 48100	16700 35950	18100 38950	12900 27800	14450 31150	10400 22350	12900 28400	9250 20400	11380 37'4"
-1500 -5'0"			* 14100 * 31900	* 14100 * 31900	* 25400 * 58150	* 25400 * 58150	* 27850 * 60400	22700 48850	* 22100 * 47800	16400 35300	17850 38500	12700 27350	14350 30950	10300 22150	13600 29950	9750 21500	10930 35'9"
-3000 -10'0"			* 23300 * 52650	* 23300 * 52650	* 33300 * 72250	* 33300 * 72250	* 26200 * 56650	22750 48900	* 21000 * 45350	16350 35200	* 17050 * 36650	12700 27350			* 14000 * 30800	10700 23700	10240 33'5"
-4500 -15'0"			* 34350 * 77750	* 34350 * 77750	* 28800 * 62200	* 28800 * 62200	* 23100 * 49800	23050 49550	* 18550 * 39850	16550 35650	* 14450 * 30350	12900 27950			* 13650 * 30000	12500 27800	9250 30'1"
-6000 -20'0"					* 22100 * 47050	* 22100 * 47050	* 18000 * 38100	* 18000 * 38100	* 13750 * 28300	* 13750 * 28300					* 12550 * 27350	* 12550 * 27350	7850 25'4"

Illustration 87 g06585796

Lift Chart Above: 374, Reach Boom with a 7800 mm (307 inch) Boom and 4150 mm (163 inch) Stick, 900 mm (35 inch) DG track shoes and Heavy lift function OFF.

(mm) (ft'inch")	1500 5'0"		3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"		10500 35'0"				
+ℓ kg / Lbs																	(mm) (ft'inch")
10500 35'0"															* 13500 * 30050	* 13500 * 30050	8480 27'3"
9000 30'0"											* 14600 * 32150	* 14600 * 32150			* 12750 * 28150	* 12750 * 28150	9690 31'5"
7500 25'0"											* 14800 * 32350	* 14800 * 32350	* 12800	11650	* 12400 * 27350	11550 25700	10550 34'4"
6000 20'0"									* 17250 * 37450	* 17250 * 37450	* 15550 * 33800	14900 32000	* 14400 * 31550	11500 24700	* 12400 * 27250	10350 22950	11140 36'5"
4500 15'0"							* 23300 * 50200	* 23300 * 50200	* 19050 * 41250	19000 40950	* 16550 * 35900	14350 30900	* 14900 * 32450	11250 24150	* 12600 * 27750	9650 21250	11500 37'8"
3000 10'0"					* 67850	* 67850	* 26500 * 57150	25050 54050	* 20900 * 45150	18050 38900	* 17600 * 38150	13800 29700	15000 32300	10900 23450	12750 28050	9250 20350	11660 38'2"
1500 5'0"							* 28650 * 61900	23750 51200	* 22300 * 48250	17250 37150	* 18450 39850	13300 28600	14700 31650	10600 22800	12650 27800	9100 20050	11620 38'1"
0 0					* 18300 * 42350	* 18300 * 42350	* 29400 * 63700	23000 49500	* 23000 * 49850	16700 35950	18100 38950	12900 27800	14450 31150	10400 22350	12900 28400	9250 20400	11380 37'4"
-1500 -5'0"			* 14550 * 32850	* 14550 * 32850	* 26100 * 59800	* 26100 * 59800	* 28850 * 62550	22700 48850	* 22900 * 49550	16400 35300	17850 38500	12700 27350	14350 30950	10300 22150	13600 29950	9750 21500	10930 35'9"
-3000 -10'0"			* 24000 * 54150	* 24000 * 54150	* 34500 * 74900	* 34500 * 74900	* 27150 * 58750	22750 48900	* 21750 * 47000	16350 35200	* 17650 * 38000	12700 27350			* 14500 * 31950	10700 23700	10240 33'5"
-4500 -15'0"			* 35300 * 79950	* 35300 * 79950	* 29850 * 64550	* 29850 * 64550	* 24000 * 51700	23050 49550	* 19300 * 41350	16550 35650	* 15000 * 31550	12900 27950			* 14200 * 31200	12500 27800	9250 30'1"
-6000 -20'0"					* 22950 * 48900	* 22950 * 48900	* 18700 * 39600	* 18700 * 39600	* 14300 * 29450	* 14300 * 29450					* 13050 * 28450	* 13050 * 28450	7850 25'4"

Illustration 88 g06585797

Lift Chart Above: 374, Reach Boom with a 7800 mm (307 inch) Boom and 4150 mm (163 inch) Stick, 900 mm (35 inch) DG track shoes and Heavy lift function ON.

(mm) (ft'inch")	1500 5'0"		3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"		10500 35'0"				
kg / lb																	(mm) (ft'inch")
10500															* 13150	* 13150	8480
35'0"															* 29200	* 29200	27'3"
9000											* 14100	* 14100			* 12350	* 12350	9690
30'0"											* 31100	* 31100			* 27350	* 27350	31'5"
7500											* 14300	* 14300	* 12450	11500	* 12050	11400	10550
25'0"											* 31250	* 31250			* 26550	25350	34'4"
6000									* 16700	* 16700	* 15000	14700	* 13900	11350	* 12000	10200	11140
20'0"									* 36200	* 36200	* 32650	31600	* 30450	24350	* 26450	22600	36'5"
4500							* 22550	* 22550	* 18450	* 18450	* 15950	14150	* 14350	11050	* 12250	9500	11500
15'0"					* 65650	* 65650	* 48600	* 48600	* 39900	* 39900	* 34650	30500	* 31300	23800	* 26950	20950	37'8"
3000							* 25600	24750	* 20150	17800	* 17000	13600	14800	10750	12550	9100	11660
10'0"							* 55200	53350	* 43650	38400	* 36800	29300	31850	23100	27650	20050	38'2"
1500							* 27650	23400	* 21550	17000	* 17800	13100	14500	10450	12450	8950	11620
5'0"							* 59800	50450	* 46600	36650	* 38600	28200	31150	22450	27400	19750	38'1"
0					* 17800	* 17800	* 28400	22650	* 22200	16450	17850	12700	14250	10200	12700	9100	11380
0					* 41150	* 41150	* 61500	48800	* 48100	35400	38400	27400	30650	22000	27950	20100	37'4"
-1500			* 14100	* 14100	* 25400	* 25400	* 27850	22350	* 22100	16150	17600	12500	14150	10100	13400	9600	10930
-5'0"			* 31900	* 31900	* 58150	* 58150	* 60400	48100	* 47800	34750	37900	26950	30450	21800	29500	21150	35'9"
-3000			* 23300	* 23300	* 33300	* 33300	* 26200	22400	* 21000	16100	* 17050	12500			* 14000	10550	10240
-10'0"			* 52650	* 52650	* 72250	* 72250	* 56650	48150	* 45350	34650	* 36650	26900			* 30800	23300	33'5"
-4500			* 34350	* 34350	* 28800	* 28800	* 23100	22700	* 18550	16300	* 14450	12750			* 13650	12300	9250
-15'0"			* 77750	* 77750	* 62200	* 62200	* 49800	48850	* 39850	35150	* 30350	27550			* 30000	27350	30'1"
-6000					* 22100	* 22100	* 18000	* 18000	* 13750	* 13750					* 12550	* 12550	7850
-20'0"					* 47050	* 47050	* 38100	* 38100	* 28300	* 28300					* 27350	* 27350	25'4"

Illustration 89 g06585798

Lift Chart Above: 374, Reach Boom with a 7800 mm (307 inch) Boom and 4150 mm (163 inch) Stick, 900 mm (35 inch) DG track shoes and Heavy lift function OFF.

(mm) (ft'inch")	1500 5'0"		3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"		10500 35'0"				
+ℓ																	(mm) (ft'inch")
10500															* 13500	* 13500	8480
35'0"															* 30050	* 30050	27'3"
9000											* 14600	* 14600			* 12750	* 12750	9690
30'0"											* 32150	* 32150			* 28150	* 28150	31'5"
7500											* 14800	* 14800	* 12800	11500	* 12400	11400	10550
25'0"											* 32350	* 32350			* 27350	25350	34'4"
6000									* 17250	* 17250	* 15550	14700	* 14400	11350	* 12400	10200	11140
20'0"									* 37450	* 37450	* 33800	31600	* 31550	24350	* 27250	22600	36'5"
4500							* 23300	* 23300	* 19050	18750	* 16550	14150	* 14900	11050	* 12600	9500	11500
15'0"					* 67850	* 67850	* 50200	* 50200	* 41250	40450	* 35900	30500	* 32450	23800	* 27750	20950	37'8"
3000							* 26500	24750	* 20900	17800	* 17600	13600	14800	10750	12550	9100	11660
10'0"							* 57150	53350	* 45150	38400	* 38150	29300	31850	23100	27650	20050	38'2"
1500							* 28650	23400	* 22300	17000	18250	13100	14500	10450	12450	8950	11620
5'0"							* 61900	50450	* 48250	36650	39250	28200	31150	22450	27400	19750	38'1"
0					* 18300	* 18300	* 29400	22650	* 23000	16450	17850	12700	14250	10200	12700	9100	11380
0					* 42350	* 42350	* 63700	48800	* 49850	35400	38400	27400	30650	22000	27950	20100	37'4"
-1500			* 14550	* 14550	* 26100	* 26100	* 28850	22350	* 22900	16150	17600	12500	14150	10100	13400	9600	10930
-5'0"			* 32850	* 32850	* 59800	* 59800	* 62550	48100	* 49550	34750	37900	26950	30450	21800	29500	21150	35'9"
-3000			* 24000	* 24000	* 34500	* 34500	* 27150	22400	* 21750	16100	17600	12500			* 14500	10550	10240
-10'0"			* 54150	* 54150	* 74900	* 74900	* 58750	48150	* 47000	34650	37900	26900			* 31950	23300	33'5"
-4500			* 35300	* 35300	* 29850	* 29850	* 24000	22700	* 19300	16300	* 15000	12750			* 14200	12300	9250
-15'0"			* 79950	* 79950	* 64550	* 64550	* 51700	48850	* 41350	35150	* 31550	27550			* 31200	27350	30'1"
-6000					* 22950	* 22950	* 18700	* 18700	* 14300	* 14300					* 13050	* 13050	7850
-20'0"					* 48900	* 48900	* 39600	* 39600	* 29450	* 29450					* 28450	* 28450	25'4"

Illustration 90 g06585799

Lift Chart Above: 374, Reach Boom with a 7800 mm (307 inch) Boom and 4150 mm (163 inch) Stick, 900 mm (35 inch) DG track shoes and Heavy lift function ON.

(mm) (ft'inch")	1500 5'0"		3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"		10500 35'0"				
																	(mm) (ft'inch")
10500 35'0"															* 13150 * 29200	* 13150 * 29200	8480 27'3"
9000 30'0"											* 14100 * 31100	* 14100 * 31100			* 12350 * 27350	* 12350 * 27350	9690 31'5"
7500 25'0"											* 14300 * 31250	* 14300 * 31250	* 12450	11400	* 12050 * 26550	11300 25100	10550 34'4"
6000 20'0"									* 16700 * 36200	* 16700 * 36200	* 15000 * 32650	14550 31300	* 13900 * 30450	11250 24100	* 12000 * 26450	10100 22400	11140 36'5"
4500 15'0"					* 65650	* 65650	* 22550 * 48600	* 22550 * 48600	* 18450 * 39900	* 18450 * 39900	* 15950 * 34650	14050 30200	* 14350 * 31300	10950 23550	* 12250 * 26950	9400 20750	11500 37'8"
3000 10'0"							* 25600 * 55200	24500 52850	* 20150 * 43650	17650 38050	* 17000 * 36800	13450 29000	14650 31500	10650 22850	12400 27350	9000 19800	11660 38'2"
1500 5'0"							* 27650 * 59800	23200 50000	* 21550 * 46600	16850 36250	* 17800 * 38600	12950 27900	14350 30850	10350 22250	12300 27100	8850 19550	11620 38'1"
0 0					* 17800 * 41150	* 17800 * 41150	* 28400 * 61500	22450 48300	* 22200 * 48100	16250 35050	17650 38000	12600 27100	14100 30350	10100 21750	12550 27650	9050 19850	11380 37'4"
-1500 -5'0"			* 14100 * 31900	* 14100 * 31900	* 25400 * 58150	* 25400 * 58150	* 27850 * 60400	22150 47650	* 22100 * 47800	16000 34400	17450 37500	12350 26650	14000 30150	10000 21600	13250 29200	9500 20950	10930 35'9"
-3000 -10'0"			* 23300 * 52650	* 23300 * 52650	* 33300 * 72250	* 33300 * 72250	* 26200 * 56650	22150 47700	* 21000 * 45350	15950 34300	* 17050 * 36650	12350 26650			* 14000 * 30800	10450 23100	10240 33'5"
-4500 -15'0"			* 34350 * 77750	* 34350 * 77750	* 28800 * 62200	* 28800 * 62200	* 23100 * 49800	22450 48350	* 18550 * 39850	16150 34800	* 14450 * 30350	12600 27250			* 13650 * 30000	12200 27100	9250 30'1"
-6000 -20'0"					* 22100 * 47050	* 22100 * 47050	* 18000 * 38100	* 18000 * 38100	* 13750 * 28300	* 13750 * 28300					* 12550 * 27350	* 12550 * 27350	7850 25'4"

Illustration 91 g06585800

Lift Chart Above: 374, Reach Boom with a 7800 mm (307 inch) Boom and 4150 mm (163 inch) Stick, 900 mm (35 inch) DG track shoes and Heavy lift function OFF.

(mm) (ft'inch")	1500 5'0"		3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"		10500 35'0"				
+ℓ																	(mm) (ft'inch")
10500															* 13500	* 13500	8480
35'0"															* 30050	* 30050	27'3"
9000											* 14600	* 14600			* 12750	* 12750	9690
30'0"											* 32150	* 32150			* 28150	* 28150	31'5"
7500											* 14800	* 14800	* 12800	11400	* 12400	11300	10550
25'0"											* 32350	32150			* 27350	25100	34'4"
6000									* 17250	* 17250	* 15550	14550	* 14400	11250	* 12400	10100	11140
20'0"									* 37450	* 37450	* 33800	31300	* 31550	24100	* 27250	22400	36'5"
4500							* 23300	* 23300	* 19050	18600	* 16550	14050	* 14900	10950	* 12600	9400	11500
15'0"					* 67850	* 67850	* 50200	* 50200	* 41250	40100	* 35900	30200	32200	23550	* 27750	20750	37'8"
3000							* 26500	24500	* 20900	17650	* 17600	13450	14650	10650	12400	9000	11660
10'0"							* 57150	52850	* 45150	38050	* 38150	29000	31500	22850	27350	19800	38'2"
1500							* 28650	23200	* 22300	16850	18050	12950	14350	10350	12300	8850	11620
5'0"							* 61900	50000	* 48250	36250	38850	27900	30850	22250	27100	19550	38'1"
0					* 18300	* 18300	* 29400	22450	* 23000	16250	17650	12600	14100	10100	12550	9050	11380
0					* 42350	* 42350	* 63700	48300	* 49850	35050	38000	27100	30350	21750	27650	19850	37'4"
-1500			* 14550	* 14550	* 26100	* 26100	* 28850	22150	22850	16000	17450	12350	14000	10000	13250	9500	10930
-5'0"			* 32850	* 32850	* 59800	* 59800	* 62550	47650	49150	34400	37500	26650	30150	21600	29200	20950	35'9"
-3000			* 24000	* 24000	* 34500	* 34500	* 27150	22150	* 21750	15950	17400	12350			* 14500	10450	10240
-10'0"			* 54150	* 54150	* 74900	* 74900	* 58750	47700	* 47000	34300	37500	26650			* 31950	23100	33'5"
-4500			* 35300	* 35300	* 29850	* 29850	* 24000	22450	* 19300	16150	* 15000	12600			* 14200	12200	9250
-15'0"			* 79950	* 79950	* 64550	* 64550	* 51700	48350	* 41350	34800	* 31550	27250			* 31200	27100	30'1"
-6000					* 22950	* 22950	* 18700	* 18700	* 14300	* 14300					* 13050	* 13050	7850
-20'0"					* 48900	* 48900	* 39600	* 39600	* 29450	* 29450					* 28450	* 28450	25'4"

Illustration 92 g06585803

Lift Chart Above: 374, Reach Boom with a 7800 mm (307 inch) Boom and 4150 mm (163 inch) Stick, 900 mm (35 inch) DG track shoes and Heavy lift function ON.

Reach Boom with a 7800 mm (307 inch) Boom and 3600 mm (142 inch) Stick

(mm) (ft'inch")	3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"		10500 35'0"				
															(mm) (ft'inch")
10500													* 15650	* 15650	7760
35'0"													* 34900	* 34900	24'10"
9000									* 15200	* 15200			* 14650	* 14650	9070
30'0"													* 32350	* 32350	29'4"
7500							* 16350	* 16350	* 15150	* 15150			* 14200	12700	9980
25'0"							* 35550	* 35550	* 33150	32700			* 31350	28300	32'6"
6000					* 20750	* 20750	* 17650	* 17650	* 15750	14850	* 14600	11500	* 14200	11300	10610
20'0"					* 44800	* 44800	* 38250	* 38250	* 34250	32000			* 31250	25050	34'8"
4500					* 23900	* 23900	* 19300	18950	* 16600	14350	* 14900	11300	14300	10450	10990
15'0"					* 51450	* 51450	* 41750	40850	* 36050	30950	* 32500	24200	31650	23100	35'11"
3000					* 26700	24900	* 20900	18050	* 17500	13850	15150	11000	13800	10000	11150
10'0"					* 57550	53750	* 45150	38950	* 37950	29850	32550	23650	30400	22050	36'6"
1500					* 28300	23800	* 22000	17350	* 18150	13400	14850	10750	13650	9900	11110
5'0"					* 61150	51300	* 47650	37350	* 39350	28900	32000	23150	30100	21800	36'5"
0					* 28500	23250	* 22400	16900	18300	13100	14700	10600	14000	10100	10860
0			* 36600	* 36600	* 61700	50050	* 48550	36350	39450	28200	31600	22800	30850	22250	35'7"
-1500			* 26000	* 26000	* 27450	23100	* 21950	16700	* 17950	12950			* 14750	10700	10390
-5'0"			* 59700	* 59700	* 59550	49700	* 47500	35900	* 38750	27900			* 32500	23600	34'0"
-3000	* 25600	* 25600	* 31350	* 31350	* 25300	23250	* 20400	16700	* 16400	13000			* 14600	11900	9660
-10'0"	* 57850	* 57850	* 68100	* 68100	* 54750	50000	* 44100	36000	* 35150	28100			* 32150	26350	31'6"
-4500	* 31000	* 31000	* 26300	* 26300	* 21600	* 21600	* 17350	17050					* 14000	* 14000	8600
-15'0"	* 67100	* 67100	* 56800	* 56800	* 46500	* 46500	* 37000	36750					* 30700	* 30700	27'11"
-6000					* 15350	* 15350							* 12150	* 12150	7070
-20'0"					* 32050	* 32050							* 26250	* 26250	22'9"

Illustration 93 g06586353

Lift Chart Above: 374, Reach Boom with a 7800 mm (307 inch) Boom and 3600 mm (142 inch) Stick, 900 mm (35 inch) DG track shoes and Heavy lift function OFF.

(mm) (ft'inch")	3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"		10500 35'0"				
+ℓ															(mm) (ft'inch")
10500 35'0"													* 16100 * 35900	* 16100 * 35900	7760 24'10"
9000 30'0"									* 15650 * 33300	15300 * 33300			* 15050 * 33300	* 15050 * 33300	9070 29'4"
7500 25'0"							* 16900 * 36750	* 16900 * 36750	* 15650 * 34300	15250 32700			* 14650 * 32250	12700 28300	9980 32'6"
6000 20'0"					* 21450 * 46300	* 21450 * 46300	* 18250 * 39550	* 18250 * 39550	* 16300 * 35450	14850 32000	* 15150	11500	* 14600 * 32150	11300 25050	10610 34'8"
4500 15'0"					* 24700 * 53200	* 24700 * 53200	* 19950 * 43200	18950 40850	* 17200 * 37350	14350 30950	15400 33150	11300 24200	14300 31650	10450 23100	10990 35'11"
3000 10'0"					* 27600 * 59550	24900 53750	* 21600 * 46750	18050 38950	* 18150 * 39300	13850 29850	15150 32550	11000 23650	13800 30400	10000 22050	11150 36'6"
1500 5'0"					* 29300 * 63300	23800 51300	* 22800 * 49350	17350 37350	18650 40150	13400 28900	14850 32000	10750 23150	13650 30100	9900 21800	11110 36'5"
0 0			* 37650 * 63900	* 37650 * 63900	* 29500 * 63900	23250 50050	* 23200 * 50300	16900 36350	18300 39450	13100 28200	14700 31600	10600 22800	14000 30850	10100 22250	10860 35'7"
-1500 -5'0"			* 26750 * 61400	* 26750 * 61400	* 28450 * 61700	23100 49700	* 22750 * 49250	16700 35900	18150 39100	12950 27900			14900 32850	10700 23600	10390 34'0"
-3000 -10'0"	* 26300 * 59500	* 26300 * 59500	* 32500 * 70600	* 32500 * 70600	* 26200 * 56750	23250 50000	* 21150 * 45700	16700 36000	* 17050 * 36500	13000 28100			* 15150 * 33350	11900 26350	9660 31'6"
-4500 -15'0"	* 32200 * 69750	* 32200 * 69750	* 27300 * 58950	* 27300 * 58950	* 22450 * 48250	* 22450 * 48250	* 18000 * 38400	17050 36750					* 14550 * 31900	14200 31650	8600 27'11"
-6000 -20'0"					* 16000 * 33350	* 16000 * 33350							* 12650 * 27350	* 12650 * 27350	7070 22'9"

Illustration 94 g06586354

Lift Chart Above: 374, Reach Boom with a 7800 mm (307 inch) Boom and 3600 mm (142 inch) Stick, 900 mm (35 inch) DG track shoes and Heavy lift function ON.

(mm) (ft'inch")	3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"		10500 35'0"				
kg / Lb															(mm) (ft'inch")
10500													* 15650	* 15650	7760
35'0"													* 34900	* 34900	24'10"
9000									* 15200	15100			* 14650	* 14650	9070
30'0"													* 32350	* 32350	29'4"
7500							* 16350	* 16350	* 15150	15050			* 14200	12550	9980
25'0"							* 35550	* 35550	* 33150	32300			* 31350	27900	32'6"
6000					* 20750	* 20750	* 17650	* 17650	* 15750	14650	* 14600	11350	* 14200	11150	10610
20'0"					* 44800	* 44800	* 38250	* 38250	* 34250	31550			* 31250	24700	34'8"
4500					* 23900	* 23900	* 19300	18700	* 16600	14200	* 14900	11100	14100	10300	10990
15'0"					* 51450	* 51450	* 41750	40350	* 36050	30550	* 32500	23850	31200	22750	35'11"
3000					* 26700	24600	* 20900	17800	* 17500	13650	14900	10850	13600	9850	11150
10'0"					* 57550	53050	* 45150	38400	* 37950	29400	32050	23300	29950	21750	36'6"
1500					* 28300	23450	* 22000	17100	* 18150	13200	14650	10600	13450	9750	11110
5'0"					* 61150	50600	* 47650	36850	* 39350	28450	31500	22800	29650	21450	36'5"
0					* 28500	22950	* 22400	16650	18050	12900	14450	10400	13800	9950	10860
0			* 36600	* 36600	* 61700	49350	* 48550	35850	38850	27800	31150	22450	30400	21900	35'7"
-1500			* 26000	* 26000	* 27450	22750	* 21950	16450	17900	12750			14650	10550	10390
-5'0"			* 59700	* 59700	* 59550	49000	* 47500	35400	38550	27500			32350	23250	34'0"
-3000	* 25600	* 25600	* 31350	* 31350	* 25300	22900	* 20400	16450	* 16400	12800			* 14600	11750	9660
-10'0"	* 57850	* 57850	* 68100	* 68100	* 54750	49250	* 44100	35500	* 35150	27700			* 32150	25950	31'6"
-4500	* 31000	* 31000	* 26300	* 26300	* 21600	* 21600	* 17350	16800					* 14000	* 14000	8600
-15'0"	* 67100	* 67100	* 56800	* 56800	* 46500	* 46500	* 37000	36200					* 30700	* 30700	27'11"
-6000					* 15350	* 15350							* 12150	* 12150	7070
-20'0"					* 32050	* 32050							* 26250	* 26250	22'9"

Illustration 95 g06586355

Lift Chart Above: 374, Reach Boom with a 7800 mm (307 inch) Boom and 3600 mm (142 inch) Stick, 900 mm (35 inch) DG track shoes and Heavy lift function OFF.

(mm) (ft'inch")	3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"		10500 35'0"				
+2															(mm) (ft'inch")
10500 35'0"													* 16100 * 35900	* 16100 * 35900	7760 24'10"
9000 30'0"									* 15650	15100			* 15050 * 33300	14900 * 33300	9070 29'4"
7500 25'0"							* 16900 * 36750	* 16900 * 36750	* 15650 * 34300	15050 32300			* 14650 * 32250	12550 27900	9980 32'6"
6000 20'0"					* 21450 * 46300	* 21450 * 46300	* 18250 * 39550	* 18250 * 39550	* 16300 * 35450	14650 31550	* 15150	11350	* 14600 * 32150	11150 24700	10610 34'8"
4500 15'0"					* 24700 * 53200	* 24700 * 53200	* 19950 * 43200	18700 40350	* 17200 * 37350	14200 30550	15200 32650	11100 23850	14100 31200	10300 22750	10990 35'11"
3000 10'0"					* 27600 * 59550	24600 53050	* 21600 * 46750	17800 38400	* 18150 * 39300	13650 29400	14900 32050	10850 23300	13600 29950	9850 21750	11150 36'6"
1500 5'0"					* 29300 * 63300	23450 50600	* 22800 * 49350	17100 36850	18400 39600	13200 28450	14650 31500	10600 22800	13450 29650	9750 21450	11110 36'5"
0					* 29500	22950	* 23200	16650	18050	12900	14450	10400	13800	9950	10860
0			* 37650	* 37650	* 63900	49350	* 50300	35850	38850	27800	31150	22450	30400	21900	35'7"
-1500 -5'0"			* 26750 * 61400	* 26750 * 61400	* 28450 * 61700	22750 49000	* 22750 * 49250	16450 35400	17900 38550	12750 27500			14650 32350	10550 23250	10390 34'0"
-3000 -10'0"	* 26300 * 59500	* 26300 * 59500	* 32500 * 70600	* 32500 * 70600	* 26200 * 56750	22900 49250	* 21150 * 45700	16450 35500	* 17050 * 36500	12800 27700			* 15150 * 33350	11750 25950	9660 31'6"
-4500 -15'0"	* 32200 * 69750	* 32200 * 69750	* 27300 * 58950	* 27300 * 58950	* 22450 * 48250	* 22450 * 48250	* 18000 * 38400	16800 36200					* 14550 * 31900	14000 31200	8600 27'11"
-6000 -20'0"					* 16000 * 33350	* 16000 * 33350							* 12650 * 27350	* 12650 * 27350	7070 22'9"

Illustration 96 g06586356

Lift Chart Above: 374, Reach Boom with a 7800 mm (307 inch) Boom and 3600 mm (142 inch) Stick, 900 mm (35 inch) DG track shoes and Heavy lift function ON.

(mm) (ft'inch")	3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"		10500 35'0"				
kg / lb															(mm) (ft'inch")
10500 35'0"													* 15650 * 34900	* 15650 * 34900	7760 24'10"
9000 30'0"									* 15200	15000			* 14650 * 32350	* 14650 * 32350	9070 29'4"
7500 25'0"							* 16350 * 35550	* 16350 * 35550	* 15150 * 33150	14900 32000			* 14200 * 31350	12400 27650	9980 32'6"
6000 20'0"					* 20750 * 44800	* 20750 * 44800	* 17650 * 38250	* 17650 * 38250	* 15750 * 34250	14550 31300	* 14600	11250	* 14200 * 31250	11050 24450	10610 34'8"
4500 15'0"					* 23900 * 51450	* 23900 * 51450	* 19300 * 41750	18550 39950	* 16600 * 36050	14050 30250	* 14900 32350	11000 23650	14000 30850	10200 22550	10990 35'11"
3000 10'0"					* 26700 * 57550	24350 52550	* 20900 * 45150	17650 38050	* 17500 * 37950	13550 29150	14750 31750	10750 23050	13450 29650	9750 21500	11150 36'6"
1500 5'0"					* 28300 * 61150	23250 50100	* 22000 * 47650	16950 36500	* 18150 39200	13100 28200	14500 31200	10500 22550	13350 29350	9650 21250	11110 36'5"
0 0			* 36600	* 36600	* 28500 * 61700	22700 48850	* 22400 * 48550	16450 35500	17850 38450	12750 27500	14300 30850	10300 22200	13650 30100	9850 21700	10860 35'7"
-1500 -5'0"			* 26000 * 59700	* 26000 * 59700	* 27450 * 59550	22550 48500	* 21950 * 47500	16250 35050	17700 38150	12650 27200			14500 32000	10450 23000	10390 34'0"
-3000 -10'0"	* 25600 * 57850	* 25600 * 57850	* 31350 * 68100	* 31350 * 68100	* 25300 * 54750	22700 48800	* 20400 * 44100	16300 35150	* 16400 * 35150	12700 27400			* 14600 * 32150	11600 25700	9660 31'6"
-4500 -15'0"	* 31000 * 67100	* 31000 * 67100	* 26300 * 56800	* 26300 * 56800	* 21600 * 46500	* 21600 * 46500	* 17350 * 37000	16600 35850					* 14000 * 30700	13850 * 30700	8600 27'11"
-6000 -20'0"					* 15350 * 32050	* 15350 * 32050							* 12150 * 26250	* 12150 * 26250	7070 22'9"

Illustration 97 g06586357

Lift Chart Above: 374, Reach Boom with a 7800 mm (307 inch) Boom and 3600 mm (142 inch) Stick, 900 mm (35 inch) DG track shoes and Heavy lift function OFF.

(mm) (ft'inch")	3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"		10500 35'0"				
+2															(mm) (ft'inch")
10500 35'0"													* 16100 * 35900	* 16100 * 35900	7760 24'10"
9000 30'0"									* 15650	15000			* 15050 * 33300	14800 33250	9070 29'4"
7500 25'0"							* 16900 * 36750	* 16900 * 36750	* 15650 * 34300	14900 32000			* 14650 * 32250	12400 27650	9980 32'6"
6000 20'0"					* 21450 * 46300	* 21450 * 46300	* 18250 * 39550	* 18250 * 39550	* 16300 * 35450	14550 31300	* 15150	11250	* 14600 * 32150	11050 24450	10610 34'8"
4500 15'0"					* 24700 * 53200	* 24700 * 53200	* 19950 * 43200	18550 39950	* 17200 * 37350	14050 30250	15050 32350	11000 23650	14000 30850	10200 22550	10990 35'11"
3000 10'0"					* 27600 * 59550	24350 52550	* 21600 * 46750	17650 38050	* 18150 * 39300	13550 29150	14750 31750	10750 23050	13450 29650	9750 21500	11150 36'6"
1500 5'0"					* 29300 * 63300	23250 50100	* 22800 * 49350	16950 36500	18200 39200	13100 28200	14500 31200	10500 22550	13350 29350	9650 21250	11110 36'5"
0 0			* 37650	* 37650	* 29500 * 63900	22700 48850	* 23200 * 50300	16450 35500	17850 38450	12750 27500	14300 30850	10300 22200	13650 30100	9850 21700	10860 35'7"
-1500 -5'0"			* 26750 * 61400	* 26750 * 61400	* 28450 * 61700	22550 48500	* 22750 * 49250	16250 35050	17700 38150	12650 27200			14500 32000	10450 23000	10390 34'0"
-3000 -10'0"	* 26300 * 59500	* 26300 * 59500	* 32500 * 70600	* 32500 * 70600	* 26200 * 56750	22700 48800	* 21150 * 45700	16300 35150	* 17050 * 36500	12700 27400			* 15150 * 33350	11600 25700	9660 31'6"
-4500 -15'0"	* 32200 * 69750	* 32200 * 69750	* 27300 * 58950	* 27300 * 58950	* 22450 * 48250	* 22450 * 48250	* 18000 * 38400	16600 35850					* 14550 * 31900	13850 30900	8600 27'11"
-6000 -20'0"					* 16000 * 33350	* 16000 * 33350							* 12650 * 27350	* 12650 * 27350	7070 22'9"

Illustration 98 g06586358

Lift Chart Above: 374, Reach Boom with a 7800 mm (307 inch) Boom and 3600 mm (142 inch) Stick, 900 mm (35 inch) DG track shoes and Heavy lift function ON.

Reach Boom with a 7800 mm (307 inch) Boom and 2840 mm (112 inch) Stick

(mm) (ft'inch")	4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"		10500				
kg / Lb													(mm) (ft'inch")
10500											* 18550	* 18550	6800
9000					* 17300	* 17300					* 17000	* 17000	8270
30'0"					* 38000	* 38000					* 37700	* 37700	26'8"
7500					* 17700	* 17700	* 16400	14800			* 16300	14050	9260
25'0"					* 38550	* 38550	* 36050	31700			* 36050	31350	30'1"
6000	* 30150	* 30150	* 22600	* 22600	* 18900	* 18900	* 16750	14500			* 16000	12350	9930
20'0"	* 64300	* 64300	* 48700	* 48700	* 40950	* 40950	* 36500	31200			* 35250	27350	32'5"
4500			* 25600	25550	* 20400	18450	* 17450	14050			15550	11350	10340
15'0"			* 55100	* 55100	* 44100	39750	* 37900	30300			34350	25050	33'10"
3000			* 27950	24100	* 21700	17600	* 18150	13600	14950	10850	14900	10850	10520
10'0"			* 60300	51950	* 47000	38000	* 39350	29300			32900	23900	34'5"
1500			* 28750	23300	* 22500	17000	18450	13250			14800	10750	10470
5'0"			* 62250	50150	* 48750	36700	39700	28500			32650	23600	34'4"
0			* 28150	23000	* 22450	16700	18200	13000			15250	11000	10210
0			* 61100	49500	* 48700	35950	39150	28050			33650	24250	33'5"
-1500	* 24950	* 24950	* 26450	23050	* 21500	16600	* 17500	12950			* 15600	11800	9700
-5'0"	* 57950	* 57950	* 57500	49500	* 46550	35800	* 37650	28000			* 34350	26050	31'9"
-3000	* 27850	* 27850	* 23650	23300	* 19300	16800					* 15100	13400	8910
-10'0"	* 60700	* 60700	* 51200	50100	* 41600	36200					* 33250	29700	29'1"
-4500	* 22200	* 22200	* 19000	* 19000	* 14750	* 14750					* 13800	* 13800	7750
-15'0"	* 47900	* 47900	* 40700	* 40700	* 30700	* 30700					* 30150	* 30150	25'2"

Illustration 99 g06585816

Lift Chart Above: 374, Reach Boom with a 7800 mm (307 inch) Boom and 2840 mm (112 inch) Stick, 900 mm (35 inch) DG track shoes and Heavy lift function OFF.

(mm) (ft'inch")	4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"		10500				
+ℓ kg lb													(mm) (ft'inch")
10500											* 19150	* 19150	6800
9000					* 17850	* 17850					* 17600	17150	8270
30'0"					* 39250	* 39250					* 39000	38750	26'8"
7500					* 18300	* 18300	* 16950	14800			* 16900	14050	9260
25'0"					* 39850	* 39850	* 37300	31700			* 37300	31350	30'1"
6000	* 31150	* 31150	* 23350	* 23350	* 19500	19300	* 17350	14500			* 16550	12350	9930
20'0"	* 66400	* 66400	* 50350	* 50350	* 42350	41600	* 37750	31200			* 36500	27350	32'5"
4500			* 26450	25550	* 21100	18450	* 18050	14050			15550	11350	10340
15'0"			* 57000	55150	* 45600	39750	* 39200	30300			34350	25050	33'10"
3000			* 28900	24100	* 22500	17600	* 18800	13600	14950	10850	14900	10850	10520
10'0"			* 62400	51950	* 48650	38000	40550	29300			32900	23900	34'5"
1500			* 29750	23300	* 23300	17000	18450	13250			14800	10750	10470
5'0"			* 64450	50150	* 50450	36700	39700	28500			32650	23600	34'4"
0			* 29150	23000	* 23300	16700	18200	13000			15250	11000	10210
0			* 63250	49500	* 50450	35950	39150	28050			33650	24250	33'5"
-1500	* 25650	* 25650	* 27400	23050	* 22300	16600	* 18100	12950			* 16150	11800	9700
-5'0"	* 59550	* 59550	* 59550	49500	* 48250	35800	* 39050	28000			* 35600	26050	31'9"
-3000	* 28900	* 28900	* 24500	23300	* 20000	16800					* 15700	13400	8910
-10'0"	* 62950	* 62950	* 53050	50100	* 43100	36200					* 34500	29700	29'1"
-4500	* 23050	* 23050	* 19750	* 19750	* 15350	* 15350					* 14350	* 14350	7750
-15'0"	* 49800	* 49800	* 42300	* 42300	* 31900	* 31900					* 31350	* 31350	25'2"

Illustration 100 g06585817

Lift Chart Above: 374, Reach Boom with a 7800 mm (307 inch) Boom and 2840 mm (112 inch) Stick, 900 mm (35 inch) DG track shoes and Heavy lift function ON.

(mm) (ft'inch")	4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"		10500				
kg / Lb													(mm) (ft'inch")
10500											* 18550	* 18550	6800
9000					* 17300	* 17300					* 17000	16950	8270
30'0"					* 38000	* 38000					* 37700	* 37700	26'8"
7500					* 17700	* 17700	* 16400	14600			* 16300	13850	9260
25'0"					* 38550	* 38550	* 36050	31250			* 36050	30950	30'1"
6000	* 30150	* 30150	* 22600	* 22600	* 18900	* 18900	* 16750	14300			* 16000	12150	9930
20'0"	* 64300	* 64300	* 48700	* 48700	* 40950	* 40950	* 36500	30800			* 35250	26950	32'5"
4500			* 25600	25200	* 20400	18200	* 17450	13850			15300	11150	10340
15'0"			* 55100	54450	* 44100	39200	* 37900	29850			33850	24700	33'10"
3000			* 27950	23750	* 21700	17350	* 18150	13400	14700	10700	14700	10650	10520
10'0"			* 60300	51250	* 47000	37450	* 39350	28900			32400	23500	34'5"
1500			* 28750	22950	* 22500	16750	18150	13050			14600	10550	10470
5'0"			* 62250	49450	* 48750	36150	39100	28100			32150	23250	34'4"
0			* 28150	22650	* 22450	16450	17900	12800			15050	10850	10210
0			* 61100	48750	* 48700	35450	38600	27600			33150	23900	33'5"
-1500	* 24950	* 24950	* 26450	22700	* 21500	16350	* 17500	12800			* 15600	11650	9700
-5'0"	* 57950	* 57950	* 57500	48800	* 46550	35250	* 37650	27550			* 34350	25650	31'9"
-3000	* 27850	* 27850	* 23650	22950	* 19300	16550					* 15100	13200	8910
-10'0"	* 60700	* 60700	* 51200	49400	* 41600	35650					* 33250	29250	29'1"
-4500	* 22200	* 22200	* 19000	* 19000	* 14750	* 14750					* 13800	* 13800	7750
-15'0"	* 47900	* 47900	* 40700	* 40700	* 30700	* 30700					* 30150	* 30150	25'2"

Illustration 101 g06585818

Lift Chart Above: 374, Reach Boom with a 7800 mm (307 inch) Boom and 2840 mm (112 inch) Stick, 900 mm (35 inch) DG track shoes and Heavy lift function OFF.

(mm) (ft'inch")	4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"		10500				
+ℓ kg Lb													(mm) (ft'inch")
10500											* 19150	* 19150	6800
9000 30'0"					* 17850 * 39250	* 17850 * 39250					* 17600 * 39000	16950 38250	8270 26'8"
7500 25'0"					* 18300 * 39850	* 18300 * 39850	* 16950 * 37300	14600 31250			* 16900 * 37300	13850 30950	9260 30'1"
6000 20'0"	* 31150 * 66400	* 31150 * 66400	* 23350 * 50350	* 23350 * 50350	* 19500 * 42350	19050 41050	* 17350 * 37750	14300 30800			* 16550 * 36500	12150 26950	9930 32'5"
4500 15'0"			* 26450 * 57000	25200 54450	* 21100 * 45600	18200 39200	* 18050 * 39200	13850 29850			15300 33850	11150 24700	10340 33'10"
3000 10'0"			* 28900 * 62400	23750 51250	* 22500 * 48650	17350 37450	18550 39950	13400 28900	14700	10700	14700 32400	10650 23500	10520 34'5"
1500 5'0"			* 29750 * 64450	22950 49450	* 23300 * 50450	16750 36150	18150 39100	13050 28100			14600 32150	10550 23250	10470 34'4"
0 0			* 29150 * 63250	22650 48750	* 23300 50350	16450 35450	17900 38600	12800 27600			15050 33150	10850 23900	10210 33'5"
-1500 -5'0"	* 25650 * 59550	* 25650 * 59550	* 27400 * 59550	22700 48800	* 22300 * 48250	16350 35250	17900 38550	12800 27550			* 16150 * 35600	11650 25650	9700 31'9"
-3000 -10'0"	* 28900 * 62950	* 28900 * 62950	* 24500 * 53050	22950 49400	* 20000 * 43100	16550 35650					* 15700 * 34500	13200 29250	8910 29'1"
-4500 -15'0"	* 23050 * 49800	* 23050 * 49800	* 19750 * 42300	* 19750 * 42300	* 15350 * 31900	* 15350 * 31900					* 14350 * 31350	* 14350 * 31350	7750 25'2"

Illustration 102 g06585820

Lift Chart Above: 374, Reach Boom with a 7800 mm (307 inch) Boom and 2840 mm (112 inch) Stick, 900 mm (35 inch) DG track shoes and Heavy lift function ON.

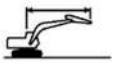
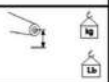
(mm) (ft'inch")	4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"		10500				
													(mm) (ft'inch")
10500											* 18550	* 18550	6800
9000 30'0"					* 17300 * 38000	* 17300 * 38000					* 17000 * 37700	16800 * 37700	8270 26'8"
7500 25'0"					* 17700 * 38550	* 17700 * 38550	* 16400 * 36050	14450 30950			* 16300 * 36050	13750 30650	9260 30'1"
6000 20'0"	* 30150 * 64300	* 30150 * 64300	* 22600 * 48700	* 22600 * 48700	* 18900 * 40950	* 18900 40700	* 16750 * 36500	14200 30500			* 16000 * 35250	12050 26700	9930 32'5"
4500 15'0"			* 25600 * 55100	25000 53950	* 20400 * 44100	18000 38850	* 17450 * 37900	13750 29600			15150 33500	11050 24450	10340 33'10"
3000 10'0"			* 27950 * 60300	23500 50750	* 21700 * 47000	17200 37100	* 18150 * 39350	13300 28600	14600	10600	14550 32050	10550 23300	10520 34'5"
1500 5'0"			* 28750 * 62250	22700 48950	* 22500 * 48750	16600 35800	18000 38700	12900 27800			14450 31850	10450 23000	10470 34'4"
0 0			* 28150 * 61100	22450 48300	* 22450 * 48700	16300 35100	17750 38200	12700 27350			14900 32800	10750 23650	10210 33'5"
-1500 -5'0"	* 24950 * 57950	* 24950 * 57950	* 26450 * 57500	22450 48300	* 21500 * 46550	16200 34900	* 17500 * 37650	12650 27300			* 15600 * 34350	11500 25400	9700 31'9"
-3000 -10'0"	* 27850 * 60700	* 27850 * 60700	* 23650 * 51200	22750 48900	* 19300 * 41600	16350 35300					* 15100 * 33250	13100 28950	8910 29'1"
-4500 -15'0"	* 22200 * 47900	* 22200 * 47900	* 19000 * 40700	* 19000 * 40700	* 14750 * 30700	* 14750 * 30700					* 13800 * 30150	* 13800 * 30150	7750 25'2"

Illustration 103 g06585821

Lift Chart Above: 374, Reach Boom with a 7800 mm (307 inch) Boom and 2840 mm (112 inch) Stick, 900 mm (35 inch) DG track shoes and Heavy lift function OFF.

(mm) (ft'inch")	4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"		10500				
+ℓ kg lb													(mm) (ft'inch")
10500											* 19150	* 19150	6800
9000 30'0"					* 17850 * 39250	* 17850 * 39250					* 17600 * 39000	16800 37950	8270 26'8"
7500 25'0"					* 18300 * 39850	* 18300 * 39850	* 16950 * 37300	14450 30950			* 16900 * 37300	13750 30650	9260 30'1"
6000 20'0"	* 31150 * 66400	* 31150 * 66400	* 23350 * 50350	* 23350 * 50350	* 19500 * 42350	18900 40700	* 17350 * 37750	14200 30500			16450 36450	12050 26700	9930 32'5"
4500 15'0"			* 26450 * 57000	25000 53950	* 21100 * 45600	18000 38850	* 18050 * 39200	13750 29600			15150 33500	11050 24450	10340 33'10"
3000 10'0"			* 28900 * 62400	23500 50750	* 22500 * 48650	17200 37100	18400 39600	13300 28600	14600	10600	14550 32050	10550 23300	10520 34'5"
1500 5'0"			* 29750 * 64450	22700 48950	* 23300 * 50450	16600 35800	18000 38700	12900 27800			14450 31850	10450 23000	10470 34'4"
0 0			* 29150 * 63250	22450 48300	23150 49850	16300 35100	17750 38200	12700 27350			14900 32800	10750 23650	10210 33'5"
-1500 -5'0"	* 25650 * 59550	* 25650 * 59550	* 27400 * 59550	22450 48300	* 22300 * 48250	16200 34900	17700 38150	12650 27300			16000 35350	11500 25400	9700 31'9"
-3000 -10'0"	* 28900 * 62950	* 28900 * 62950	* 24500 * 53050	22750 48900	* 20000 * 43100	16350 35300					* 15700 * 34500	13100 28950	8910 29'1"
-4500 -15'0"	* 23050 * 49800	* 23050 * 49800	* 19750 * 42300	* 19750 * 42300	* 15350 * 31900	* 15350 * 31900					* 14350 * 31350	* 14350 * 31350	7750 25'2"

Illustration 104 g06585823

Lift Chart Above: 374, Reach Boom with a 7800 mm (307 inch) Boom and 2840 mm (112 inch) Stick, 900 mm (35 inch) DG track shoes and Heavy lift function ON.

Mass Boom

Mass Boom with a 7000 mm (276 inch) Boom and 2995 mm (118 inch) Stick

(mm) (ft'inch")	3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"				
kg / Lb													(mm) (ft'inch")
9000											* 14650	* 14650	7350
30'0"											* 32500	* 32500	23'7"
7500							* 17250	* 17250			* 13850	* 13850	8450
25'0"							* 37750	* 37750			* 30600	* 30600	27'5"
6000					* 20750	* 20750	* 18050	* 18050	* 16650	14300	* 13650	* 13650	9180
20'0"					* 44900	* 44900	* 39300	* 39300			* 30100	* 30100	29'11"
4500			* 32200	* 32200	* 23600	* 23600	* 19450	18650	* 17100	13950	* 13900	12500	9620
15'0"			* 68900	* 68900	* 50900	* 50900	* 42150	40150	* 37300	30000	* 30550	27600	31'6"
3000					* 26300	24750	* 20900	17800	* 17750	13500	* 14550	11800	9810
10'0"					* 56850	53400	* 45250	38300	* 38600	29050	* 31950	26050	32'1"
1500					* 28000	23600	* 21950	17100	* 18200	13100	* 15650	11650	9760
5'0"					* 60600	50850	* 47500	36800	* 39500	28250	* 34450	25650	32'0"
0			* 30850	* 30850	* 28250	23000	* 22200	16650	* 18100	12850	16850	12000	9480
0			* 71600	* 71600	* 61250	49550	* 48100	35800	39000	27750	37050	26450	31'0"
-1500	* 25400	* 25400	* 34800	* 34800	* 27050	22850	* 21400	16500			* 17000	13000	8930
-5'0"	* 57450	* 57450	* 75700	* 75700	* 58650	49200	* 46250	35500			* 37450	28750	29'2"
-3000	* 37450	* 37450	* 30550	* 30550	* 24200	23100	* 18850	16700			* 16750	15200	8060
-10'0"	* 81550	* 81550	* 66200	* 66200	* 52300	49700	* 40350	36000			* 36850	33700	26'3"
-4500			* 23600	* 23600	* 18550	* 18550					* 15500	* 15500	6750
-15'0"			* 50550	* 50550	* 39200	* 39200					* 33850	* 33850	21'10"

Illustration 105 g06585824

Lift Chart Above: 374, Mass Boom with a 7000 mm (276 inch) Boom and 2995 mm (118 inch) Stick, 650 mm (26 inch) DG track shoes and Heavy lift function OFF.

(mm) (ft'inch")	3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"				
kg +ℓ lb													(mm) (ft'inch")
9000 30'0"											* 15050 * 33450	* 15050 * 33450	7350 23'7"
7500 25'0"							* 17850 * 39050	* 17850 * 39050			* 14250 * 31500	* 14250 * 31500	8450 27'5"
6000 20'0"					* 21450 * 46400	* 21450 * 46400	* 18700 * 40650	* 18700 * 40650	* 17200	14300	* 14050 * 31000	13800 30650	9180 29'11"
4500 15'0"			* 33300 * 71250	* 33300 * 71250	* 24400 * 52650	* 24400 * 52650	* 20100 * 43650	18650 40150	* 17700 * 38600	13950 30000	* 14300 * 31500	12500 27600	9620 31'6"
3000 10'0"					* 27250 * 58800	24750 53400	* 21650 * 46850	17800 38300	* 18400 * 39950	13500 29050	* 14950 * 32900	11800 26050	9810 32'1"
1500 5'0"					* 29000 * 62750	23600 50850	* 22700 * 49200	17100 36800	18350 39550	13100 28250	* 16150 * 35500	11650 25650	9760 32'0"
0 0			* 31750 * 73600	* 31750 * 73600	* 29250 * 63400	23000 49550	* 23000 * 49850	16650 35800	18100 39000	12850 27750	16850 37050	12000 26450	9480 31'0"
-1500 -5'0"	* 26150 * 59050	* 26150 * 59050	* 36050 * 78400	* 36050 * 78400	* 28050 * 60800	22850 49200	* 22200 * 47950	16500 35500			* 17650 * 38850	13000 28750	8930 29'2"
-3000 -10'0"	* 38850 * 84650	* 38850 * 84650	* 31650 * 68650	* 31650 * 68650	* 25100 * 54200	23100 49700	* 19600 * 41850	16700 36000			* 17400 * 38300	15200 33700	8060 26'3"
-4500 -15'0"			* 24550 * 52550	* 24550 * 52550	* 19250 * 40750	* 19250 * 40750					* 16100 * 35250	* 16100 * 35250	6750 21'10"

Illustration 106 g06585825

Lift Chart Above: 374, Mass Boom with a 7000 mm (276 inch) Boom and 2995 mm (118 inch) Stick, 650 mm (26 inch) DG track shoes and Heavy lift function ON.

(mm) (ft'inch")	3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"				
kg / Lb													(mm) (ft'inch")
9000											* 14650	* 14650	7350
30'0"											* 32500	* 32500	23'7"
7500							* 17250	* 17250			* 13850	* 13850	8450
25'0"							* 37750	* 37750			* 30600	* 30600	27'5"
6000					* 20750	* 20750	* 18050	* 18050	* 16650	14100	* 13650	13600	9180
20'0"					* 44900	* 44900	* 39300	* 39300			* 30100	* 30100	29'11"
4500			* 32200	* 32200	* 23600	* 23600	* 19450	18400	* 17100	13750	* 13900	12300	9620
15'0"			* 68900	* 68900	* 50900	* 50900	* 42150	39600	* 37300	29550	* 30550	27200	31'6"
3000					* 26300	24450	* 20900	17550	* 17750	13300	* 14550	11650	9810
10'0"					* 56850	52650	* 45250	37750	* 38600	28650	* 31950	25650	32'1"
1500					* 28000	23300	* 21950	16850	18100	12900	* 15650	11450	9760
5'0"					* 60600	50150	* 47500	36250	38950	27800	* 34450	25250	32'0"
0			* 30850	* 30850	* 28250	22700	* 22200	16400	17850	12700	16600	11800	9480
0			* 71600	* 71600	* 61250	48800	* 48100	35300	38400	27300	36500	26000	31'0"
-1500	* 25400	* 25400	* 34800	* 34800	* 27050	22550	* 21400	16250			* 17000	12800	8930
-5'0"	* 57450	* 57450	* 75700	* 75700	* 58650	48450	* 46250	35000			* 37450	28300	29'2"
-3000	* 37450	* 37450	* 30550	* 30550	* 24200	22750	* 18850	16450			* 16750	14950	8060
-10'0"	* 81550	* 81550	* 66200	* 66200	* 52300	49000	* 40350	35500			* 36850	33200	26'3"
-4500			* 23600	* 23600	* 18550	* 18550					* 15500	* 15500	6750
-15'0"			* 50550	* 50550	* 39200	* 39200					* 33850	* 33850	21'10"

Illustration 107 g06585827

Lift Chart Above: 374, Mass Boom with a 7000 mm (276 inch) Boom and 2995 mm (118 inch) Stick, 650 mm (26 inch) DG track shoes and Heavy lift function OFF.

(mm) (ft'inch")	3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"				
kg Lb +													(mm) (ft'inch")
9000 30'0"											* 15050 * 33450	* 15050 * 33450	7350 23'7"
7500 25'0"							* 17850 * 39050	* 17850 * 39050			* 14250 * 31500	* 14250 * 31500	8450 27'5"
6000 20'0"					* 21450 * 46400	* 21450 * 46400	* 18700 * 40650	* 18700 * 40650	* 17200	14100	* 14050 * 31000	13600 30250	9180 29'11"
4500 15'0"			* 33300 * 71250	* 33300 * 71250	* 24400 * 52650	* 24400 * 52650	* 20100 * 43650	18400 39600	* 17700 * 38600	13750 29550	* 14300 * 31500	12300 27200	9620 31'6"
3000 10'0"					* 27250 * 58800	24450 52650	* 21650 * 46850	17550 37750	* 18400 39850	13300 28650	* 14950 * 32900	11650 25650	9810 32'1"
1500 5'0"					* 29000 * 62750	23300 50150	* 22700 * 49200	16850 36250	18100 38950	12900 27800	16050 35300	11450 25250	9760 32'0"
0 0			* 31750 * 73600	* 31750 * 73600	* 29250 * 63400	22700 48800	* 23000 * 49850	16400 35300	17850 38400	12700 27300	16600 36500	11800 26000	9480 31'0"
-1500 -5'0"	* 26150 * 59050	* 26150 * 59050	* 36050 * 78400	* 36050 77650	* 28050 * 60800	22550 48450	* 22200 * 47950	16250 35000			* 17650 * 38850	12800 28300	8930 29'2"
-3000 -10'0"	* 38850 * 84650	* 38850 * 84650	* 31650 * 68650	* 31650 * 68650	* 25100 * 54200	22750 49000	* 19600 * 41850	16450 35500			* 17400 * 38300	14950 33200	8060 26'3"
-4500 -15'0"			* 24550 * 52550	* 24550 * 52550	* 19250 * 40750	* 19250 * 40750					* 16100 * 35250	* 16100 * 35250	6750 21'10"

Illustration 108 g06585828

Lift Chart Above: 374, Mass Boom with a 7000 mm (276 inch) Boom and 2995 mm (118 inch) Stick, 650 mm (26 inch) DG track shoes and Heavy lift function ON.

(mm) (ft'inch")	3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"				
kg lb													(mm) (ft'inch")
9000 30'0"											* 14650 * 32500	* 14650 * 32500	7350 23'7"
7500 25'0"							* 17250 * 37750	* 17250 * 37750			* 13850 * 30600	* 13850 * 30600	8450 27'5"
6000 20'0"					* 20750 * 44900	* 20750 * 44900	* 18050 * 39300	* 18050 * 39300	* 16650	14000	* 13650 * 30100	13500 29950	9180 29'11"
4500 15'0"			* 32200 * 68900	* 32200 * 68900	* 23600 * 50900	* 23600 * 50900	* 19450 * 42150	18200 39250	* 17100 * 37300	13650 29300	* 13900 * 30550	12200 26950	9620 31'6"
3000 10'0"					* 26300 * 56850	24200 52200	* 20900 * 45250	17350 37400	* 17750 * 38600	13200 28350	* 14550 * 31950	11500 25400	9810 32'1"
1500 5'0"					* 28000 * 60600	23050 49650	* 21950 * 47500	16650 35900	17950 38550	12800 27550	* 15650 * 34450	11350 25000	9760 32'0"
0 0			* 30850 * 71600	* 30850 * 71600	* 28250 * 61250	22450 48350	* 22200 * 48100	16200 34950	17650 38000	12550 27050	16400 36150	11700 25750	9480 31'0"
-1500 -5'0"	* 25400 * 57450	* 25400 * 57450	* 34800 * 75700	* 34800 * 75700	* 27050 * 58650	22300 48000	* 21400 * 46250	16100 34650			* 17000 * 37450	12700 28000	8930 29'2"
-3000 -10'0"	* 37450 * 81550	* 37450 * 81550	* 30550 * 66200	* 30550 * 66200	* 24200 * 52300	22550 48500	* 18850 * 40350	16300 35150			* 16750 * 36850	14800 32850	8060 26'3"
-4500 -15'0"			* 23600 * 50550	* 23600 * 50550	* 18550 * 39200	* 18550 * 39200					* 15500 * 33850	* 15500 * 33850	6750 21'10"

Illustration 109 g06585830

Lift Chart Above: 374, Mass Boom with a 7000 mm (276 inch) Boom and 2995 mm (118 inch) Stick, 650 mm (26 inch) DG track shoes and Heavy lift function OFF.

(mm) (ft'inch")	3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"				
kg Lb +													(mm) (ft'inch")
9000 30'0"											* 15050 * 33450	* 15050 * 33450	7350 23'7"
7500 25'0"							* 17850 * 39050	* 17850 * 39050			* 14250 * 31500	* 14250 * 31500	8450 27'5"
6000 20'0"					* 21450 * 46400	* 21450 * 46400	* 18700 * 40650	* 18700 * 40650	* 17200	14000	* 14050 * 31000	13500 29950	9180 29'11"
4500 15'0"			* 33300 * 71250	* 33300 * 71250	* 24400 * 52650	* 24400 * 52650	* 20100 * 43650	18200 39250	* 17700 * 38600	13650 29300	* 14300 * 31500	12200 26950	9620 31'6"
3000 10'0"					* 27250 * 58800	24200 52200	* 21650 * 46850	17350 37400	18350 39450	13200 28350	* 14950 * 32900	11500 25400	9810 32'1"
1500 5'0"					* 29000 * 62750	23050 49650	* 22700 * 49200	16650 35900	17950 38550	12800 27550	15850 34950	11350 25000	9760 32'0"
0 0			* 31750 * 73600	* 31750 * 73600	* 29250 * 63400	22450 48350	* 23000 * 49850	16200 34950	17650 38000	12550 27050	16400 36150	11700 25750	9480 31'0"
-1500 -5'0"	* 26150 * 59050	* 26150 * 59050	* 36050 * 78400	35900 76900	* 28050 * 60800	22300 48000	* 22200 * 47950	16100 34650			* 17650 * 38850	12700 28000	8930 29'2"
-3000 -10'0"	* 38850 * 84650	* 38850 * 84650	* 31650 * 68650	* 31650 * 68650	* 25100 * 54200	22550 48500	* 19600 * 41850	16300 35150			* 17400 * 38300	14800 32850	8060 26'3"
-4500 -15'0"			* 24550 * 52550	* 24550 * 52550	* 19250 * 40750	* 19250 * 40750					* 16100 * 35250	* 16100 * 35250	6750 21'10"

Illustration 110 g06585831

Lift Chart Above: 374, Mass Boom with a 7000 mm (276 inch) Boom and 2995 mm (118 inch) Stick, 650 mm (26 inch) DG track shoes and Heavy lift function ON.

Mass Boom with a 7000 mm (276 inch) Boom and 2574 mm (101 inch) Stick

(mm) (ft'inch")	3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"				
kg / Lb													(mm) (ft'inch")
9000											* 17600	* 17600	6820
30'0"											* 39150	* 39150	21'10"
7500							* 18300	* 18300			* 16600	* 16600	8000
25'0"							* 40150	* 40150			* 36650	* 36650	25'11"
6000					* 21900	* 21900	* 18950	* 18950			* 16350	14900	8770
20'0"					* 47400	* 47400	* 41250	* 41250			* 36050	33100	28'7"
4500					* 24650	* 24650	* 20200	18550	* 17800	13950	* 16650	13400	9230
15'0"					* 53250	* 53250	* 43850	40000	* 38800	29950	* 36650	29600	30'2"
3000					* 27200	24600	* 21500	17750	* 18250	13550	* 17500	12650	9430
10'0"					* 58700	53050	* 46600	38300	* 39700	29200	* 38450	27900	30'10"
1500					* 28500	23600	* 22350	17150	18500	13250	17400	12500	9380
5'0"					* 61650	50850	* 48450	36950	39800	28500	38350	27500	30'9"
0			* 28700	* 28700	* 28300	23150	* 22350	16800	* 18050	13050	* 17850	12950	9080
0			* 67250	* 67250	* 61350	49850	* 48400	36150			* 39300	28450	29'9"
-1500			* 33450	* 33450	* 26650	23150	* 21150	16700			* 17800	14150	8500
-5'0"	* 58650	* 58650	* 72850	* 72850	* 57800	49750	* 45700	36050			* 39250	31250	27'10"
-3000	* 32950	* 32950	* 28750	* 28750	* 23250	* 23250	* 17700	17100			* 17300	16850	7590
-10'0"	* 72000	* 72000	* 62400	* 62400	* 50100	* 50100					* 38100	37400	24'9"
-4500			* 20950	* 20950	* 16050	* 16050					* 15250	* 15250	6170
-15'0"			* 44600	* 44600							* 33250	* 33250	19'11"

Illustration 111 g06585833

Lift Chart Above: 374, Mass Boom with a 7000 mm (276 inch) Boom and 2574 mm (101 inch) Stick, 650 mm (26 inch) DG track shoes and Heavy lift function OFF.

(mm) (ft'inch")	3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"				
													(mm) (ft'inch")
9000 30'0"											* 18100 * 40300	* 18100 * 40300	6820 21'10"
7500 25'0"							* 18900 * 41500	* 18900 * 41500			* 17050 * 37700	* 17050 * 37700	8000 25'11"
6000 20'0"					* 22650 * 49000	* 22650 * 49000	* 19600 * 42650	19350 41600			* 16850 * 37100	14900 33100	8770 28'7"
4500 15'0"					* 25500 * 55050	* 25500 * 55050	* 20900 * 45350	18550 40000	* 18400 * 40150	13950 29950	* 17150 * 37750	13400 29600	9230 30'2"
3000 10'0"					* 28150 * 60750	24600 53050	* 22250 * 48250	17750 38300	18850 40500	13550 29200	17550 38650	12650 27900	9430 30'10"
1500 5'0"					* 29500 * 63850	23600 50850	* 23150 * 50150	17150 36950	18500 39800	13250 28500	17400 38350	12500 27500	9380 30'9"
0 0			* 29500 * 69100	* 29500 * 69100	* 29300 * 63550	23150 49850	* 23150 * 50150	16800 36150	18300	13050	18100 39850	12950 28450	9080 29'9"
-1500 -5'0"	* 60300	* 60300	* 34650 * 75450	* 34650 * 75450	* 27650 * 59900	23150 49750	* 21950 * 47350	16700 36050			* 18500 * 40700	14150 31250	8500 27'10"
-3000 -10'0"	* 34200 * 74750	* 34200 * 74750	* 29850 * 64700	* 29850 * 64700	* 24100 * 51950	23450 50500	* 18350	17100			* 17950 * 39500	16850 37400	7590 24'9"
-4500 -15'0"			* 21800 * 46400	* 21800 * 46400	* 16700	* 16700					* 15900 * 34600	* 15900 * 34600	6170 19'11"

Illustration 112 g06585836

Lift Chart Above: 374, Mass Boom with a 7000 mm (276 inch) Boom and 2574 mm (101 inch) Stick, 650 mm (26 inch) DG track shoes and Heavy lift function ON.

(mm) (ft'inch")	3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"				
kg / Lb													(mm) (ft'inch")
9000 30'0"											* 17600 * 39150	* 17600 * 39150	6820 21'10"
7500 25'0"							* 18300 * 40150	* 18300 * 40150			* 16600 * 36650	* 16600 * 36650	8000 25'11"
6000 20'0"					* 21900 * 47400	* 21900 * 47400	* 18950 * 41250	* 18950 41100			* 16350 * 36050	14700 32650	8770 28'7"
4500 15'0"					* 24650 * 53250	* 24650 * 53250	* 20200 * 43850	18300 39450	* 17800 * 38800	13750 29550	* 16650 * 36650	13200 29200	9230 30'2"
3000 10'0"					* 27200 * 58700	24250 52300	* 21500 * 46600	17500 37750	* 18250 * 39700	13350 28750	17300 38100	12450 27450	9430 30'10"
1500 5'0"					* 28500 * 61650	23250 50100	* 22350 * 48450	16900 36400	18200 39200	13050 28050	17150 37800	12300 27100	9380 30'9"
0 0			* 28700 * 67250	* 28700 * 67250	* 28300 * 61350	22800 49100	* 22350 * 48400	16550 35600	18050	12850	17850 39300	12750 28050	9080 29'9"
-1500 -5'0"	* 58650	* 58650	* 33450 * 72850	* 33450 * 72850	* 26650 * 57800	22800 49000	* 21150 * 45700	16450 35500			* 17800 * 39250	13950 30800	8500 27'10"
-3000 -10'0"	* 32950 * 72000	* 32950 * 72000	* 28750 * 62400	* 28750 * 62400	* 23250 * 50100	23150 49800	* 17700	16850			* 17300 * 38100	16600 36850	7590 24'9"
-4500 -15'0"			* 20950 * 44600	* 20950 * 44600	* 16050	* 16050					* 15250 * 33250	* 15250 * 33250	6170 19'11"

Illustration 113 g06585839

Lift Chart Above: 374, Mass Boom with a 7000 mm (276 inch) Boom and 2574 mm (101 inch) Stick, 650 mm (26 inch) DG track shoes and Heavy lift function OFF.

(mm) (ft'inch")	3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"				
+ℓ kg Lb													(mm) (ft'inch")
9000 30'0"											* 18100 * 40300	* 18100 * 40300	6820 21'10"
7500 25'0"							* 18900 * 41500	* 18900 * 41500			* 17050 * 37700	* 17050 * 37700	8000 25'11"
6000 20'0"					* 22650 * 49000	* 22650 * 49000	* 19600 * 42650	19100 41100			* 16850 * 37100	14700 32650	8770 28'7"
4500 15'0"					* 25500 * 55050	* 25500 * 55050	* 20900 * 45350	18300 39450	* 18400 * 40150	13750 29550	* 17150 * 37750	13200 29200	9230 30'2"
3000 10'0"					* 28150 * 60750	24250 52300	* 22250 * 48250	17500 37750	18550 39950	13350 28750	17300 38100	12450 27450	9430 30'10"
1500 5'0"					* 29500 * 63850	23250 50100	* 23150 * 50150	16900 36400	18200 39200	13050 28050	17150 37800	12300 27100	9380 30'9"
0 0			* 29500 * 69100	* 29500 * 69100	* 29300 * 63550	22800 49100	* 23150 * 50150	16550 35600	18050	12850	17850 39300	12750 28050	9080 29'9"
-1500 -5'0"	* 60300	* 60300	* 34650 * 75450	* 34650 * 75450	* 27650 * 59900	22800 49000	* 21950 * 47350	16450 35500			* 18500 * 40700	13950 30800	8500 27'10"
-3000 -10'0"	* 34200 * 74750	* 34200 * 74750	* 29850 * 64700	* 29850 * 64700	* 24100 * 51950	23150 49800	* 18350	16850			* 17950 * 39500	16600 36850	7590 24'9"
-4500 -15'0"			* 21800 * 46400	* 21800 * 46400	* 16700	* 16700					* 15900 * 34600	* 15900 * 34600	6170 19'11"

Illustration 114 g06585840

Lift Chart Above: 374, Mass Boom with a 7000 mm (276 inch) Boom and 2574 mm (101 inch) Stick, 650 mm (26 inch) DG track shoes and Heavy lift function ON.

(mm) (ft'inch")	3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"				
kg / Lb													(mm) (ft'inch")
9000 30'0"											* 17600 * 39150	* 17600 * 39150	6820 21'10"
7500 25'0"							* 18300 * 40150	* 18300 * 40150			* 16600 * 36650	* 16600 * 36650	8000 25'11"
6000 20'0"					* 21900 * 47400	* 21900 * 47400	* 18950 * 41250	18950 40750			* 16350 * 36050	14550 32350	8770 28'7"
4500 15'0"					* 24650 * 53250	* 24650 * 53250	* 20200 * 43850	18150 39100	* 17800 * 38800	13600 29250	* 16650 * 36650	13050 28900	9230 30'2"
3000 10'0"					* 27200 * 58700	24050 51850	* 21500 * 46600	17350 37400	* 18250 39550	13250 28500	17100 37750	12350 27200	9430 30'10"
1500 5'0"					* 28500 * 61650	23050 49650	* 22350 * 48450	16750 36050	18050 38800	12900 27800	17000 37400	12200 26800	9380 30'9"
0 0			* 28700 * 67250	* 28700 * 67250	* 28300 * 61350	22600 48650	* 22350 * 48400	16350 35250	17850	12750	17650 38900	12600 27750	9080 29'9"
-1500 -5'0"	* 58650	* 58650	* 33450 * 72850	* 33450 * 72850	* 26650 * 57800	22550 48550	* 21150 * 45700	16300 35150			* 17800 * 39250	13800 30500	8500 27'10"
-3000 -10'0"	* 32950 * 72000	* 32950 * 72000	* 28750 * 62400	* 28750 * 62400	* 23250 * 50100	22900 49300	* 17700	16650			* 17300 * 38100	16450 36500	7590 24'9"
-4500 -15'0"			* 20950 * 44600	* 20950 * 44600	* 16050	* 16050					* 15250 * 33250	* 15250 * 33250	6170 19'11"

Illustration 115 g06585842

Lift Chart Above: 374, Mass Boom with a 7000 mm (276 inch) Boom and 2574 mm (101 inch) Stick, 650 mm (26 inch) DG track shoes and Heavy lift function OFF.

(mm) (ft'inch")	3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"				
+ℓ kg Lb													(mm) (ft'inch")
9000											* 18100	* 18100	6820
30'0"											* 40300	* 40300	21'10"
7500							* 18900	* 18900			* 17050	* 17050	8000
25'0"							* 41500	* 41500			* 37700	* 37700	25'11"
6000					* 22650	* 22650	* 19600	18950			* 16850	14550	8770
20'0"					* 49000	* 49000	* 42650	40750			* 37100	32350	28'7"
4500					* 25500	* 25500	* 20900	18150	* 18400	13600	* 17150	13050	9230
15'0"					* 55050	* 55050	* 45350	39100	* 40150	29250	* 37750	28900	30'2"
3000					* 28150	24050	* 22250	17350	18400	13250	17100	12350	9430
10'0"					* 60750	51850	* 48250	37400	39550	28500	37750	27200	30'10"
1500					* 29500	23050	* 23150	16750	18050	12900	17000	12200	9380
5'0"					* 63850	49650	* 50150	36050	38800	27800	37400	26800	30'9"
0			* 29500	* 29500	* 29300	22600	* 23150	16350	17850	12750	17650	12600	9080
0			* 69100	* 69100	* 63550	48650	* 50150	35250			38900	27750	29'9"
-1500			* 34650	* 34650	* 27650	22550	* 21950	16300			* 18500	13800	8500
-5'0"	* 60300	* 60300	* 75450	* 75450	* 59900	48550	* 47350	35150			* 40700	30500	27'10"
-3000	* 34200	* 34200	* 29850	* 29850	* 24100	22900	* 18350	16650			* 17950	16450	7590
-10'0"	* 74750	* 74750	* 64700	* 64700	* 51950	49300					* 39500	36500	24'9"
-4500			* 21800	* 21800	* 16700	* 16700					* 15900	* 15900	6170
-15'0"			* 46400	* 46400							* 34600	* 34600	19'11"

Illustration 116 g06585843

Lift Chart Above: 374, Mass Boom with a 7000 mm (276 inch) Boom and 2574 mm (101 inch) Stick, 650 mm (26 inch) DG track shoes and Heavy lift function ON.

i09606989

Lifting Capacities
(374 Excavator with Removal Type Counterweight)

SMCS Code: 7000

WARNING

Failure to comply to the rated load can cause possible personal injury or property damage. This includes the risk of unintended boom lowering. Review the rated load of a particular work tool before performing any operation. Make adjustments to the rated load as necessary for non-standard configurations.

There may be local regulations and/or government regulations that govern the use of excavators which lift heavy objects. Obey all local and government regulations.

Lifting capacities should be used as a guide. Work tools, uneven ground conditions, soft ground conditions, or poor ground conditions have effects on lifting capacities. The operator is responsible for being aware of these effects.

The lifting capacities are defined by “ISO 10567 2007”. The lifting capacities are defined as the lower value of 75% of the static tipping capacity or 87% of the hydraulic lift capacity.

Note: Lifting capacities are based upon a standard machine with the following conditions:

- Lift point: Stick nose without bucket
- Lubricants full
- Fuel tank full
- Steel track
- Complete cab with a 75 kg (165 lb) operator

Lifting capacities will vary with different work tools and attachments. The weight of a work tool attachment must be subtracted from the lift capacity. Consult your Cat ® dealer regarding the lifting capacities for specific work tools and attachments.

This machine may be equipped with various sticks. Lifting capacities may vary between the different sticks. Measure the distance on the stick between the boom hinge pin and the work tool hinge pin. This distance will inform you of the size of the stick that is equipped on the machine.

Use the lifting eye that is provided on the stick nose in order to lift objects. When the lifting eye is used, the connection must be made with a sling or shackle.

Note: Japan regulations require a shovel crane configuration in order to lift certain objects. A shovel crane has a rated load capacity, therefore, the lift capacities discussed below do not apply to a shovel crane configuration. Contact your Cat ® dealer for additional information.

Note: Regional regulations may require the use of an overload warning device and boom and stick lowering control valves during object handling applications.

Contact your Cat ® dealer for additional information.

Symbols Found in the Lifting Capacity Charts

Below are symbols that are commonly found on lifting capacity charts for track excavators.

Note: Depending on the machine configuration, some symbols may not be used.

(mm)
(inch) **Measurements are provided in millimeters and inches**

Lift Capacities are provided in kilograms and pounds

* **Load is limited by hydraulic lifting capacity rather than by a tipping load**

Lift point radius

Lift point height

Lifting capacity over the front of the machine

Lifting capacity over the side of the machine

Heavy Lift ON

374 Excavator with Removal Type Counterweight

7800 mm (307.1 inch) Reach Boom with 4670 mm (184 inch) Stick

(mm) (ft'inch")	1500 5'0"		3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"		10500 35'0"		12000 40'0"				
kg / lb																			(mm) (ft'inch")
10500											* 12400	* 12400					* 11450	* 11450	9210
35'0"																	* 25400	* 25400	29'8"
9000											* 13200	* 13200					* 10800	* 10800	10330
30'0"											* 29050	* 29050					* 23850	* 23850	33'6"
7500											* 13550	* 13550	* 13000	11850			* 10500	* 10500	11140
25'0"											* 29550	* 29550	* 28150	25350			* 23100	* 23100	36'4"
6000											* 14300	* 14300	* 13300	11650			* 10450	9600	11700
20'0"											* 31100	* 31100	* 29100	25000			* 22950	21200	38'3"
4500					* 28150	* 28150	* 21200	* 21200	* 17550	* 17550	* 15350	14500	* 13850	11350	* 11000	9000	* 10600	8950	12050
15'0"							* 45750	* 45750	* 38050	* 38050	* 33300	31200	* 30200	24350			* 23300	19750	39'5"
3000							* 24500	* 24500	* 19450	18250	* 16450	13900	* 14500	10950	12200	8850	* 10950	8600	12200
10'0"							* 52800	* 52800	* 42050	39350	* 35700	29900	* 31500	23600	* 24100	18950	* 24050	18950	40'0"
1500							* 26950	24000	* 21000	17350	* 17400	13350	14700	10650	12000	8650	* 11500	8500	12160
5'0"							* 58250	51750	* 45450	37450	* 37750	28750	31600	22850			* 25350	18700	39'10"
0					* 18300	* 18300	* 28150	23100	* 21950	16700	* 18000	12900	14400	10350			11950	8600	11930
0					* 42200	* 42200	* 60950	49700	* 47550	36000	38900	27800	31000	22300			26350	18950	39'1"
-1500			* 13250	* 13250	* 24050	* 24050	* 28100	22650	* 22100	16350	17800	12650	14250	10200			12550	9000	11500
-5'0"			* 29850	* 29850	* 55000	* 55000	* 60850	48700	* 47900	35200	38300	27200	30650	21950			27650	19850	37'8"
-3000	* 16250	* 16250	* 20850	* 20850	* 32600	* 32600	* 26850	22550	* 21400	16200	* 17400	12550	* 14100	10200			* 13250	9800	10850
-10'0"	* 36400	* 36400	* 47050	* 47050	* 74450	* 74450	* 58150	48500	* 46200	34900	* 37550	27050	* 30050	22000			* 29200	21650	35'5"
-4500			* 30100	* 30100	* 30900	* 30900	* 24300	22750	* 19500	16350	* 15550	12700					* 13050	11200	9920
-15'0"			* 68100	* 68100	* 66750	* 66750	* 52450	48950	* 41900	35200	* 33150	27350					* 28700	24850	32'4"
-6000			* 31500	* 31500	* 24950	* 24950	* 20000	* 20000	* 15750	* 15750							* 12300	* 12300	8640
-20'0"			* 67350	* 67350	* 53400	* 53400	* 42650	* 42650	* 33250	* 33250							* 26900	* 26900	27'11"

Illustration 117 g07511367

Lift chart above: Machine with 900 mm (35.4 inch) double grouser track shoes and heavy lift function OFF.

(mm) (ft'inch")	1500 5'0"		3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"		10500 35'0"		12000 40'0"				
+2																			(mm) (ft'inch")
10500 35'0"											* 12800	* 12800					* 11750 * 26150	* 11750 * 26150	9210 29'8"
9000 30'0"											* 13650 * 30050	* 13650 * 30050					* 11100 * 24550	* 11100 * 24550	10330 33'6"
7500 25'0"											* 14000 * 30600	* 14000 * 30600	* 13450 * 29000	11850 25350			* 10800 * 23850	10600 23550	11140 36'4"
6000 20'0"											* 14800 * 32200	* 14800 * 32200	* 13800 * 30150	11650 25000			* 10750 * 23700	9600 21200	11700 38'3"
4500 15'0"					* 29050	* 29050	* 21950 * 47300	* 21950 * 47300	* 18200 * 39350	* 18200 * 39350	* 15900 * 34500	14500 31200	* 14350 * 31300	11350 24350	* 11350	9000	* 10900 * 24000	8950 19750	12050 39'5"
3000 10'0"							* 25350 * 54650	* 25350 * 54650	* 20150 * 43550	18250 39350	* 17050 * 36950	13900 29900	* 15000 32400	10950 23600	12200 * 24850	8850 18950	* 11300 * 24800	8600 18950	12200 40'0"
1500 5'0"							* 27900 * 60300	24000 51750	* 21750 * 47050	17350 37450	* 18050 * 39100	13350 28750	14700 31600	10650 22850	12000	8650	11750 25900	8500 18700	12160 39'10"
0 0					* 18800 * 43450	* 18800 * 43450	* 29150 * 63100	23100 49700	* 22750 * 49250	16700 36000	18100 38900	12900 27800	14400 31000	10350 22300			11950 26350	8600 18950	11930 39'1"
-1500 -5'0"			* 13650 * 30750	* 13650 * 30750	* 24700 * 56550	* 24700 * 56550	* 29100 * 63050	22650 48700	* 22900 * 49650	16350 35200	17800 38300	12650 27200	14250 30650	10200 21950			12550 27650	9000 19850	11500 37'8"
-3000 -10'0"	* 16750 * 37450	* 16750 * 37450	* 21450 * 48400	* 21450 * 48400	* 33500 * 76550	* 33500 * 76550	* 27800 * 60250	22550 48500	* 22150 * 47900	16200 34900	17700 38100	12550 27050	14250 30750	10200 22000			13650 30150	9800 21650	10850 35'5"
-4500 -15'0"			* 30900 * 70000	* 30900 * 70000	* 32050 * 69200	* 32050 * 69200	* 25200 * 54400	22750 48950	* 20200 * 43500	16350 35200	* 16150 * 34450	12700 27350					* 13550 * 29800	11200 24850	9920 32'4"
-6000 -20'0"			* 32750 * 70050	* 32750 * 70050	* 25950 * 55500	* 25950 * 55500	* 20800 * 44350	* 20800 * 44350	* 16400 * 34550	* 16400 * 34550							* 12800 * 28000	* 12800 * 28000	8640 27'11"

Illustration 118 g07511370

Lift chart above: Machine with 900 mm (35.4 inch) double grouser track shoes and heavy lift function ON.

(mm) (ft'inch")	1500 5'0"		3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"		10500 35'0"		12000 40'0"				
kg / lb																			(mm) (ft'inch")
10500											* 12400	* 12400					* 11450	* 11450	9210
35'0"																	* 25400	* 25400	29'8"
9000											* 13200	* 13200					* 10800	* 10800	10330
30'0"											* 29050	* 29050					* 23850	* 23850	33'6"
7500											* 13550	* 13550	* 13000	11700			* 10500	10450	11140
25'0"											* 29550	* 29550	* 28150	25000			* 23100	* 23100	36'4"
6000											* 14300	* 14300	* 13300	11500			* 10450	9450	11700
20'0"											* 31100	* 31100	* 29100	24650			* 22950	20900	38'3"
4500					* 28150	* 28150	* 21200	* 21200	* 17550	* 17550	* 15350	14300	* 13850	11150	* 11000	8900	* 10600	8800	12050
15'0"							* 45750	* 45750	* 38050	* 38050	* 33300	30800	* 30200	24000			* 23300	19450	39'5"
3000							* 24500	* 24500	* 19450	18000	* 16450	13700	* 14500	10800	12000	8700	* 10950	8450	12200
10'0"							* 52800	* 52800	* 42050	38800	* 35700	29500	* 31500	23250	* 24100	18650	* 24050	18650	40'0"
1500							* 26950	23700	* 21000	17150	* 17400	13150	14500	10450	11800	8500	* 11500	8350	12160
5'0"							* 58250	51000	* 45450	36900	* 37750	28300	31150	22500			* 25350	18400	39'10"
0					* 18300	* 18300	* 28150	22750	* 21950	16500	17800	12700	14200	10200			11800	8450	11930
0					* 42200	* 42200	* 60950	48950	* 47550	35500	38350	27400	30550	21950			25950	18650	39'1"
-1500			* 13250	* 13250	* 24050	* 24050	* 28100	22300	* 22100	16100	17500	12450	14000	10050			12350	8850	11500
-5'0"			* 29850	* 29850	* 55000	* 55000	* 60850	48000	* 47900	34650	37700	26800	30200	21600			27250	19550	37'8"
-3000	* 16250	* 16250	* 20850	* 20850	* 32600	* 32600	* 26850	22200	* 21400	15950	* 17400	12350	14050	10050			* 13250	9650	10850
-10'0"	* 36400	* 36400	* 47050	* 47050	* 74450	* 74450	* 58150	47750	* 46200	34400	37500	26600	* 30050	21650			* 29200	21300	35'5"
-4500			* 30100	* 30100	* 30900	* 30900	* 24300	22400	* 19500	16100	* 15550	12500					* 13050	11050	9920
-15'0"			* 68100	* 68100	* 66750	* 66750	* 52450	48250	* 41900	34650	* 33150	26950					* 28700	24500	32'4"
-6000			* 31500	* 31500	* 24950	* 24950	* 20000	* 20000	* 15750	* 15750							* 12300	* 12300	8640
-20'0"			* 67350	* 67350	* 53400	* 53400	* 42650	* 42650	* 33250	* 33250							* 26900	* 26900	27'11"

Illustration 119 g07511374

Lift chart above: Machine with 750 mm (30 inch) double grouser track shoes and heavy lift function OFF.

(mm) (ft'inch")	1500 5'0"		3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"		10500 35'0"		12000 40'0"				
kg / lb																			(mm) (ft'inch")
10500											* 12800	* 12800					* 11750	* 11750	9210
35'0"																	* 26150	* 26150	29'8"
9000											* 13650	* 13650					* 11100	* 11100	10330
30'0"											* 30050	* 30050					* 24550	* 24550	33'6"
7500											* 14000	* 14000	* 13450	11700			* 10800	10450	11140
25'0"											* 30600	* 30600	* 29000	25000			* 23850	23200	36'4"
6000											* 14800	* 14800	* 13800	11500			* 10750	9450	11700
20'0"											* 32200	31950	* 30150	24650			* 23700	20900	38'3"
4500					* 29050	* 29050	* 21950	* 21950	* 18200	* 18200	* 15900	14300	* 14350	11150	* 11350	8900	* 10900	8800	12050
15'0"							* 47300	* 47300	* 39350	* 39350	* 34500	30800	* 31300	24000			* 24000	19450	39'5"
3000							* 25350	25150	* 20150	18000	* 17050	13700	14850	10800	12000	8700	* 11300	8450	12200
10'0"							* 54650	54250	* 43550	38800	* 36950	29500	31900	23250	* 24850	18650	* 24800	18650	40'0"
1500							* 27900	23700	* 21750	17150	* 18050	13150	14500	10450	11800	8500	11600	8350	12160
5'0"							* 60300	51000	* 47050	36900	* 39100	28300	31150	22500			25500	18400	39'10"
0					* 18800	* 18800	* 29150	22750	* 22750	16500	17800	12700	14200	10200			11800	8450	11930
0					* 43450	* 43450	* 63100	48950	* 49250	35500	38350	27400	30550	21950			25950	18650	39'1"
-1500			* 13650	* 13650	* 24700	* 24700	* 29100	22300	* 22900	16100	17500	12450	14000	10050			12350	8850	11500
-5'0"			* 30750	* 30750	* 56550	* 56550	* 63050	48000	49500	34650	37700	26800	30200	21600			27250	19550	37'8"
-3000	* 16750	* 16750	* 21450	* 21450	* 33500	* 33500	* 27800	22200	* 22150	15950	17400	12350	14050	10050			13450	9650	10850
-10'0"	* 37450	* 37450	* 48400	* 48400	* 76550	76500	* 60250	47750	* 47900	34400	37500	26600	30250	21650			29700	21300	35'5"
-4500			* 30900	* 30900	* 32050	* 32050	* 25200	22400	* 20200	16100	* 16150	12500					* 13550	11050	9920
-15'0"			* 70000	* 70000	* 69200	* 69200	* 54400	48250	* 43500	34650	* 34450	26950					* 29800	24500	32'4"
-6000			* 32750	* 32750	* 25950	* 25950	* 20800	* 20800	* 16400	* 16400							* 12800	* 12800	8640
-20'0"			* 70050	* 70050	* 55500	* 55500	* 44350	* 44350	* 34550	* 34550							* 28000	* 28000	27'11"

Illustration 120 g07511383

Lift chart above: Machine with 750 mm (30 inch) double grouser track shoes and heavy lift function ON.

(mm) (ft'inch")	1500 5'0"		3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"		10500 35'0"		12000 40'0"				
kg / lb																			(mm) (ft'inch")
10500											* 12400	* 12400					* 11450	* 11450	9210
35'0"																	* 25400	* 25400	29'8"
9000											* 13200	* 13200					* 10800	* 10800	10330
30'0"											* 29050	* 29050					* 23850	* 23850	33'6"
7500											* 13550	* 13550	* 13000	11600			* 10500	10350	11140
25'0"											* 29550	* 29550	* 28150	24750			* 23100	23000	36'4"
6000											* 14300	* 14300	* 13300	11350			* 10450	9350	11700
20'0"											* 31100	* 31100	* 29100	24400			* 22950	20700	38'3"
4500					* 28150	* 28150	* 21200	* 21200	* 17550	* 17550	* 15350	14200	* 13850	11050	* 11000	8800	* 10600	8700	12050
15'0"							* 45750	* 45750	* 38050	* 38050	* 33300	30500	* 30200	23750			* 23300	19250	39'5"
3000							* 24500	* 24500	* 19450	17850	* 16450	13550	* 14500	10700	11900	8600	* 10950	8400	12200
10'0"							* 52800	* 52800	* 42050	38450	* 35700	29200	* 31500	23000	* 24100	18450	* 24050	18450	40'0"
1500							* 26950	23450	* 21000	16950	* 17400	13000	14350	10350	11700	8450	11450	8250	12160
5'0"							* 58250	50550	* 45450	36550	* 37750	28050	30850	22300			25250	18200	39'10"
0					* 18300	* 18300	* 28150	22550	* 21950	16300	17650	12600	14050	10100			11650	8400	11930
0					* 42200	* 42200	* 60950	48500	* 47550	35150	37950	27100	30250	21700			25700	18450	39'1"
-1500			* 13250	* 13250	* 24050	* 24050	* 28100	22100	* 22100	15950	17350	12300	13900	9950			12250	8750	11500
-5'0"			* 29850	* 29850	* 55000	* 55000	* 60850	47500	* 47900	34300	37300	26500	29900	21400			26950	19350	37'8"
-3000	* 16250	* 16250	* 20850	* 20850	* 32600	* 32600	* 26850	22000	* 21400	15800	17250	12200	13900	9950			* 13250	9550	10850
-10'0"	* 36400	* 36400	* 47050	* 47050	* 74450	* 74450	* 58150	47300	* 46200	34000	37150	26350	29950	21450			* 29200	21050	35'5"
-4500			* 30100	* 30100	* 30900	* 30900	* 24300	22200	* 19500	15900	* 15550	12350					* 13050	10900	9920
-15'0"			* 68100	* 68100	* 66750	* 66750	* 52450	47750	* 41900	34300	* 33150	26650					* 28700	24250	32'4"
-6000			* 31500	* 31500	* 24950	* 24950	* 20000	* 20000	* 15750	* 15750							* 12300	* 12300	8640
-20'0"			* 67350	* 67350	* 53400	* 53400	* 42650	* 42650	* 33250	* 33250							* 26900	* 26900	27'11"

Illustration 121 g07511389

Lift chart above: Machine with 650 mm (26 inch) double grouser track shoes and heavy lift function OFF.

(mm) (ft'inch")	1500 5'0"		3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"		10500 35'0"		12000 40'0"				
+2																			(mm) (ft'inch")
10500											* 12800	* 12800					* 11750	* 11750	9210
35'0"																	* 26150	* 26150	29'8"
9000											* 13650	* 13650					* 11100	* 11100	10330
30'0"											* 30050	* 30050					* 24550	* 24550	33'6"
7500											* 14000	* 14000	* 13450	11600			* 10800	10350	11140
25'0"											* 30600	* 30600	* 29000	24750			* 23850	23000	36'4"
6000											* 14800	14750	* 13800	11350			* 10750	9350	11700
20'0"											* 32200	31700	* 30150	24400			* 23700	20700	38'3"
4500					* 29050	* 29050	* 21950	* 21950	* 18200	* 18200	* 15900	14200	* 14350	11050	* 11350	8800	* 10900	8700	12050
15'0"							* 47300	* 47300	* 39350	* 39350	* 34500	30500	* 31300	23750			* 24000	19250	39'5"
3000							* 25350	24950	* 20150	17850	* 17050	13550	14700	10700	11900	8600	* 11300	8400	12200
10'0"							* 54650	53750	* 43550	38450	* 36950	29200	31600	23000	* 24850	18450	* 24800	18450	40'0"
1500							* 27900	23450	* 21750	16950	* 18050	13000	14350	10350	11700	8450	11450	8250	12160
5'0"							* 60300	50550	* 47050	36550	38950	28050	30850	22300			25250	18200	39'10"
0					* 18800	* 18800	* 29150	22550	* 22750	16300	17650	12600	14050	10100			11650	8400	11930
0					* 43450	* 43450	* 63100	48500	* 49250	35150	37950	27100	30250	21700			25700	18450	39'1"
-1500			* 13650	* 13650	* 24700	* 24700	* 29100	22100	22800	15950	17350	12300	13900	9950			12250	8750	11500
-5'0"			* 30750	* 30750	* 56550	* 56550	* 63050	47500	49000	34300	37300	26500	29900	21400			26950	19350	37'8"
-3000	* 16750	* 16750	* 21450	* 21450	* 33500	* 33500	* 27800	22000	* 22150	15800	17250	12200	13900	9950			13300	9550	10850
-10'0"	* 37450	* 37450	* 48400	* 48400	* 76550	75750	* 60250	47300	* 47900	34000	37150	26350	29950	21450			29400	21050	35'5"
-4500			* 30900	* 30900	* 32050	* 32050	* 25200	22200	* 20200	15900	* 16150	12350					* 13550	10900	9920
-15'0"			* 70000	* 70000	* 69200	* 69200	* 54400	47750	* 43500	34300	* 34450	26650					* 29800	24250	32'4"
-6000			* 32750	* 32750	* 25950	* 25950	* 20800	* 20800	* 16400	16350							* 12800	* 12800	8640
-20'0"			* 70050	* 70050	* 55500	* 55500	* 44350	* 44350	* 34550	* 34550							* 28000	* 28000	27'11"

Illustration 122 g07511395

Lift chart above: Machine with 650 mm (26 inch) double grouser track shoes and heavy lift function ON.

7800 mm (307.1 inch) Reach Boom with 3600 mm (142 inch) Stick

(mm) (ft'inch")	3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"		10500 35'0"				
															(mm) (ft'inch")
10500													* 15700	* 15700	7760
35'0"													* 34950	* 34950	24'10"
9000									* 15250	15150			* 14650	* 14650	9070
30'0"													* 32450	* 32450	29'4"
7500							* 16400	* 16400	* 15200	15100			* 14250	12600	9980
25'0"							* 35700	* 35700	* 33250	32400			* 31450	28050	32'6"
6000					* 20850	* 20850	* 17700	* 17700	* 15800	14750	* 14650	11400	* 14250	11200	10610
20'0"					* 44950	* 44950	* 38400	* 38400	* 34400	31700			* 31300	24800	34'8"
4500					* 23950	* 23950	* 19350	18800	* 16700	14250	* 15000	11200	14200	10400	10990
15'0"					* 51600	* 51600	* 41900	40500	* 36200	30700	* 32650	24000	31350	22900	35'11"
3000					* 26800	24700	* 20950	17900	* 17600	13750	15000	10900	13650	9950	11150
10'0"					* 57800	53300	* 45350	38600	* 38100	29600	32250	23450	30100	21900	36'6"
1500					* 28400	23600	* 22100	17200	* 18250	13300	14700	10650	13550	9800	11110
5'0"					* 61400	50850	* 47850	37050	* 39550	28650	31700	22950	29850	21600	36'5"
0					* 28600	23050	* 22500	16750	18150	13000	14550	10500	13900	10050	10860
0			* 36650	* 36650	* 62000	49650	* 48750	36050	39050	28000	31350	22600	30550	22100	35'7"
-1500			* 26050	* 26050	* 27600	22900	* 22050	16550	18000	12850			14750	10650	10390
-5'0"			* 59750	* 59750	* 59850	49300	* 47750	35650	38750	27700			32500	23450	34'0"
-3000	* 25650	* 25650	* 31500	* 31500	* 25400	23050	* 20550	16600	* 16500	12900			* 14700	11800	9660
-10'0"	* 57950	* 57950	* 68400	* 68400	* 55000	49600	* 44300	35750	* 35350	27900			* 32300	26150	31'6"
-4500	* 31200	* 31200	* 26450	* 26450	* 21750	* 21750	* 17450	16900					* 14100	* 14100	8600
-15'0"	* 67550	* 67550	* 57100	* 57100	* 46750	* 46750	* 37200	36450					* 30900	* 30900	27'11"
-6000					* 15450	* 15450							* 12250	* 12250	7070
-20'0"					* 32300	* 32300							* 26450	* 26450	22'9"

Illustration 123 g07511414

Lift chart above: Machine with 900 mm (35.4 inch) double grouser track shoes and heavy lift function OFF.

(mm) (ft'inch")	3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"		10500 35'0"				
kg Lb +ℓ															(mm) (ft'inch")
10500													* 16150	* 16150	7760
35'0"													* 36000	* 36000	24'10"
9000									* 15700	15150			* 15100	14950	9070
30'0"													* 33400	* 33400	29'4"
7500							* 16950	* 16950	* 15750	15100			* 14650	12600	9980
25'0"							* 36900	* 36900	* 34400	32400			* 32350	28050	32'6"
6000					* 21500	* 21500	* 18300	* 18300	* 16350	14750	* 15200	11400	* 14650	11200	10610
20'0"					* 46400	* 46400	* 39700	* 39700	* 35600	31700			* 32250	24800	34'8"
4500					* 24750	* 24750	* 20050	18800	* 17250	14250	15250	11200	14200	10400	10990
15'0"					* 53350	* 53350	* 43350	40500	* 37500	30700	32800	24000	31350	22900	35'11"
3000					* 27700	24700	* 21700	17900	* 18200	13750	15000	10900	13650	9950	11150
10'0"					* 59750	53300	* 46950	38600	* 39500	29600	32250	23450	30100	21900	36'6"
1500					* 29400	23600	* 22900	17200	18450	13300	14700	10650	13550	9800	11110
5'0"					* 63550	50850	* 49550	37050	39750	28650	31700	22950	29850	21600	36'5"
0					* 29600	23050	* 23300	16750	18150	13000	14550	10500	13900	10050	10860
0			* 37700	* 37700	* 64150	49650	* 50500	36050	39050	28000	31350	22600	30550	22100	35'7"
-1500			* 26800	* 26800	* 28550	22900	* 22850	16550	18000	12850			14750	10650	10390
-5'0"			* 61450	* 61450	* 61950	49300	* 49450	35650	38750	27700			32500	23450	34'0"
-3000	* 26350	* 26350	* 32650	* 32650	* 26350	23050	* 21300	16600	* 17100	12900			* 15250	11800	9660
-10'0"	* 59550	* 59550	* 70900	* 70900	* 57000	49600	* 45950	35750	* 36700	27900			* 33550	26150	31'6"
-4500	* 32400	* 32400	* 27450	* 27450	* 22550	* 22550	* 18100	16900					* 14650	14100	8600
-15'0"	* 70200	* 70200	* 59250	* 59250	* 48500	* 48500	* 38650	36450					* 32100	31400	27'11"
-6000					* 16100	* 16100							* 12750	* 12750	7070
-20'0"					* 33600	* 33600							* 27600	* 27600	22'9"

Illustration 124 g07511446

Lift chart above: Machine with 900 mm (35.4 inch) double grouser track shoes and heavy lift function ON.

(mm) (ft'inch")	3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"		10500 35'0"				
															(mm) (ft'inch")
10500													* 15700	* 15700	7760
35'0"													* 34950	* 34950	24'10"
9000									* 15250	14950			* 14650	* 14650	9070
30'0"													* 32450	* 32450	29'4"
7500							* 16400	* 16400	* 15200	14900			* 14250	12400	9980
25'0"							* 35700	* 35700	* 33250	32000			* 31450	27700	32'6"
6000					* 20850	* 20850	* 17700	* 17700	* 15800	14550	* 14650	11250	* 14250	11050	10610
20'0"					* 44950	* 44950	* 38400	* 38400	* 34400	31300			* 31300	24450	34'8"
4500					* 23950	* 23950	* 19350	18550	* 16700	14050	* 15000	11050	14000	10200	10990
15'0"					* 51600	* 51600	* 41900	39950	* 36200	30250	32350	23650	30900	22600	35'11"
3000					* 26800	24350	* 20950	17650	* 17600	13550	14750	10750	13450	9800	11150
10'0"					* 57800	52550	* 45350	38050	* 38100	29200	31750	23100	29650	21550	36'6"
1500					* 28400	23300	* 22100	16950	18200	13100	14500	10500	13350	9650	11110
5'0"					* 61400	50150	* 47850	36550	39200	28250	31200	22600	29400	21300	36'5"
0					* 28600	22750	* 22500	16500	17900	12800	14350	10350	13650	9900	10860
0			* 36650	* 36650	* 62000	48950	* 48750	35550	38500	27550	30850	22250	30100	21750	35'7"
-1500			* 26050	* 26050	* 27600	22600	* 22050	16300	17700	12650			14500	10450	10390
-5'0"			* 59750	* 59750	* 59850	48550	* 47750	35100	38150	27300			32050	23100	34'0"
-3000	* 25650	* 25650	* 31500	* 31500	* 25400	22700	* 20550	16350	* 16500	12700			* 14700	11650	9660
-10'0"	* 57950	* 57950	* 68400	* 68400	* 55000	48850	* 44300	35200	* 35350	27450			* 32300	25750	31'6"
-4500	* 31200	* 31200	* 26450	* 26450	* 21750	* 21750	* 17450	16650					* 14100	13900	8600
-15'0"	* 67550	* 67550	* 57100	* 57100	* 46750	* 46750	* 37200	35900					* 30900	* 30900	27'11"
-6000					* 15450	* 15450							* 12250	* 12250	7070
-20'0"					* 32300	* 32300							* 26450	* 26450	22'9"

Illustration 125 g07511450

Lift chart above: Machine with 750 mm (30 inch) double grouser track shoes and heavy lift function OFF.

(mm) (ft'inch")	3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"		10500 35'0"				
kg / Lb +2															(mm) (ft'inch")
10500													* 16150	* 16150	7760
35'0"													* 36000	* 36000	24'10"
9000									* 15700	14950			* 15100	14750	9070
30'0"													* 33400	33200	29'4"
7500							* 16950	* 16950	* 15750	14900			* 14650	12400	9980
25'0"							* 36900	* 36900	* 34400	32000			* 32350	27700	32'6"
6000					* 21500	* 21500	* 18300	* 18300	* 16350	14550	* 15200	11250	* 14650	11050	10610
20'0"					* 46400	* 46400	* 39700	* 39700	* 35600	31300			* 32250	24450	34'8"
4500					* 24750	* 24750	* 20050	18550	* 17250	14050	15050	11050	14000	10200	10990
15'0"					* 53350	* 53350	* 43350	39950	* 37500	30250	32350	23650	30900	22600	35'11"
3000					* 27700	24350	* 21700	17650	* 18200	13550	14750	10750	13450	9800	11150
10'0"					* 59750	52550	* 46950	38050	* 39500	29200	31750	23100	29650	21550	36'6"
1500					* 29400	23300	* 22900	16950	18200	13100	14500	10500	13350	9650	11110
5'0"					* 63550	50150	* 49550	36550	39200	28250	31200	22600	29400	21300	36'5"
0					* 29600	22750	* 23300	16500	17900	12800	14350	10350	13650	9900	10860
0			* 37700	* 37700	* 64150	48950	50400	35550	38500	27550	30850	22250	30100	21750	35'7"
-1500			* 26800	* 26800	* 28550	22600	* 22850	16300	17700	12650			14500	10450	10390
-5'0"			* 61450	* 61450	* 61950	48550	* 49450	35100	38150	27300			32050	23100	34'0"
-3000	* 26350	* 26350	* 32650	* 32650	* 26350	22700	* 21300	16350	* 17100	12700			* 15250	11650	9660
-10'0"	* 59550	* 59550	* 70900	* 70900	* 57000	48850	* 45950	35200	* 36700	27450			* 33550	25750	31'6"
-4500	* 32400	* 32400	* 27450	* 27450	* 22550	* 22550	* 18100	16650					* 14650	13900	8600
-15'0"	* 70200	* 70200	* 59250	* 59250	* 48500	* 48500	* 38650	35900					* 32100	30950	27'11"
-6000					* 16100	* 16100							* 12750	* 12750	7070
-20'0"					* 33600	* 33600							* 27600	* 27600	22'9"

Illustration 126 g07511454

Lift chart above: Machine with 750 mm (30 inch) double grouser track shoes and heavy lift function ON.

(mm) (ft'inch")	3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"		10500 35'0"				
kg / Lb															(mm) (ft'inch")
10500													* 15700	* 15700	7760
35'0"													* 34950	* 34950	24'10"
9000									* 15250	14850			* 14650	14650	9070
30'0"													* 32450	* 32450	29'4"
7500							* 16400	* 16400	* 15200	14750			* 14250	12300	9980
25'0"							* 35700	* 35700	* 33250	31700			* 31450	27400	32'6"
6000					* 20850	* 20850	* 17700	* 17700	* 15800	14400	* 14650	11150	* 14250	10950	10610
20'0"					* 44950	* 44950	* 38400	* 38400	* 34400	31000			* 31300	24250	34'8"
4500					* 23950	* 23950	* 19350	18400	* 16700	13950	14900	10900	13850	10100	10990
15'0"					* 51600	* 51600	* 41900	39600	* 36200	30000	32050	23450	30600	22350	35'11"
3000					* 26800	24150	* 20950	17500	* 17600	13400	14600	10650	13300	9700	11150
10'0"					* 57800	52100	* 45350	37700	* 38100	28900	31450	22900	29350	21350	36'6"
1500					* 28400	23050	* 22100	16800	18050	13000	14350	10400	13200	9550	11110
5'0"					* 61400	49650	* 47850	36200	38800	27950	30900	22350	29100	21050	36'5"
0					* 28600	22500	* 22500	16350	17700	12650	14200	10250	13550	9750	10860
0			* 36650	* 36650	* 62000	48450	* 48750	35200	38100	27300	30550	22050	29800	21500	35'7"
-1500			* 26050	* 26050	* 27600	22350	* 22050	16150	17550	12550			14400	10350	10390
-5'0"			* 59750	* 59750	* 59850	48100	* 47750	34750	37800	27000			31700	22850	34'0"
-3000	* 25650	* 25650	* 31500	* 31500	* 25400	22500	* 20550	16150	* 16500	12600			* 14700	11500	9660
-10'0"	* 57950	* 57950	* 68400	* 68400	* 55000	48350	* 44300	34850	* 35350	27200			* 32300	25500	31'6"
-4500	* 31200	* 31200	* 26450	* 26450	* 21750	* 21750	* 17450	16500					* 14100	13750	8600
-15'0"	* 67550	* 67550	* 57100	* 57100	* 46750	* 46750	* 37200	35550					* 30900	30650	27'11"
-6000					* 15450	* 15450							* 12250	* 12250	7070
-20'0"					* 32300	* 32300							* 26450	* 26450	22'9"

Illustration 127 g07511458

Lift chart above: Machine with 650 mm (26 inch) double grouser track shoes and heavy lift function OFF.

(mm) (ft'inch")	3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"		10500 35'0"				
+2															(mm) (ft'inch")
10500													* 16150	* 16150	7760
35'0"													* 36000	* 36000	24'10"
9000									* 15700	14850			* 15100	14650	9070
30'0"													* 33400	32950	29'4"
7500							* 16950	* 16950	* 15750	14750			* 14650	12300	9980
25'0"							* 36900	* 36900	* 34400	31700			* 32350	27400	32'6"
6000					* 21500	* 21500	* 18300	* 18300	* 16350	14400	15150	11150	* 14650	10950	10610
20'0"					* 46400	* 46400	* 39700	* 39700	* 35600	31000			* 32250	24250	34'8"
4500					* 24750	* 24750	* 20050	18400	* 17250	13950	14900	10900	13850	10100	10990
15'0"					* 53350	* 53350	* 43350	39600	* 37500	30000	32050	23450	30600	22350	35'11"
3000					* 27700	24150	* 21700	17500	* 18200	13400	14600	10650	13300	9700	11150
10'0"					* 59750	52100	* 46950	37700	* 39500	28900	31450	22900	29350	21350	36'6"
1500					* 29400	23050	* 22900	16800	18050	13000	14350	10400	13200	9550	11110
5'0"					* 63550	49650	* 49550	36200	38800	27950	30900	22350	29100	21050	36'5"
0					* 29600	22500	23200	16350	17700	12650	14200	10250	13550	9750	10860
0			* 37700	* 37700	* 64150	48450	49900	35200	38100	27300	30550	22050	29800	21500	35'7"
-1500			* 26800	* 26800	* 28550	22350	* 22850	16150	17550	12550			14400	10350	10390
-5'0"			* 61450	* 61450	* 61950	48100	49400	34750	37800	27000			31700	22850	34'0"
-3000	* 26350	* 26350	* 32650	* 32650	* 26350	22500	* 21300	16150	* 17100	12600			* 15250	11500	9660
-10'0"	* 59550	* 59550	* 70900	* 70900	* 57000	48350	* 45950	34850	* 36700	27200			* 33550	25500	31'6"
-4500	* 32400	* 32400	* 27450	* 27450	* 22550	* 22550	* 18100	16500					* 14650	13750	8600
-15'0"	* 70200	* 70200	* 59250	* 59250	* 48500	* 48500	* 38650	35550					* 32100	30650	27'11"
-6000					* 16100	* 16100							* 12750	* 12750	7070
-20'0"					* 33600	* 33600							* 27600	* 27600	22'9"

Illustration 128 g07511461

Lift chart above: Machine with 650 mm (26 inch) double grouser track shoes and heavy lift function ON.

7000 mm (276 inch) Mass Boom with 2995 mm (118 inch) Stick

(mm) (ft'inch")	3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"				
kg / Lb													(mm) (ft'inch")
9000 30'0"											* 14650 * 32550	* 14650 * 32550	7350 23'7"
7500 25'0"							* 17200 * 37700	* 17200 * 37700			* 13900 * 30650	* 13900 * 30650	8450 27'5"
6000 20'0"					* 20700 * 44800	* 20700 * 44800	* 18050 * 39250	* 18050 * 39250	* 16600	14250	* 13700 * 30150	* 13700 * 30150	9180 29'11"
4500 15'0"			* 32150 * 68800	* 32150 * 68800	* 23550 * 50800	* 23550 * 50800	* 19400 * 42100	18600 40050	* 17100 * 37200	13900 29900	* 13900 * 30600	12450 27550	9620 31'6"
3000 10'0"					* 26300 * 56750	24700 53250	* 20850 * 45200	17750 38200	* 17750 * 38550	13500 29000	* 14550 * 32000	11800 26000	9810 32'1"
1500 5'0"					* 27950 * 60500	23550 50750	* 21900 * 47450	17050 36700	* 18200 39400	13100 28200	* 15700 * 34500	11650 25600	9760 32'0"
0 0			* 30900 * 71650	* 30900 * 71650	* 28200 * 61150	23000 49450	* 22200 * 48050	16600 35750	18050 38900	12850 27700	16800 36950	12000 26400	9480 31'0"
-1500 -5'0"	* 25450 * 57450	* 25450 * 57450	* 34800 * 75600	* 34800 * 75600	* 27050 * 58600	22850 49100	* 21400 * 46200	16450 35450			* 17000 * 37450	13000 28700	8930 29'2"
-3000 -10'0"	* 37400 * 81550	* 37400 * 81550	* 30550 * 66150	* 30550 * 66150	* 24200 * 52250	23100 49650	* 18850 * 40300	16650 36000			* 16750 * 36850	15200 33650	8060 26'3"
-4500 -15'0"			* 23600 * 50550	* 23600 * 50550	* 18550 * 39200	* 18550 * 39200					* 15500 * 33850	* 15500 * 33850	6750 21'10"

Illustration 129 g07511469

Lift chart above: Machine with 900 mm (35.4 inch) double grouser track shoes and heavy lift function OFF.

(mm) (ft'inch")	3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"				
kg / Lb +2													(mm) (ft'inch")
9000 30'0"											* 15100 * 33500	* 15100 * 33500	7350 23'7"
7500 25'0"							* 17800 * 39000	* 17800 * 39000			* 14300 * 31550	* 14300 * 31550	8450 27'5"
6000 20'0"					* 21400 * 46300	* 21400 * 46300	* 18650 * 40600	* 18650 * 40600	* 17200	14250	* 14100 * 31050	13750 30600	9180 29'11"
4500 15'0"			* 33250 * 71100	* 33250 * 71100	* 24350 * 52550	* 24350 * 52550	* 20100 * 43550	18600 40050	* 17700 * 38550	13900 29900	* 14350 * 31550	12450 27550	9620 31'6"
3000 10'0"					* 27200 * 58700	24700 53250	* 21600 * 46800	17750 38200	* 18400 * 39900	13500 29000	* 15000 * 32950	11800 26000	9810 32'1"
1500 5'0"					* 28950 * 62650	23550 50750	* 22700 * 49150	17050 36700	18300 39400	13100 28200	* 16150 * 35550	11650 25600	9760 32'0"
0 0			* 31750 * 73600	* 31750 * 73600	* 29250 * 63350	23000 49450	* 23000 * 49800	16600 35750	18050 38900	12850 27700	16800 36950	12000 26400	9480 31'0"
-1500 -5'0"	* 26150 * 59100	* 26150 * 59100	* 36050 * 78350	* 36050 * 78350	* 28000 * 60700	22850 49100	* 22150 * 47900	16450 35450			* 17650 * 38850	13000 28700	8930 29'2"
-3000 -10'0"	* 38850 * 84650	* 38850 * 84650	* 31650 * 68600	* 31650 * 68600	* 25100 * 54200	23100 49650	* 19550 * 41850	16650 36000			* 17400 * 38250	15200 33650	8060 26'3"
-4500 -15'0"			* 24550 * 52550	* 24550 * 52550	* 19250 * 40750	* 19250 * 40750					* 16100 * 35250	* 16100 * 35250	6750 21'10"

Illustration 130 g07511471

Lift chart above: Machine with 900 mm (35.4 inch) double grouser track shoes and heavy lift function ON.

(mm) (ft'inch")	3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"				
kg Lb													(mm) (ft'inch")
9000 30'0"											* 14650 * 32550	* 14650 * 32550	7350 23'7"
7500 25'0"							* 17200 * 37700	* 17200 * 37700			* 13900 * 30650	* 13900 * 30650	8450 27'5"
6000 20'0"					* 20700 * 44800	* 20700 * 44800	* 18050 * 39250	* 18050 * 39250	* 16600	14100	* 13700 * 30150	13600 * 30150	9180 29'11"
4500 15'0"			* 32150 * 68800	* 32150 * 68800	* 23550 * 50800	* 23550 * 50800	* 19400 * 42100	18350 39500	* 17100 * 37200	13750 29500	* 13900 * 30600	12300 27150	9620 31'6"
3000 10'0"					* 26300 * 56750	24350 52550	* 20850 * 45200	17500 37700	* 17750 * 38550	13300 28600	* 14550 * 32000	11600 25600	9810 32'1"
1500 5'0"					* 27950 * 60500	23200 50000	* 21900 * 47450	16800 36200	18050 38850	12900 27750	* 15700 * 34500	11450 25200	9760 32'0"
0 0			* 30900 * 71650	* 30900 * 71650	* 28200 * 61150	22650 48700	* 22200 * 48050	16350 35200	17800 38300	12650 27250	16550 36400	11800 26000	9480 31'0"
-1500 -5'0"	* 25450 * 57450	* 25450 * 57450	* 34800 * 75600	* 34800 * 75600	* 27050 * 58600	22500 48400	* 21400 * 46200	16200 34950			* 17000 * 37450	12800 28250	8930 29'2"
-3000 -10'0"	* 37400 * 81550	* 37400 * 81550	* 30550 * 66150	* 30550 * 66150	* 24200 * 52250	22750 48950	* 18850 * 40300	16450 35450			* 16750 * 36850	14950 33150	8060 26'3"
-4500 -15'0"			* 23600 * 50550	* 23600 * 50550	* 18550 * 39200	* 18550 * 39200					* 15500 * 33850	* 15500 * 33850	6750 21'10"

Illustration 131 g07511473

Lift chart above: Machine with 750 mm (30 inch) double grouser track shoes and heavy lift function OFF.

(mm) (ft'inch")	3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"				
kg / Lb													(mm) (ft'inch")
9000											* 15100	* 15100	7350
30'0"											* 33500	* 33500	23'7"
7500							* 17800	* 17800			* 14300	* 14300	8450
25'0"							* 39000	* 39000			* 31550	* 31550	27'5"
6000					* 21400	* 21400	* 18650	* 18650	* 17200	14100	* 14100	13600	9180
20'0"					* 46300	* 46300	* 40600	* 40600			* 31050	30150	29'11"
4500			* 33250	* 33250	* 24350	* 24350	* 20100	18350	* 17700	13750	* 14350	12300	9620
15'0"			* 71100	* 71100	* 52550	* 52550	* 43550	39500	* 38550	29500	* 31550	27150	31'6"
3000					* 27200	24350	* 21600	17500	* 18400	13300	* 15000	11600	9810
10'0"					* 58700	52550	* 46800	37700	39700	28600	* 32950	25600	32'1"
1500					* 28950	23200	* 22700	16800	18050	12900	16000	11450	9760
5'0"					* 62650	50000	* 49150	36200	38850	27750	35200	25200	32'0"
0			* 31750	* 31750	* 29250	22650	* 23000	16350	17800	12650	16550	11800	9480
0			* 73600	* 73600	* 63350	48700	* 49800	35200	38300	27250	36400	26000	31'0"
-1500	* 26150	* 26150	* 36050	* 36050	* 28000	22500	* 22150	16200			* 17650	12800	8930
-5'0"	* 59100	* 59100	* 78350	77550	* 60700	48400	* 47900	34950			* 38850	28250	29'2"
-3000	* 38850	* 38850	* 31650	* 31650	* 25100	22750	* 19550	16450			* 17400	14950	8060
-10'0"	* 84650	* 84650	* 68600	* 68600	* 54200	48950	* 41850	35450			* 38250	33150	26'3"
-4500			* 24550	* 24550	* 19250	* 19250					* 16100	* 16100	6750
-15'0"			* 52550	* 52550	* 40750	* 40750					* 35250	* 35250	21'10"

Illustration 132 g07511476

Lift chart above: Machine with 750 mm (30 inch) double grouser track shoes and heavy lift function ON.

(mm) (ft'inch")	3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"				
kg / Lb													(mm) (ft'inch")
9000											* 14650	* 14650	7350
30'0"											* 32550	* 32550	23'7"
7500							* 17200	* 17200			* 13900	* 13900	8450
25'0"							* 37700	* 37700			* 30650	* 30650	27'5"
6000					* 20700	* 20700	* 18050	* 18050	* 16600	13950	* 13700	13450	9180
20'0"					* 44800	* 44800	* 39250	* 39250			* 30150	29900	29'11"
4500			* 32150	* 32150	* 23550	* 23550	* 19400	18200	* 17100	13600	* 13900	12150	9620
15'0"			* 68800	* 68800	* 50800	* 50800	* 42100	39150	* 37200	29200	* 30600	26850	31'6"
3000					* 26300	24150	* 20850	17350	* 17750	13150	* 14550	11500	9810
10'0"					* 56750	52050	* 45200	37350	* 38550	28300	* 32000	25350	32'1"
1500					* 27950	23000	* 21900	16650	17850	12750	* 15700	11350	9760
5'0"					* 60500	49550	* 47450	35800	38450	27500	* 34500	24950	32'0"
0			* 30900	* 30900	* 28200	22400	* 22200	16200	17600	12500	16350	11700	9480
0			* 71650	* 71650	* 61150	48250	* 48050	34850	37900	27000	36050	25700	31'0"
-1500	* 25450	* 25450	* 34800	* 34800	* 27050	22300	* 21400	16050			* 17000	12700	8930
-5'0"	* 57450	* 57450	* 75600	* 75600	* 58600	47900	* 46200	34550			* 37450	27950	29'2"
-3000	* 37400	* 37400	* 30550	* 30550	* 24200	22500	* 18850	16250			* 16750	14800	8060
-10'0"	* 81550	* 81550	* 66150	* 66150	* 52250	48450	* 40300	35100			* 36850	32850	26'3"
-4500			* 23600	* 23600	* 18550	* 18550					* 15500	* 15500	6750
-15'0"			* 50550	* 50550	* 39200	* 39200					* 33850	* 33850	21'10"

Illustration 133 g07511481

Lift chart above: Machine with 650 mm (26 inch) double grouser track shoes and heavy lift function OFF.

(mm) (ft'inch")	3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"				
kg / Lb													(mm) (ft'inch")
9000 30'0"											* 15100 * 33500	* 15100 * 33500	7350 23'7"
7500 25'0"							* 17800 * 39000	* 17800 * 39000			* 14300 * 31550	* 14300 * 31550	8450 27'5"
6000 20'0"					* 21400 * 46300	* 21400 * 46300	* 18650 * 40600	* 18650 * 40600	* 17200	13950	* 14100 * 31050	13450 29900	9180 29'11"
4500 15'0"			* 33250 * 71100	* 33250 * 71100	* 24350 * 52550	* 24350 * 52550	* 20100 * 43550	18200 39150	* 17700 * 38550	13600 29200	* 14350 * 31550	12150 26850	9620 31'6"
3000 10'0"					* 27200 * 58700	24150 52050	* 21600 * 46800	17350 37350	18300 39350	13150 28300	* 15000 * 32950	11500 25350	9810 32'1"
1500 5'0"					* 28950 * 62650	23000 49550	* 22700 * 49150	16650 35800	17850 38450	12750 27500	15800 34850	11350 24950	9760 32'0"
0 0			* 31750 * 73600	* 31750 * 73600	* 29250 * 63350	22400 48250	* 23000 49750	16200 34850	17600 37900	12500 27000	16350 36050	11700 25700	9480 31'0"
-1500 -5'0"	* 26150 * 59100	* 26150 * 59100	* 36050 * 78350	35850 76800	* 28000 * 60700	22300 47900	* 22150 * 47900	16050 34550			* 17650 * 38850	12700 27950	8930 29'2"
-3000 -10'0"	* 38850 * 84650	* 38850 * 84650	* 31650 * 68600	* 31650 * 68600	* 25100 * 54200	22500 48450	* 19550 * 41850	16250 35100			* 17400 * 38250	14800 32850	8060 26'3"
-4500 -15'0"			* 24550 * 52550	* 24550 * 52550	* 19250 * 40750	* 19250 * 40750					* 16100 * 35250	* 16100 * 35250	6750 21'10"

Illustration 134 g07511483

Lift chart above: Machine with 650 mm (26 inch) double grouser track shoes and heavy lift function ON.

7000 mm (276 inch) Mass Boom with 2574 mm (101.3 inch) Stick

(mm) (ft'inch")	3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"				
kg / Lb													(mm) (ft'inch")
9000											* 17650	* 17650	6820
30'0"											* 39200	* 39200	21'10"
7500							* 18250	* 18250			* 16600	* 16600	8000
25'0"							* 40100	* 40100			* 36700	* 36700	25'11"
6000					* 21850	* 21850	* 18900	* 18900			* 16400	14850	8770
20'0"					* 47300	* 47300	* 41150	* 41150			* 36100	33000	28'7"
4500					* 24650	* 24650	* 20200	18500	* 17750	13900	* 16700	13350	9230
15'0"					* 53150	* 53150	* 43750	39900	* 38750	29900	* 36700	29550	30'2"
3000					* 27150	24550	* 21500	17750	* 18250	13550	17500	12600	9430
10'0"					* 58600	52900	* 46550	38200	* 39650	29100	* 38500	27800	30'10"
1500					* 28450	23550	* 22350	17100	18400	13200	17350	12450	9380
5'0"					* 61600	50750	* 48350	36850	39650	28450	38200	27450	30'9"
0			* 28700	* 28700	* 28250	23100	* 22350	16750	* 18050	13050	* 17850	12900	9080
0			* 67250	* 67250	* 61300	49750	* 48350	36100			* 39300	28400	29'9"
-1500			* 33400	* 33400	* 26650	23100	* 21150	16700			* 17800	14150	8500
-5'0"	* 58650	* 58650	* 72800	* 72800	* 57750	49700	* 45650	36000			* 39250	31200	27'10"
-3000	* 32950	* 32950	* 28750	* 28750	* 23200	* 23200	* 17700	17050			* 17300	16850	7590
-10'0"	* 72000	* 72000	* 62350	* 62350	* 50100	* 50100					* 38050	37350	24'9"
-4500			* 20950	* 20950	* 16050	* 16050					* 15250	* 15250	6170
-15'0"			* 44600	* 44600							* 33250	* 33250	19'11"

Illustration 135 g07511485

Lift chart above: Machine with 900 mm (35.4 inch) double grouser track shoes and heavy lift function OFF.

(mm) (ft'inch")	3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"				
kg / Lb +ℓ													(mm) (ft'inch")
9000											* 18150	* 18150	6820
30'0"											* 40350	* 40350	21'10"
7500							* 18850	* 18850			* 17100	* 17100	8000
25'0"							* 41450	* 41450			* 37750	* 37750	25'11"
6000					* 22600	* 22600	* 19550	19300			* 16850	14850	8770
20'0"					* 48900	* 48900	* 42600	41500			* 37100	33000	28'7"
4500					* 25450	* 25450	* 20900	18500	* 18400	13900	* 17150	13350	9230
15'0"					* 54950	* 54950	* 45300	39900	* 40100	29900	* 37750	29550	30'2"
3000					* 28100	24550	* 22250	17750	18800	13550	17500	12600	9430
10'0"					* 60650	52900	* 48150	38200	40400	29100	38550	27800	30'10"
1500					* 29450	23550	* 23100	17100	18400	13200	17350	12450	9380
5'0"					* 63750	50750	* 50100	36850	39650	28450	38200	27450	30'9"
0			* 29500	* 29500	* 29300	23100	* 23150	16750	18250	13050	18050	12900	9080
0			* 69100	* 69100	* 63500	49750	* 50100	36100			39750	28400	29'9"
-1500			* 34600	* 34600	* 27600	23100	* 21900	16700			* 18450	14150	8500
-5'0"	* 60300	* 60300	* 75450	* 75450	* 59850	49700	* 47300	36000			* 40650	31200	27'10"
-3000	* 34200	* 34200	* 29800	* 29800	* 24100	23450	* 18350	17050			* 17950	16850	7590
-10'0"	* 74750	* 74750	* 64700	* 64700	* 51950	50450					* 39500	37350	24'9"
-4500			* 21750	* 21750	* 16700	* 16700					* 15900	* 15900	6170
-15'0"			* 46400	* 46400							* 34600	* 34600	19'11"

Illustration 136 g07511486

Lift chart above: Machine with 900 mm (35.4 inch) double grouser track shoes and heavy lift function ON.

(mm) (ft'inch")	3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"				
													(mm) (ft'inch")
9000											* 17650	* 17650	6820
30'0"											* 39200	* 39200	21'10"
7500							* 18250	* 18250			* 16600	* 16600	8000
25'0"							* 40100	* 40100			* 36700	* 36700	25'11"
6000					* 21850	* 21850	* 18900	* 18900			* 16400	14650	8770
20'0"					* 47300	* 47300	* 41150	41000			* 36100	32550	28'7"
4500					* 24650	* 24650	* 20200	18300	* 17750	13700	* 16700	13150	9230
15'0"					* 53150	* 53150	* 43750	39400	* 38750	29450	* 36700	29100	30'2"
3000					* 27150	24200	* 21500	17500	* 18250	13350	17250	12450	9430
10'0"					* 58600	52200	* 46550	37650	* 39650	28700	38000	27400	30'10"
1500					* 28450	23200	* 22350	16850	18150	13000	17100	12300	9380
5'0"					* 61600	50000	* 48350	36300	39100	28000	37650	27050	30'9"
0			* 28700	* 28700	* 28250	22800	* 22350	16500	18000	12850	17800	12700	9080
0			* 67250	* 67250	* 61300	49050	* 48350	35550			39200	28000	29'9"
-1500			* 33400	* 33400	* 26650	22750	* 21150	16450			* 17800	13950	8500
-5'0"	* 58650	* 58650	* 72800	* 72800	* 57750	48950	* 45650	35450			* 39250	30750	27'10"
-3000	* 32950	* 32950	* 28750	* 28750	* 23200	23100	* 17700	16800			* 17300	16600	7590
-10'0"	* 72000	* 72000	* 62350	* 62350	* 50100	49750					* 38050	36850	24'9"
-4500			* 20950	* 20950	* 16050	* 16050					* 15250	* 15250	6170
-15'0"			* 44600	* 44600							* 33250	* 33250	19'11"

Illustration 137 g07511488

Lift chart above: Machine with 750 mm (30 inch) double grouser track shoes and heavy lift function OFF.

(mm) (ft'inch")	3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"				
+2 kg lb													(mm) (ft'inch")
9000											* 18150	* 18150	6820
30'0"											* 40350	* 40350	21'10"
7500							* 18850	* 18850			* 17100	* 17100	8000
25'0"							* 41450	* 41450			* 37750	* 37750	25'11"
6000					* 22600	* 22600	* 19550	19050			* 16850	14650	8770
20'0"					* 48900	* 48900	* 42600	41000			* 37100	32550	28'7"
4500					* 25450	* 25450	* 20900	18300	* 18400	13700	* 17150	13150	9230
15'0"					* 54950	* 54950	* 45300	39400	* 40100	29450	* 37750	29100	30'2"
3000					* 28100	24200	* 22250	17500	18500	13350	17250	12450	9430
10'0"					* 60650	52200	* 48150	37650	39800	28700	38000	27400	30'10"
1500					* 29450	23200	* 23100	16850	18150	13000	17100	12300	9380
5'0"					* 63750	50000	* 50100	36300	39100	28000	37650	27050	30'9"
0			* 29500	* 29500	* 29300	22800	* 23150	16500	18000	12850	17800	12700	9080
0			* 69100	* 69100	* 63500	49050	* 50100	35550			39200	28000	29'9"
-1500			* 34600	* 34600	* 27600	22750	* 21900	16450			* 18450	13950	8500
-5'0"	* 60300	* 60300	* 75450	* 75450	* 59850	48950	* 47300	35450			* 40650	30750	27'10"
-3000	* 34200	* 34200	* 29800	* 29800	* 24100	23100	* 18350	16800			* 17950	16600	7590
-10'0"	* 74750	* 74750	* 64700	* 64700	* 51950	49750					* 39500	36850	24'9"
-4500			* 21750	* 21750	* 16700	* 16700					* 15900	* 15900	6170
-15'0"			* 46400	* 46400							* 34600	* 34600	19'11"

Illustration 138 g07511494

Lift chart above: Machine with 750 mm (30 inch) double grouser track shoes and heavy lift function ON.

(mm) (ft'inch")	3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"				
kg / Lb													(mm) (ft'inch")
9000											* 17650	* 17650	6820
30'0"											* 39200	* 39200	21'10"
7500							* 18250	* 18250			* 16600	* 16600	8000
25'0"							* 40100	* 40100			* 36700	* 36700	25'11"
6000					* 21850	* 21850	* 18900	18900			* 16400	14500	8770
20'0"					* 47300	* 47300	* 41150	40650			* 36100	32250	28'7"
4500					* 24650	* 24650	* 20200	18100	* 17750	13600	* 16700	13050	9230
15'0"					* 53150	* 53150	* 43750	39000	* 38750	29200	* 36700	28850	30'2"
3000					* 27150	24000	* 21500	17300	* 18250	13200	17050	12300	9430
10'0"					* 58600	51700	* 46550	37300	39450	28400	37650	27150	30'10"
1500					* 28450	23000	* 22350	16700	18000	12900	16950	12150	9380
5'0"					* 61600	49550	* 48350	35950	38700	27750	37300	26750	30'9"
0			* 28700	* 28700	* 28250	22550	* 22350	16350	17800	12700	17600	12600	9080
0			* 67250	* 67250	* 61300	48550	* 48350	35200			38800	27700	29'9"
-1500			* 33400	* 33400	* 26650	22550	* 21150	16300			* 17800	13800	8500
-5'0"	* 58650	* 58650	* 72800	* 72800	* 57750	48500	* 45650	35100			* 39250	30450	27'10"
-3000	* 32950	* 32950	* 28750	* 28750	* 23200	22900	* 17700	16650			* 17300	16450	7590
-10'0"	* 72000	* 72000	* 62350	* 62350	* 50100	49250					* 38050	36450	24'9"
-4500			* 20950	* 20950	* 16050	* 16050					* 15250	* 15250	6170
-15'0"			* 44600	* 44600							* 33250	* 33250	19'11"

Illustration 139 g07511496

Lift chart above: Machine with 650 mm (26 inch) double grouser track shoes and heavy lift function OFF.

(mm) (ft'inch")	3000 10'0"		4500 15'0"		6000 20'0"		7500 25'0"		9000 30'0"				
+ℓ kg Lb													(mm) (ft'inch")
9000 30'0"											* 18150 * 40350	* 18150 * 40350	6820 21'10"
7500 25'0"							* 18850 * 41450	* 18850 * 41450			* 17100 * 37750	* 17100 * 37750	8000 25'11"
6000 20'0"					* 22600 * 48900	* 22600 * 48900	* 19550 * 42600	18900 40650			* 16850 * 37100	14500 32250	8770 28'7"
4500 15'0"					* 25450 * 54950	* 25450 * 54950	* 20900 * 45300	18100 39000	* 18400 * 40100	13600 29200	* 17150 * 37750	13050 28850	9230 30'2"
3000 10'0"					* 28100 * 60650	24000 51700	* 22250 * 48150	17300 37300	18350 39450	13200 28400	17050 37650	12300 27150	9430 30'10"
1500 5'0"					* 29450 * 63750	23000 49550	* 23100 * 50100	16700 35950	18000 38700	12900 27750	16950 37300	12150 26750	9380 30'9"
0 0			* 29500 * 69100	* 29500 * 69100	* 29300 * 63500	22550 48550	* 23150 50050	16350 35200	17800	12700	17600 38800	12600 27700	9080 29'9"
-1500 -5'0"	* 60300	* 60300	* 34600 * 75450	* 34600 * 75450	* 27600 * 59850	22550 48500	* 21900 * 47300	16300 35100			* 18450 * 40650	13800 30450	8500 27'10"
-3000 -10'0"	* 34200 * 74750	* 34200 * 74750	* 29800 * 64700	* 29800 * 64700	* 24100 * 51950	22900 49250	* 18350	16650			* 17950 * 39500	16450 36450	7590 24'9"
-4500 -15'0"			* 21750 * 46400	* 21750 * 46400	* 16700	* 16700					* 15900 * 34600	* 15900 * 34600	6170 19'11"

Illustration 140 g07511498

Lift chart above: Machine with 650 mm (26 inch) double grouser track shoes and heavy lift function ON.

Identification Information

i09774224

Plate Locations and Film Locations

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

The Product Identification Number (PIN) will be used to identify a powered machine that is designed for an operator to ride.

Cat ® products such as engines, transmissions, and major attachments that are not designed for an operator to ride are identified by Serial Numbers.

The regional certification plate is used to verify that the product conforms to all of the requirements that were established by a country or a group of countries. The product is tested by a certified testing group in order to verify conformance.

For quick reference, record the identification numbers in the spaces that are provided below the illustration.

Product Identification Number (PIN) Plate

Illustration 141 g06276619

The PIN plate is positioned on the front of the machine, close to the operator compartment.

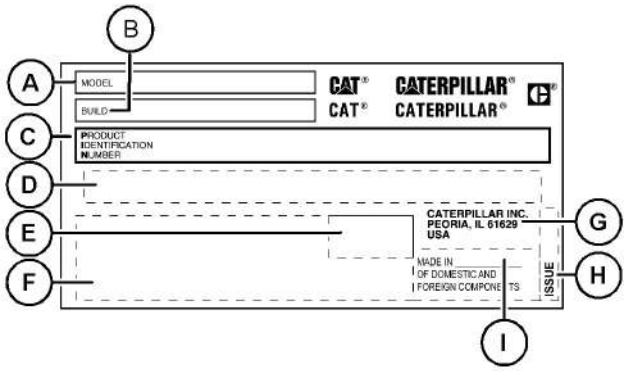


Illustration 142 g06201159

Manufacturer Name and Address _____

Model (A) _____

Build (B) _____

Product Identification Number (C) _____

Bar Code (D) _____

Month and Year of Manufacture Plate (If Required) (E) _____

Regional Certification Plate (If Required) (F) _____

Address of Manufacturer (G) _____

Issue (H) _____

Country of Origin Info Plate (If Required) (I) _____

Local regulation may require documentation of the month and/or year of manufacture in the Operation and Maintenance Manual. Comply with these regulations

Regional Product Marking (If Equipped)

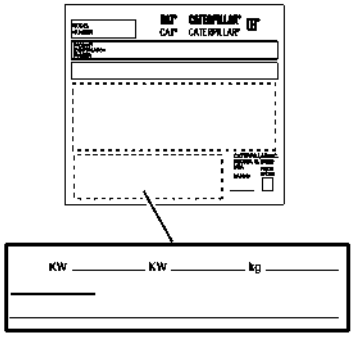


Illustration 143 g06650998

Regional marking plate

This plate is positioned on the bottom left side of the PIN plate or near the PIN plate.

Note: The regional marking plate or plates are installed on machines that meet the applicable requirements that were effective at that time and may differ from the one shown above.

Regional product marking may include one or more of the following:

CE mark

UKCA mark

EAC mark

Gulf Standardization Organization (GSO) mark

Ukraine mark

The following information may be stamped onto the regional product marking plate. For quick reference, record this information in the spaces that are provided below:

- Engine Power Primary Engine (kW)_____
- Engine Power for Additional Engine (If Equipped)_____
- Typical Machine Operating Weight (kg)_____
- Month and/or Year of Manufacture_____
- Machine Type_____

Eurasian Economic Union

Manufacturer Information

Manufacturer:

Caterpillar Inc.,
100 N.E. Adams Street
Peoria, Illinois 61629, USA

Entity authorized by the manufacturer at the territory of Eurasian Economic Union:

CATERPILLAR CENTRAL ASIA LLP
Kunaev Str., 77, Almaty,
Medeu district 050000, Republic of Kazakhstan

China Pin Plate

Will be located next to the pin plate or on the pin plate.

Illustration 144 g03153576

Machine Specification Film

The machine specification film is on machines that are going into Japan.

The Japanese Industrial Safety and Health Act requires machine specifications to be displayed on a film that can easily be seen by the operator.

If equipped, this film will be on the cab door.

Illustration 145 g06178867
Typical example

Electromagnetic Emissions

Note: This label is on machines that are going into Canada.

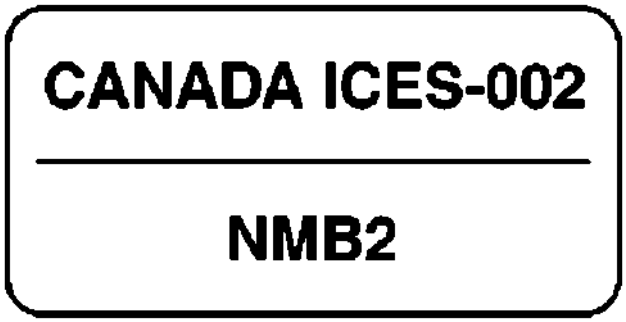


Illustration 146 g06063443

If equipped, this label is located next to the pin plate. This label verifies that the product meets the requirements of “ICES-002” Issue 6. Compliance to “ICES-002” Issue 6 is accomplished by meeting electromagnetic emissions industry standard “CISPR-12”.

Engine Serial Number

This label is on the engine.

Engine Serial Number _____

Sound Certification

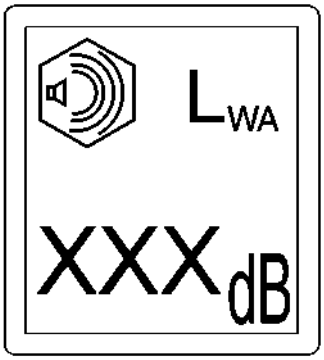


Illustration 147 g06675270

Sound certification film

A typical example of this film is shown.

A certification film is used to verify the environmental sound certification on machines that are certified to the regional requirements. A film installed on your machine will have a value. The value that is listed on the film indicates the guaranteed exterior sound power level (L_{wa}) at the time of manufacture for the conditions that are specified in the following sound test procedures:

- “ISO 6395:1988”
- European Union “2000/14/EC” amended by “2005/88/EC”
- United Kingdom “2001 No. 1701” amended by “2005 No. 3525”

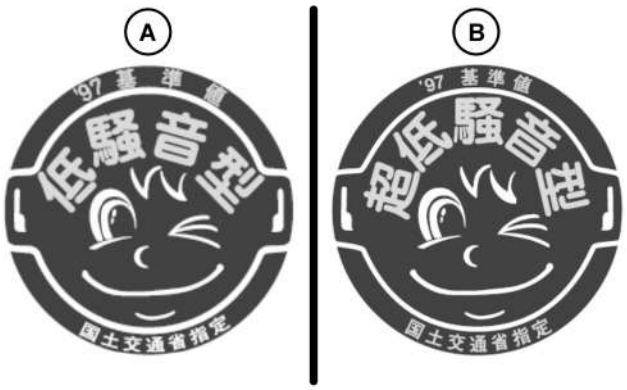


Illustration 148 g03105800

(A) Low Noise Film
(B) Super Low Noise Film

If equipped, these certification labels are used to verify the Japan Ministry of Land, Infrastructure, Transportation, and Tourism (MLIT) noise designation according to the Japan “Designation Rule of Low Noise Type Construction Machine” .

Low Noise (A) – Verifies that the Japan “MLIT” designates the machine as a “Low Noise” type construction machine.

Super Low Noise (B) – Verifies that the Japan “MLIT” designates the machine as a “Super Low Noise” type construction machine.

ROPS/FOPS Plate

Illustration 149 g06344390

If equipped, this label is on the left side pillar in the cab.

⚠ WARNING

Structural damage, an overturn, modification, alteration, or improper repair, can impair this structure's protective capability thereby voiding this certification. Do not weld on or drill holes in the structure. Consult a Caterpillar dealer to determine this structure's limitations without voiding its certification.

Certification for Rollover Protective Structure (ROPS) and for Falling Object Protective Structure (FOPS)

The unaltered ROPS or the FOPS structure meets the following standards for the ROPS at the time of installation: “ISO 3471-2008 and GB/T 17922-2014”. Also, the FOPS canopy meets the following standards at the time of installation: “ISO 3449-2005 LEVEL II and GB/T 17771-2010 LEVEL II”.

This machine has been certified to the standards that are listed on the certification plate. The maximum mass of the machine, which includes the operator and the attachments without a payload, should not exceed the mass on the certification plate.

Refer to “Guards“ for more information.

Clean Emissions Model (CEM) Serial Number

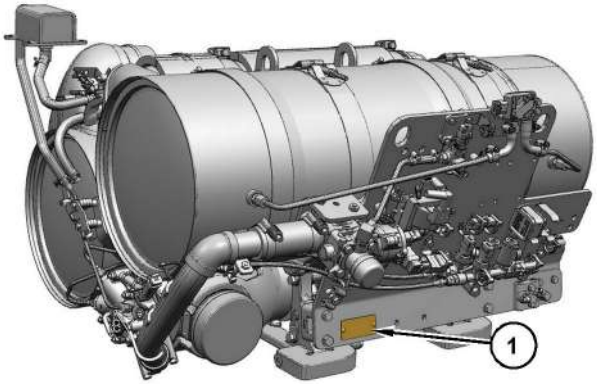


Illustration 150 g07495504

This label is on the right-hand side of the clean emissions model package.

(1) CEM Serial Number

Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) Serial Number

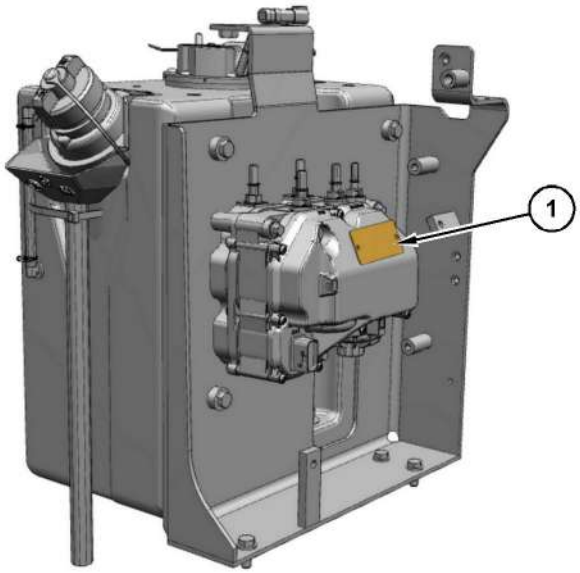


Illustration 151 g07488024

This label is on the diesel exhaust fluid pump.

(1) DEF Serial Number

i05757951

Emissions Certification Film

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000; 7405

Note: This information is pertinent in Japan.

Illustration 152 g03654940

2014 certification label example

A certification label is located on the cab door.

The certification label verifies that the machine conforms to the 2014 Japan Nonroad Special Motor Vehicle Exhaust Regulation.

i08756279

Emissions Certification Film

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000; 7405

Consult your Cat dealer for an Emission Control Warranty Statement.

The emission certification film is located on the engine or inside the engine enclosure.

Declaration of Conformity
(European Union)

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

Table 39

An EU Declaration of Conformity document was provided with the machine if it was manufactured to comply with specific requirements for the European Union. In order to determine the details of the applicable Directives, review the complete EU Declaration of Conformity provided with the machine. The extract shown below from an EU Declaration of Conformity for machines that are declared compliant to “2006/42/EC” applies only to those machines originally “CE” marked by the manufacturer listed and which have not since been modified.

ORIGINAL EU DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

Manufacturer: Caterpillar Inc., 100 N.E. Adams Street, Peoria, Illinois 61629, USA

Person authorized to compile the Technical File and to communicate relevant part (s) of the Technical File to the Authorities of European Union Member States on request:

Standards & Regulations Manager,Caterpillar France S.A.S
40 Avenue Leon-Blum 38000 Grenoble, France

I, the undersigned, _____, hereby certify that the construction equipment specified hereunder

Description:	Generic Denomination:	Earth-moving Equipment
	Function:	Hydraulic Excavator
	Model/Type:	374
	Serial Number:	
	Commercial Name:	Caterpillar

Fulfills all the relevant provisions of the following Directives

Directives	Notified Body	Document No.
2000/14/EC amended by 2005/88/EC, Note (1)		
2006/42/EC	N/A	
2014/30/EU	N/A	

Note (1) Guaranteed Sound Power Level -_____dB (A) Annex VI
Representative Equipment Type Sound Power Level - _____dB (A)
[Engine Power per ISO 14396 -____ kW, Rated engine speed - _____ rpm
Technical Documentation accessible through person listed above authorized to compile the Technical File

Done at: **Signature**

Date: **Name/Position**

Note: The above information was correct as of January 2019, but may be subject to change, please refer to the individual declaration of conformity issued with the machine for exact details.

Declaration of Conformity
(Great Britain)

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

Table 40

A Declaration of Conformity document was provided with the machine if it was manufactured to comply with specific requirements for the Great Britain. In order to determine the details of the applicable legislation, review the complete Declaration of Conformity provided with the machine. The extract shown below from a Great Britain Declaration of Conformity for machines that are declared compliant to 2008 No. 1597 applies only to those machines originally “UKCA” marked by the manufacturer listed and which have not since been modified.

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

Manufacturer: Caterpillar Inc., 100 N.E. Adams Street, Peoria, Illinois 61629, USA

Person authorized to compile the Technical File and to communicate relevant part (s) of the Technical File to the Authorities on request:

Standards & Regulations Manager Caterpillar France SAS
40 Avenue Leon-Blum 38000 Grenoble, France

I, the undersigned, _____, hereby certify that the construction equipment specified hereunder

Description:	Generic Denomination:	Earth - moving Equipment
	Function:	Hydraulic Excavator
	Model/Type:	374
	Serial Number:	
	Commercial Name:	Caterpillar

Fulfills all the relevant provisions of these regulations and/or other enactments as listed below:

Legislation	Approved Body	Document No.
2008 No. 1597	N/A	
2016 No. 1091	N/A	
2001 No. 1701 amended by 2005 No. 3525, Note (1)	Note (2)	

Note (1) Schedule -_____ Guaranteed Sound Power Level -_____dB (A)
Representative Equipment Type Sound Power Level - _____dB (A)
Engine Power per ____-____ kW Rated engine speed - _____ rpm
Technical Documentation accessible through person listed above authorized to compile the Technical File

Note (2) If applicable, information related to Approved Body.

Designated standards taken into consideration: (for 2008 No. 1597 and 2016 No. 1091 Regulation or enactments only)

Done at: **Signature**

Date: **Name/Position**

Note: The above information was correct as of June 2021, but may be subject to change, please refer to the individual declaration of conformity issued with the machine for exact details.

Operation Section

Before Operation

i07103304

Mounting and Dismounting

SMCS Code: 6700; 7000

Illustration 153 g06224270
Typical example

Mount the machine and dismount the machine only at locations that have steps and/or handholds. Before you mount the machine, clean the steps and the handholds. Inspect the steps and handholds. Make all necessary repairs.

Face the machine whenever you get on the machine and whenever you get off the machine.

Maintain a three-point contact with the steps and with the handholds.

Note: Three-point contact can be two feet and one hand. Three-point contact can also be one foot and two hands.

Do not mount a moving machine. Do not dismount a moving machine. Never jump off the machine. Do not carry tools or supplies when you try to mount the machine or when you try to dismount the machine. Use a hand line to pull equipment onto the platform. Do not use any controls as handholds when you enter the operator compartment or when you exit the operator compartment.

Machine Access System Specifications

The machine access system has been designed to meet the intent of the technical requirements in “ISO 2867 Earth-moving Machinery – Access Systems”. The access system provides for operator access to the operator station and to conduct the maintenance procedures described in Maintenance section.

Alternate Exit

Machines that are equipped with cabs have alternate exits. For additional information, see Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Alternate Exit”.

i10111116

Daily Inspection

SMCS Code: 1000; 6319; 6700; 7000

WARNING

Access to this service point may require climbing on the equipment. Slipping or falling while climbing on the equipment could result in personal injury or death. Refer to the Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Mounting and Dismounting” topic, for safety information.

WARNING

Crush Hazard!

Machine access doors can pinch, trap, or crush personnel when being closed.

Use caution while closing machine access doors. Ensure that all personnel are clear of the machine before closing the access doors.

WARNING

Personal injury or death can result from escaping fluid under pressure.

Escaping fluid under pressure, even a very small pin-hole size leak, can penetrate body tissue and cause serious injury and possible death. If fluid is injected into your skin, it must be treated immediately by a doctor familiar with this type of injury.

Always use a board or cardboard when checking for a leak.

⚠ WARNING

Hot oil and hot components can cause personal injury. Do not allow hot oil or hot components to contact skin.

At operating temperature, the engine coolant is hot and under pressure.

Steam can cause personal injury.

Check the coolant level only after the engine has been stopped and the cooling system pressure cap is cool enough to touch with your bare hand.

Remove the cooling system pressure cap slowly to relieve pressure.

Cooling system conditioner contains alkali. Avoid contact with the skin and eyes to prevent personal injury.

NOTICE
Accumulated grease and oil on a machine is a fire hazard. Remove this debris with steam cleaning or high pressure water, at least every 1000 hours or each time any significant quantity of oil is spilled on a machine.

For maximum service life of the machine, before you mount the machine and start the machine, perform a thorough walk-around inspection.

Every 10 Service Hours or Daily for First 50 Hours

Daily, perform the procedures that are applicable to your machine:

- Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Boom and Stick Linkage - Lubricate”
- Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Bucket Linkage - Lubricate”

Every 10 Service Hours or Daily

Daily, perform the procedures that are applicable to your machine:

- Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Bucket Lifting Eye - Inspect”
- Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Air Cleaner Dust Valve - Clean/Inspect”
- Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Cooling System Coolant Level - Check”
- Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Engine Oil Level - Check”
- Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Fuel System Water Separator - Drain”
- Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Fuel Tank Water and Sediment - Drain”
- Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Hydraulic System Oil Level - Check”
- Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Indicators and Gauges - Test”
- Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Seat Belt - Inspect”
- Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Track Adjustment - Inspect”
- Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Travel Alarm - Test”
- Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Undercarriage - Check”

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Maintenance Interval Schedule” for all maintenance recommendations.

Note: Watch closely for leaks. If you observe a leak, find the source of the leak and correct the leak. If you suspect a leak or you observe a leak, check the fluid levels more frequently.

Inspection Points On Cylinders

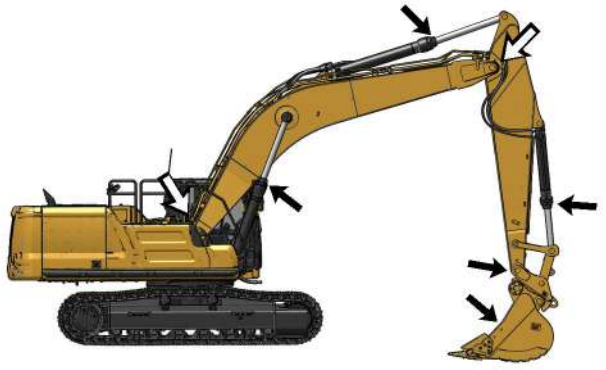


Illustration 154 g06267412
Inspection points (cylinders)

Inspect all the belts for the engine attachments. Replace any belts that are worn, frayed, or broken.

1. Inspect the attachment control linkage, attachment cylinders, and attachment for damage or excessive wear. Make any necessary repairs.
2. Inspect the lights for broken bulbs and for broken lenses. Replace any broken bulbs and any broken lenses.

3. Inspect the engine compartment for any trash buildup. Remove any trash buildup from the engine compartment.
4. Inspect the cooling system for any leaks, for faulty hoses and for any trash buildup. Correct any leaks. Remove any trash from the radiator.

Inspection Points On Hydraulic System

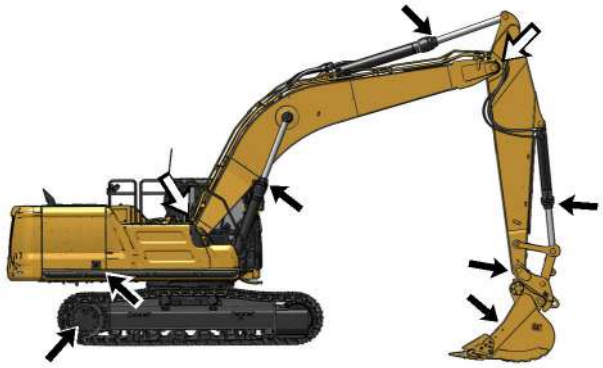


Illustration 155 g07637384

Inspection points (hydraulic system)

1. Inspect the hydraulic system for leaks. Inspect the tank, cylinder rod seals, hoses, tubes, plugs, connections, and fittings. Correct any leaks in the hydraulic system.
2. Inspect the tubes and hoses along the boom and stick for wear and leaks. Replace any hoses or tubes that are worn or leak.
3. Inspect the differential and the final drives for leaks. Make any necessary repairs.
4. Inspect the swing drive for leaks.
5. Make sure that all covers and guards are securely attached. Inspect the covers and the guards for damage.

Inspection Points On Walkways and Handholds

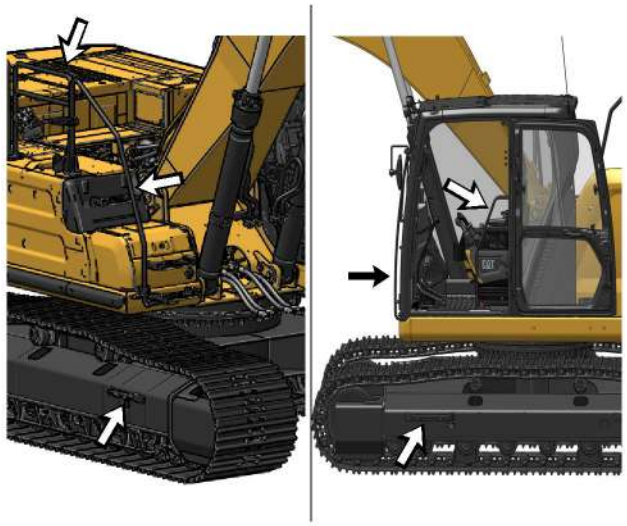


Illustration 156 g06267482

Inspection points (walkways and handholds)

1. Inspect the steps, the walkways, and the handholds. Clean the steps, the walkways, and the handholds. Make any necessary repairs.
2. Inspect the operator compartment for trash buildup. Check for trash buildup under the floorplate and on the crankcase guard. Keep these areas clean.
3. Adjust the mirrors to achieve the best visibility. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Mirror” for more information.

Machine Operation

i09859994

Alternate Exit

SMCS Code: 7310

WARNING

Personal injury may occur when removing and installing windows in the operator station.

The windows may break during removal or installation.

Broken or cracked windows may have sharp edges that can cause cuts or lacerations.

To avoid injury always ensure adequate personal protective equipment (protective glasses, face shield and gloves) are worn.

WARNING

Crush Hazard!

Machine access doors can pinch, trap, or crush personnel when being closed.

Use caution while closing machine access doors. Ensure that all personnel are clear of the machine before closing the access doors.

NOTICE

Not following the recommendations found in this manual can lead to reduced performance and compartment failure.

Rear Window with Ring Seal (If Equipped)

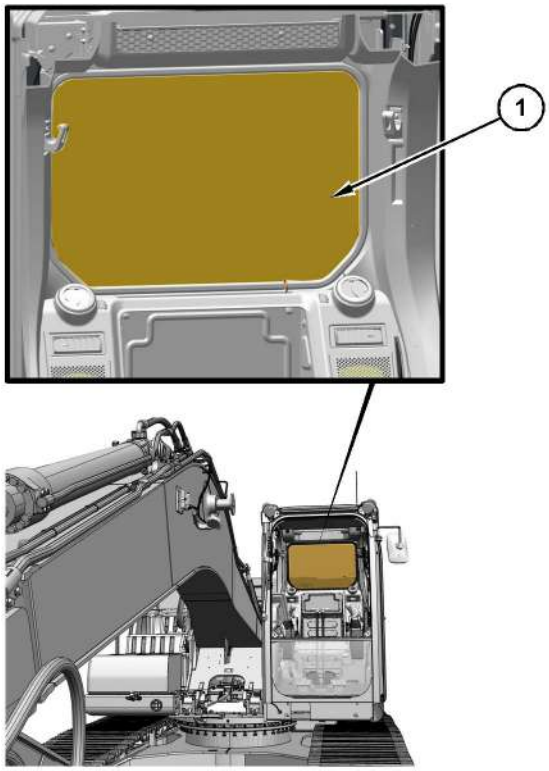


Illustration 157 g07616015

Front view of the machine

(1) Rear window

Rear window (1) is located behind the operator seat.

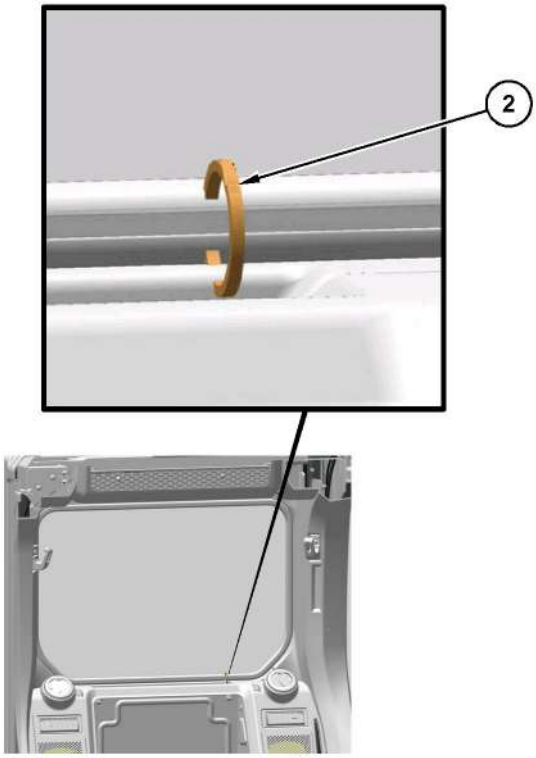


Illustration 158 g07616045

Some parts removed for better clarity

(2) Ring

Alternate Exit – If the primary exit is blocked, rear window (1) can be used as an alternate exit.

To remove rear window (1), pull ring (2) and completely remove the seal of rear window (1), then push out the glass. Climb through rear window (1) opening to exit the cab.

Rear Window with Lever (If Equipped)

The rear window can be opened from inside or outside the cab.

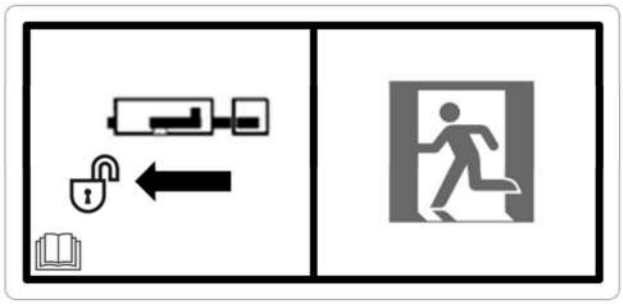


Illustration 159 g07616142

Alternate exit message is located on the rear window

Rear Window Opening from Inside the Cab

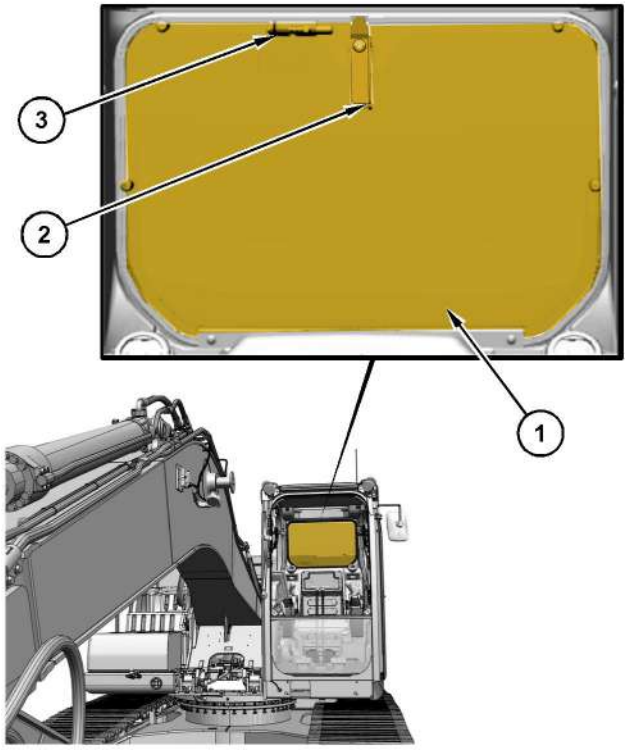


Illustration 160 g07616097

Front view of the machine

(1) Rear window
(2) Handle
(3) Latch

Rear window (1) is located behind the operator seat.

Alternate Exit – If the primary exit is blocked, rear window (1) can be used as an alternate exit.

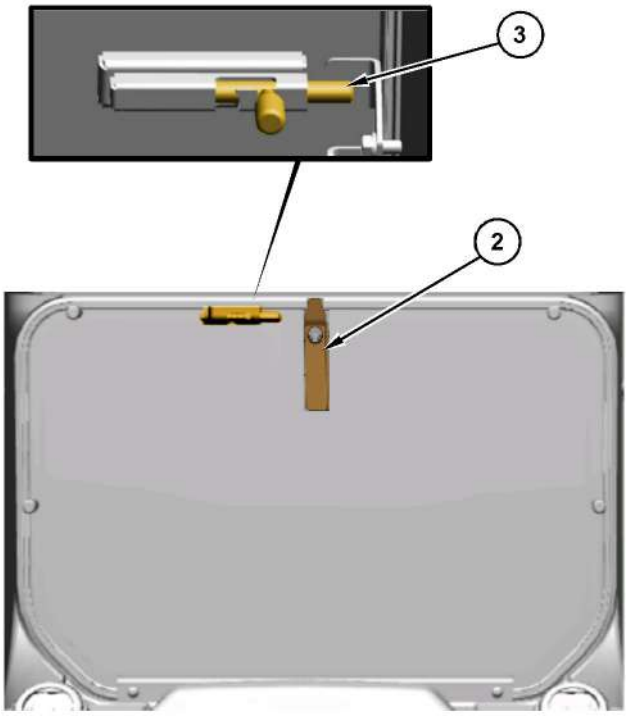


Illustration 161 g07616184

Rear window (1) in LOCKED position

(2) Handle
(3) Latch

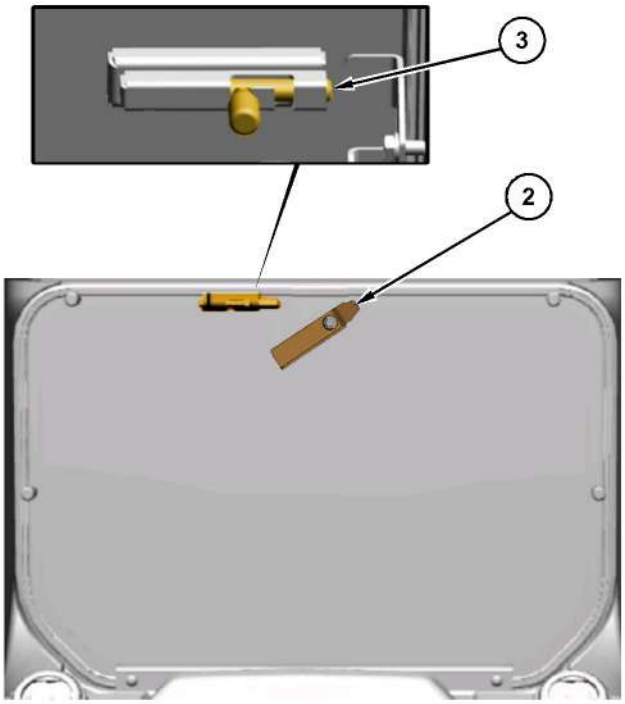


Illustration 162 g07616205

Rear window (1) in UNLOCKED position

(2) Handle
(3) Latch

To unlock rear window (1) from inside the cab, rotate handle (2) either clockwise or counterclockwise and move latch (3) to UNLOCKED position. Refer to Illustration 162 for more information.

To open rear window (1) from inside the cab, push rear window (1) outward.

Rear Window Opening from Outside the Cab

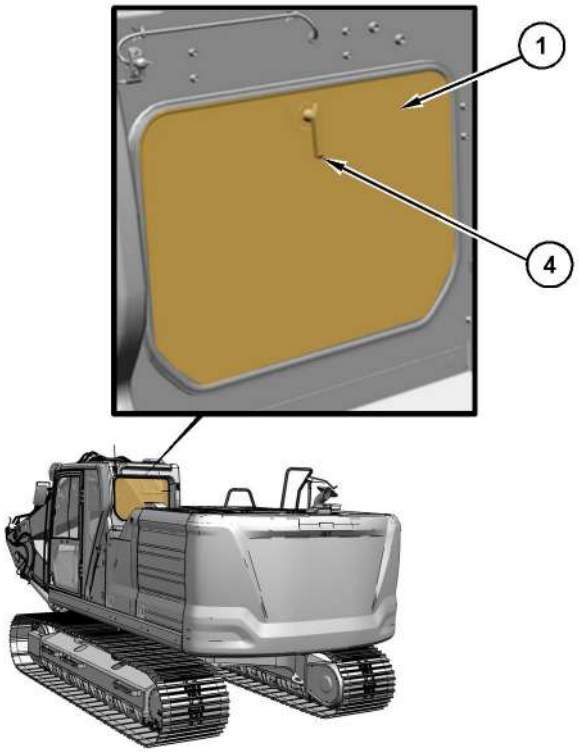


Illustration 163 g07616219

Back view of the machine

(1) Rear window
(4) Handle

To unlock rear window (1) from outside the cab, rotate handle (4) either clockwise or counterclockwise for UNLOCKED position.

Note: Before operating the machine, unlock rear window (1) from inside the cab. Refer to Illustration 162 for rear window (1) in UNLOCKED position.

Note: Opening rear window (1) from outside the cab is possible only when rear window (1) is in UNLOCKED position inside the cab.

To open rear window (1) from the outside of the cab, pull rear window (1) outward.

i09578013

Seat

SMCS Code: 5258-025; 7312-025; 7324; 7327

Comfort Level Seat (If Equipped)

Illustration 164 g07502410

(1) Headrest
(2) Backrest adjuster
(3) Seat and console fore and aft adjuster
(4) Indicator
(5) Seat height adjustment lever
(6) Seat fore and aft lever

The operator can adjust the height of headrest (1). To adjust headrest (1), hold headrest (1) with both hands. Move headrest (1) up and down. Release headrest (1) when the desired position is attained. Headrest (1) will remain in the desired position.

Pull up on backrest adjuster (2) to release the lock. Move the backrest to the desired position and then release backrest adjuster (2).

Lift up on seat and console fore and aft adjuster (3) to release the seat from the locked position. Adjust the seat and console forward or rearward to the desired position and then release the lever to lock the seat.

Use seat height adjustment lever (5) to adjust the seat for the operator's height and weight. Move the adjuster switch to the “+” symbol to raise the height. Ratchet the seat upward without sitting in the seat. Then sit in the seat to check the color of indicator (4). When indicator (4) is showing green, the seat is in the right range for the operator. Further adjustment can be made as long as indicator (4) stays green.

To lower the seat, move the adjust switch to the “-” symbol. Ratchet the adjuster downward without sitting in the seat. Then sit in the seat to check the color of indicator (4). When indicator (4) is showing green, the seat is in the right range for the operator. Further adjustment can be made as long as indicator (4) stays green.

Pull upward on seat fore and aft lever (6) to release the cushion lock. Adjust the seat cushion forward or backward to the desired position and then release the lock to lock the cushion in place.

Deluxe Level Seat (If Equipped)

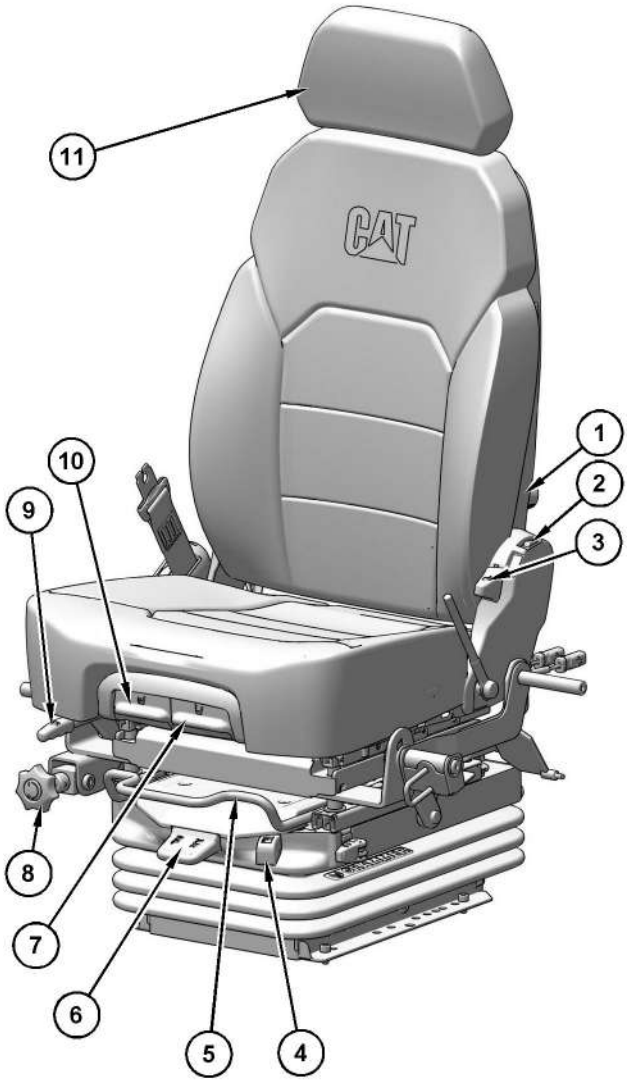


Illustration 165 g07502467

(1) Adjustment lever for the lumbar support
(2) Seat heater switch
(3) Adjustment lever for reclining the seat
(4) Indicator
(5) Seat and console fore and aft lever
(6) Seat height adjustment
(7) Seat cushion angle adjuster
(8) Console height adjustment
(9) Seat fore and aft adjuster
(10) Seat cushion fore and aft adjuster
(11) Headrest

The lumbar support is located in the back of the seat. Turn knob (1) (if equipped) counterclockwise to increase the force of the lumbar support. To decrease the lumbar support, continue to turn the knob counterclockwise.

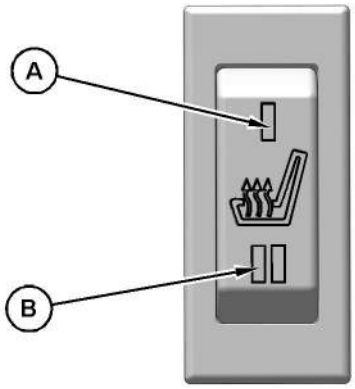


Illustration 166 g07502472

Seat heater switch

(A) Low heat
(B) High heat

Seat heater switch (2) is a three position switch. The middle position of the switch is off. Press the top position of the switch for low heat. Press the bottom of the switch for high heat.

⚠ WARNING

Heat-induced burns can occur when some people use a seat heater. Do not use the seat heater if you have a reduced ability to sense temperature changes, a reduced ability to feel pain, or have sensitive skin.

While using the seat heater, items placed on the seat such as a seat cover or additional cushions may cause the seat system to overheat which may result in personal injury. Do not use items such as seat cushions or seat covers while using the seat heater.

Pull up lever (3) to change the angle of the backrest. With the backrest in the desired position. Release the lever.

Push in seat fore and aft adjuster (9) to adjust the fore/aft position of the seat cushion.

Pull seat and console fore and aft lever (5) to adjust the seat and the console forward and backward.

Operate seat height adjustment (6) to adjust the seat and the console to the desired height. Pull up the lever to raise the height of the seat. Push down on the lever to lower the seat. Indicator (4) will turn green when the seat is at the optimum height for the operator's height and weight. If indicator (4) is yellow, further adjustment is required.

Note: Do not operate the seat compressor for over a minute or damage can result.

Use console height adjustment (8) to adjust the height of the console. When the lever is pulled forward, a gear is released. The operator can rotate the lever freely. Release the lever to return to the original position.

To adjust the seat forward or backward, pull up Seat fore and aft adjuster lever (9) and hold the lever. Move the seat to the desired position. To lock the seat in the selected position, release the lever.

Push Seat cushion angle adjuster (7) to adjust the tilt angle of the seat cushion.

The operator can adjust the height of headrest (11). To adjust the headrest, hold headrest (11) with both hands. Move headrest (11) up and down. Release headrest (11) when the desired position is attained. The headrest will remain in the desired position.

Premium Level Seat (If Equipped)

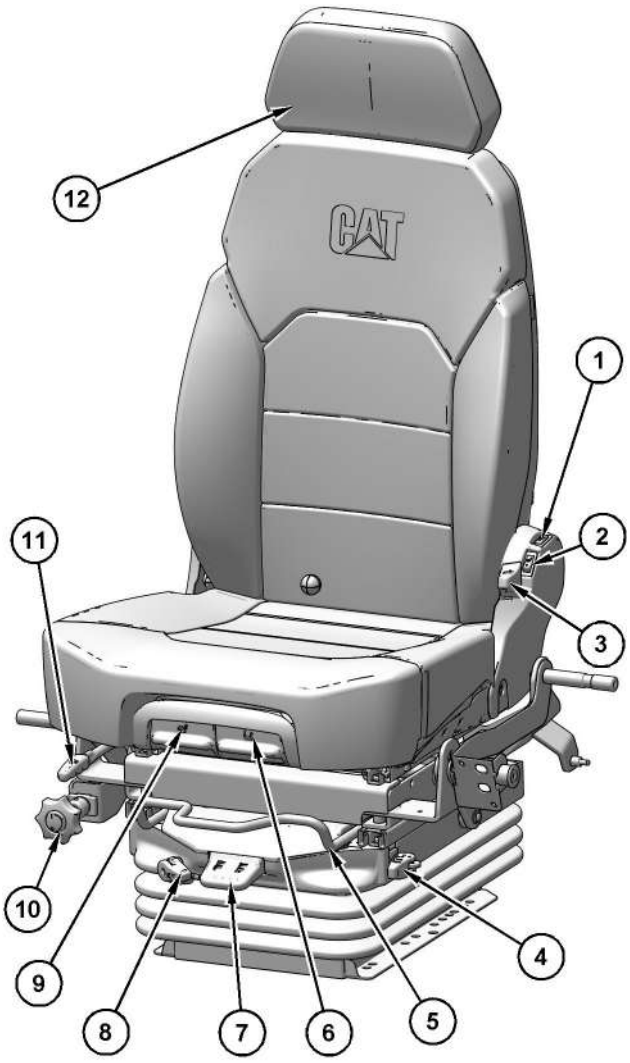


Illustration 167 g07502479

(1) Seat heater switch
(2) Cooling switch
(3) Adjustment lever for reclining the seat
(4) Fore/Aft isolator activate/deactivate lever (if equipped)
(5) Seat and console fore and aft lever
(6) Seat cushion angle adjuster
(7) Seat height adjustment
(8) Adjustable damper
(9) Seat cushion fore and aft adjuster
(10) Console height adjustment
(11) Seat fore and aft adjuster
(12) Headrest

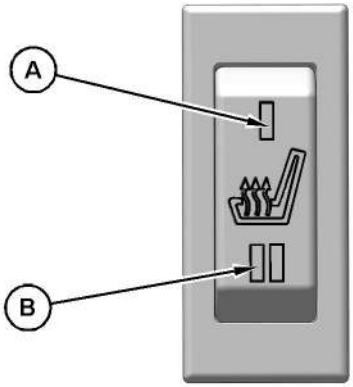


Illustration 168 g07502472

(A) Low heat
(B) High heat

Seat heater switch (1) is a three position switch. The middle position of the switch is off. Press the top position of the switch for low heat. Press the bottom of the switch for high heat.

⚠ WARNING

Heat-induced burns or excessive cooling can occur when some people use a seat heater or seat cooler. Do not use the seat heater or the seat cooler if you have a reduced ability to sense temperature changes, a reduced ability to feel pain, or have sensitive skin.

While using the seat heater or the seat cooler, items placed on the seat such as a seat cover or additional cushions may cause the seat system to overheat which may result in personal injury. Do not use items such as seat cushions or seat covers while using the seat heater or the seat cooler.

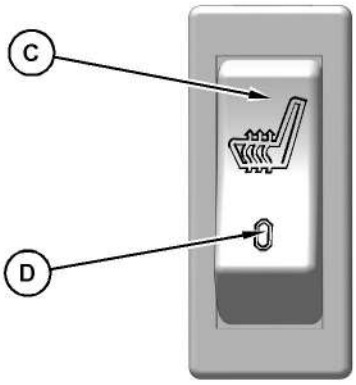


Illustration 169 g07502502

(C) Cooling on
(D) Cooling off

To cool the seat, press the top of cooling switch (2). Press the bottom of the switch to turn the cooling off.

Pull up lever (3) to change the angle of the backrest. With the backrest in the desired position. Release the lever.

Push in adjuster (9) to adjust the fore/aft position of the seat cushion.

Pull lever (5) to adjust the seat and the console forward and backward.

If equipped, fore/aft isolator activate/deactivate lever (4) allows the operator to lock the seat and console or allow the seat and console to float with the movement of the machine. With the adjuster pointing to the front of the machine, the console is locked. Rotate the lever to the rear to unlock the console and allow it to float.

Operate seat height adjustment (7) to adjust the seat and the console to the desired height. Pull up the lever to raise the height of the seat. Push down on the lever to lower the seat.

Use adjustable damper (8) to stiffen or loosen the seat suspension.

Note: Do not operate the seat compressor for over a minute or damage can result.

Use handle (10) to adjust the height of the console. When the lever is pulled forward, a gear is released. The operator can rotate the lever freely. Release the lever to return to the original position.

To adjust the seat forward or backward, pull up lever (11) and hold the lever. Move the seat to the desired position. To lock the seat in the selected position, release the lever.

Push adjuster (6) to adjust the tilt angle of the seat cushion.

The operator can adjust the height of headrest (12). To adjust the headrest, hold the headrest with both hands. Move the headrest up and down. Release the headrest when the desired position is attained. The headrest will remain in the desired position.

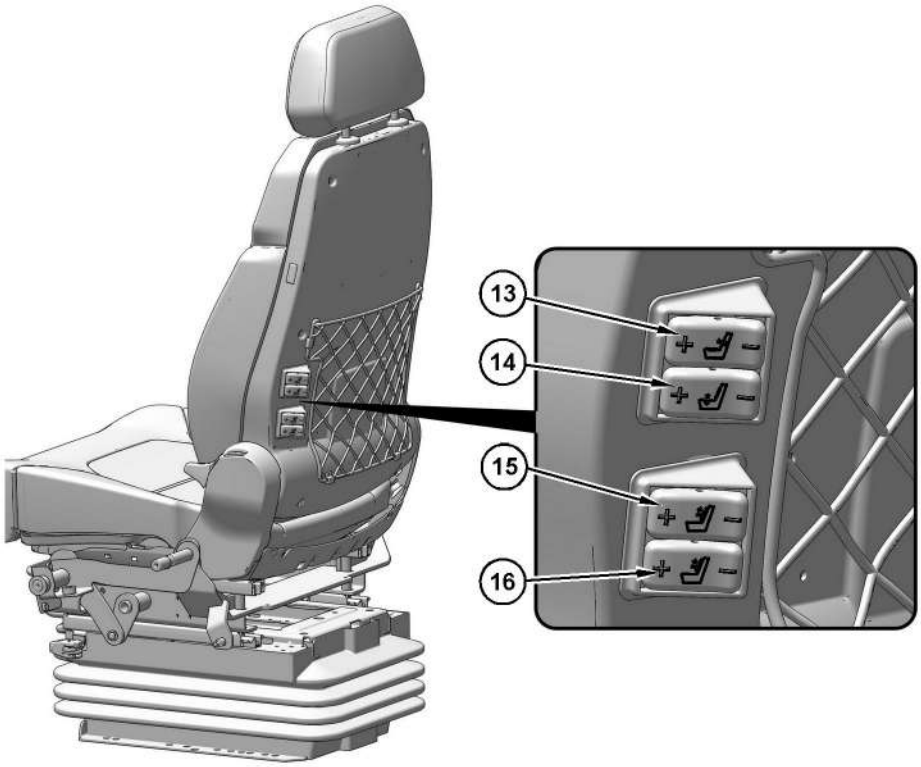


Illustration 170 g07502510

(13) Seat back side bolster control
(14) Seat cushion side bolster control
(15) Upper lumbar control
(16) Lower lumbar control

The lumbar controls on the back of the seat back all use two position switches. Press the "+" symbol to increase lumbar support. Press the "-" symbol to decrease lumbar support.

i07092308

Seat Belt

SMCS Code: 7327

Note: This machine was equipped with a seat belt when the machine was shipped from Caterpillar. At the time of installation, the seat belt and the instructions for installation of the seat belt meet the SAE J386 and ISO 6683 standards. Consult your Cat dealer for all replacement parts.

Always check the condition of the seat belt and the condition of the mounting hardware before you operate the machine.

Seat Belt Adjustment for Retractable Seat Belts

Fastening The Seat Belt

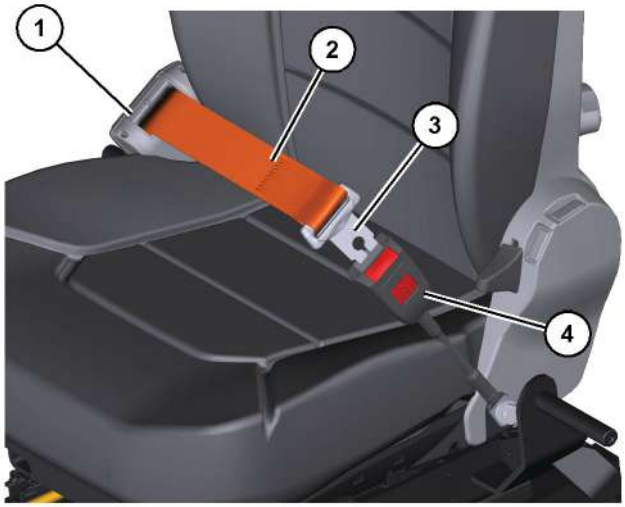


Illustration 171 g06223891

Pull seat belt (2) out of retractor (1) in a continuous motion.

Fasten seat belt catch (3) into buckle (4). Make sure that the seat belt is placed low across the lap of the operator.

The retractor will adjust the belt length and the retractor will lock in place. The comfort ride sleeve will allow the operator to have limited movement.

Releasing The Seat Belt

Illustration 172 g06223894

Push the release button on the buckle to release the seat belt. The seat belt will automatically retract into the retractor.

Extension of the Seat Belt

⚠ WARNING

When using retractable seat belts, do not use seat belt extensions, or personal injury or death can result.

The retractor system may or may not lock up depending on the length of the extension and the size of the person. If the retractor does not lock up, the seat belt will not retain the person.

Longer, non-retractable seat belts and extensions for the non-retractable seat belts are available.

Caterpillar requires only non-retractable seat belts to be used with a seat belt extension.

Consult your Cat dealer for longer seat belts and for information on extending the seat belts.

i07561838

Diesel Particulate Filter Regeneration

SMCS Code: 108F

Regeneration

Regeneration is the process of increasing exhaust temperatures to remove soot from the DPF. Regeneration also reduces hydrocarbons across the DOC & DPF, reduce sulfur from SCR, and remove DEF deposits from the DEF injector.

The DPF traps both soot and ash. The ash is removed through a manual cleaning process. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Diesel Particulate Filter - Clean" for more information on the service of the DPF.

Regeneration Indicators

Regeneration Active – When illuminated, this indicator shows that the system is active. This indicator shows that elevated emission temperatures are possible. This indicator will turn off when regeneration is complete.

DPF – This indicator will illuminate to show that a regeneration is required. This indicator will illuminate when “Time to Regen” is less than a pre-determined amount of time.

Regeneration Disabled – This indicator will illuminate to show that a regeneration has been disabled.

Regeneration Switch

Force Regeneration – Press in the top switch for 2 seconds to begin regeneration.

Disable Regeneration – Press in the bottom switch for 2 seconds to disable regeneration.

Note: If equipped with a rocker style switch, the MIDDLE position of the regeneration switch is the default position for automatic regeneration.

Note: If the engine start switch key is cycled or the “Force Regeneration” switch is pressed for longer than 2 seconds the system will no longer be disabled. When the “Force Regeneration” switch is pressed and “Time to Regen” is less than 8 hours, regeneration will begin if the machine is at low idle and is parked.

Note: If the engine start switch key is cycled while the regeneration system is disabled via the “Disable Regeneration” switch, press and hold the “Disable Regeneration” switch for 2 seconds to reinitiate.

Modes of Regeneration

Automatic: The Electronic Control Module (ECM) uses multiple inputs from the engine and the machine to determine the best time to perform an automatic regeneration. Automatic regenerations can take place throughout the operating cycle of the engine. The regeneration active indicator will be illuminated when a regeneration is being performed. Interruptions of the regeneration are acceptable. If a regeneration is in progress and needs to be stopped, it is permissible to press the “Disable Regeneration” switch.

Note: Automatic adjustments of engine speed may be noticed during regenerations. If a regeneration is taking place and the engine is taken to low idle, the engine speed may remain elevated to maintain the regeneration.

Note: If the machine returns to work while an automatic regeneration is active, the regeneration may be stopped. The ECM will continue to monitor inputs to determine the best time to restart the regeneration.

Manual: A manual regeneration is initiated by pressing the “Force Regeneration” switch. A manual regeneration will only be allowed if the “Time to Regen” is less than 8 hours. If the “Force Regeneration” switch is pressed before “Time to Regen” is less than 8 hours, then “Regen not Required” will be displayed. The machine must be stationary, the parking brake must be applied, and the engine must be at low idle to perform a manual regeneration.

Disabled: When the regeneration system is in disabled mode, automatic regenerations will not be performed. The DPF indicator will illuminate if a manual regeneration is required. The “Time to Regen” displayed on the performance screen will indicate the time until the next regeneration will be required. However, the DPF indicator may illuminate with time remaining on the display. When the DPF indicator illuminates, the operator must perform a manual regeneration.

Regeneration Triggers

A regeneration may be required for the following reasons:

Soot: The DPF will collect soot produced by the engine. An automatic regeneration will become active to reduce soot level.

Start-Up Regeneration: A start-up regeneration is initiated by the ECM after a cold engine start. This regeneration is performed to heat the system to a required temperature for Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) dosing to begin.

SCR Maintenance: A regeneration is performed to maintain the SCR system.

ARD Maintenance: A regeneration is performed to maintain the ARD system.

Regeneration System Warning Indicators

Illustration 173 g02117258

The DPF Indicator will illuminate when a regeneration is required. A regeneration should be performed as soon as possible.

Note: In some situations, the DPF indicator may stay illuminated after a regeneration ends. The illuminated DPF indicator indicates that a complete regeneration has **not** been performed. A complete regeneration is when the soot has been depleted or all the criteria for one of the other regeneration types have been met. If the DPF indicator stays illuminated, perform a regeneration without interruption. The DPF indicator will shut off when a regeneration is complete.

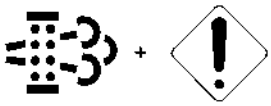


Illustration 174 g02117259

If the soot load is above a threshold or “Time to Regen” is 0 hours, then a regeneration is required. The DPF indicator and an action indicator will be illuminated. Engine power will be slightly derated. If the machine continues to operate without a regeneration, derate will eventually reach 100%. Stop the machine and apply the parking brake. With the engine at low idle, initiate a manual regeneration.

Illustration 175 g03676115

Once the amount of soot collected in the DPF has reached a threshold or “Time to Regen” has been at 0 hours for a pre-determined time, the DPF indicator and an action indicator will be illuminated and an audible alarm will sound.

10 minutes after the illumination of the DPF indicator, action indicator, and audible alarm, the engine will shut down. The engine can be restarted by cycling the engine start switch key. The engine will return to the previous derate state before shutdown.

Once the amount of soot collected reaches a threshold level or 6.4 hours of run time has passed since the action indictor was illuminated without a successful regeneration, the engine will have a 100% derate.

Once the amount of soot collected reaches a critical threshold level, the regeneration will be locked out. At this time, a regeneration can only be done through Cat Electronic Technician (ET), by an authorized Cat dealer. The engine may be restarted, but will only run for 30 seconds before shutting down again.

A fault code will be active for any DPF system-related issue. Follow the troubleshooting guide to rectify the issue.

If the DPF loses function, or is tampered with in any way, the check engine lamp, and an amber action lamp (if equipped) will illuminate. A fault code will also annunciate. The lamps and fault code will remain active until the problem is rectified.

NOTICE
The engine and emissions control system shall be operated, used, and maintained in accordance with the instructions provided. Failure to follow the instructions could result in emissions performance that does not meet the requirements applicable to the category of the engine. No deliberated tampering with, or misuse of the engine emissions control system should take place. Prompt action is critical to rectify any incorrect operation, use, or maintenance of the emissions control system.

Carbon Dioxide (CO_2) Emissions Statement

Emissions regulations require that the value of the CO_2 emissions be reported to the end user. For the engines listed below, the g/kWh was determined to be the CO_2 value during the EU type approval process. This value was recorded in EU type approval certificate. This CO_2 measurement results from testing over a fixed test cycle, under laboratory conditions, with a parent engine representative of the engine family. This value shall not imply or express any guarantee of the performance of a particular engine.

Table 41

Engine	CO_2 Value
C9.3B	696 g/kWh
C9.3	730 g/kWh
C13	717 g/kWh
C15 & C18	760 g/kWh
C18 > 560 kW	703 g/kWh

i09563302

Selective Catalytic Reduction Warning System

SMCS Code: 1091-WXX; 7400

The selective catalytic reduction (SCR) system is a system used to reduce NOx emissions from the engine. Diesel exhaust fluid (DEF) is pumped from the DEF tank and is sprayed into the exhaust stream. The DEF reacts with the SCR catalyst to reduce NOx and leaves a nitrogen and water vapor. The Exhaust Gas Recirculation (EGR) system cools, measures, and introduces recalculated exhaust gas into the intake manifold to aid in NOx reduction.

NOTICE
Stopping the engine immediately after the engine has been working under load can result in overheating of SCR components.

Refer to the Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Engine Stopping” procedure to allow the engine to cool and to prevent excessive temperatures in the turbocharger housing and the DEF injector.

Note: With the operator key in the OFF position, the purge system will activate.

Definitions

Observe the following definitions.

Self-correct – Fault condition no longer exists. An active fault code will no longer be active.

Notification – Action taken by the system to alert the operator of pending Inducement.

Inducement – Engine derates, vehicle speed limits, or other actions intended to prompt the operator to repair or maintain the emission control system.

Inducement Trigger – Fault conditions that result in activation of the inducement strategy. DEF level inducement faults have a diagnostic fault code. DEF quality fault, SCR tampering fault, SCR system fault, and EGR system faults will all have a related diagnostic fault code along with an inducement diagnostic fault code.

First occurrence – A DEF quality fault, SCR tampering fault, SCR system fault, or an EGR system fault becomes active for the first time.

Repeat occurrence – If any DEF quality fault, SCR tampering fault, SCR system fault, or an EGR system fault becomes active again within 40 hours of the first occurrence.

Safe Harbor Mode (Worldwide) – Safe harbor mode is a 20 minute engine run time period. The engine can be operated with full power after reaching a level 3 inducement. Once in level 3 inducement, the operator can perform a key cycle and the engine will enter safe harbor mode. Safe harbor mode can only be implemented once. Safe harbor mode is not allowed for DEF level inducements.

Safe Harbor Mode (European Union and China) – Safe Harbor Mode is a 30 minute engine run time period. During the **Safe Harbor Mode** the engine can be operated with full power after reaching a level 3 inducement. Once in level 3 inducement, the operator can perform a key cycle and the engine will enter Safe Harbor Mode. Safe Harbor Mode can only be implemented up to three times.

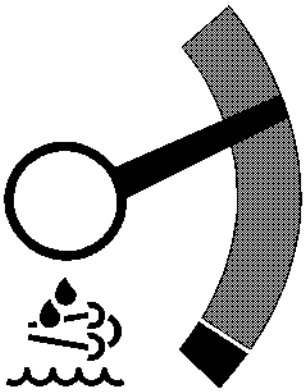


Illustration 176 g03684888

DEF Level Normal

Inducement Strategy for DEF Level (European Union and China)

If multiple warnings are present in the system, the most important problem is shown first. Press the right key or press the left key in order to view all of the warnings that are present in the machine. If no keys are pressed within 5 seconds, the display will return to the most important problem.

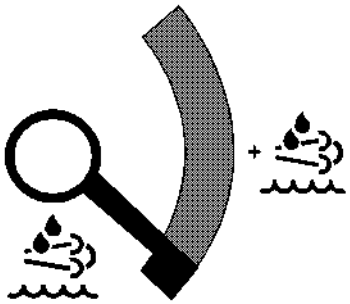


Illustration 177 g03681105

DEF Level Low

If the DEF level falls below 20%, “DEF Level Low” message will be displayed on the monitor. To avoid further inducements, turn the key to the OFF position and add DEF to the DEF tank.

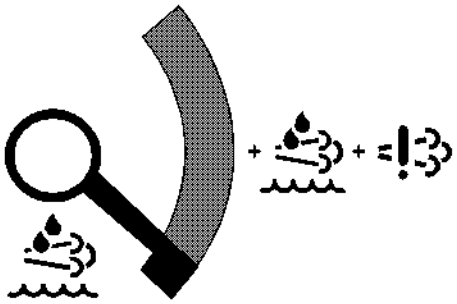


Illustration 178 g03681073

DEF Level Low and Emission Fault

If the DEF level falls below 13.5%, a level 1 inducement event will occur. a “DEF Level Low” message and an “Emission Fault” message will appear on the monitor.

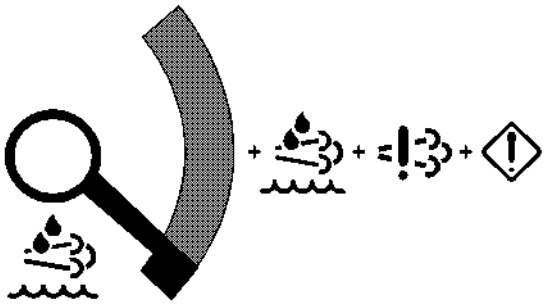


Illustration 179 g03681077

DEF Level Low, Emission Fault, and Flashing Action Lamp

If the DEF level is below 7.5%, a level 2 inducement event will occur. a “DEF Level Low” message and an “Emission Fault” message will appear on the monitor. The action lamp on the monitor will flash. If the ECM is configured to “Reduced Performance” and the DEF level has reached 1%, the machine will be limited to 75% torque.

Reduced Performance

When the ECM is configured to "Reduced Performance" and the DEF level is below 1%, the engine will be in level 2 inducement. The check engine lamp and emissions malfunction indicator lamp will illuminate and flash slowly. The DEF level gauge amber lamp will remain lit. The engine will have a 50% derate. When the DEF tank has been emptied of all DEF, the engine will have a 100% derate. An empty DEF tank also limits the engine to 1000 rpm or low idle, whichever is greater. No further inducement action will occur for "Reduced Performance" configuration. Safe Harbor Mode is allowed for three key cycles.

Reduced Time

When the ECM is configured to “Reduced Time” and the DEF level is below 7.5%, the engine will be in level 2 inducement. The check engine lamp and emissions malfunction indicator lamp will illuminate and flash slowly. The DEF level gauge amber lamp will remain lit.

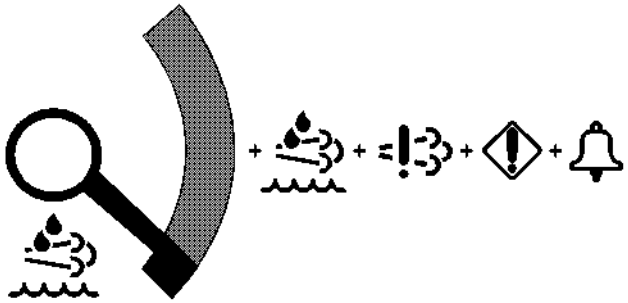


Illustration 180 g03681078

DEF Level Low, Emission Fault, Flashing Action Lamp, and Audible Alarm

If the ECM is configured to “Reduced Performance” and the DEF tank has been emptied of all DEF, the engine will be in a level 3 final inducement. If the ECM is configured to “Reduced Time” and the DEF level is 3%, the engine will be in a level 3 final inducement. Prior to final inducement a “DEF Level Low” message, and an “Emission Fault” message will appear on the monitor. The action lamp on the monitor will flash and an audible alarm will sound 20 seconds prior to the final inducement. The engine will be taken to low idle or will be shut down. Once shut down, the engine can be restarted for 5 minute periods at reduced speed and torque. If set to idle, the engine will idle indefinitely at reduced torque. The amber indicator next to the DEF level gauge on the dash will remain lit.

Note: Turn the key to the OFF position and add DEF to the DEF tank to reset the DEF level inducement.

Inducement Strategy for DEF Quality, Tampering, SCR System Fault, and Impeded EGR

If multiple warnings are present in the system, the most important problem is shown first. Press the right key or press the left key in order to view all of the warnings that are present in the machine. If no keys are pressed within 5 seconds, the display will return to the most important problem.

Illustration 181 g03623190

A “Engine Fault Check Engine” message and an “Emission Fault” message will appear on the monitor for a fault resulting from poor DEF quality, SCR system tampering, SCR system fault, or an EGR system fault. If the fault is the result of poor DEF quality, SCR system tampering, or SCR system fault, a first occurrence will result in a level 1 inducement for a duration of 2.5 hours. The level 1 inducement will also illuminate the check engine lamp. Repeat occurrences will result in a level 1 inducement duration of 5 minutes. If the fault is the result of an EGR system fault, a first occurrence will result in a level 1 inducement for a duration of 35 hours. Repeat occurrences will result in a level 1 inducement duration of 48 minutes.

Illustration 182 g03623191

If a fault condition exists for the entire duration of inducement level 1, the strategy advances to inducement level 2. A “Engine Fault Check Engine” message, and an “Emission Fault” message will appear on the monitor and the action lamp on the monitor will flash for a fault resulting from poor DEF quality, SCR system tampering, SCR system fault, or an EGR system fault. For poor DEF quality, SCR system tampering, and SCR system faults, the duration for a level 2 inducement is 70 minutes for the first occurrence. For EGR system faults, the duration for a level 2 inducement is 60 minutes for the first occurrence. Repeat occurrences for poor DEF quality, SCR system tampering, and SCR system faults will result in a level 2 inducement of 5 minutes. Repeat occurrences for EGR system faults will result in a level 2 inducement of 60 minutes.

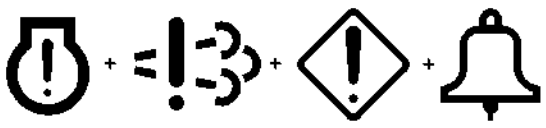


Illustration 183 g03623193

If a fault condition exists for the entire duration of inducement level 2, the strategy advances to inducement level 3. A “Engine Fault Check Engine” message, and an “Emission Fault” message will appear on the monitor, the action lamp will flash, and an audible alarm will sound 20 seconds prior to the level 3 inducement. The engine will be taken to low idle or will be shut down. After the level 3 inducement you may cycle the key, which will allow 20 minutes of engine run time with full torque. After 20 minutes, the engine will be in level 3 final inducement and will allow idle only or be shut down until the issue has been resolved. Once shut down, the engine can be restarted for 5 minute periods at reduced speed and torque. If set to idle, the engine will idle indefinitely at reduced torque.

Note: Contact your Cat ® dealer for repairs if a fault occurs.

Inducement Emergency Override for Cat Engines Equipped with Selective Catalytic Reduction Systems (If Equipped)

Note: The inducement emergency override will only be allowed on a select number of machines that may be used in emergency situations. Contact your Cat dealer to find out if your machine is allowed to have this feature.

Inducement emergency override can only be enabled using Caterpillar supplied passwords. The feature is disabled by default. The feature will be enabled at the factory if allowed. If the customer wants the feature enabled after delivery of engine, they will need to contact their Cat dealer. Inducement emergency override is regulated by the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) and only allowed in the United States. The European Union and Japan do not allow the feature to be used. For detailed information on activating, deactivating, or resetting override, contact your Cat dealer. Before you attempt the procedures documented in this manual, make sure that you have read and understand the information in this document.

The United States EPA requires the limiting of engine speed and/or power (derate) in certain conditions, to help ensure proper functioning of the engines emission control system. The EPA allows the temporary disabling of these limits (restoration of full engine speed and power capability) during a qualified emergency situation. The EPA defines a qualified emergency situation as a significant direct or indirect risk to human life. Below are examples of direct versus indirect risks.

Direct – An emission control condition that inhibits performance of an engine being used to rescue a person from life-threatening situation.

Indirect – An emission control condition that inhibits performance of an engine being used to provide electrical power to a data center that routes 911 emergency response communications.

The emissions-related derate can be disabled for up to 120 hours of engine operation. The temporary disabling of emissions-related derate is referred to as “Inducement Emergency Override” and must be reported to the United States EPA. The override can only be enabled or disabled by an authorized Cat dealer using Caterpillar supplied passwords. Once enabled, the override can be activated through the electronic display menu in the cab (if equipped). Upon activation, the check engine and action lamps will be illuminated until and the override is reset. A code indicating that the inducement emergency override is active will also be active until the override is reset. The override can only be reset by the engine manufacturer, Caterpillar. A Cat dealer can reset the override using Caterpillar supplied passwords. Improper use of the override, failure to deactivate the override when the emergency has ended, and failure to report use of the override is prohibited under federal regulations and subject to penalties imposed by the United States EPA. The civil penalty per day operated in violation can be severe.

NOTICE
When the inducement emergency override is active, damage to aftertreatment and engine components can occur. Never use the override longer than necessary and always fix the root cause of the inducement as soon as possible. There will always be a diagnostic code indicating root cause of the inducement. Refer to the troubleshooting guide for how to fix inducement related failures.

Override Activation Method

There are two options for setting the override, using Cat Electronic Technician (ET) or through the electronic display menu in the cab (if equipped). If the override has already been enabled by an authorized Cat dealer, then the operator can turn on the override without further input from Caterpillar. Upon activation, the check engine and action lamps will illuminate to alert the operator that the override is active. The override must be paused by the operator if the emergency ends before the 120 hours of override operation has expired. While paused, the equipment will be subject to derates. Once paused, the override can be activated again if the 120 hour time period has not expired and if an emergency situation still exists. Per federal regulations, the operator must fill out the Override Usage Report below and provide the report to Caterpillar within 60 days of activating the override.

Setting the Override through Cat Electronic Technician (ET)

- Go to “Configuration Parameters”
- Select “Aftertreatment Configuration”
- Select “Operator Inducement Emergency Override Activation” to activate the override
- The “Value” field should be switched to “Activated” (to pause the override change the “Value” field to “Not Activated”)

Setting the Override through Electronic Display Menu

Machine applications will be able to activate or deactivate the override through the electronic display menu in the cab. The override will only be available when engine is already in inducement (derated). Operators must be trained properly to understand where override is located and that there could be severe penalties as mentioned above for misusing the override. There will be a warning on display stating: “EMERGENCY USE ONLY. SEE OWNERS MANUAL. PENALTIES APPLY FOR MISUSE” .

Resetting the Override

The override needs to be reset through Cat Electronic Technician (ET) whenever the override has expired. The override cannot be used again until the override is reset. The override should also be reset whenever the emergency has ended, regardless if the override has expired or not (i.e. accumulated 120 hours). The check engine and action lamps will continue to be illuminated until the override is reset. The code indicating that the inducement emergency override is active will also continue to be active until the override is reset. The override may be reset at any point after the initial activation. The override can only be reset by the engine manufacturer, Caterpillar, or an authorized Cat dealer using Caterpillar supplied passwords.

Override Usage Report

To comply with federal regulations, the operator must report usage of the override to Caterpillar within 60 days of activating the override. Failure to meet this reporting requirement may subject the operator to penalties under “40 CFR 1068.101”. Caterpillar will in turn report override usage annually to the United States EPA. Although submitted to Caterpillar, the override usage reports are deemed to be submissions to the United States EPA. Federal regulations prohibit submitting false information. The following information must be included in the report:

- Contact name, mail and e-mail addresses, and telephone number for the responsible company or entity
- A description of the emergency situation, the location of the engine during the emergency, and the contact information for an official who can verify the emergency situation (such as a county sheriff, fire marshal, or hospital administrator)
- The reason for the activation of the override during the emergency situation, such as the lack of DEF, or the failure of an emission-related sensor when the engine was needed to respond to an emergency situation
- The engine serial number (or equivalent)
- A description of the extent and duration of the engine operation while the override was active, including a statement describing whether the override was manually deactivated (paused) after the emergency situation ended

The Override Usage Report may be sent via e-mail or regular mail to one of the following addresses:

Email :

Emissions_Compliance@cat.com

Regular Mail :

Caterpillar Inc.
P.O. Box 600
Mossville, IL 61552-0600
Attention: Emissions Compliance Manager

i09980937

Operator Controls

SMCS Code: 7300; 7301; 7451

Note: Your machine may not be equipped with all the controls that are described in this topic.

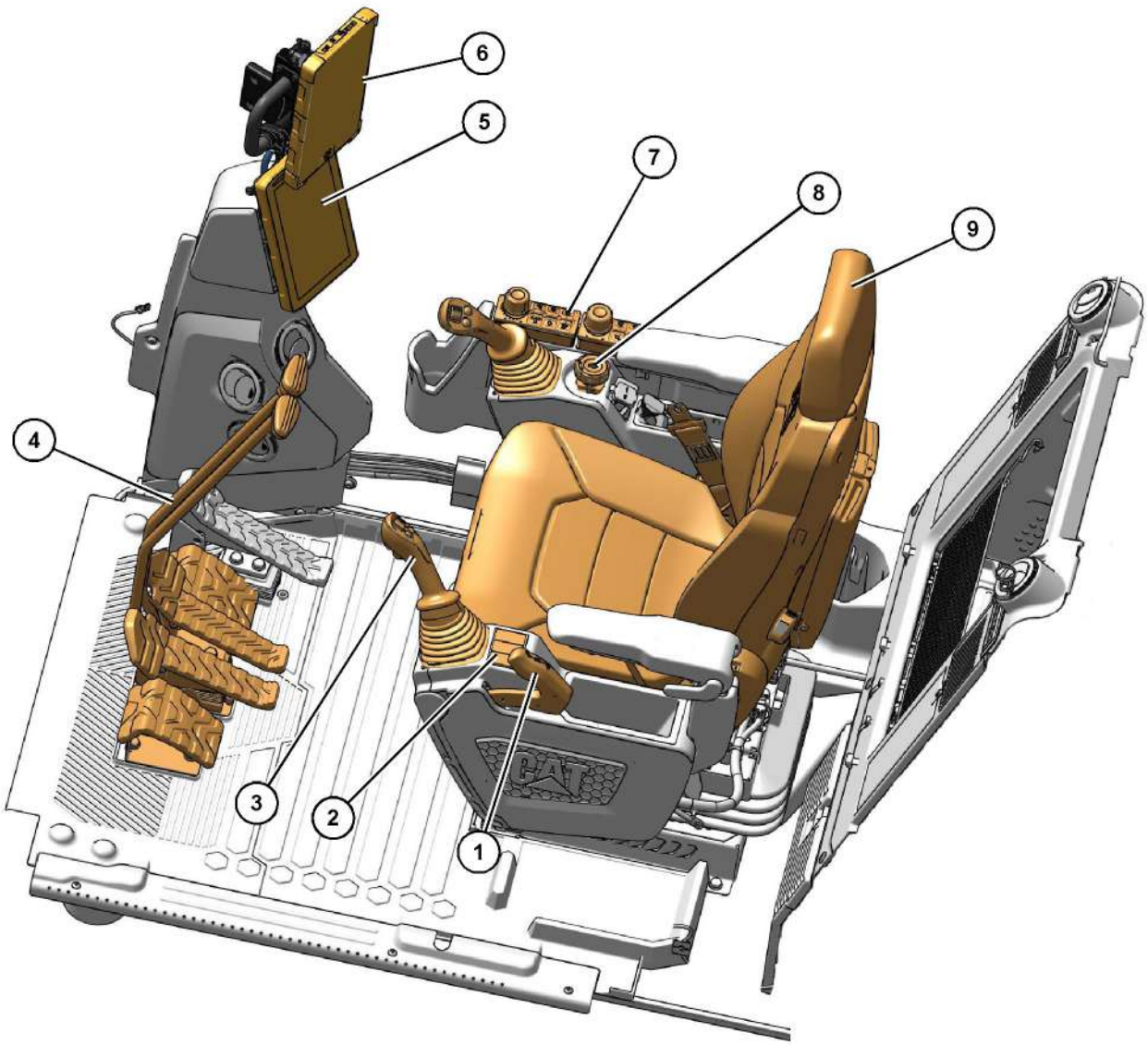


Illustration 184 g06178344

(1) Hydraulic lockout control
(2) Left side switch panel
(3) Joystick controls
(4) Travel controls
(5) Monitor
(6) Cat Grade Monitor
(7) Right side switch panel
(8) Engine start switch
(9) Operator seat

Hydraulic Lockout Control (1)

The lever for the hydraulic lockout control is at the left side of the left console.

Locked – Move the travel levers/pedals and move the joysticks to the HOLD (center) position. Move the lever for the hydraulic lockout control backward to the LOCKED position. All the factory installed hydraulic controls will become inoperable.

Note: Make sure that the lever for the hydraulic lockout control is in the LOCKED position before attempting to start the engine. If the lever is in the UNLOCKED position, the engine start switch will not function.

Unlocked – Move the lever for the hydraulic lockout control forward to the UNLOCKED position. All the factory installed hydraulic controls will become operable.

Tilt – For machines equipped with the tilt-up console, pull the lever to the rearmost position to release the console lock and tilt the console upward for easier exit and entry.

Left Side Switch Panel (2)

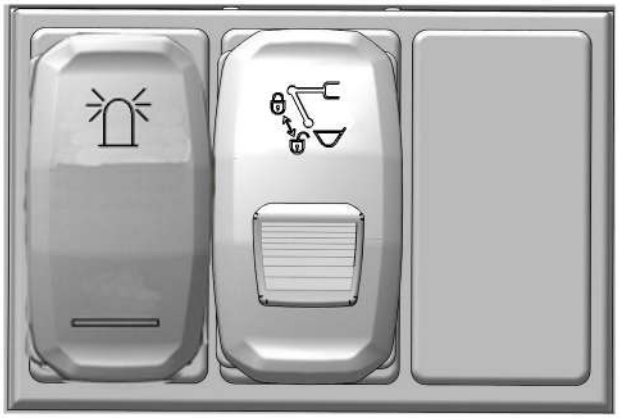


Illustration 185 g06219690

Beacon Light Switch (2A) (If equipped)

Beacon Light Switch – Push the top of the switch to turn on the beacon light. Push the bottom of the switch to turn off the beacon light.

Quick Coupler Control (2B) (If equipped)

Quick Coupler Control

If equipped, the switch for the quick coupler control is on the left console. The switch is equipped with a spring loaded lock button. To operate the switch, the lock button must be pushed forward to release the switch. With the lock held forward, press the rear of the switch downward to uncouple the bucket or work tool. Press the button again to attach the bucket or work tool.

Note: An alarm will sound whenever the switch has been activated to lock or unlock a work tool.

For further details, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Quick Coupler Operation”.

Joystick Controls (3)

The joystick control is used to control the functions of the machine implements. For more information on the individual functions of the joysticks, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Joystick Controls”.

Travel Control (4)

Illustration 186 g06178249

Position for normal travel

(A) Rear of machine
(B) Final drive
(C) Idler

When you travel, make sure that final drive sprockets (B) are under the rear of the machine.

Stop – Release the travel levers/pedals to stop the machine. When you release the travel levers/pedals from any position, the travel levers/pedals will return to the CENTER position. The travel brakes will be applied.

Move both of the travel levers or both of the travel pedals equally in the same direction to travel straight.

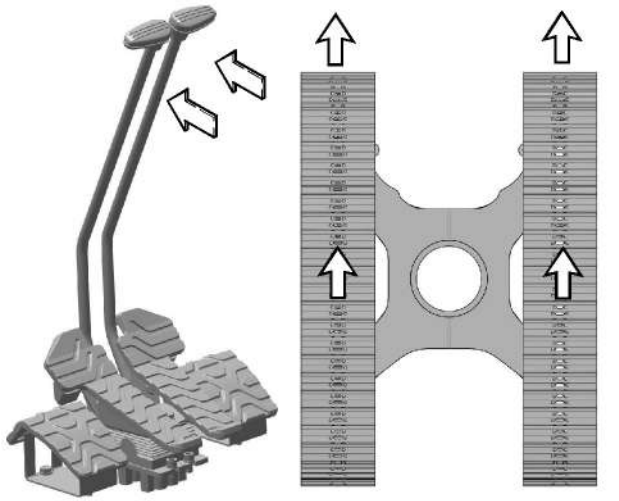


Illustration 187 g06178269

FORWARD travel

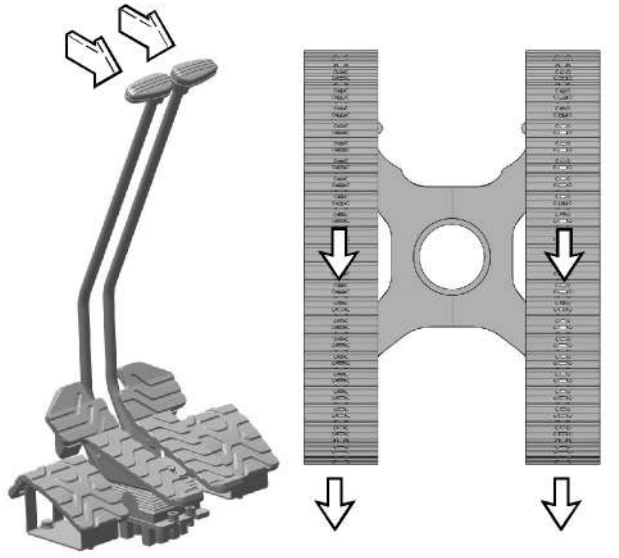


Illustration 188 g06178283

REVERSE travel

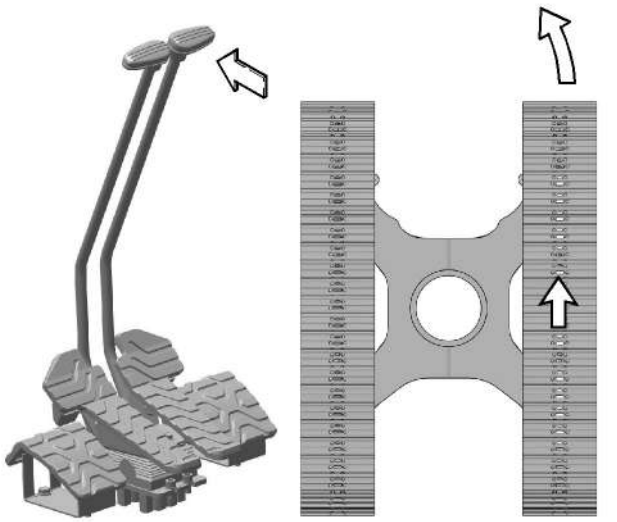


Illustration 189 g06178288

Pivot left turn (FORWARD)

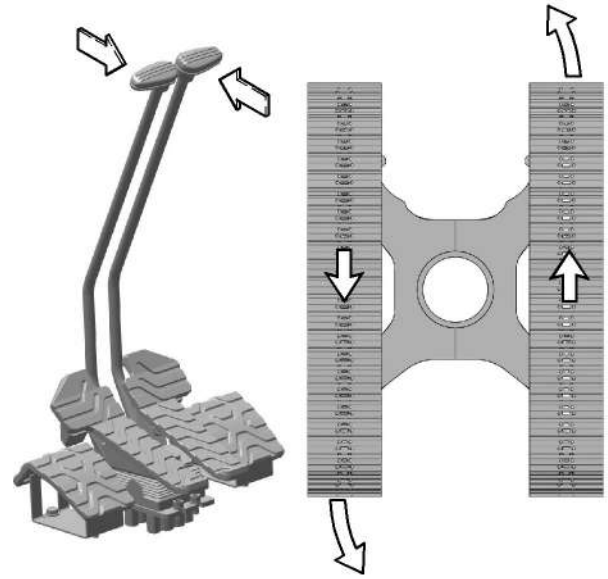


Illustration 191 g06178300

Counterrotate turn (LEFT)

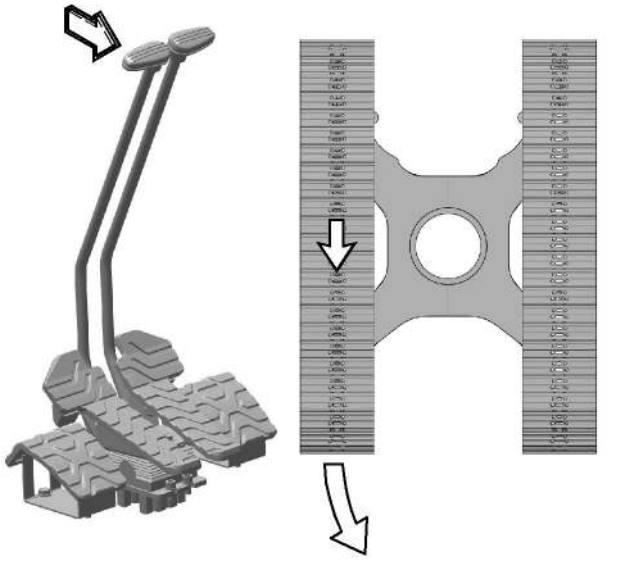


Illustration 190 g06178294

Pivot Left Turn (REVERSE)

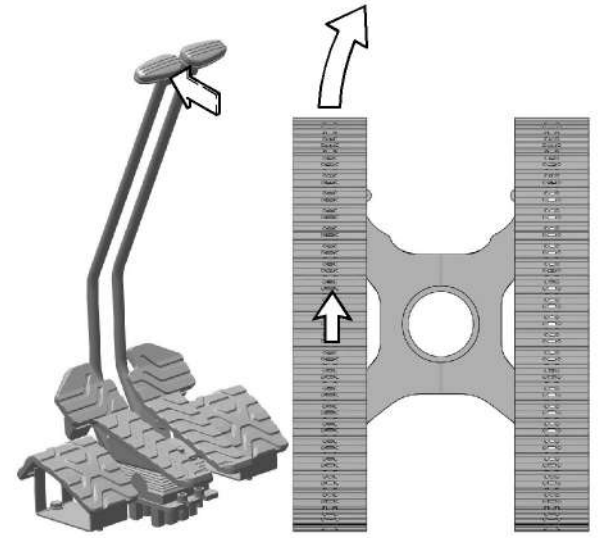


Illustration 192 g06178305

Pivot right turn (FORWARD)

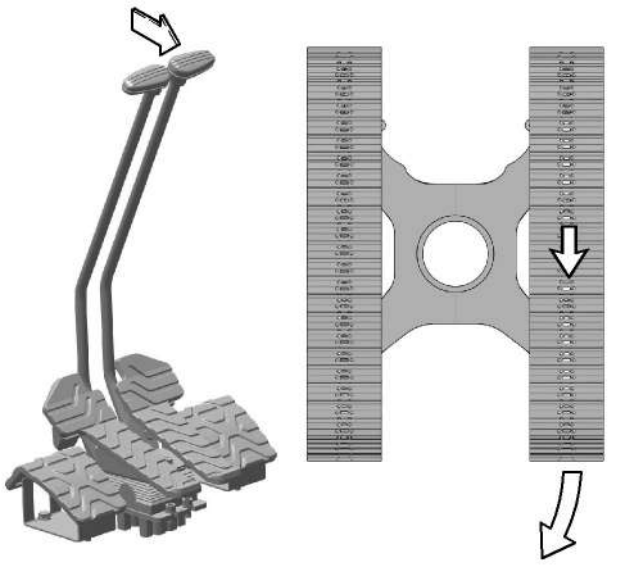


Illustration 193 g06178308
Pivot right turn (REVERSE)

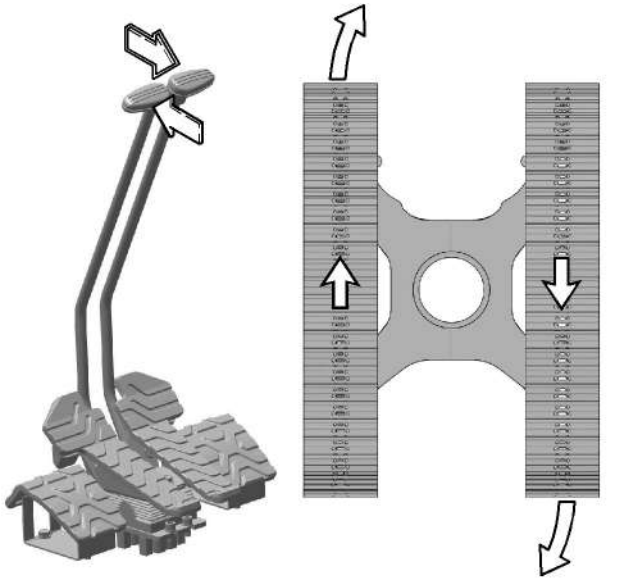


Illustration 194 g06178313
Counterrotate turn (RIGHT)

Monitor (5)

The monitor is used to display various operating information of the machine. For more information on the operation of the monitor, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Monitoring System”.

Cat Grade Monitor (6) (if equipped)

Monitor (6) is used to display Cat Grade operating information. Cat Grade is designed to calculate bucket tip position and provide visual and audible feedback to the operator. This feedback allows the operator to achieve the desired grade safer, quicker and more accurately than traditional grading techniques. For more information on the operation of the monitor, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, M0082987, “Cat ® 2D and 3D GRADE System for Next Gen Hydraulic Excavators”.

Engine Start Switch (Machines equipped with Delayed Engine Shutdown 8)

NOTICE
The engine start switch must be in the ON position and the engine must be running in order to maintain electrical functions and hydraulic functions. This procedure must be followed in order to prevent serious machine damage.

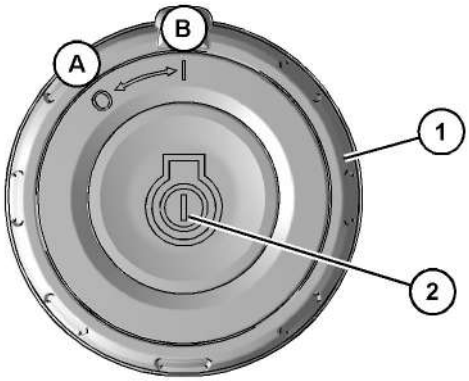


Illustration 195 g06180554

(A) Off
(B) On
(1) Engine start ring
(2) Start button

The Delayed Engine Shutdown is a feature that automatically determines when idle state cool down is needed to prevent engine and aftertreatment component damage.

When the engine start switch key is turned to the OFF position, the engine may continue to run for an additional few minutes. This is normal. When the delayed engine shutdown feature is complete, the product will automatically shut itself off.

Engine Stop (Shutdown) – Push Start Button for 2 seconds to disable the delayed engine shutdown (DES). The engine will be shut down immediately.

Note: Shutting down the engine using this method is considered a hard shutdown which disables the DES.

Note: A warning message and/or Audible alarm will be initiated. A fault code will be logged for improper engine shutdown if exhaust temperature is above limit.

Note: Overriding delayed engine shutdown may reduce engine and machine system component life.

For more information, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Diesel Particulate Filter Regeneration”.

OFF – Turn the engine start ring (1) to the OFF position (A) to stop the engine.

ON – To activate the electrical circuits in the cab and enable engine starting, turn the engine start ring (1) clockwise to the ON position (B).

START – To start the engine, enter the code on the monitor. Press start button (2). After the engine starts, release the button.

Note: Pressing the start button with the engine on will also turn off the engine.

Engine Start Switch (Machines not equipped with Delayed Engine Shutdown 8)

NOTICE
The engine start switch must be in the ON position and the engine must be running in order to maintain electrical functions and hydraulic functions. This procedure must be followed in order to prevent serious machine damage.

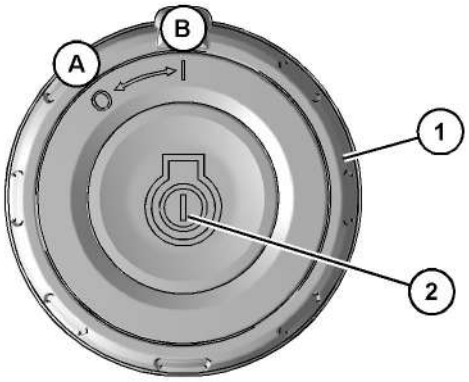


Illustration 196 g06180554

(A) Off
(B) On
(1) Engine start ring
(2) Start button

OFF – Turn the engine start ring (1) to the OFF position (A) to stop the engine.

ON – To activate the electrical circuits in the cab and enable engine starting, turn the engine start ring (1) clockwise to the ON position (B).

START – To start the engine, enter the code on the monitor. Press start button (2). After the engine starts, release the button.

Note: Pressing the start button with the engine on will also turn off the engine.

Operator's Seat (9)

There are different options for operators seats. Each operator seat and console have various adjustments to meet a wide range of operators. For more information, refer to “Seat“.

Tilt-Up Console (9A)

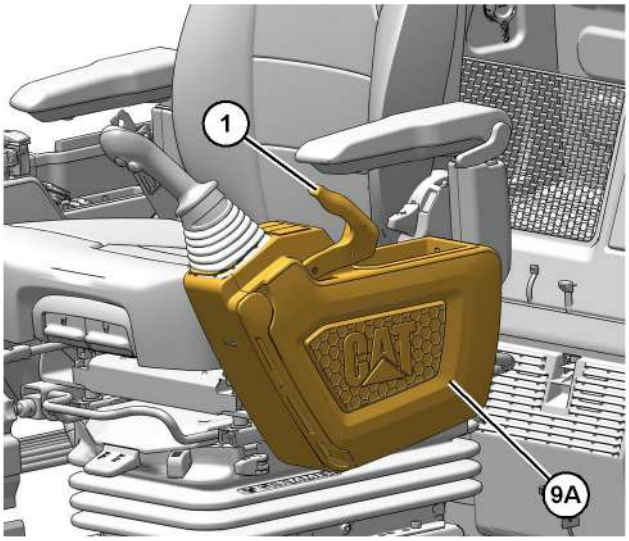


Illustration 197 g06226523

(1) Hydraulic lockout control
(2) Tilt-up console

Some optional seats are equipped with a tilt-up console. The console can be tilted upward for easier exit and entry. The console is unlocked by pulling the hydraulic lockout control (1) to the rearmost position. The console will then tilt upward. Simply push the console downward until the console locks into place when ready for use.

Right Side Switch Panel (7)

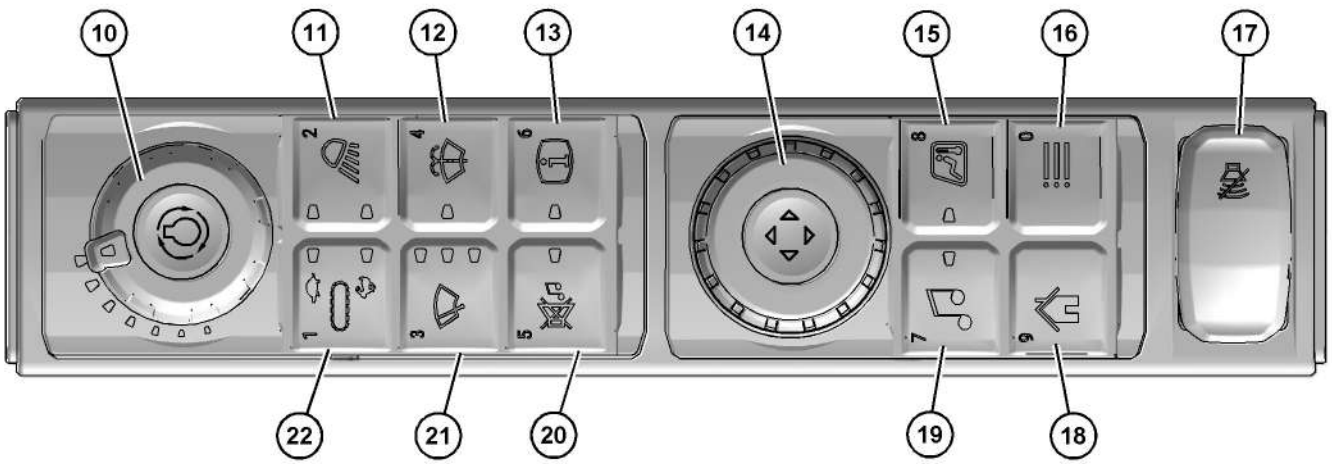


Illustration 198 g06178333

Right side switch panel

(10) Engine speed / power mode control
(11) Light switch
(12) Window washer
(13) Operator Information
(14) Jog dial
(15) Heating and air conditioning
(16) Next menu
(17) Travel alarm mute
(18) Home
(19) Radio control
(20) Radio mute switch
(21) Window wiper
(22) Travel speed control

Note: In addition to the intended functions, the buttons on the switch panel are numbered from 0-9. The numbered buttons can be used to enter numbers into the monitor for screens such as the passcode screen.

Engine Speed / Power Mode Control (10)

Engine Speed Control – Turn the dial to control the engine speed (engine rpm). Select the desired position from the seven available positions. Turn the dial counterclockwise to decrease the engine speed (engine rpm). Turn the dial clockwise to increase the engine speed (engine rpm).

Power Mode Control – Push in the dial to change the power mode settings. The Power Mode Control allows the operator to choose what power mode to operate the engine. The modes that can be selected are: “ECONOMY” , “SMART” , and “POWER” .

Note: The default power mode setting can be set within the monitor. For more information, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Monitoring System”.

Note: “ECONOMY” mode is not available on GC models.

Light Switch (11)

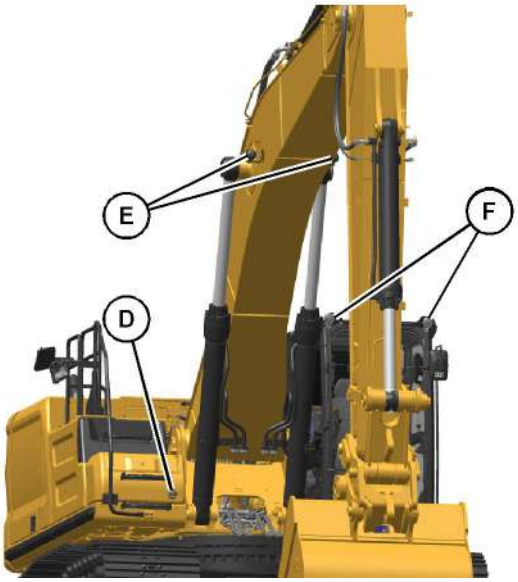


Illustration 199 g06278042

Light Switch – Push the switch to turn on the work lights.

Whenever you push the switch, you change the pattern of the work lights that are turned on. The indicator lights in the cab indicate the pattern of the work lights.

Pattern 1 – When you press the light switch once, the first indicator light turns on. When the first indicator light is on, the following work lights are turned on: work light (D), which is mounted on the chassis, and work lights (F), which are mounted on the cab.

Pattern 2 – When you press the light switch twice, the first indicator light and the second indicator light turn on. When the first indicator light and the second indicator lights are on, the following work lights are turned on: work light (D), which is mounted on the chassis, work lights (F), which are mounted on the cab, and work lights (E), which are mounted on the boom.

OFF – When both of the indicator lights are off, all the work lights are off.

Note: Your machine may be equipped with a Premium Surrounding Lighting package with left side, right side and rear lights. Refer to M0109053, “Next Generation Hydraulic Excavator Monitoring System Supplement”, Function List Screen, Work Light Control for more information.

Note: Your machine may be equipped with a lighting system that has a time delay. When this system is installed, cab lights (F) and boom lights (E) will not turn off for a predetermined amount of time after the engine start key has been turned to the OFF position. The time delay can vary from 0 minutes to 5 minutes. For further details, consult your Cat dealer.

Window Washer (12)

Window Washer (12) – Push the switch to activate the window washer. While the switch is depressed, the indicator light will come on and washer fluid will spray from the nozzle. The window wiper will also operate while the switch is depressed. After the switch is released for approximately 3 seconds, the window wiper will stop.

NOTICE
If the wiper does not operate with the switch in the ON position, turn the switch off immediately. Check the cause. If the switch remains on, motor failure can result.

NOTICE
If the washer is used continuously for more than 20 seconds or used when no washer solution comes out, motor failure can result.

Operator Information (13)

Operator Information Button (13) – Press and hold this button to view the operator information screen. The indicator light will illuminate when the button is pressed.

Jog Dial (14)

The jog dial can be used to select items displayed on the monitor screen. The dial can be rotated 360 degrees. The dial can also be moved left, right, up, and down. The dial can be pushed in to make a selection.

Air Conditioning and Heating (15)

Air Conditioning and Heating (15) – Press this button to bring up the air conditioning and heating menu. The indicator light will illuminate when the heating and cooling system is active. The jog dial (13) can be used to make selections. If equipped with a touch screen, the selections can be made by touching the monitor.

Refer to Air Conditioning and Heating Control for more information.

Next Menu (16)

Next Menu (16) – Press the next menu button to access the next higher menu. If there is not a menu above the current screen being viewed, the button will not do anything.

Refer to Monitoring System for more information.

Travel Alarm Mute Switch (17)

Travel Alarm Mute Switch (17) – Press travel alarm mute switch (17) to mute the travel alarm.

Note: The travel alarm will sound when the travel levers or the travel pedals are activated.

Home (18)

Home Key (18) – Press the home key to return to the default display at any time.

Refer to Monitoring System for more information.

Radio Control (19)

Radio Control (19) – Press this button to display the radio controls on the monitor. The indicator light on the button will illuminate when the radio is turned on. Use jog dial (14) to make selections. If equipped with a touch screen display, touch the icons on the screens to make a selection.

Refer to “Radio“ for more information.

Radio Mute (20)

Radio Mute (20) – Press radio mute switch (20) to mute the radio. The indicator light will illuminate when mute is activated. Press the button again to unmute the radio.

Window Wiper (21)

Window Wiper (21) – Push the switch to activate the window wiper. Whenever the switch is depressed, the mode of the window wiper will change according to the indicator light that is illuminated.

6 Second Delay – When the window wiper switch is depressed one time, the first indicator light will turn on. The window wiper will operate intermittently at six second intervals.

3 Second Delay – When the window wiper switch is depressed two times, the second indicator light will turn on. The window wiper will operate intermittently at three second intervals.

Continuous Operation – When the window wiper switch is depressed three times, the first indicator light and the second indicator light will turn on. The window wiper will operate continuously.

OFF – When the window wiper switch is depressed four times, the indicator lights will turn off. The window wiper stops.

Travel Speed Control (22)

⚠ WARNING

Do not change the setting of the travel speed control switch while you travel. Machine stability may be adversely affected.

Personal injury can result from sudden changes in machine stability.

Travel Speed Control Switch (22) – Press the travel speed control switch to select automatic travel speed or low travel speed. When the engine start switch is on, the travel speed control switch is always set at the LOW SPEED position. Whenever the travel speed control switch is pressed, the travel speed changes. The indicator lights illuminate to show which speed selection is active.

LOW SPEED – Select the LOW SPEED position if you travel on rough surfaces or on soft surfaces or if you require a great drawbar pull. Also, select the LOW SPEED position if you are loading a machine onto a trailer or you are unloading a machine from a trailer.

AUTOMATIC – If you travel on a hard, level surface at a fast speed, select the AUTO position.

Continuous driving at high speed should be limited to 2 hours. If you need to continue driving at high speed for more than 2 hours, stop the machine for 10 minutes. This process will cool down the travel drives before you resume driving.

USB/Aux Ports (23) (If equipped)

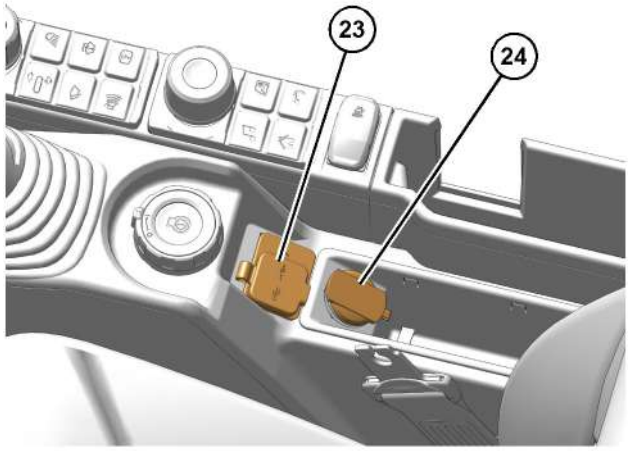


Illustration 200 g06204950

(23) USB/AUX/MIC port
(24) 12 V socket

USB – The USB port is used to play music from a portable device. The USB symbol on the radio screen on the monitor must be selected.

AUX – The AUX port is used to play music from a portable device. AUX must be selected on the radio screen on the monitor.

12V Power Receptacle (24) & (25)

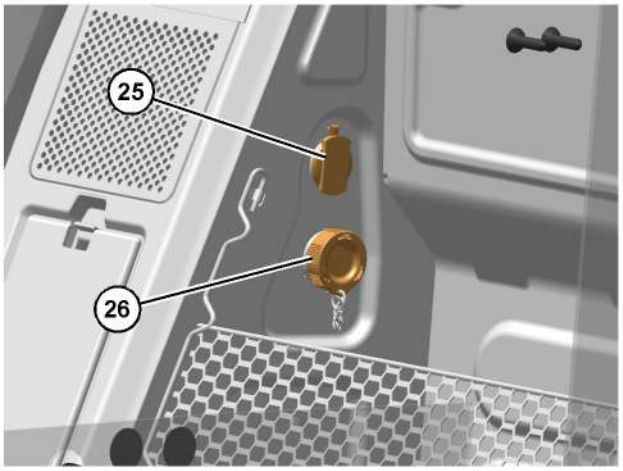


Illustration 201 g06178354

Machine Diagnosis service port

12V Power Receptacle – The power receptacles can be used to power automotive electrical equipment or accessories. The power receptacle only operates when the engine start switch is in the ON position.

Service Port (26)

A service port is located inside the cab behind the seat. This service port allows service personnel to connect a laptop computer to diagnose machine and engine systems.

Contact your Cat dealer for additional information.

Dome Light (27)

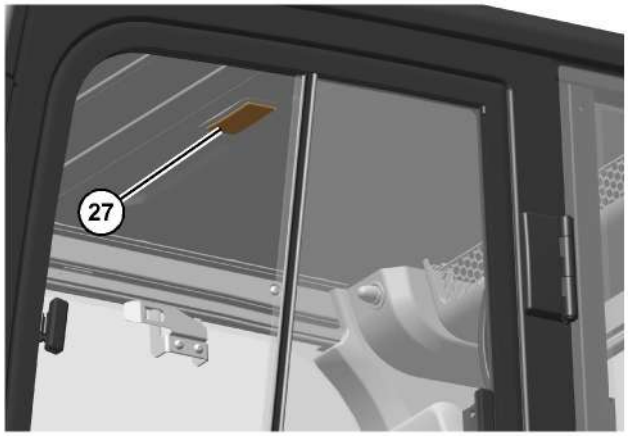


Illustration 202 g06208645

The dome light has three different positions. When the dome light is in the center position (horizontal), the light will come on when the door is open and shut off when the door is closed.

When the left side of the light is pressed, the lamp will be inoperable.

When the right side of the light is pressed, the lamp will be illuminated until the lamp is switched to another position.

i09925573

Battery Disconnect Switch

SMCS Code: 1411-B11

NOTICE
To ensure no damage to the engine occurs, verify that the engine is fully operational before cranking the engine. Do not crank an engine that is not fully operational.

NOTICE
Never move the battery disconnect switch to the OFF position while the engine is operating. Serious damage to the electrical system could result.

The battery disconnect switch is located on the left side of the machine under the cab.

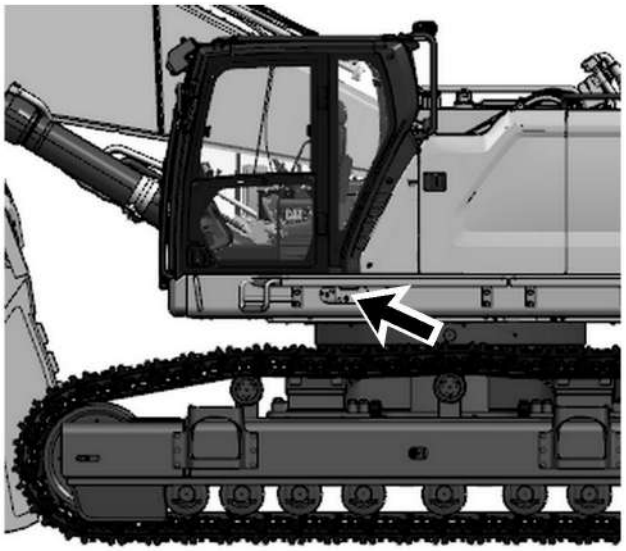


Illustration 203 g07704219
Battery disconnect switch location

Battery Disconnect Switch (Type 1)

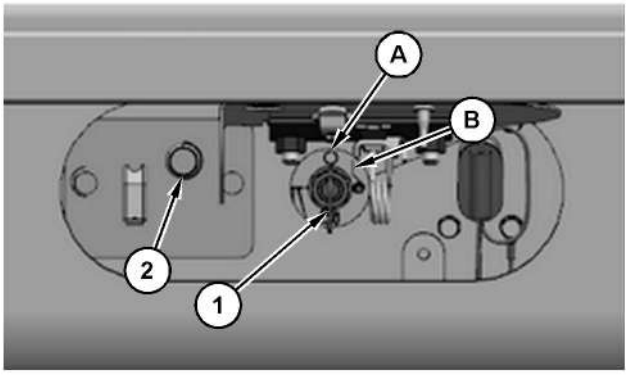


Illustration 204 g07704223

Battery disconnect switch type 1

(A) OFF position
(B) ON position
(1) Battery disconnect switch
(2) Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) purge lamp (if equipped)

Battery Disconnect Switch (Type 2)

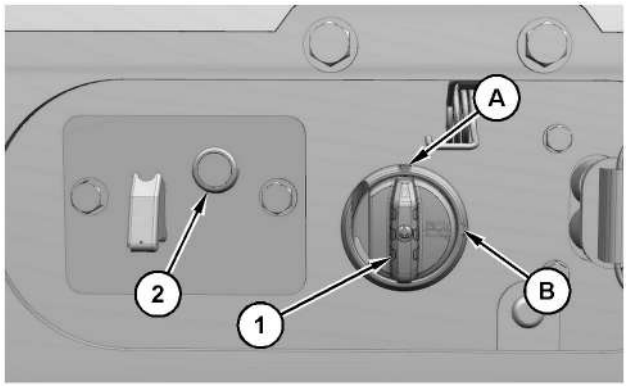


Illustration 205 g07704224

Battery disconnect switch type 2

(A) OFF position
(B) ON position
(1) Battery disconnect switch
(2) DEF purge lamp (if equipped)

Battery Disconnect Switch (1) – The battery disconnect switch can be used to disconnect the battery from the machines electrical system. The key must be inserted into battery disconnect switch (1) before the battery disconnect switch can be turned.

(A) OFF – To deactivate the electrical system, turn battery disconnect switch (1) counterclockwise to the OFF position (A).

(B) ON – To activate the electrical system, insert the disconnect switch key (if equipped) and turn the battery disconnect switch clockwise. The battery disconnect switch must be turned to the ON position (B) to enable battery power to start the engine.

(2) DEF Purge Lamp (If Equipped) – When illuminated, DEF purge lamp (2) indicates that the DEF system is still powered and active.

NOTICE
Do not conduct any service procedures on the DEF system until the DEF purge indicator lamp is not illuminated. The indicator lamp may remain illuminated for several minutes, even though the battery disconnect switch is OFF and the engine start switch is OFF. When the indicator lamp is on, the DEF system is still powered.

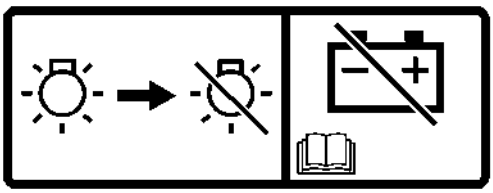


Illustration 206 g07702170

DEF wait to disconnect film

Note: Do not turn off battery disconnect switch (1) until 5 seconds have elapsed after turning the engine start switch to the OFF position. Do not turn off the battery disconnect switch while the “Lock Security?” screen is displayed on the monitor. Both conditions would prevent the Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) system from being purged and could cause DEF fluid to freeze in the lines.

The battery disconnect switch and the engine start switch perform different functions. The entire electrical system is disabled when you turn the battery disconnect switch to the OFF position. The battery remains connected to the electrical system when you turn the engine start switch to the OFF position.

Turn battery disconnect switch (1) to the OFF position (A) and remove the key (if equipped) when you service the electrical system or any other machine components. If installed with a cover lock (type 1), close the cover and install a padlock. If no cover lock is present (type 2), align holes on battery disconnect switch (1) and install padlock.

Turn the battery disconnect switch to the OFF position and remove the key if you do not operate the machine. Turning off the disconnect switch will prevent the battery from being discharged.

A good practice is to use the disconnect switch after you operate the machine. Turning off the disconnect switch will prevent the battery from being discharged. The following problems can cause battery discharge:

- Short circuits
- Current draw via some components
- Vandalism

i10021203

Product Link

SMCS Code: 7490; 7606

Note: Your equipment may be equipped with the Cat® Product Link™ system.

The Cat Product Link communication device utilizes cellular and/or satellite technology to communicate equipment information. This information is communicated to Caterpillar, Cat dealers, and Caterpillar customers. The Cat Product Link communication device uses Global Positioning System (GPS) satellite receivers.

The capability of two-way communication between the equipment and a remote user is available with the Cat Product Link communication device. The remote user can be a dealer or a customer.

Data Broadcasts

Data concerning this equipment, the condition of the equipment, and the operation of the equipment is being transmitted by Cat Product Link to Caterpillar and/or Cat dealers. The data is used to serve the customer better and to improve upon Cat products and services. The information transmitted may include: equipment serial number, equipment location, and operational data, including but not limited to: fault codes, emissions data, fuel usage, service meter hours, software, and hardware version numbers and installed attachments.

Caterpillar and/or Cat dealers may use this information for various purposes. Refer to the following list for possible uses:

- Providing services to the customer and/or the equipment
- Checking or maintaining Cat Product Link equipment
- Monitoring the health of the equipment or performance
- Helping maintain the equipment and/or improve the efficiency of the equipment
- Evaluating or improving Cat products and services
- Complying with legal requirements and valid court orders
- Performing market research
- Offering the customer new products and services

Caterpillar may share some or all the collected information with Caterpillar affiliated companies, dealers, and authorized representatives. Caterpillar will not sell or rent collected information to any other third party and will exercise reasonable efforts to keep the information secure. Caterpillar recognizes and respects customer privacy. For more information, please contact your local Cat dealer.

Operation in a Blast Site for Product Link Radios

WARNING

This equipment is equipped with a Cat® Product Link communication device. When electric detonators are being used for blasting operations, radio frequency devices can cause interference with electric detonators for blasting operations which can result in serious injury or death. The Product Link communication device should be deactivated within the distance mandated under all applicable national or local regulatory requirements. In the absence of any regulatory requirements Caterpillar recommends the end user perform their own risk assessment to determine safe operating distance.

Refer to your products Operation and Maintenance Manual Supplement, “Regulatory Compliance Information” for more information.

For information regarding the methods to disable the Cat Product Link communication device, please refer to your specific Cat Product Link manual listed below:

- Operation and Maintenance Manual, SEBU8142, “ Product Link - PL121, PL321, PL522, and PL523”
- Operation and Maintenance Manual, SEBU8832, “ Product Link PLE702, PLE602, PLE601, PL641, PL631, PL542, PL240, PL241, PL243, PL141, PL131, PL161, PL083 and PL042 Systems”

Note: If no radio disable switch is installed and the equipment will be operating near a blast zone, a Product Link radio disable switch may be installed on the equipment. The switch will allow the Cat Product Link communication device to be shut off by the operator from the equipment control panel. For more details and installation procedures, refer to the following:

- Special Instruction, REHS7339, “Installation Procedure for Product Link PLE640 Systems”
- Special Instruction, REHS8850, “Installation Procedure for the Elite Product Link PLE601, PLE641, and PLE631 Systems”
- Special Instruction, SEHS0377, “Installation Procedure for the Product Link PL131, PL141, and PL161 Systems”
- Special Instruction, REHS9111, “Installation Procedure for the Pro Product Link PL641 and PL631 Systems”
- Special Instruction, M0098124, “Installation Procedure for Pro Product Link PL243 Cellular Radio Systems”
- Special Instruction, M0109130, “Installation Procedure for the Elite Product Link PLE602, PLE602p, PLE702, PLE643, PLE643p, and PL743 Systems”
- Special Instruction, M0111437, “Installation Procedure for the Elite Product Link PLE602, PLE602p, PLE702, PLE683, PLE683p, and PL783 Systems”
- Combined Manual, M0111044, “ Product link Elite PLE643 and PLE743 Systems”
- Combined Manual, M0099595, “ Product Link Dual-Mode Systems PLE683, PLE683p, and PLE783”

i09939603

Machine Security System

SMCS Code: 7631

General Information

NOTICE
This machine may be equipped with a Cat ® Machine Security System (MSS) and may not start under certain conditions.

Illustration 207 g06223917

Machines that are equipped with Cat MSS can be identified by a decal in the operator station Read the following information and know your machines settings. Your Cat dealer can identify your machine settings.

The Cat Machine Security System (MSS) discourages unwanted operation of a machine. When armed, the MSS requires operator login to start the engine. The following methods of operator login to disarm the security system are available:

- Cat Bluetooth® key fob
- Passcode

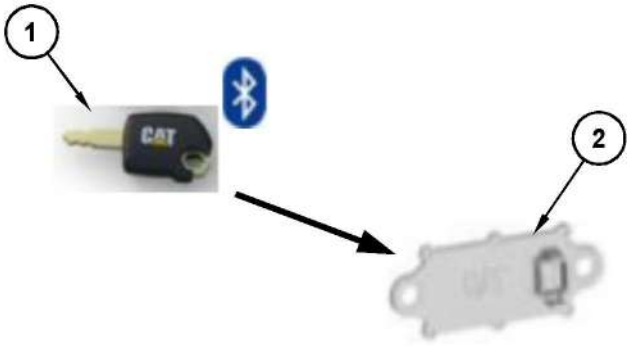


Illustration 208 g07663432

Bluetooth Connections

(1) Cat Bluetooth key fob (CATBTFOB)
(2) Cat Bluetooth transceiver (CATBTNT)

The Cat Bluetooth key fob (1) contains an electronic chip. The electronic chip has a unique identification number (ID). A Bluetooth transceiver is mounted in the cab to read the ID of the key. The Bluetooth transceiver module translates the information received from the key fob into a J1939 message. This message is sent to the Electronic Control Module (ECM) that is connected to the MSS. The ECM is typically the Machine ECM. The ECM is set up with the ID of the keys of the intended users.

When the MSS is armed, the ECM validates the ID of the key fob. If the key ID is on the list of authorized keys in the ECM and the key is valid, the machine will operate normally. If the key ID is not on the list of authorized keys in the ECM or is not valid, the MSS will keep the critical machine functions disabled.

If the MSS is not installed, the operator can skip the login and the machine will operate normally.

Components

The Machine Security System (MSS) consists of the following components:

- Electronic Control Module (ECM)
- Cat Bluetooth key fob (CATBTFOB)
- Machine display
- Bluetooth transceiver module (CATBTNT)
- Engine start switch

System Overview

The Machine Security System (MSS) is designed to restrict operation of a machine. A list of the authorized electronic keys and passcodes for a machine is contained in the ECM for the MSS. A valid Bluetooth key fob or passcode can disarm the MSS. If the MSS is disabled or not installed, any operator may access critical machine functions.

The Cat ® Electronic Technician (Cat ET) Service Tool can be used to program the ECM with the authorized keys and passcodes. Bluetooth devices and passcodes can be registered using the in-cab display if the operator is logged in to the system using a master access account.

When the engine start switch is turned to the ON position, the display boots up. If Bluetooth detection is enabled, the transceiver will receive a signal from any Bluetooth key that is present. The ECM will then compare this ID to the list of authorized keys.

Note: If multiple devices are present, the first valid device detected by the transceiver will be read.

If the ID of the key matches an authorized key, the status indicator on the engine start switch will turn a green color and the MSS will disarm. This disarming will allow the operator access to critical functions of the machine.

If the ID of the key that is read does not match the list in the ECM, the status indicator will remain a red color. The MSS remains in the “armed” state and the machine will remain disabled.

If the MSS is disabled and the ID of the key matches an authorized key, the operator will be identified and allowed access to the critical machine functions. The operator will be able to save configurations and start the machine.

If the MSS is disabled and the ID of the key that is read does not match an authorized key, the operator must log in as a guest. The operator will not be able to save custom configurations but will have access to starting the engine.

Activating Bluetooth Functionality

For shipping purposes, Bluetooth functionality is deactivated. Ensure that Bluetooth functionality is active on your machine using the following procedure:

1. Ensure that the function is active from the radio screen:

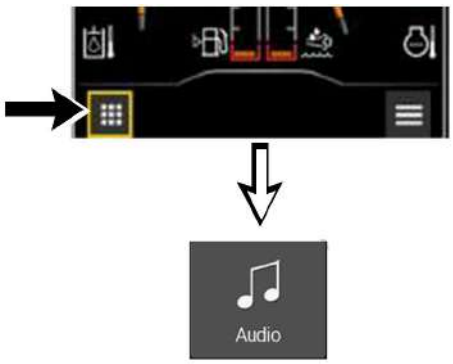


Illustration 209 g07542565

a. From the home screen, press the navigation button in the lower left corner, then select “Audio” .

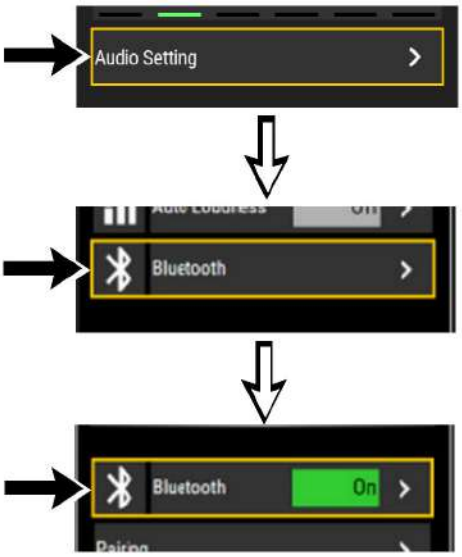


Illustration 210 g07656851

b. Select “Audio Setting” , then select “Bluetooth” . Ensure that “Bluetooth” is set to “ON” .

The “Bluetooth” settings can also be accessed from the “Home” screen by selecting the navigation button, then selecting “Setting” , “Audio” , “Bluetooth” .

Pairing Your Device to the Machine

Use to following procedure to pair your device to the machine:

1. From the home screen, press the navigation button in the lower left corner, then select “Audio” .
2. Select “Audio Setting” , then “Bluetooth” .

   The “Bluetooth” settings can also be accessed from the “Home” screen by selecting the navigation button, then selecting “Setting” , “Audio” , “Bluetooth” .

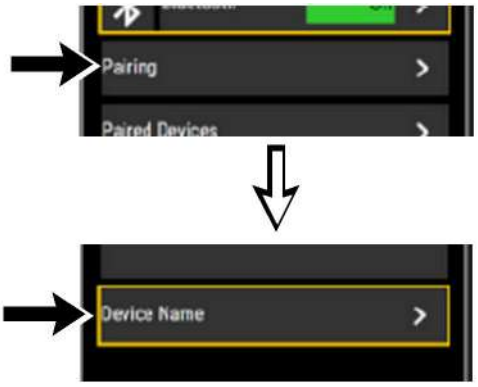


Illustration 211 g06319676

3. Select “Pairing” , then “Device Name” .

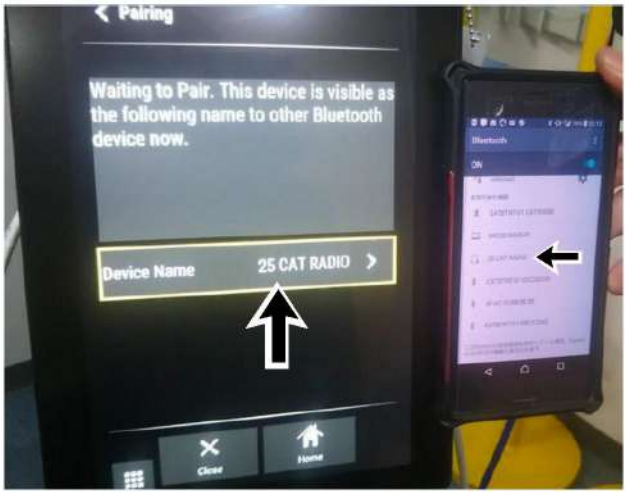


Illustration 212 g06319681

Machine name on monitoring system and operator device

4. Find your device on the list and pair the devices. Ensure that the devices are paired on your phone as well.

Note: The device name on your phone should be “## CAT RADIO” , with the number being from “00” to “99” .

Reading the ID of a Key

The Machine Security System (MSS) must identify a valid passcode or Bluetooth key fob ID.

When the engine start switch ring is turned to the ON position, the MSS will check the ID of any key fob. If the ID matches a key ID stored in the machine ECM, the critical ECM functions are enabled. An enable message is also sent via the Cat ® data link or J1939 data link to the other ECMs on the machine. The machine will operate normally.

Note: If the machine ECM has failed or has been removed, the critical machine operations controlled by the other electronic control modules will not operate.

Armed

When the MSS is armed, critical machine functions are disabled. The MSS disables the power that is supplied to each component that is powered by the output drivers. The machine will not be able to operate normally.

There are two states of operation within the “armed” mode:

Engine Start Switch Ring Position OFF – When no power is applied to the MSS, the MSS will default to “armed” state. When power is applied to the MSS and the grace period has expired, the MSS will return to the “MSS Armed” .

Engine Start Ring Switch Position ON – When the engine start switch ring is first moved to the ON position, the display boots up and the system attempts to detect a Bluetooth key ID. The ECM will continue reading until a valid key ID is read or a passcode is entered. If a valid key ID or passcode is not read, the MSS status indicator will remain red and the MSS remains armed.

Disarmed

When the MSS is disarmed, normal machine operation is allowed. A message is sent to the other machine ECMs over the Cat data link. or J1939 data link. The machine will be able to start. The green LED on the status indicator will illuminate.

There are multiple ways to disarm the machine:

- Use a valid passcode
- Use a valid Bluetooth key fob
- Use the Cat ® Electronic Technician (Cat ET) Service Tool to configure the MSS bypass schedule to allow machine operations during scheduled periods of time during the week.

Grace Period

After a machine has been started successfully, the operator will have a grace period after the machine is turned off before the MSS is automatically armed. The operator is not required to arm the system manually.

During the grace period an operator can start the machine without a key ID or passcode. When the grace period expires, the MSS will rearm automatically.

If the MSS is unable to read a key ID, the system will remain armed. When the MSS identifies a key with an invalid key ID, the system will remain armed.

The grace period for a machine can be configured with Cat ET if a factory password or master level account is available.

Navigating the User Interface Touchscreen Display

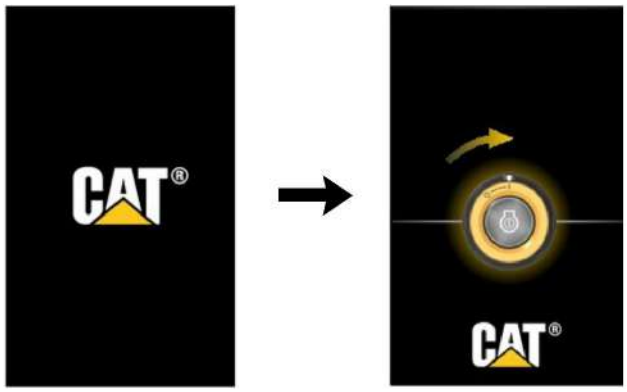


Illustration 213 g06210561
Startup sequence screens

The display will start up automatically after turning the battery disconnect switch to the ON position. The screen will prompt the operator to turn the engine start ring to the ON position. When the engine start ring is turned to the ON position, the display will navigate to the passcode entry screen.

If the operator has not turned the engine start ring to the ON position, the display will time out after 1 minute.

If the battery disconnect switch is already on and the display is off, the display will start up automatically after the engine start ring is powered on. The Cat screen will appear for a short time and then login keypad will appear.

Note: Avoid touching the screen with sharp objects.

The access level assigned to the operator can limit or expand the amount of freedom the user has to manage the system. The following paragraphs explain access levels.

There are three levels of operator access recognized by the touchscreen display. The following levels are available:

- Guest
- Standard
- Master

Guest – If an operator does not have an authenticated key or passcode, the user is able to bypass log in as a guest. Some menu features will not be available such as the options for saving

configurations and operator management. If the Machine Security System (MSS) is enabled, guest operators cannot start the machine.

Standard – A standard operator is a registered user of the machine. Operators with this access level can start the engine whether or not the MSS is installed. This user may save a control configuration for future application.

Master – Master accounts can perform operator management in addition to all standard level functions.

Any “Standard” or “Master” account may be created or removed by a “Master” level operator.

Table 42

Selections and Access for the Touchscreen Display	
Access Level	**Operator Setting**
Guest	“Operator Input Configuration” “Response” “Change Operator”
Standard	“Operator Input Configuration” “Response” “Controls Setup” “Change Operator”
Master	“Operator Input Configuration” “Response” “Controls Setup” “Change Operator” “Manage Operator”

Operation of Status Indicator

Illustration 214 g06215426

Engine start switch with integrated MSS indicator

The Machine Security System (MSS) uses a status indicator that is integrated into the engine start switch in the cab. This indicator provides a visible alert for the security system.

The operator can use the status indicator to determine the status of the system or for troubleshooting.

Illustration 215 g06226442

Status indicator when the MSS is armed

When the MSS is armed, the status indicator will be red. The red light warns the operator that the machine is armed with the security system and that an operator login is required. The red LED will remain ON until a valid key is read while the key switch or engine start switch ring is in the ON position.

Illustration 216 g06226444

Status indicator when the MSS is disarmed or uninstalled

When the MSS is disarmed, the status indicator will be green. The green light notifies the operator that an operator is logged on the machine and the security system has been disarmed. The status indicator will be green if the MSS is not installed on the machine. Also, the green LED will remain ON after power down during the grace period. After the grace period, the MSS automatically returns to the “armed” mode.

For machines with a standard key switch, a separate status indicator will be available.

Operator Login

Any user may start the engine if the Machine Security System (MSS) is disabled.

If the MSS is active, only a “Standard” or “Master” account can start the machine engine. Before starting the machine engine, the security system must identify a registered operator. An operator can access the machine display using one of the following methods:

- Passcode
- Cat Bluetooth key

Passcode Entry

To log in using a passcode, refer to the following steps:

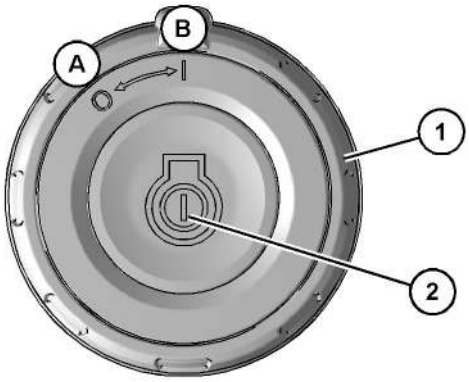


Illustration 217 g06180554

(A) Off
(B) On
(1) Engine start switch ring
(2) Engine start button

1. Turn engine start switch (1) to the ON position (B).

Illustration 218 g06209470

2. Enter a registered passcode using the monitor keypad and then press “Enter” .

Note: The jog dial or the numbered buttons on the right-side switch panel can also be used to enter the code.

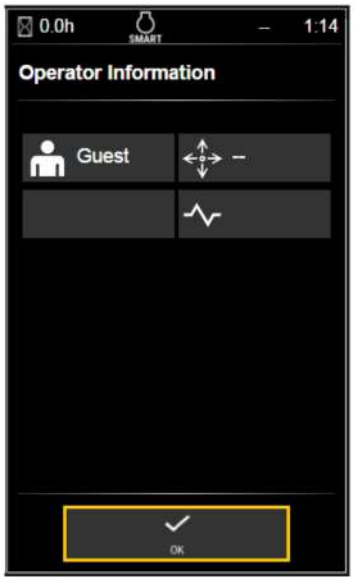


Illustration 219 g06211194

3. Select “Enter” to confirm the passcode. If a registered passcode is recognized, the operator information screen will appear on the display. If the MSS is not installed, the passcode screen will be bypassed automatically after 10 seconds. The operator will be logged in to the system as a guest. Refer to Illustration 219 .
4. Select “OK” to continue to the display homescreen.

Illustration 220 g06209482

5. After an operator logs in to the system successfully, an “Engine Start Allowed” message will appear across the top of the monitor. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, Engine Starting for instructions on starting the engine.

Invalid Passcode

Illustration 221 g06209472
Invalid passcode screen

If a passcode is not recognized, the display will notify the user with an “Invalid code” message. Refer to Illustration 221 .

The operator has five tries to enter a valid passcode successfully. After a fifth unsuccessful attempt, a lockout screen will appear and remain on the display for a duration of 5 minutes.

Note: If the Machine Security System (MSS) is not active, the user can select the “Skip Login” button to avoid the lockout period. Refer to the “Bypass login” section for further information.

Bypass login

Operator login can be bypassed if the user selects the “Skip Login” button on the display. The operator will be logged in to the machine with “Guest” level access.

If the MSS is inactive, the operator will be able to start the engine as normal and view all display screens.

If the MSS is active on the machine, the operator is able to view all display screens but will not have access to starting the engine.

Bluetooth Entry

Alternatively, a Bluetooth Operator ID can be used to log in to the machine. For a Bluetooth key to be detected by the system, ensure that the following qualifications are met:

- The key must be registered with the machine
- The key must be within the cab
- Bluetooth setting must be enabled on the display

Refer to the following steps when logging in to a machine using the Bluetooth key:

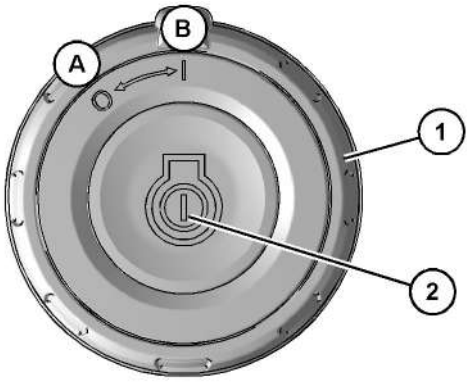


Illustration 222 g06180554

(A) Off
(B) On
(1) Engine start switch ring
(2) Engine start button

1. Turn engine start switch (1) to the ON position (B).

2. Wait several seconds for the system to detect the key when the passcode dialog appears. Once the key is detected, the “Operator Information” screen will display.

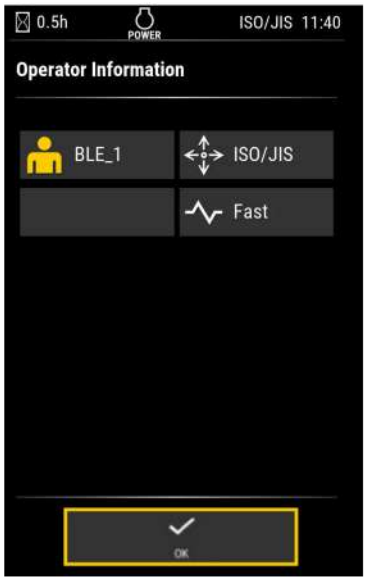


Illustration 223 g06209615

Bluetooth operator information screen

3. Select the “OK” button if the proper operator has been displayed.

Illustration 224 g06209482

4. After an operator logs in to the system successfully, an “Engine Start Allowed” message will appear across the top of the monitor. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, Engine Starting for instructions on starting the engine.

NOTICE
The access level will change to a “Guest” account automatically if the key is removed from the cab at any time. If the MSS is enabled and the engine is on when the key is removed from the cab, the operator will not be able to start the engine if turned off. To turn on the engine again without the Bluetooth key, the operator will need to log in a registered account using a passcode.

Note: If multiple Bluetooth devices are within the cab, the system will select the first device detected by the Bluetooth transceiver as the active operator.

Engine Start Switch Troubleshooting

Table 43

Switch Status	Possible Cause	Resolution
Engine start switch is not illuminated	Engine start accessory power not on	Turn engine start switch ring to ON position
	Power management triggered	Cycle engine start switch ring and try to restart
Engine start switch is green	Starting component failure	Contact your Cat dealer
Engine start switch is red	Machine interlock conditions not met	Hydraulic lock in LOCKED position

(continued)

(Table 43, contd)

Switch Status	Possible Cause	Resolution
	Engine shut down without cycling start switch ring	Cycle engine start switch ring and try restart
	Operator not authenticated (Passcode login)	Add operator to machine authorized user list
		Switch operator from guest mode using display
	Operator not authenticated (Bluetooth key)	Add operator to machine authorized user list
		Replace key fob battery
		Ensure more than 4.5 m (15 ft) from other Bluetooth equipped machine
		Alternately, log in with display passcode or contact your local Cat dealer

i08251204

Camera

SMCS Code: 7347; 7348

Rear View Camera

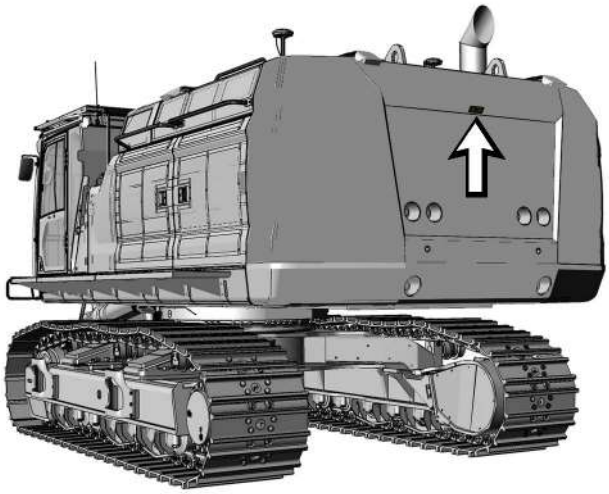


Illustration 225 g06592468

The rear view camera system consists of a camera that is located in the middle of the top of the counterweight.

Note: The rear view camera system has been set up by the factory or by a Cat ® dealer to provide views which comply with specified guidelines. Consult your Cat dealer before any adjustments are made to the system.

For more information refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Monitoring System”.

Right Side View Camera (If Equipped)

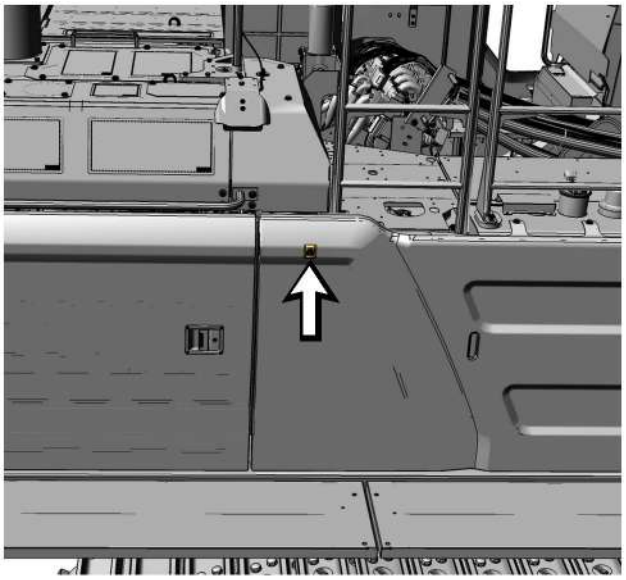


Illustration 226 g06592490

The side view camera system consists of a camera mounted on the panel next to the pump compartment.

Note: The side view camera system has been set up by the factory or by a Cat dealer to provide views which comply with specified machine side views. Consult your Cat dealer before any adjustments are made to the system.

For more information refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Monitoring System”.

i09947453

Monitoring System

SMCS Code: 7451; 7490

WARNING

Do not operate the machine if the monitor is not functioning (for example, monitor has a black screen or is not responding) when the key switch is in the ON position.

The monitor provides images from the camera system and other information for safe machine operation. Operating the machine without a properly functioning monitor may result in injury or death. If the monitor is not functioning, place the machine in a safe state by following the procedures for stopping and parking the machine. Determine the cause of the monitor malfunction and correct before returning the machine to service.

NOTICE
When the monitor provides a warning, immediately check the monitor and perform the required action or maintenance as indicated by the monitor.

The monitor indicator does not guarantee that the machine is in a good condition. Do not use the monitor panel as the only method of inspection. Maintenance and inspection of the machine must be performed on a regular basis. See the Maintenance Section of this Operation and Maintenance Manual.

General Information

Reference: For complete monitoring system information, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, M0109053, “ Next Generation Hydraulic Excavator”.

The monitoring system is an input and an output of the Machine Control System. The monitor has a multi-touch 8 inch or 10 inch display. The Machine Control System communicates back and forth on the data link. The monitoring system consists of the following components:

- Display (with numerous screens and menus)
- Indicators
- Gauges
- Soft Switch Panel
- Jog Dial

Illustration 227 g06720205

(1) Action Lamps
(2) Status Information Area
(3) Notification Center Icon
(4) Camera View Area
(5) Gauge Area
(6) Navigation Area
(7) Function List
(8) Shortcuts

The monitoring system displays various warnings and information about the condition of the machine, and the machines surrounding with various camera views. There are gauges and several alert indicators included on monitoring system display. Each gauge is dedicated to a parameter within a machine system. The monitoring system will allow the user to do the following:

- View Surroundings
- Interpret status information
- Interpret parameters
- View “Operation and Maintenance Manual”
- View service intervals
- Perform calibrations

- Troubleshoot machine systems

Action Lamps (1)

The action lamps illuminate to show that a problem has occurred with the machine.

Status Information Area (2)

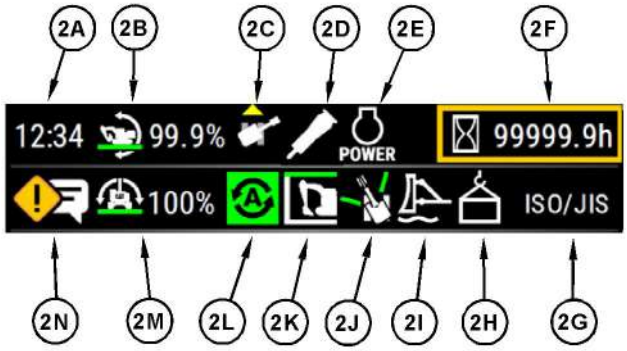


Illustration 228 g06735325

(2A) Clock
(2B) Machine Pitch Angle (if equipped)
(2C) Machine Rotation Angle (if equipped)
(2D) Work Tool
(2E) Seatbelt Switch Status (if equipped) / Power Mode
(2F) Multi Status Information
(2G) Lever Pattern / Fuel Level
(2H) Heavy Lift / Cat Dig Boost (if equipped)
(2I) Blade Float Status
(2J) Fine Swing / 2D E-Fence Right, Left, Active Status, Cab Avoidance (if equipped)
(2K) Smart Boom / 2D E-Fence Ceiling, Floor, Front Status, Cab Avoidance (if equipped)
(2L) Automatic Status
(2M) Machine Roll Angle (if equipped)
(2N) Notification Center Dashboard (if equipped)

Reference: For complete status information, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, M0109053, " Next Generation Hydraulic Excavator Monitoring System Supplement".

Notification Center Icon (3)

Illustration 229 g06720210

(3A) Event Description
(3B) Event Symbol
(3C) Event ID

Event Description (3A) – This area will display the description of pop-up message of the impending problem.

- Line 1 : System
- Line 2 : Condition
- Line 3 : Action to be taken

Event Symbol (3B) – This area will display the symbol of the problem

Event ID (3C) – The identification number for the event will be shown here.

Camera View (4)

This area on the monitor displays the view of the cameras. A rear view camera mounted on top of the counterweight and an optional side view camera mounted in the side panel next to the hydraulic tank.

If both rear view camera and side view camera are equipped, the monitor screen can be toggled to show:

- Rear only
- Side only
- Split vertically

- Split horizontally

The camera view can be toggled when the cursor is on the camera view area and the area is touched or the jog dial is turned.

Gauge Area (5)

Fuel Level – This gauge indicates the amount of fuel that is remaining in the fuel tank. When the fuel gauge is in the red range, add fuel immediately.

Hydraulic Oil Temperature – This gauge indicates the temperature of the hydraulic oil. The normal operating range is the green range. If the gauge is in the white range, the engine and machine warm-up is required. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Engine and Machine Warm-up”. If the gauge reaches the red range, reduce the load on the system. If the gauge stays in the red range, stop the machine and investigate the cause of the problem.

Engine Coolant Temperature – This gauge indicates the temperature of the engine coolant. The normal operating range is the green range. If the gauge is in the white range, the engine and machine warm-up is required. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Engine and Machine Warm-up”. If the gauge reaches the red range, stop the machine and investigate the cause of the problem.

Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) Gauge (If Equipped) – This gauge indicates the level of DEF fluid in the DEF tank. When the DEF gauge is in the red range, add DEF immediately.

Navigation Bar (6)

Apps Key – Allows you to display different information in the gauge area related to operation. Also contains air conditioner and audio controls. This key includes the settings screen allowing change of a multitude of parameters, some password protected.

Function List Key – Allows you to turn on and off various functions related to the active screen. This icon only appears in certain screens where additional settings are necessary.

Shortcuts – Allows you to set certain shortcuts on the navigation bar.

Machine Warnings

Illustration 230 g06774993

Notifications

(1) Notification Icon
(2) Notification Dashboard

The Monitor will display warnings, and log events for machine conditions that are not within normal operating parameters.

The event warnings are classified into three warning levels. Warning Level 1 represents the least severe problem and Warning Level 3 represents the most severe problem. The warning levels, monitor response, and the required operator actions are given below.

Warning Level 1 (Gray) – Requires operator awareness. The icon and pop-up message will both appear gray.

Warning Level 2 (Amber) – Requires a change in the operation of the machine or a change in the maintenance of the machine to correct the condition. The icon and pop-up message will both appear amber and the action lamp will blink.

Warning Level 3 (Red) – Requires immediate shutdown of the machine to prevent damage to the machine or personnel. The icon and pop-up message will both appear red, the action lamp will blink, and the buzzer will sound.

When multiple warnings are present in the system, the highest warning is shown first. Swipe the message up or down to view all the logged warnings.

Reference: For complete machine warning information, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, M0109053, “Next Generation Hydraulic Excavator Monitoring System Supplement”.

Logging In

Illustration 231 g06242074

There are different ways to access the monitor which include:

- Guest access
- Passcode access
- Bluetooth access
- Cat ® Fleet Management app

For more information on logging in, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, Machine Security System - Operator Login.

Navigation

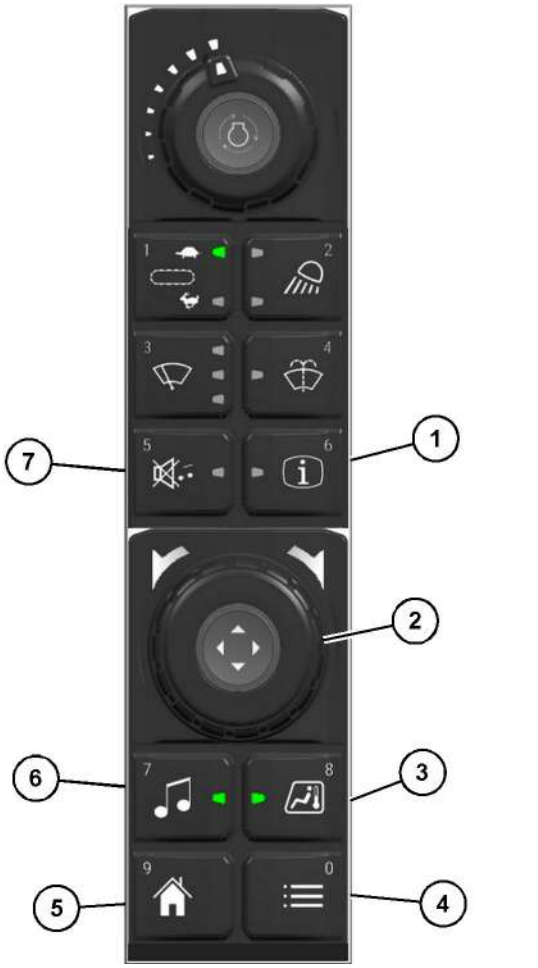


Illustration 232 g06464384

Right side switch panel

(1) Operator information button
(2) Jog dial
(3) Air conditioner button
(4) Next menu button
(5) Home button
(6) Audio button
(7) Mute button

The monitor can be navigated by touch screen or the switch panel. Switch panel components can be used to interface with the monitor in the following ways:

Operator information button (1) – Press and hold this button to access the operator information screen. This screen shows information such as operator settings.

Jog dial (2) (if equipped) – Rotate the jog dial to highlight menu items in the monitor. Push the jog dial down to select the highlighted item.

Air conditioner button (3) (if equipped) – Press the button to access the air conditioner controls.

Next menu button (4) (if equipped) – This button is equivalent to the function list key on the monitor. This button can only be used on screens where the function list key is shown.

Home button (5) (if equipped) – Press this button to return to the main screen.

Audio button (6) (if equipped) – Press this button to access the audio controls.

Mute button (7) – Press this button to mute the audio. Press the button again to unmute the audio.

Each of the buttons is also assigned a number which is imprinted in the top corner of the button. These buttons can be used to enter the numerical passcodes used to log in to the monitor.

i08251212

Fuel Transfer Pump (Refueling)
(If Equipped)

SMCS Code: 1256

Use the following procedure to pump fuel and store the hose.

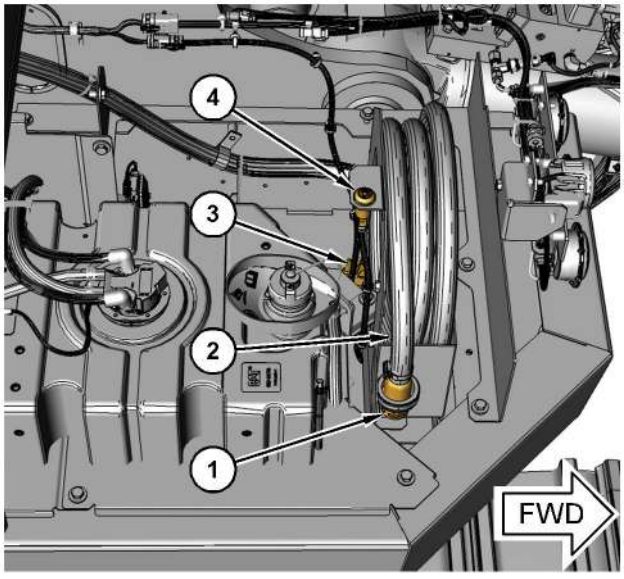


Illustration 233 g06600665

(1) Suction valve
(2) Suction hose
(3) Electric refueling pump
(4) ON/OFF switch

ON/OFF Switch – Push the ON/OFF switch to activate or deactivate the fuel transfer pump. A red indicator on the switch will illuminate when the fuel transfer pump is activated.

If one of the following conditions occurs, the fuel transfer pump will not activate and/or stop operating:

- Battery disconnect switch is in the OFF position
- Engine is operating
- Engine start switch is moved to the START position.
- Engine start switch is in the OFF position
- Hydraulic lockout control is not in the LOCKED position
- Fuel tank level is full
- Fuel is not detected at the suction valve.
- 30 seconds following a detection of no fuel at the suction valve.

Use the following procedure to pump fuel and store the hose.

1. Prepare the machine for maintenance. Refer to “Prepare the Machine for Maintenance“. Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position. Stop the engine
2. Turn the engine start switch to the ON position without starting the engine. Refer to “Engine Starting“.
3. Remove the fuel tank cap from the fuel tank.
4. Open the right access door. Refer to “Access Door and Cover Locations“.

Illustration 234 g06180748

Suction valve (1) is at the end of hose (2).

Turn the end of the suction valve clockwise to open the valve

5. Uncoil the hose and turn the end of the suction valve clockwise to open the suction valve.

6. Properly insert the end of the suction valve into a container of fuel.

7. Push switch (4) to activate the fuel transfer pump and supply the fuel to the tank. A red indicator on the switch will illuminate when the fuel transfer pump is activated.

When the fuel tank is full, the fuel transfer pump will automatically stop.

When the fuel container is empty, push the switch again to stop refueling. If additional fuel is needed, wait 30 seconds and return to step 6.

Note: The red indicator on the switch will no longer illuminate when the fuel transfer pump has stopped refueling.

Note: The fuel transfer pump will not activate for 30 seconds following a detection of no fuel at the suction valve.

8. Push the switch at any time to deactivate the fuel transfer pump.

Note: The red indicator on the switch will no longer illuminate when the fuel transfer pump has stopped refueling.

9. Drain excess fuel from the hose and turn the end of the suction valve counter-clockwise to close the suction valve.

10. Wind the hose and store in the hose container.

NOTICE
To prevent hose damage, do not coil the hose in a tight radius.

11. Close the access door.

12. Install the fuel tank cap onto the fuel tank.

13. Turn the engine start switch to the OFF position.

i09941404

Radio

SMCS Code: 7338

The radio is integrated into the monitoring system. All the radio controls are adjusted using the monitor. The actual radio is mounted in the right rear console behind the operator seat.

Illustration 235 g06213193

(1) Jog dial
(2) Home button
(3) Radio button

The audio menu can be directly accessed by pressing radio button (3) on the right side switch panel. Input selections can be made using jog dial (1) or using the monitor touch screen. Home button (2) can be used to return to the main screen.

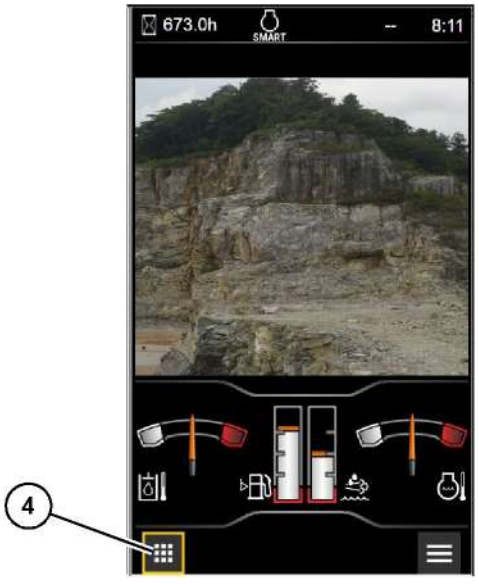


Illustration 236 g06213076

(4) Application menu

Press radio button (3) to go directly to the radio screen. To navigate to the radio screen from the main screen, press application menu button (4).

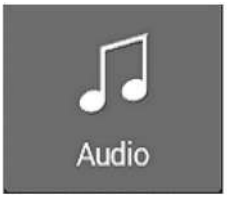


Illustration 237 g07544994

Use jog dial (1) to highlight “Audio” and then press the jog dial downward to select the entry. You may also access the screen by simply touching the “Audio” box on the touch screen.

Illustration 238 g07657619

Radio screen

(5) Volume control
(6) Tuner
(7) Preset stations
(8) Auxiliary button
(9) DAB button (If Equipped)
(10) USB button
(11) Home button
(12) Power button
(13) Audio settings button
(14) FM button
(15) AM button
(16) Bluetooth button

Volume control (5) – The volume control is used to raise or lower the audio volume.

Tuner (6) – The tuner is used to tune the radio to the desired station.

Preset stations (7) – The preset stations store favorite radio stations for the operator. To set a station, tune to the desired station. Press and hold the preset number you want to assign to that station. Once a beep is heard, release the button. The indicator light for the active preset station will illuminate.

Auxiliary button (8) – When a device is plugged into the auxiliary port, press the auxiliary button to connect the device to the radio. The indicator light will illuminate when this mode is active.

DAB button (9) – If equipped, press this button to access DAB radio. The indicator light will illuminate when this mode is active.

USB button (10) – When a device is plugged into the USB port, press the USB button to connect the device to the radio. The indicator light will illuminate when this mode is active.

Home button (11) – Press the “Home” button to return to the main monitor screen.

Power button (12) – Pressing this button turns the radio on and off. The indicator light on the monitor and on button (3) will illuminate when the power is on.

Audio Setting button (13) – Pressing this button will open the radio function list menu.

FM button (14) – Press this button to access FM radio. The indicator light will illuminate when this mode is active.

AM button (15) – Press this button to access AM radio. The indicator light will illuminate when this mode is active.

Bluetooth button (16) – When a Bluetooth device is connected, press the Bluetooth button to connect the device to the radio. The indicator light will illuminate when this mode is active.

Audio Setting (13)

To access the radio function list, press the “Audio Setting” button (13).

The function list menu consists of the following items:

Treble – Allows the user to adjust the treble.

Bass – Allows the user to adjust the bass.

Balance – Allows the user to adjust the balance between speakers.

Auto Loudness – When on, this feature automatically adjusts treble and bass levels when reducing the volume setting. This effect allows the user to hear more clearly at a lower volume.

Repeat – Allows the user to set the repeat preference.

Bluetooth – Allows the user to pair a phone, view paired devices, and edit device names.

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Next Generation Hydraulic Excavator Monitoring System Supplement”Phone for information on the Bluetooth screen.

Selection Method

All settings can be made using the touch screen or by using the jog dial. The method depends on the preference of the operator. When using the touch screen, simply touch the icon you want to select. When using the jog dial, rotate the dial to switch to different selections within the screen. Press the jog dial downward to choose a selection.

Illustration 239 g06213233

When using the jog dial to set the volume or tuner, rotate the dial clockwise to increase and counter-clockwise to decrease. Press downward on the dial to enter the desired setting.

Radio Operation

1. To operate the system, press power button (12).

2. Select between the AM button (15) for AM stations, the FM button (14) for FM stations, or the DAB button (9) for DAB radio (if equipped).

3. Use tuner (6) to adjust to the desired station. If presets stations (7) are set, press the desired preset station.

4. Use volume control (5) to adjust the volume.

5. When the machine is in operation, turn down the volume of the radio.

USB / AUX / Bluetooth Operation (If Equipped)

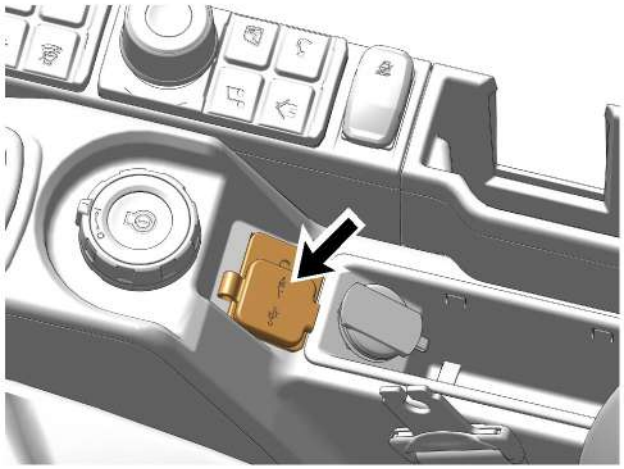


Illustration 240 g06213245

1. To play audio from a device such as an MP3 player or a phone connect the device using an auxiliary cable or a USB cable. Depending on the cable being used, plug the cable into the appropriate port on the console.

To play audio from a “Bluetooth” device, you must first pair the “Bluetooth” device with the machine. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Next Generation Hydraulic Excavator Monitoring System Supplement”Phone for information on the Bluetooth pairing.

2. Select either “USB” (10), “AUX” (8), or “Bluetooth” (9) depending on which type of connection was used. Play the music from the device. The music should be playing over the radio speakers if properly connected. Adjust the volume as necessary.

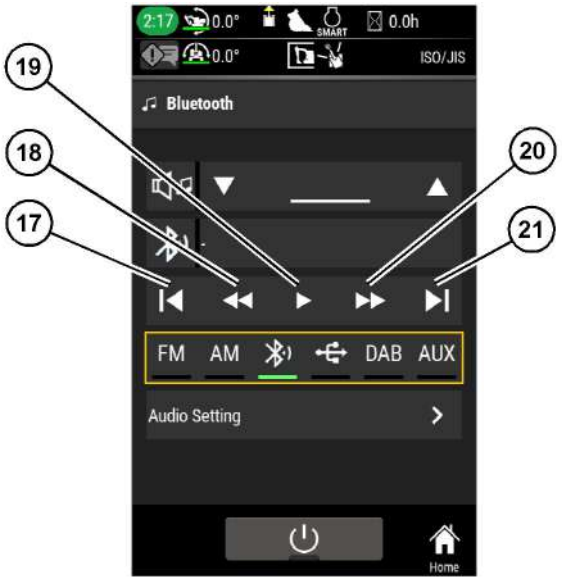


Illustration 241 g07657646

Note: If “USB” (10) or “Bluetooth” (16) are selected, extra controls appear on the screen for playing music. They include the following:

17 – Skip to the beginning of the track

18 – Rewind the track

19 – Pause/Play the track

20 – Fast forward the track

21 – Skip to the end of the track

i09947575

Air Conditioning and Heating Control

SMCS Code: 7304; 7320; 7337

Consult with your Cat dealer for periodic maintenance of the heating and air conditioning system.

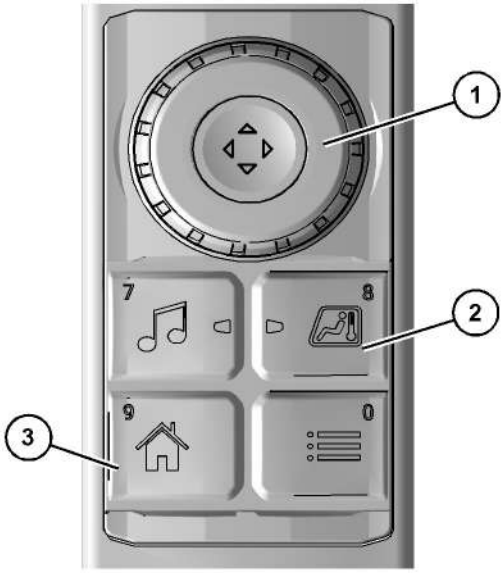


Illustration 242 g06178710

(1) Jog dial
(2) Heating and air conditioning button
(3) Home button

Air conditioning and heating functions are controlled through the monitor. The heating and cooling menu can be directly accessed by pressing button (2) on the right side switch panel. Input selections can be made using jog dial (1) or using the monitor touch screen. Home button (3) can be used to return to the main screen.

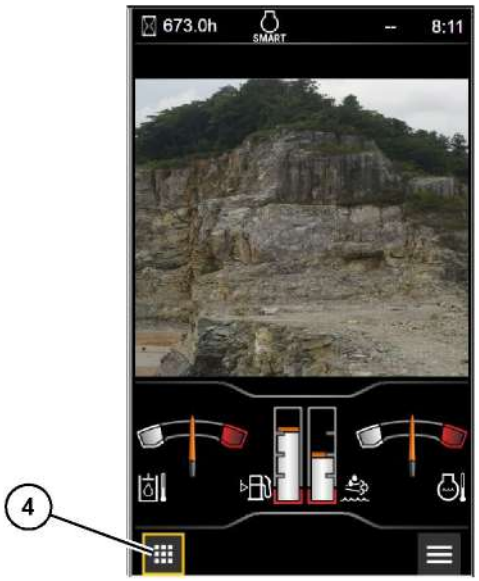


Illustration 243 g06213076

(4) Application menu

Press the Air Conditioning and Heating button (2) to go directly to the air conditioner screen. To navigate to the air conditioner screen from the main screen, press application menu button (4).

Illustration 244 g07545046

Use jog dial (1) to highlight “Air Conditioner” and then press the jog dial downward to select the entry. You may also access the screen by simply touching the “Air Conditioner” box on the touch screen.

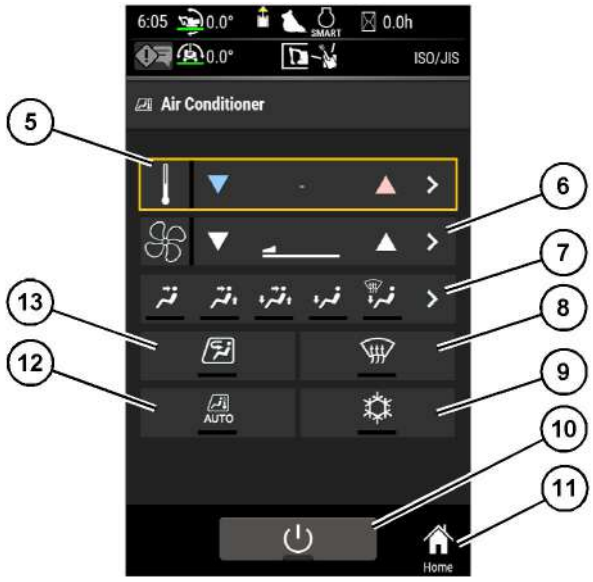


Illustration 245 g07663678

Air conditioner screen

(5) Temperature control
(6) Fan blower speed control
(7) Air outlet settings
(8) Defroster
(9) Compressor ON/OFF
(10) Power
(11) Home button
(12) Auto
(13) Recirculation

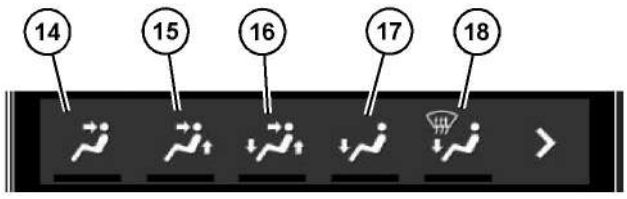


Illustration 246 g06213104

(14) Front vents
(15) Front and rear vents
(16) Front, foot, and rear vents
(17) Foot vents
(18) Defrost and foot mode

Temperature control (5) – The temperature control is used to raise or lower the desired temperature.

Fan blower speed control (6) – The blower control is used to increase or decrease the desired blower speed.

Air outlet settings (7) – The desired air outlet setting can be chosen from this panel. The indicator light will illuminate to show the active setting.

Defroster (8) – Pressing this button activates and deactivates the defroster. Use the defroster to remove steam and frost from the windows. The indicator light will illuminate when this mode is active.

Compressor ON/OFF (9) – Pressing this button activates and deactivates the air conditioner. The indicator light will illuminate when this mode is active.

Power (10) – Pressing this button turns the heating and cooling system on and off. Push and hold the power button for 3 seconds to turn OFF the HVAC system. The indicator light on the monitor and on button (2) will turn green when power is on.

Home button (11) – Use this button to return to the main screen.

Auto (12) – Select this option to hold the system at the desired temperature. The system will modulate to keep the cab at the temperature that the system is set to. The indicator light will illuminate when this mode is active.

Recirculation (13) – This option recirculates air from the cab instead of pulling air from the outside. This mode is more efficient because the system is recycling conditioned air from the cab. However, no fresh air is coming into the cab when in this mode. The indicator light will illuminate when this mode is active.

Front vents (14) – In this mode, air will only circulate from the front vents.

Front and rear vents (15) – In this mode, air will circulate from the front vents and rear vents.

Front, foot, and rear vents (16) – In this mode, air will circulate from the front vents, rear vents, and foot vents.

Foot vents (17) – In this mode, air will only circulate from the foot vents.

Defrost and foot mode (18) – In defrost mode, air will circulate from the defrost vents and foot vents.

Selection Method

All settings can be made using the touch screen or by using the jog dial. The method depends on the preference of the operator. When using the touch screen, simply touch the icon you want to select. When using the jog dial, rotate the dial to switch to different selections within the screen. Press the jog dial downward to choose a selection.

Illustration 247 g06213141

When using the jog dial to set the temperature or blower speed, rotate the dial clockwise to increase and counter-clockwise to decrease. Press downward on the dial to enter the desired setting.

Operation

1. To operate the system, press power button (10).
2. Use temperature control (5) to adjust to the desired temperature.
3. Select the desired mode and outlet vents.
4. Use fan blower speed control (6) to adjust the blower. If the system is in “Auto” mode, the blower fan speed and air outlet setting will automatically be adjusted. But recirculation air intake is not changed automatically.

Note: In cold ambient temperature condition, fan speed is stopped or restricted depend on coolant temperature.

5. Redirect the louvers for front window defrosters and rear air outlets by hand to the desired direction. The air outlets of the foot air vents and right window defroster cannot be redirected.

i08233128

Mirror

SMCS Code: 7319

WARNING

Adjust all mirrors as specified in the Operation and Maintenance Manual. Failure to heed this warning can lead to personal injury or death.

Note: Your machine may not be equipped with all the mirrors that are described in this topic.

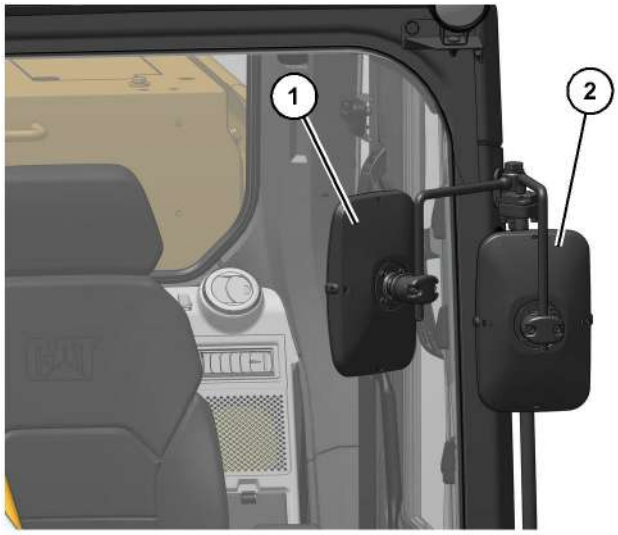


Illustration 248 g06220616

(1) Right Side View Mirror on the Cab
(2) Left Side View Mirror on the Cab

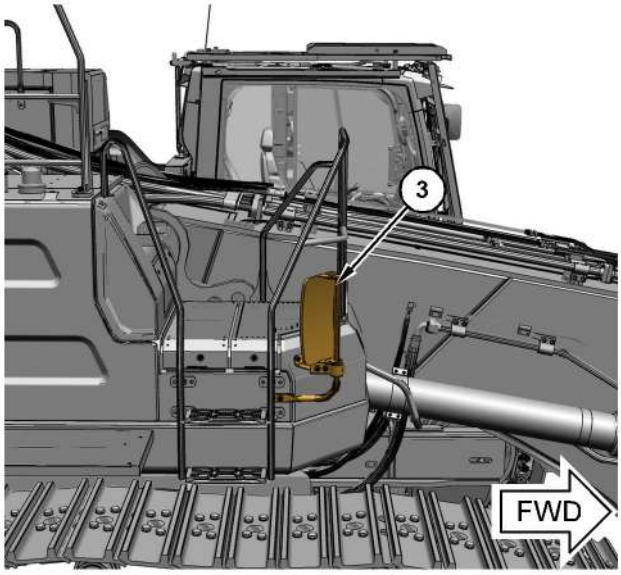


Illustration 249 g06600648

(3) Front tank mirror

Mirrors provide more visibility around your machine. Make sure that the mirrors are in proper working condition and that the mirrors are clean. Adjust all mirrors at the beginning of each work period and adjust the mirrors when you change operators.

Modified machines or machines that have more equipment or attachments may influence your visibility.

Mirror Adjustment

- Park the machine on a level surface.
- Lower the work tool to the ground.
- Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position. For further details on this procedure, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Operator Controls”.
- Stop the engine.
- Adjust rear view mirrors to provide visibility behind the machine at a maximum distance of 30 m (98 ft) from the rear corners of the machine.

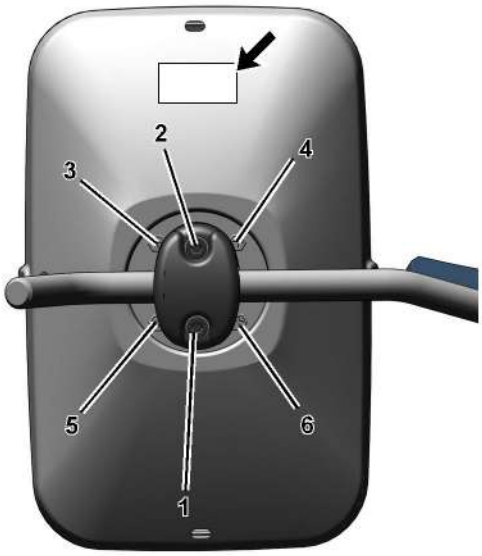


Illustration 250 g06220634

Tightening sequence

After adjustment of the mirror angle, make sure that the CAT logo is at the top.

It may be necessary to tighten the mirror mounting bolts periodically. If the bolts are loose, tighten the bolts in the sequence shown in Illustration 250 . Tighten bolts (1) and (2) to 11 ± 2 N·m (97.36 ± 17.70 lb in).

Tighten the bolts (3) through (6) to 2.0 ± 0.4 N·m (17.70 ± 3.54 lb in).

Right Side View Mirror on the Cab (1)

Illustration 251 g06594985

Adjust the right side view mirror on the cab (1) so the front of the right track can be seen from the operator seat. A view of at least 1 m (3.3 ft) from the right front of the machine should be seen from the operator seat.

Left Side View Mirror on the Cab (2)

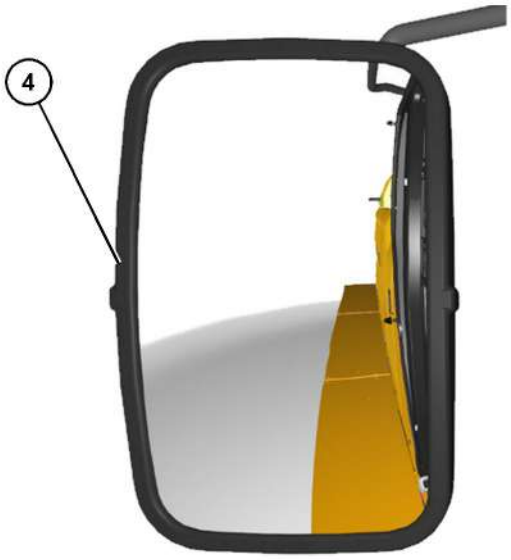


Illustration 252 g06594991

Adjust the left side view mirror on the cab (4) so the left side of the cab, access door, and rear of left track can be seen from the operator seat. A view of at least 1 m (3.3 ft) from the side of the machine should be seen from the operator seat. Additionally, provide as much visibility to the rear as possible.

Right Side View Mirror (3)

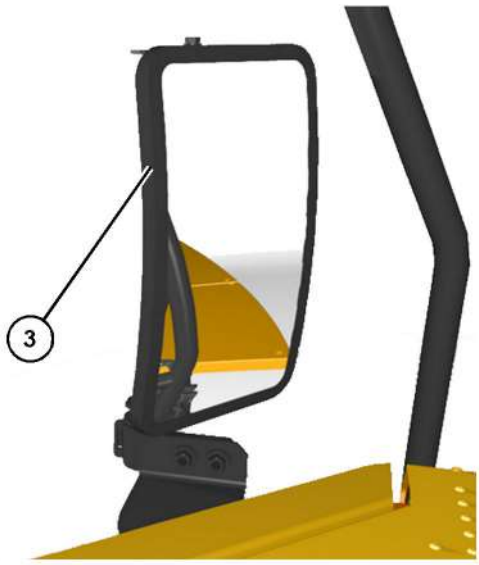


Illustration 253 g06595001

Adjust the right side view mirror (3) so the right access door and the counterweight can be seen from the operator seat. A view of at least 1 m (3.3 ft) from the side of the machine should be seen from the operator seat. Additionally, provide as much visibility to the rear as possible.

i09662761

Window (Front)

SMCS Code: 7310-FR

To provide full ventilation inside the cab, the upper window and the lower window can be fully opened.

⚠ WARNING

When opening or closing the windows, be extra careful to prevent any personal injury. The hydraulic lockout control must be in the LOCKED position in order to prevent any possibility of sudden movement of the machine due to inadvertent contact with the hydraulic control(s).

Do not change the position of the window until the following items have been done:

- Park the machine on a level surface. Refer to “Prepare the Machine for Maintenance“ for more information.
- Lower the work tool to the ground.
- Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position. Refer to “Operator Controls“ for more information.
- Stop the engine. Refer to “Stopping the Engine“ for more information.

Perform Step 1 through Step 3 to open the upper window.

Note: If equipped, the Cat ® grade control monitor may interfere with the window when opening. Ensure that the monitor is adjusted out of the way before opening the window.

Note: Do not open the front window when using the sun screen to prevent the failure of the sun screen.

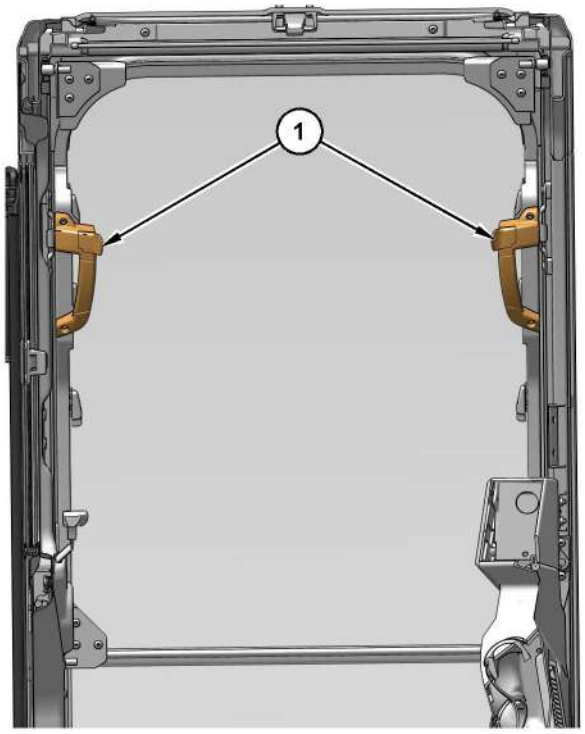


Illustration 254 g07538585

(1) Release lever

1. Release the auto-lock latches by pressing release levers (1) on the window handles.
2. Holding both handles on the window frame, pull the window upward.
3. Hold both grips that are provided on the window frame and move the window into the storage position until the auto-lock latches near the ceiling are engaged.

   Perform Steps 4 through 5 to close the upper window.

Note: If equipped, the Cat ® grade control monitor may interfere with the window when closing. Ensure that the monitor is adjusted out of the way before closing the window.

4. Release the auto-lock latches by pressing release levers (1) on the window handles.

5. Reverse Steps 1 through 3 to close the upper window.

Perform Steps 6 through 8 to open the lower window and close the lower window.

6. Raise the lower window out of the window frame.

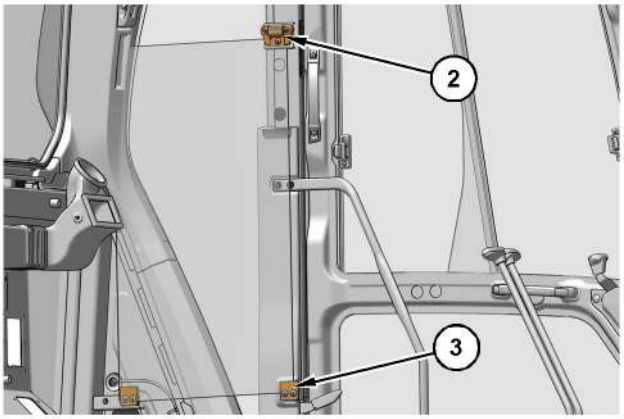


Illustration 255 g07538588

(2) Catch
(3) Brackets

7. Store the lower window in the holder that is located in the rear of the left side cab frame. To store the lower window, locate one end of the lower window into brackets (3). Secure the opposite end of the lower window with catch (2).

8. To close the lower window, reverse the procedure that is used for opening the lower window.

Note: The lower window is curved. The lower window can only be positioned one way in the holders.

i09662765

Sun Screen

SMCS Code: 7165-ZZ

⚠ WARNING

When opening or closing the windows, be extra careful to prevent any personal injury. The hydraulic lockout control must be in the LOCKED position in order to prevent any possibility of sudden movement of the machine due to inadvertent contact with the hydraulic control(s).

Do not change the position of the window until the following items have been done:

- Park the machine on a level surface. Refer to “Prepare the Machine for Maintenance“ for more information.
- Lower the work tool to the ground.
- Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position. Refer to “Operator Controls“ for more information.
- Stop the engine. Refer to “Stopping the Engine“ for more information.

Note: Do not use the sun screen when opening the front window.

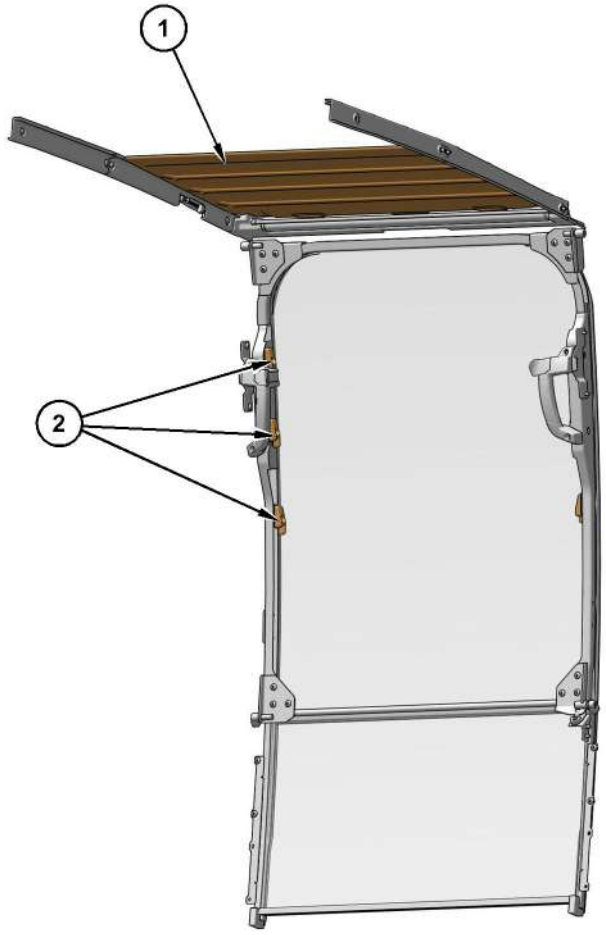


Illustration 256 g07538612

(1) Sun screen
(2) Bracket

Pull sun screen (1) down from the ceiling. Hook sun screen (1) to brackets (2) at both sides of the front window. Sun screen (1) may be positioned at two different heights.

i07538807

Roof Hatch

SMCS Code: 7303

⚠ WARNING

When opening or closing the windows, be extra careful to prevent any personal injury. The hydraulic lockout control must be in the LOCKED position in order to prevent any possibility of sudden movement of the machine due to inadvertent contact with the hydraulic control(s).

NOTICE
Do not change the position of the roof hatch without performing the following actions:

- Park the machine on a level surface.
- Lower the work tool to the ground.
- Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position.
- Stop the engine.

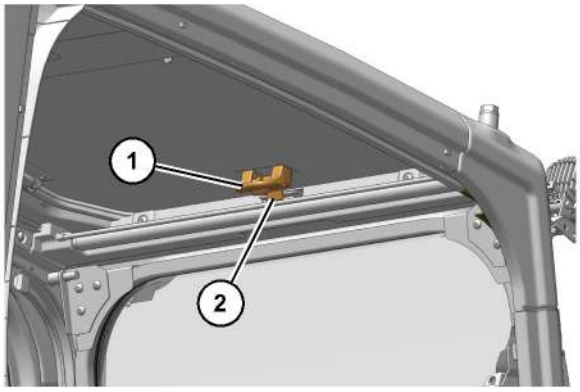


Illustration 257 g06179871

(1) Grip
(2) Lock

To open the roof hatch, release lock (2). Hold grip (1) and push the roof hatch upward.

To close the roof hatch, hold grip (1) and pull the roof hatch downward. Engage lock (2) securely.

NOTICE
Do not stand or walk on the hatch or the roof of the cab. Serious damage may occur.

i06949447

Cab Door

SMCS Code: 7308

Illustration 258 g06180275

To open the cab door from the outside of the cab, pull outward on the door handle.

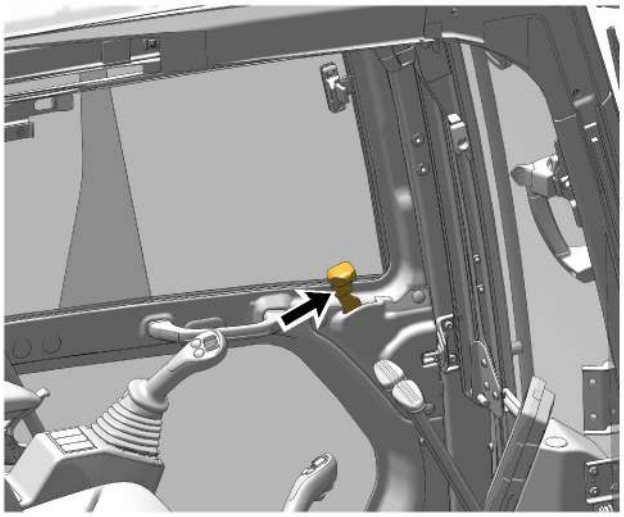


Illustration 259 g06179959

To open the cab door while inside the cab, push forward on the lever for the cab door latch.

For additional ventilation, open the cab door all the way to engage the catch on the exterior wall of the cab.

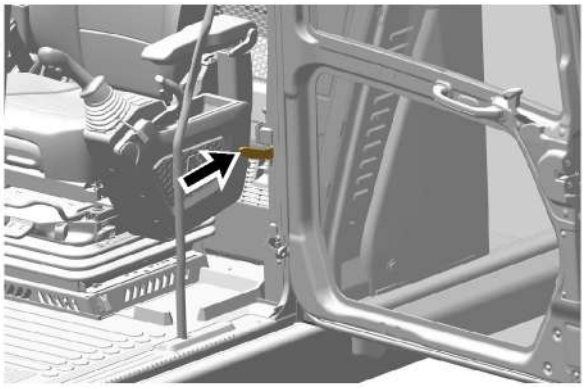


Illustration 260 g06180267

To release the cab door from the catch, pull downward on the cab door release lever.

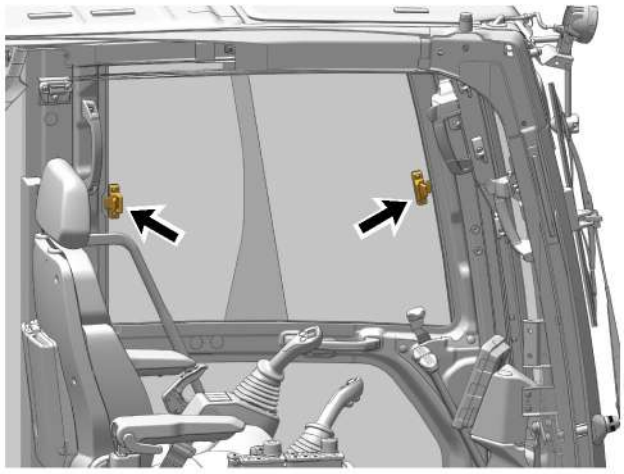


Illustration 261 g06179957

To open a window, release the window latch, and then slide the window to the desired position.

i06946782

Travel Control
(Straight Travel Pedal (If Equipped))

SMCS Code: 5462

WARNING

With certain attachment combinations, the third pedal can have different functions. Always check for third pedal function before using the third pedal. Improper operation of the third pedal could result in serious injury or death.

Illustration 262 g06178249

Position for normal travel

(A) Rear of machine
(B) Final drive
(C) Idler

When you travel, make sure that final drive sprockets (B) are under the rear of the machine.

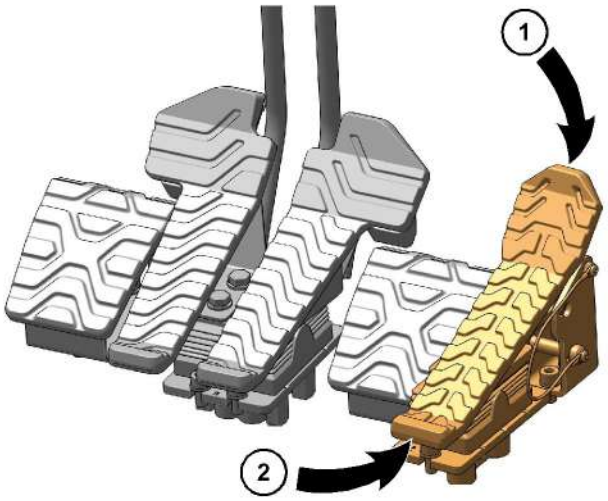


Illustration 263 g06178758

(1) Forward Travel
(2) Reverse Travel

The third pedal is to the right of the right travel pedal. The third pedal controls the forward and backward movement of the machine.

Note: If the third pedal is depressed and a travel pedal or a travel lever is operated, the machine will turn accordingly.

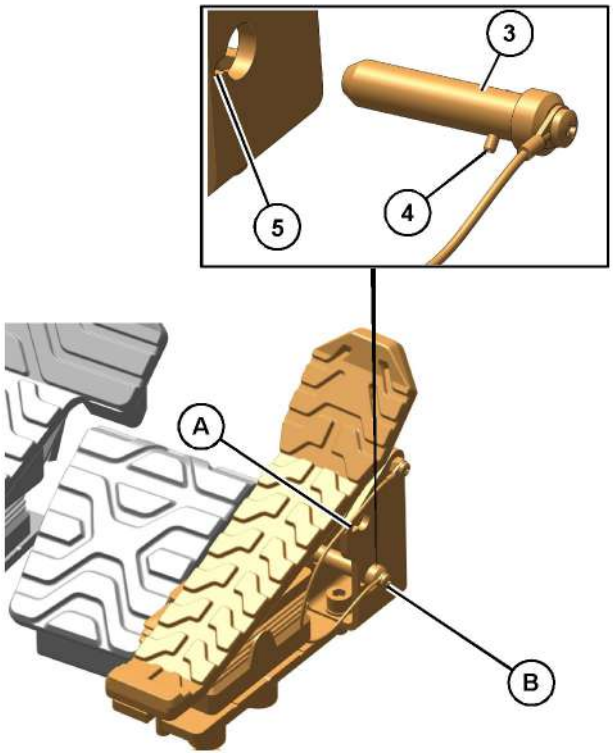


Illustration 264 g06178798

(3) Lock pin
(4) Pin
(5) Notch
(A) LOCKED position
(B) UNLOCKED position

When the machine is not operated with the third pedal, install lock pin (3) at the LOCKED position to prevent accidental operation.

Note: To prevent lock pin (3) from being pulled out, insert pin (4) through notch (5) and turn lock pin (3) counterclockwise by 1/4 turn.

i08752789

Joystick Controls

SMCS Code: 5705

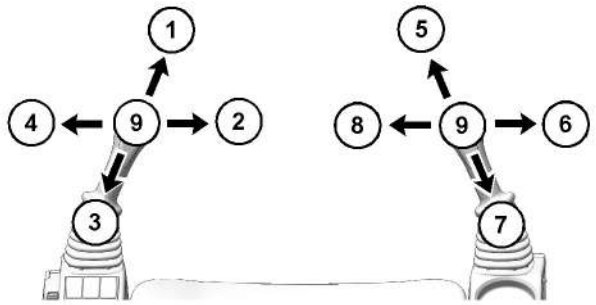


Illustration 265 g06180324

(1) STICK OUT
(2) SWING RIGHT
(3) STICK IN
(4) SWING LEFT
(5) BOOM LOWER
(6) BUCKET DUMP
(7) BOOM RAISE
(8) BUCKET CLOSE
(9) HOLD

WARNING

The joystick and controls on the joystick can be configured with different functions. Always make sure to check the joystick configuration on the monitor before using the machine to avoid unexpected machine movement. These unexpected machine movements could cause a hazard resulting in serious injury or death.

WARNING

The Fine Swing Control delays the engagement of the swing parking brake.

If the machine is operating on a slope with the Fine Swing Control in the ON position, the swing motion may become uncontrollable which could result in property damage, personal injury or death.

Turn the Fine Swing Control to the OFF position when the machine is operating on a slope.

WARNING

Calibrate the Cat ® Production Measurement function before operating the machine with new bucket. Performing CPM calibration will further improve the overall machine controllability in particular with swing. If the machine was already calibrated with attached bucket, the calibration date is already stored in the ECM, Do not have to reconduct CPM calibration, select particular bucket from work tool list. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, M0109053, " Next Generation Hydraulic Excavator Monitoring System Supplement" for more information.

When you release the joysticks from any position, the joysticks will return to HOLD position (9). Movement of the upper structure will stop unless the fine swing control (if equipped) is ON. When the fine swing control is ON, the swing parking brake will not activate until 6.5 seconds after the joystick control for the swing function returns to the HOLD position.

Two functions may be performed at the same time by moving a joystick diagonally.

The machine control pattern is initially set at the factory to the SAE system, as shown. The pattern on the left pertains to the left joystick and the pattern on the right pertains to the right joystick.

The machine control pattern can be varied. Refer to "Joystick Controls Alternate Patterns" for more information.

Manual Low Idle – Activate the manual low idle to reduce the engine speed to approximately 1000 rpm. Pressing the switch again will allow the engine speed to return to the original setting of the engine speed dial.

The manual low idle allows the operator to reduce the rpm without touching the engine speed dial. Manual low idle is useful when the operator wants to reduce the engine speed to talk to someone or while the operator is waiting for a truck.

Vertical Slider Joystick Controls

Illustration 266 g06224200

Vertical slider joystick controls

(1) Left joystick switch 3
(2) Left joystick switch 4
(3) Left joystick switch 1
(4) Left joystick switch 2
(5) Left joystick thumbwheel
(6) Right joystick thumbwheel
(7) Right joystick switch 2
(8) Right joystick switch 1
(9) Right joystick switch 4
(10) Right joystick switch 3

Table 44

Joystick Configurations					
Switch Location	**Machine Configuration**				**Joystick With Tool Control Sliders**
	Grade	**Grade Assist**	**Grade Payload**	**Grade Assist Payload**	
1(1)	Hammer	Hammer	Hammer	Hammer	Hammer
2	Standby / Weigh	Standby / Weigh	Standby / Weigh	Standby / Weigh	Configurable
3	Horn	Horn	Horn	Horn	Horn
4	Store	Store	Store	Store	Configurable
5(1)	Work Tool Rotation	Work Tool Rotation	Work Tool Rotation	Work Tool Rotation	Work Tool Rotation
6(1)	Work Tool Open / Close	Work Tool Open / Close	Work Tool Open / Close	Work Tool Open / Close	Work Tool Open / Close
7	Bucket Recall and Store	Bucket Recall and Store	Bucket Recall and Store	Bucket Recall and Store	Configurable
8	Bench Mark	Bench Mark	Bench Mark	Bench Mark	Configurable
9	Grade and Bucket Assist Activation	Grade and Bucket Assist Activation	Grade and Bucket Assist Activation	Grade and Bucket Assist Activation	Configurable
10	Laser and Touch Point	Laser and Touch Point	Laser and Touch Point	Laser and Touch Point	Configurable

(1) Button is configurable on machines without tool control.

Note: The following functions can be assigned to the configurable buttons: radio mute, one-touch low idle, work tool select, and Heating Ventilating and Air Conditioning (HVAC).

Dual Slider Joystick Controls (If Equipped)

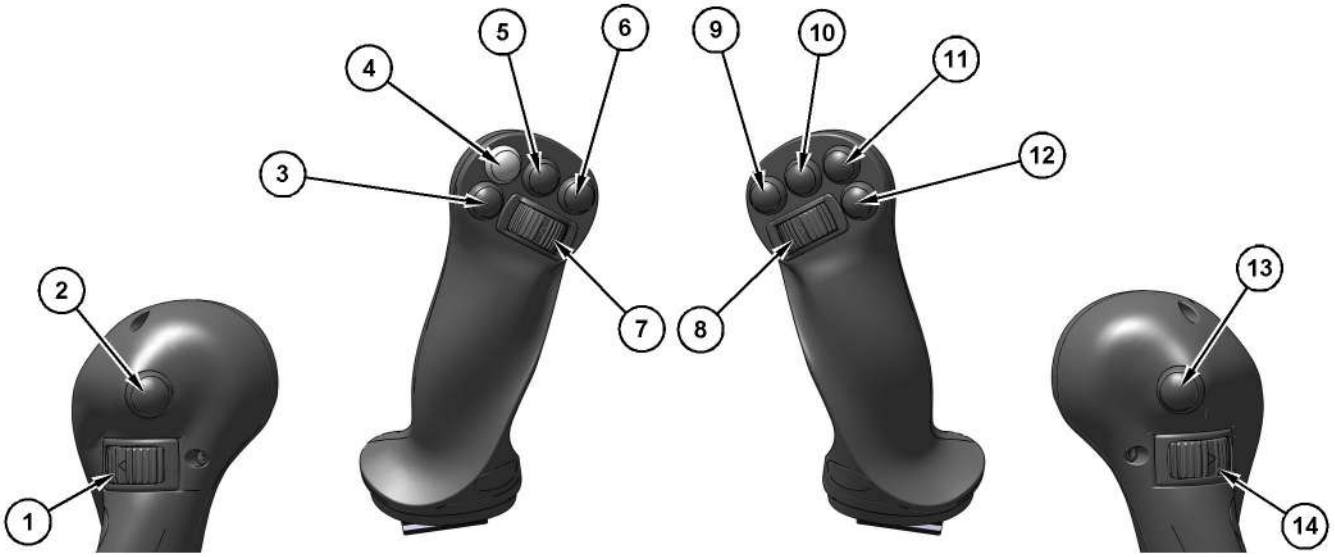


Illustration 267 g06516923

(1) Left Thumbwheel 2
(2) Left Switch 4
(3) Left Switch 2
(4) Left Switch 1 (Horn)
(5) Left Switch 5
(6) Left Switch 3
(7) Left Thumbwheel 1
(8) Right Thumbwheel 1
(9) Right Switch 3
(10) Right Switch 5
(11) Right Switch 1
(12) Right Switch 2
(13) Right Switch 4
(14) Right Thumbwheel 2

Table 45

Default Functions		
Switch	**Function**	**Category**
Left Thumbwheel 2 (1)	-	Configurable
Left Switch 4 (2)	Standby/Weigh	Payload
Left Switch 2 (3)	Store	
Left Switch 1 (4)	Horn	Mandatory
Left Switch 5 (5)	-	Configurable
Left Switch 3 (6)	One-Way ATT	TCS
Left Thumbwheel 1 (7)	Mid-Pressure ATT	
Right Thumbwheel 1 (8)	High-Pressure ATT	

(continued)

(Table 45, contd)

Default Functions		
Switch	**Function**	**Category**
Right Switch 3 (9)	Laser and Tough Point	Grade
Left Switch 5 (10)	-	Configurable
Left Switch 1 (11)	Bench Mark	Grade

(continued)

(Table 45, contd)

Default Functions		
Switch	**Function**	**Category**
Left Switch 2 (12)	Bucket Recall and Store	Assist
Left Switch 4 (13)	Grade and Bucket Assist Activation	
Left Thumbwheel 2 (14)	-	Configurable

Medium Pressure (If Equipped)

Rotating Tool Control

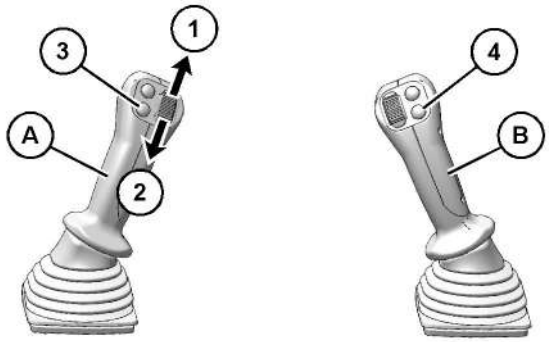


Illustration 268 g06260903

(A) Left joystick
(B) Right joystick
(1) Thumb wheel (Clockwise)
(2) Thumb wheel (Counterclockwise)
(3) Horn switch
(4) Auto Engine Control (AEC) switch

(1) ROTATE CLOCKWISE – Move the thumb wheel upward to rotate the work tool clockwise.

(2) ROTATE COUNTERCLOCKWISE – Move the thumb wheel downward to rotate the work tool counterclockwise.

(3) HORN – Press the horn switch on the left joystick to activate the horn.

(4) AUTO ENGINE CONTROL (AEC) SWITCH – Press the AEC switch on the right joystick to activate low engine speed. Press the switch again to activate high engine speed.

i08796529

Joystick Controls
(Joystick Steering)

SMCS Code: 5705

WARNING

Verify the joystick control pattern before operating the machine.

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual.

Failure to understand control functions could result in injury or death.

Ensure that the joystick control film on the cab window matches the control functions of your machine. Consult your Cat ® dealer for additional information regarding the joystick control film.

Become familiar with the joystick controls before operating the machine.

Note: Joystick steering cannot be used with shovel crane mode.

Joystick Steering

Enable the joystick steering function using the monitor screen. Once the function is enabled, joystick will be activated by pressing the configured joystick button. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, M0109053, “ Next Generation Hydraulic Excavator Monitoring System Supplement” for more information.

The following three modes are available in joystick steering function:

- Joystick steering mode
- Cruise control mode
- Blade control mode (normal and float)

Left Joystick Control Patterns

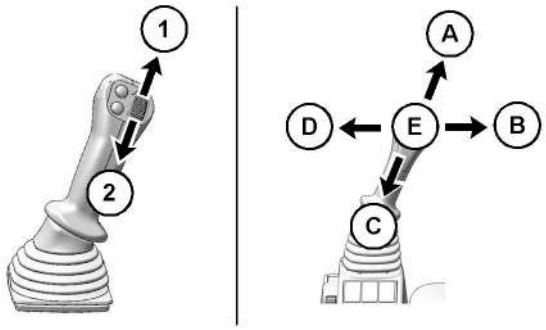


Illustration 269 g06720799

Left Joystick

Table 46

Joystick Control	Left Joystick Patterns		
	Standard Mode (ISO)	Joystick Steer Mode	Cruise Control Mode
E	Hold		
A	Stick Out	Travel Forward	Cancel Cruise
B	Right Swing	Turn Right	Turn Right
C	Stick In	Travel Backward	Cancel Cruise
D	Left Swing	Turn Left	Turn Left
1(1)	Right Swing		
2 (1)	Left Swing		

(1) Thumb wheel is configured with swing or stick operation only when the joystick steer mode is on.

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, M0109053, " Next Generation Hydraulic Excavator Monitoring System Supplement" for more information.

Right Joystick Control Patterns

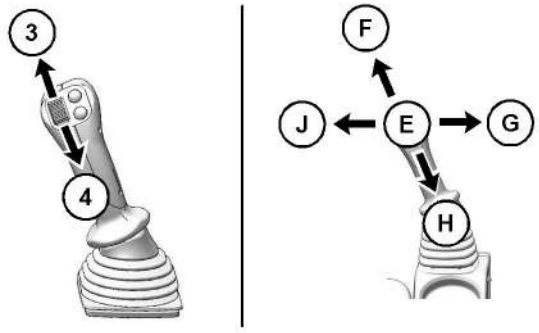


Illustration 270 g06720802

Right Joystick

Table 47

Joystick Control	Right Joystick Patterns		
	Standard Mode (ISO)	Joystick Steer Mode	Cruise Control Mode
E	Hold		
F	Boom Down		
G	Bucket Dump / Heel Down		
H	Boom Up		
J	Bucket Close / Heel Up		
3(1)	Stick Out		
4 (1)	Stick In		

(1) Thumb wheel is configured with swing or stick operation only when the joystick steer mode is on.

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, M0109053, " Next Generation Hydraulic Excavator Monitoring System Supplement" for more information.

i06951419

SmartBoom Control
(If Equipped)

SMCS Code: 5461-ZS; 7332

WARNING

Personal injury or death can result from not following the proper procedures.

To avoid the possibility of injury or death, follow the established procedure.

WARNING

Activating the SmartBoom function and using the work tool joystick control while the front of the machine is elevated could result in unexpected machine motion. Unexpected machine motion could result in serious injury or death. Do not activate the SmartBoom function if the front of the machine is elevated by the front linkage.

WARNING

Do not elevate or lower the track when in the SmartBoom mode. Follow the operation procedures for the SmartBoom in the Operation and Maintenance Manual. Failure to follow these instructions can result in serious injury or death.

WARNING

Always make sure that the boom control joystick is in the NEUTRAL position before activating the SmartBoom control. Activating the SmartBoom control with the joystick out of the neutral position could resulted in unexpected machine motion which could result in serious injury or death.

WARNING

Do not select any SmartBoom mode, using the SmartBoom selector switch located on the console, while the tracks are elevated. Selecting the SmartBoom mode with the tracks elevated could result in a sudden drop of the machine which could result in serious injury or death.

WARNING

If any SmartBoom mode is active and the boom control joystick is in the BOOM DOWN position (forward) with a bucket or a work tool on the ground, pressing the disable button that is located on the front of the right hand joystick could cause a sudden boom down motion. This control function could lift the machine upward, with unexpected machine movement that could result in serious injury or death. Do not press the disable button while the SmartBoom mode is active and the boom control joystick is in the BOOM DOWN position (forward) with a bucket or a work tool on the ground.

WARNING

Do not attempt to lift the tracks of the machine by using the disable button and applying downward force with the boom lowering control while the machine is in any SmartBoom mode. Releasing the disable button will immediately return the machine to the active SmartBoom mode. This action could cause the machine to drop down abruptly which could result in serious injury or death.

Illustration 271 g06210059

From the home screen, press the function list button.

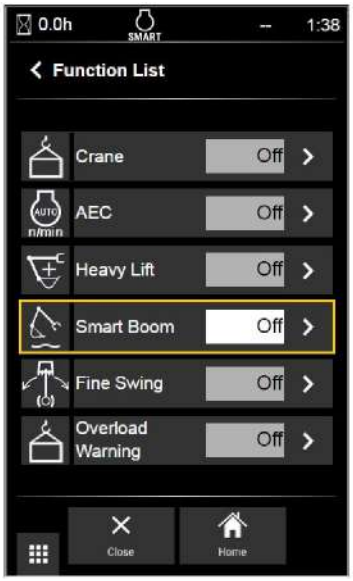


Illustration 272 g06210090

Tap the smart boom option, or if using the jog dial, select the smart boom option and press down on the dial.

Illustration 273 g06210095

Select either “Up & Down” or “Down Only” from the list. The two options work as follows:

“Up & Down” mode: When the joystick is moved to the BOOM DOWN position, the boom will lower by the weight of the boom. The boom can move upward freely.

“Down Only” mode: The boom will lower by the weight of the boom when the control lever is moved to the BOOM LOWER position. This mode prevents the boom from moving upward. To move the boom upward, the operator must use the boom control joystick to activate the BOOM UP mode.

Press the home button when finished.

During operation of the SmartBoom function, the operator may wish to apply downward force to the boom. The operator can disable the SmartBoom function temporarily with the SmartBoom disable switch. While the trigger switch is pressed, BOOM RAISE and BOOM LOWER will operate in the normal modes. The SmartBoom disable switch is a configurable switch.

i08222281

Work Tool Control (One-Way Flow)
(If Equipped)

SMCS Code: 6700

The following information pertains to work tools that require hydraulic oil flow in one direction. Hydraulic hammers are an example of work tools that require hydraulic oil flow in one direction.

Note: For information that pertains to work tools that require hydraulic oil flow in two directions, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Work Tool Control (Two-Way Flow)”.

Joystick

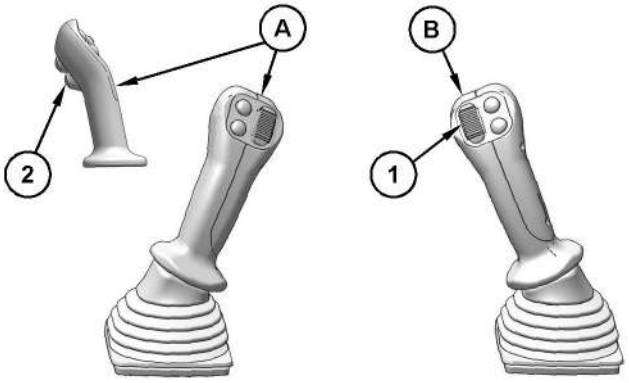


Illustration 274 g06588792

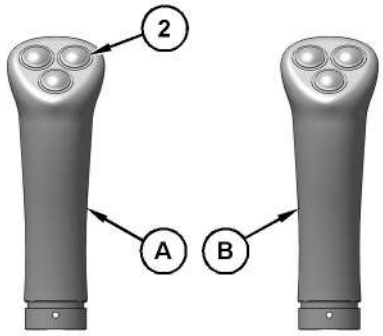


Illustration 275 g06588793

(A) Left joystick
(B) Right joystick

(1) Variable Speed – Move the thumb wheel downward to activate the work tool. Move the thumb wheel further to increase the speed of the work tool.

(2-1) On/Off (Momentary) – While pressing this switch, the work tool will remain activate at a constant rate. Release the switch to turn off the work tool.

(2-2) On/Off (Toggled) – Press the switch once to activate the work tool. Press the switch again to turn off the work tool.

Work Tool Pedal

WARNING

With certain attachment combinations, the work tool pedal can have different functions. Always check for work tool pedal function before using the work tool pedal. Improper operation of the work tool pedal could result in serious injury or death.

The work tool pedal can be installed on either side of the travel pedals. The work tool pedal allows the operator to modulate the speed of the work tool.

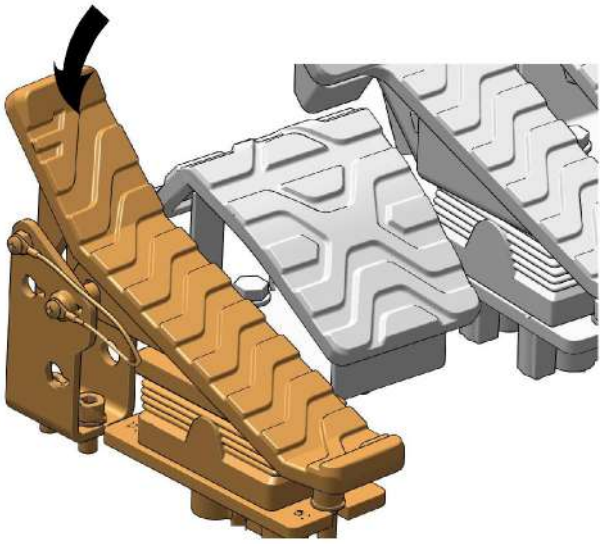


Illustration 276 g06180447

Variable Speed – Push down on the front of the pedal to activate the work tool. Move the pedal further to increase the speed of the work tool. Release the pedal to turn off the work tool.

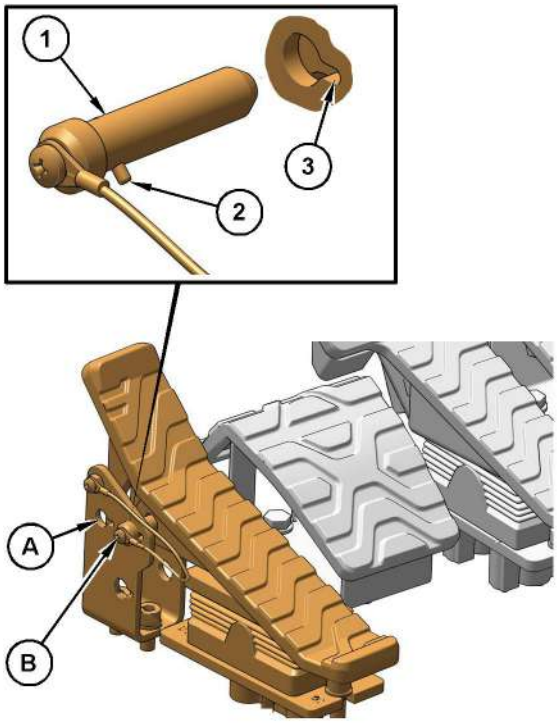


Illustration 277 g06591307

(1) Lock pin
(2) Pin
(3) Notch
(A) UNLOCKED position
(B) LOCKED position

When you are not using the work tool, put the lock pin (1) in LOCKED position (B). This will lock the work tool pedal to prevent any unexpected operation of the work tool.

Note: To prevent lock pin (1) from being accidentally pulled out, insert pin (2) through notch (3) and turn lock pin (1) counterclockwise by 1/4 turn.

i07243676

Work Tool Control (Two-Way Flow)
(If Equipped)

SMCS Code: 6700

WARNING

The joystick and controls on the joystick can be configured with different functions. Always make sure to check the joystick configuration on the monitor before using the machine to avoid unexpected machine movement. These unexpected machine movements could cause a hazard resulting in serious injury or death.

The following information pertains to work tools that require hydraulic oil flow in two directions. These work tools can also be equipped with a rotate circuit. Hydraulic shears, pulverizers, crushers, and grapples are examples of work tools that require hydraulic oil flow in two directions.

Note: For information that pertains to hydraulic hammers, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Work Tool Control (One-Way)”.

Joystick

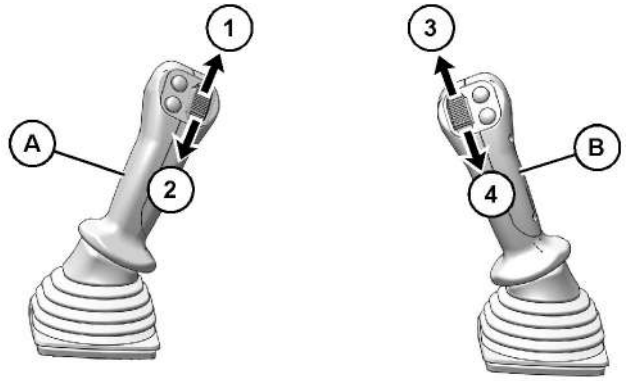


Illustration 278 g06180488

(A) Left joystick
(B) Right joystick

(1) ROTATE CLOCKWISE – Move the thumb wheel upward to rotate the work tool clockwise.

(2) ROTATE COUNTERCLOCKWISE – Move the thumb wheel downward to rotate the work tool counterclockwise.

(3) CLOSE – Move the thumb wheel upward to close the work tool.

(4) OPEN – Move the thumb wheel downward to open the work tool.

Work Tool Pedal

WARNING

With certain attachment combinations, the work tool pedal can have different functions. Always check for work tool pedal function before using the work tool pedal. Improper operation of the work tool pedal could result in serious injury or death.

The work tool pedal can be installed on either side of the travel pedals. The work tool pedal allows the operator to vary the speed of the work tool.

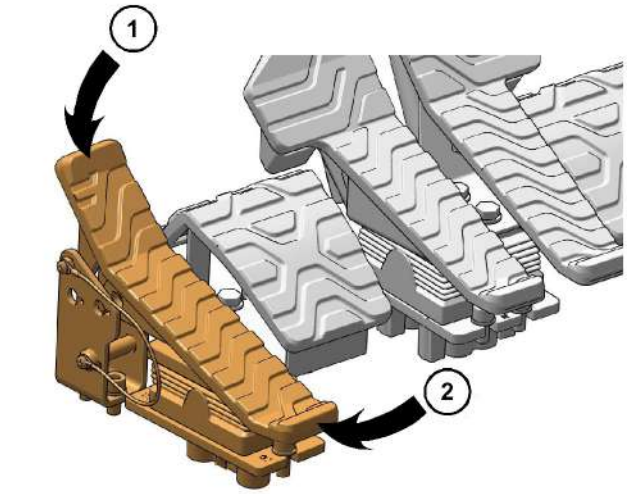


Illustration 279 g06180510

(1) CLOSE – Push down on the front of the pedal to close the work tool.

(2) OPEN – Push down on the rear of the pedal to open the work tool.

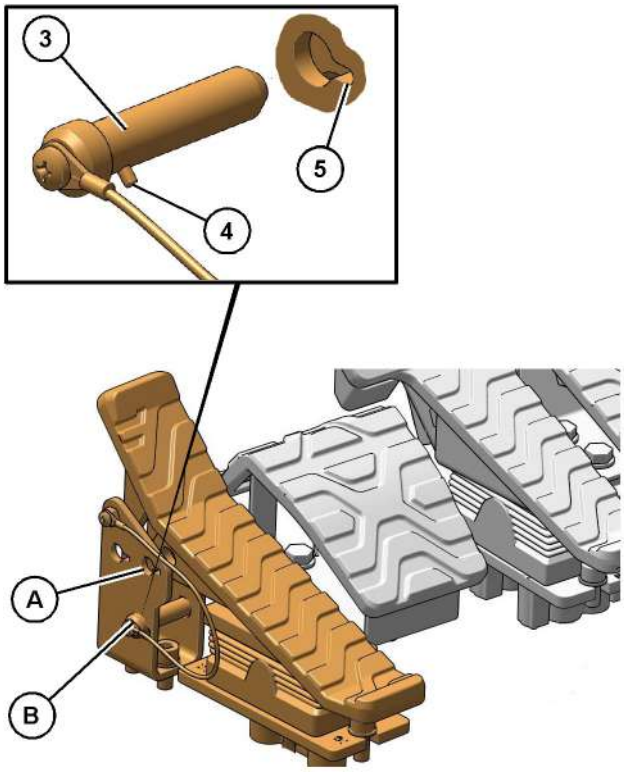


Illustration 280 g06180514

(3) Lock pin
(4) Pin
(5) Notch
(A) LOCKED position
(B) UNLOCKED position

When you are not using the work tool, put the lock pin (3) in LOCKED position (A). This will lock the work tool pedal to prevent any unexpected operation of the work tool.

Note: To prevent lock pin (3) from being accidentally pulled out, insert pin (4) through notch (5) and turn lock pin (3) by 1/4 turn.

i08209549

Joystick Controls Alternate Patterns

SMCS Code: 5059; 5137

Changing Machine Control Pattern (If Equipped)

⚠ WARNING

Whenever a change is made to the machine control pattern, also exchange the pattern card in the cab to match the new pattern.

Check the machine control pattern for conformance to the pattern on the card in the cab. If the pattern does not match, change the card to match the machine control pattern before you operate the machine. Failure to do so could result in personal injury.

The machine control pattern can be changed to the ISO/JIS pattern, BHL pattern, MHI pattern, KOBE pattern, or the former SCM pattern. To change the joystick controls between the patterns, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, Monitoring System for more information.

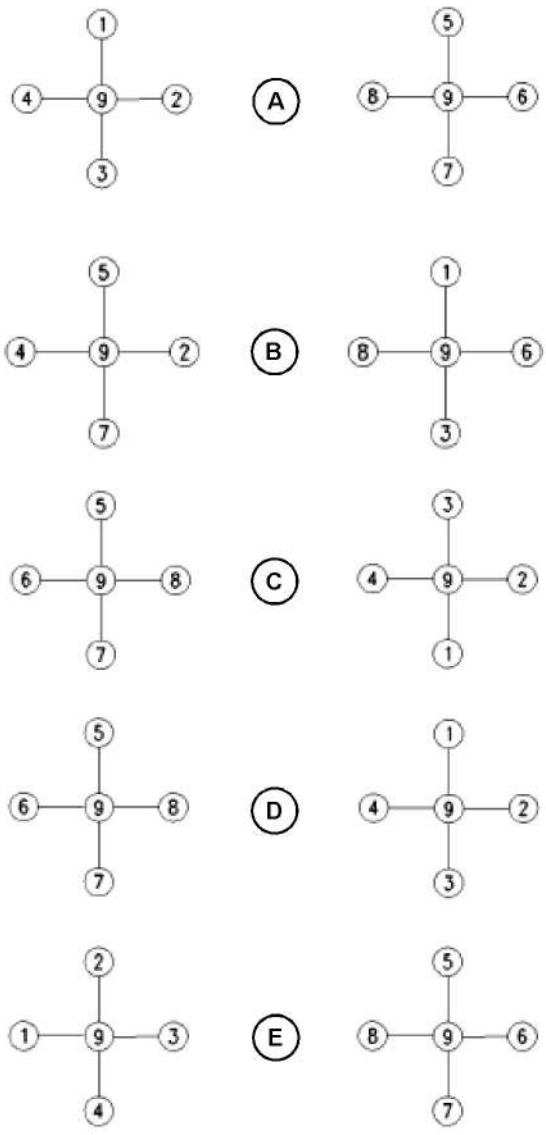


Illustration 281 g06136699

(A) ISO/JIS machine control pattern
(B) BHL machine control pattern
(C) MHI machine control pattern
(D) KOBE machine control pattern
(E) Former SCM machine control pattern

The patterns on the left side of the Illustration show the possible configurations for the left control lever. The patterns on the right side of the Illustration show the possible configurations for the right control lever.

STICK OUT (1) – Move the control lever to this position to move the stick outward.

SWING RIGHT (2) – Move the control lever to this position to swing the upper structure to the right.

STICK IN (3) – Move the control lever to this position to move the stick inward.

SWING LEFT (4) – Move the control lever to this position to swing the upper structure to the left.

BOOM LOWER (5) – Move the control lever to this position to lower the boom.

BUCKET DUMP (6) – Move the control lever to this position to dump the bucket.

BOOM RAISE (7) – Move the control lever to this position to raise the boom.

BUCKET CLOSE (8) – Move the control lever to this position to close the bucket.

HOLD (9) – When the control lever is released from any position, the control lever will return to the HOLD position. Movement of the upper structure will stop.

Two functions may be performed at the same time by moving a control lever diagonally.

If the machine is equipped with a hydraulic hammer, the function of position (6) and of position (8) is different.

HYDRAULIC HAMMER RAISE (6) – Move the control lever to this position to raise the hydraulic hammer.

HYDRAULIC HAMMER LOWER (8) – Move the control lever to this position to lower the hydraulic hammer.

If the machine is equipped with a grapple, the function of position (6) and of position (8) is different.

GRAPPLE OPEN (6) – Move the control lever to this position to open the grapple arms.

GRAPPLE CLOSE (8) – Move the control lever to this position to close the grapple arms.

If the machine is equipped with a clamshell, the function of position (6) and of position (8) is different when in “Clamshell” mode.

Note: When in “Clamshell” mode, the work tool can only be operated if Work Tool Select also has clamshell selected.

CLAMSHELL OPEN (6) – Move the control lever to this position to open the clamshell.

CLAMSHELL CLOSE (8) – Move the control lever to this position to close the clamshell.

i08233103

Fuel Tank Shutoff and Drain Control

SMCS Code: 1273

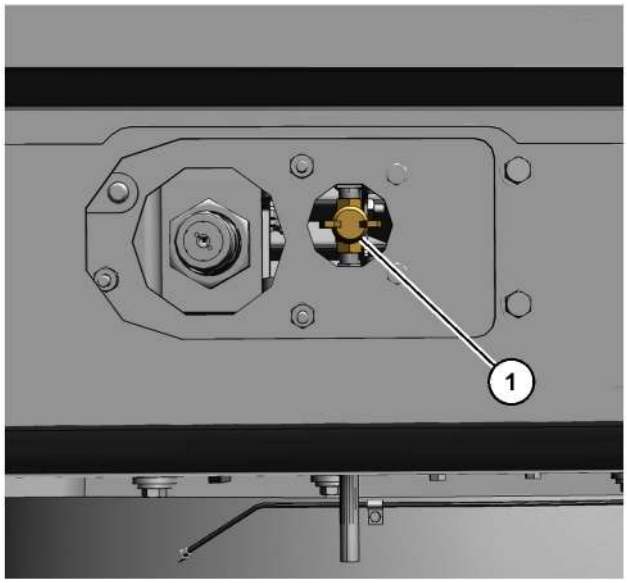


Illustration 282 g06595542

Fuel tank drain valve

Fuel Tank Drain Valve (1) – The drain valve for the fuel tank is located behind the right side access door. To drain the water and sediment from the fuel tank, turn the fuel drain valve counterclockwise. To close the fuel tank drain valve, turn the drain valve clockwise.

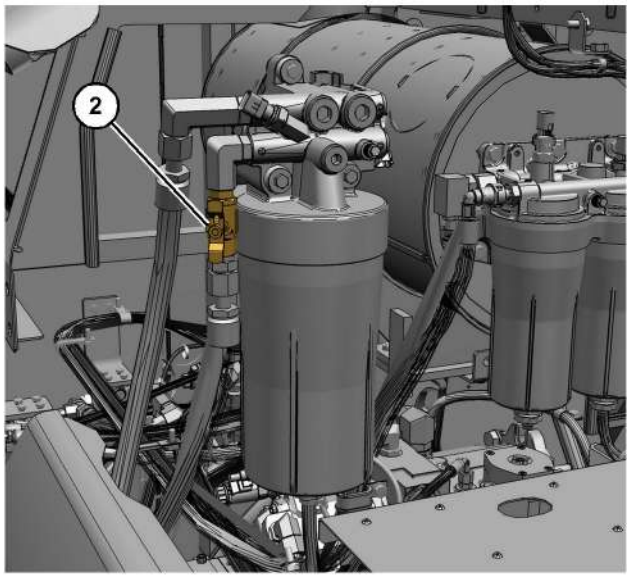


Illustration 283 g06595548

Fuel shutoff valve

Fuel Shutoff Valve (2) – The fuel shutoff valve is located behind the right side access door. To shut off the fuel supply, turn the fuel shutoff valve clockwise. To turn on the fuel supply, turn the fuel shutoff valve counterclockwise.

Note: For more detailed information that pertains to draining the water and sediment from the fuel tank, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Fuel Tank Water and Sediment - Drain”.

i09575243

Compartment Light (If Equipped)

SMCS Code: 1429

The compartment lights in the various compartments can be activated by turning on the compartment light switch.

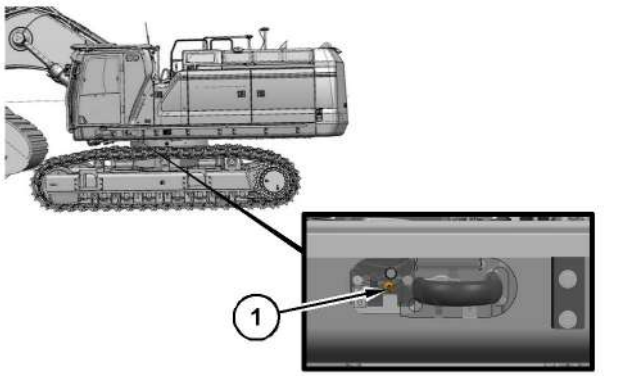


Illustration 284 g07500007

(1) Compartment light switch

1. Compartment light switch (1) is located near the battery disconnect switch. Move compartment light switch (1) upward position in order to illuminate the lights in following compartments.

- Radiator compartment
- Battery compartment
- Engine compartment
- Pump compartment
- Hydraulic tank level gauge

2. Move compartment light switch (1) upward again to turn off the lights in each compartment.

Note: Compartment lights are equipped with timer relay function. Compartment lights will turn off automatically in 30 minutes, if not manually turned off.

Engine Starting

i09702825

Engine Starting

SMCS Code: 1000; 1090; 1456; 7000

NOTICE
This machine is equipped with a Cat ® Machine Security System (MSS) and may not start under certain conditions.

NOTICE
The engine start switch must be in the ON position and the engine must be running in order to maintain electrical functions and hydraulic functions. This procedure must be followed in order to prevent serious machine damage.

Note: The engine can start in areas that have temperatures as low as −18°C (0°F). For areas that are colder, a starting kit for cold weather is available.

1. Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position.

This machine is equipped with an engine neutral start system. The system only allows the engine to start when the lever for the hydraulic lockout control is in the LOCKED position.

2. Ensure that the joysticks and travel controls are in the HOLD position.

Illustration 285 g06209482

3. The operator passcode, Bluetooth key or Cat App: Fleet management app must be authenticated before starting the engine. Once authenticated, an “Engine Start Allowed” message will appear across the top of the monitor and the start switch LED will turn green.

4. Bluetooth devices and passcodes can be registered using the in-cab display if the operator is logged in to the system using a master access account. Contact your Cat dealer for additional information.

Reference: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, Machine Security System, Operator Login for instructions.

5. Before you start the engine, check for the presence of bystanders or maintenance personnel. Ensure that all personnel are clear of the machine. Briefly sound the horn before you start the engine.

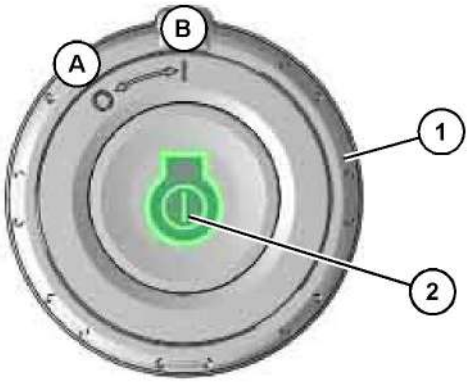


Illustration 286 g06226447

(A) Off
(B) On
(1) Engine start ring
(2) Engine start button

6. Turn the engine start ring(1) to the ON position, then press and hold start button (2) to start the engine. Release the button after the engine has started.

If the engine is having trouble starting, do not crank the engine for more than 30 seconds. Cranking the engine for more than 30 seconds can damage starting system components.

Engine Oil Level Monitoring System (If Equipped)

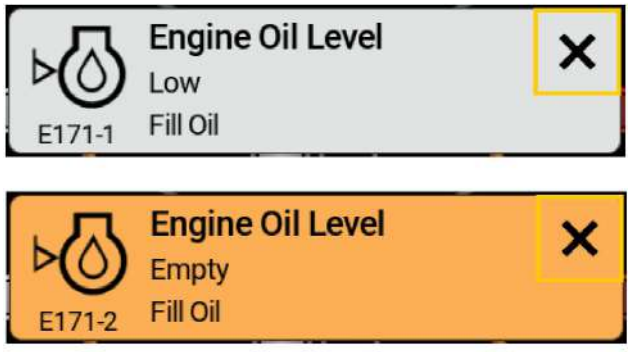


Illustration 287 g07559865

Low engine oil warnings

Your machine may be equipped with a system for monitoring engine oil level. If equipped, this feature is enabled when the engine start ring (1) is turned to the ON position (B). If engine oil level is low, one of the warnings above will be displayed on the monitor.

Illustration 288 g07559866

Engine oil level not measured warning

In certain conditions the engine oil monitoring system will not measure the engine oil level. If the machine is parked on the slope, or duration time from last engine shutdown is insufficient, the above warning will be displayed on the monitor.

i08251853

Engine and Machine Warm-Up

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

NOTICE
Keep engine speed low and do not operate until the message 'Warm-Up Mode Power Derate" on the monitor goes out. If it does not go out within thirty seconds, stop the engine and investigate the cause before starting again. Failure to do so, can cause engine damage.

NOTICE
Always run the engine at low idle for at least ten minutes before performing any other operations in cold conditions or each time the engine oil and oil filter are changed in order to protect your engine and hydraulic components.

NOTICE
Depending on the ambient temperature, in order to prevent the machine operation with high speed without sufficient lubrication at the turbo bearing, the engine speed may be set to low speed and the hydraulic power minimized for a pre-determined time after the engine starts. Refer to turbo protection feature.

The engine may automatically change speeds when the machine is stationary and idling in cold ambient temperature for an extended time. This is to:

- Maintain desired coolant temperature.
- Maintain desired operation of engine systems.

During extended idling in cold ambient conditions, engine speed may operate between 900 rpm and 1000 rpm. Operation at 1000 rpm is minimal and will only last for up to 20 minutes.

Hydraulic System

WARNING

When you cycle the machine controls, the machine can move suddenly. Contact between the machine and external objects or ground personnel can result in serious injury or death. Before you cycle the machine controls, the machine should be located in an unobstructed, hazard-free work area that is away from external objects and ground personnel.

1. Make sure that the area is clear of personnel and equipment.

Note: The hydraulic lockout control must be in the UNLOCKED position before the hydraulic controls will function.

2. Allow the engine to warm up at low idle for at least 5 minutes. Engage the work tool controls and disengage the work tool controls. This will speed up the warm-up of the hydraulic components.

   When you idle the machine for warm-up, observe the following recommendations:

   - If the temperature is greater than 0°C (32°F), warm up the engine for approximately 15 minutes.
   - If the temperature is less than 0°C (32°F), warm up the engine for approximately 30 minutes.
   - If the temperature is less than − 18°C (0°F) or if hydraulic functions are sluggish, additional time may be required.

NOTICE

The hydraulic oil temperature should be higher than 25 °C (77 °F) before performing work with the machine. Make sure that the warm-up procedure is performed.

If the hydraulic oil temperature is less than 25 °C (77 °F) and the machine is operated abruptly, serious damage to the hydraulic components may occur.

Note: The recommended operating temperature of the hydraulic fluid for this machine is 55 °C (131 °F).

3. To warm up the hydraulic oil, turn the engine speed dial to the medium engine speed. Run the engine for approximately 5 minutes and move the joystick intermittently from the BUCKET DUMP position to the HOLD position. Do not hold the joystick in the BUCKET DUMP position with the bucket cylinder fully extended for more than 10 seconds.

   This allows the oil to attain relief pressure, which causes the oil to warm up more rapidly.

4. Turn the engine speed dial to the maximum engine speed and repeat Step 3.

5. Cycle all controls to circulate warm oil through all hydraulic cylinders and all hydraulic lines, and through the swing motor and travel motors.

6. Observe the gauges and the indicators frequently during the operation.

Turbo Protection Power Derate – After an engine start, the engine speed will be set to low speed and the hydraulic power limited for a time period . During this period, the monitor displays the message "Warm -Up Mode Power Derate". (Maximum is around 30 seconds). After the turbo bearing lubrication is sufficient, the engine speed goes to the setting dial speed and the monitor stops to display the message.

Improve Cold-Weather Performance

Covers installed over the vents in the radiator compartment door will help to control overcooling in ambient temperatures below −15° C (5° F).

The materials used for the covers and the method used to install the covers is at the installers discretion.

Install the covers if overcooling is observed while the machine is idling in ambient temperatures below −15° C (5° F).

Stop the machine, and remove the covers under the following conditions:

- The ambient temperature is above −15° C (5° F).
- The engine temperature gauge indicates overheating.
- The hydraulic oil temperature gauge indicates overheating.

Installation

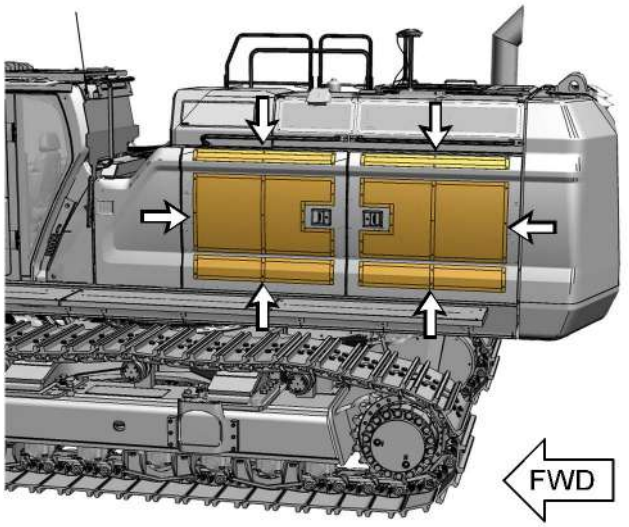


Illustration 289 g06600697

Vent locations on the radiator compartment door

1. Clean the surface of the radiator compartment door.

2. Install the covers in the locations shown in Illustration 289 . The covers should fully cover the door vents.

Operation

i09810345

Operation Information

SMCS Code: 7000

Note: Operating Temperature Range for the Machine The machine must function satisfactorily in the anticipated ambient temperature limits that are encountered during operation. The standard machine configuration is intended for use within an ambient temperature range of −18 °C (0 °F) to 43 °C (109 °F). Special configurations for different ambient temperatures may be available. Consult your Cat ® dealer for additional information on special configurations of your machine.

Make sure that no personnel are on the machine or near the machine to prevent any personal injury. Keep the machine under control always to prevent injury.

Sound the horn and allow adequate time for bystanders to clear the area before moving the machine into a restricted visibility area. Follow local practices for your machine application. For more information refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Restricted Visibility”.

Reduce the engine speed when you maneuver the machine in tight quarters and when you drive over an incline.

Select the necessary travel speed range before you drive downgrade. Do not change the travel speed range while you drive downhill.

Use the same travel speed on a downgrade and on an upgrade.

When you travel for any distance, keep the stick inward and carry the boom in a low position.

When you drive up a steep grade, keep the boom as close to the ground as possible.

When you travel uphill or you travel downhill, keep the boom on the uphill side of the machine.

1. Adjust the operator seat. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Seat” for more information.
2. Fasten the seat belt. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Seat Belt” for more information.

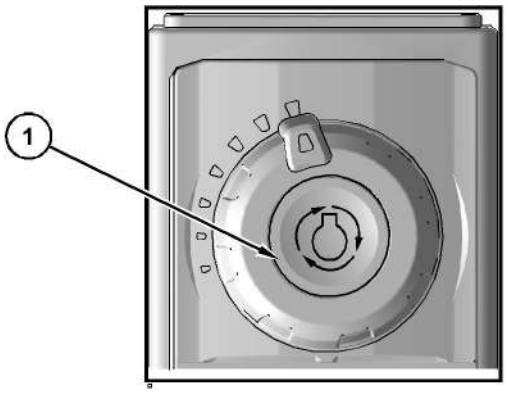


Illustration 290 g06685022

(1) Engine speed dial

3. Turn the engine speed dial (1) to the desired operating range. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Operator Controls” for more information.
4. Move the hydraulic lockout control to the UNLOCKED position. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Operator Controls” for more information.

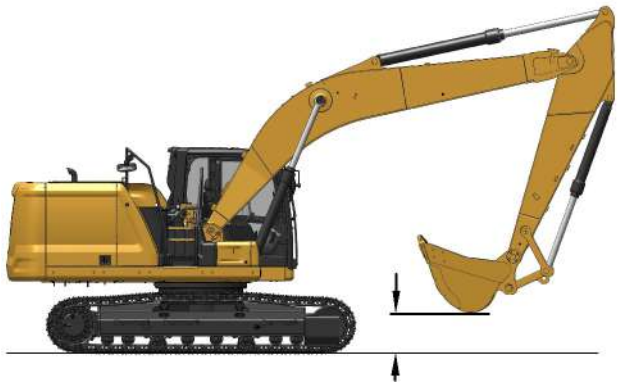


Illustration 291 g06181525

Typical example

5. Raise the boom enough to provide sufficient ground clearance.

Illustration 292 g06685024

(2) Travel speed control switch

6. Select the desired travel speed by operating the travel speed control switch (2). The indicator will light to display the active mode. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Operator Controls” for more information.

7. Make sure that the position of the upper structure and of the undercarriage is known before you move the machine. The drive sprockets should be at the rear of the machine.

Note: The directional steering controls will operate normally if the drive sprockets are at the rear of the machine and the idlers are at the front of the machine and under the cab. When the sprockets are under the cab, the travel controls will operate backward.

8. Turn the engine speed dial to increase the engine speed (rpm) to the desired speed.

9. Push both travel levers forward at the same time to travel forward. If both travel levers are pushed farther, the travel speed at the selected engine speed (rpm) will be faster.

Note: If the machine does not operate or if the machine does not travel in a straight line, consult your Cat ® dealer.

10. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Operator Controls” for information about spot turning and about pivot turns.

11. When you make turns in soft material, travel in a forward direction occasionally to clear the tracks.

12. Slowly move both of the travel levers or both of the travel pedals to the CENTER position to stop the machine. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Operator Controls” for more information

Lifting Objects

Regional regulations may require the use of an overload warning device and boom and stick lowering control valves when used to lift objects.

The overload warning device (if equipped) must be adjusted for the bucket linkage and bucket size that is installed on the machine. Adjust the overload warning device for proper operation.

The setting for the overload warning device (if equipped) should be checked by an authorized dealer.

Contact your Cat ® dealer for additional information.

i07311368

Frozen Ground Conditions

SMCS Code: 7000

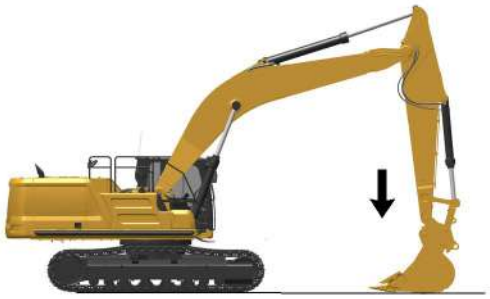


Illustration 293 g06279284

To free the tracks from frozen ground, swing the boom to the front of the machine. Use boom down pressure to free the idler end of the machine.

Swing the boom to the rear of the machine. Use boom down pressure to free the sprocket end of the machine.

i09705055

Equipment Lowering with Engine Stopped

SMCS Code: 7000

To lower the boom, place the hydraulic lockout control in the UNLOCKED position. Move the joystick to the BOOM LOWER position. If the accumulator is still charged, the boom will lower.

If the boom does not lower, the accumulator is empty. Use one of the following procedures to lower the boom.

Machines Equipped with Boom Lowering Control Valves

WARNING

Boom load may cause cylinder oil pressure to reach relief pressure of the boom lowering control device when the boom is supported by one cylinder. Boom can lower suddenly, causing possible injury or death.

To avoid possible injury or death, be sure no one is under or near the work tool before manually lowering the boom.

Keep all personnel away from the boom drop area when lowering the boom with the engine stopped.

WARNING

Be sure no one is under or near the work tools before manually lowering the boom. Keep all personnel away from the boom drop area when lowering the boom with the engine stopped in order to avoid possible personal injury.

WARNING

Personal injury can result from hydraulic oil pressure and hot oil.

Hydraulic oil pressure can remain in the hydraulic system after the engine has been stopped. Serious injury can be caused if this pressure is not released before any service is done on the hydraulic system.

Make sure all of the work tools have been lowered to the ground, and the oil is cool before removing any components or lines. Remove the oil filler cap only when the engine is stopped, and the filler cap is cool enough to touch with your bare hand.

Refer to Operation and Maintenance, “System Pressure Release” for more information.

The boom lowering control valve (BLCV) is at the back of the base of the boom. The boom lowering control valve allows the operator to manually lower the boom if the engine is stopped.

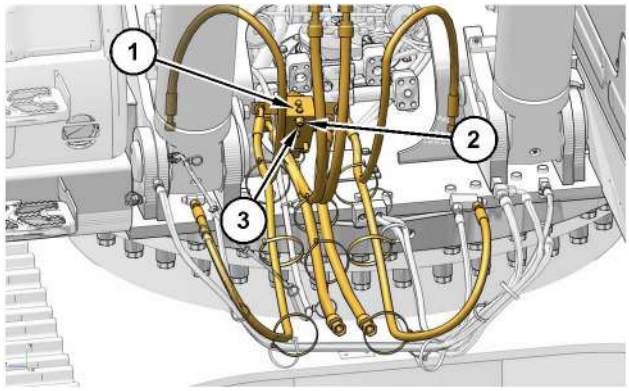


Illustration 294 g07560983

Typical example

(1) Boom lowering control valve
(2) Locknut
(3) Check valve

1. Release the pressure in the hydraulic system. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, System Pressure Release for instructions.
2. Put an identification mark on the screw of locknut (2) before loosening locknut (2).
3. Loosen locknut (2) on boom lowering control valve (1).
4. Slowly turn check valve (3) counterclockwise until check valve (3) stops. The boom will lower to the ground.
5. After the boom has lowered completely onto the ground, turn the screw of locknut (2) back to the original position
6. Tighten check valve (3) to a torque of 2.25 ± 0.25 N·m (20 ± 3 lb in).
7. Tighten locknut (2) to a torque of 4.0 ± 0.5 N·m (35.0 ± 4.0 lb in).
8. Before operating the machine, make any necessary repairs.

Note: If the screw of locknut (2) is not marked, the entire BLCV assembly must be replaced to reset the machine.

For additional information, consult your Cat ® dealer.

Machines without a Boom Lowering Control Valve

WARNING

Be sure no one is under or near the work tools before manually lowering the boom. Keep all personnel away from the boom drop area when lowering the boom with the engine stopped in order to avoid possible personal injury.

Use the following procedure to manually lower the boom due to an engine malfunction.

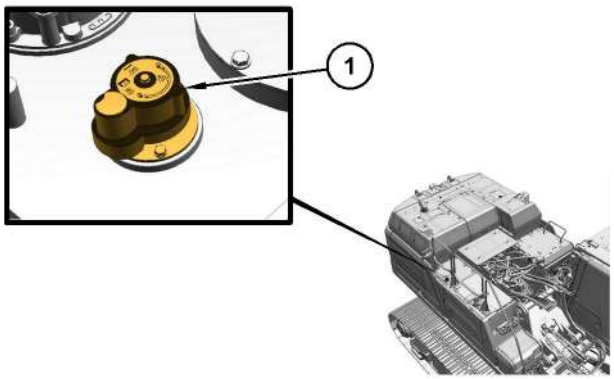


Illustration 295 g07562657

Typical example

Hydraulic tank filler cap location

(1) Hydraulic tank filler cap

WARNING

Pressurized system!

The hydraulic tank contains hot oil under pressure. To prevent burns from the sudden release of hot oil, relieve the tank pressure with the engine off. Relieve pressure by slowly turning the cap until the cap reaches the secondary stop.

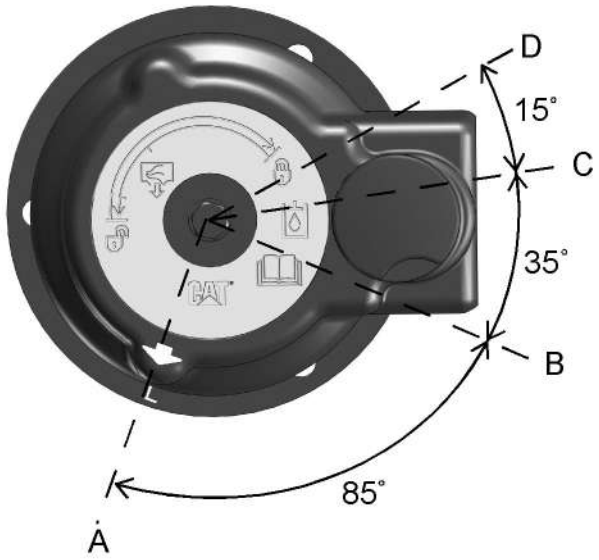


Illustration 296 g06184990

Hydraulic tank filler cap (1)

(A) LOCK position
(B) PRESSURE RELEASE - START position
(C) PRESSURE RELEASE - END position
(D) OPEN position

1. Release the pressure that may be present in the return hydraulic circuit with the following procedure. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, System Pressure Release for more information. Refer to Illustration 296 for hydraulic tank filler cap (1) positions.

a. Turn hydraulic tank filler cap (1) counterclockwise and move the arrow from position (A) to position (B).

b. Release the pressure for a minimum of 45 seconds by moving the arrow from position (B) to position (C).

c. Move the arrow from position (C) to position (D).

d. After the tank pressure is relieved, remove hydraulic tank filler cap (1).

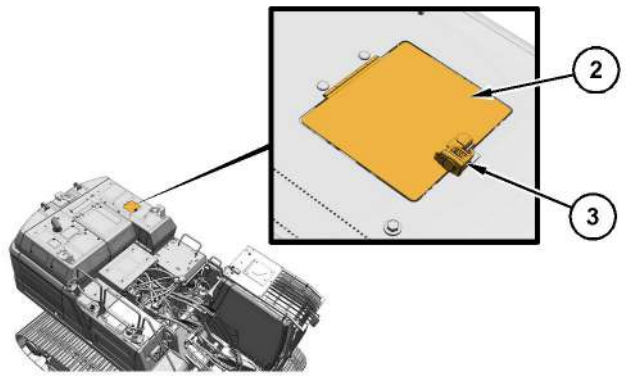


Illustration 297 g07561008

Typical example

(2) Cover
(3) Padlock

2. Unlock and remove padlock (3) and open cover (2).

Refer toRefer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, Access Door and Cover Locations for more information.

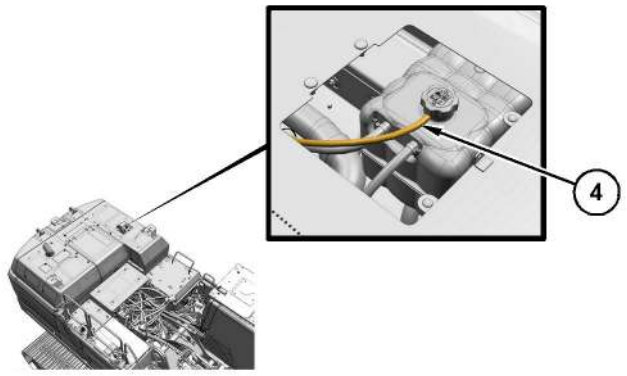


Illustration 298 g07561011

Typical example

(4) Hose

3. Loosen clamp (if available) and disconnect hose (4) from the reservoir. Remove clamps and the cable straps that secure the hose to the machine.

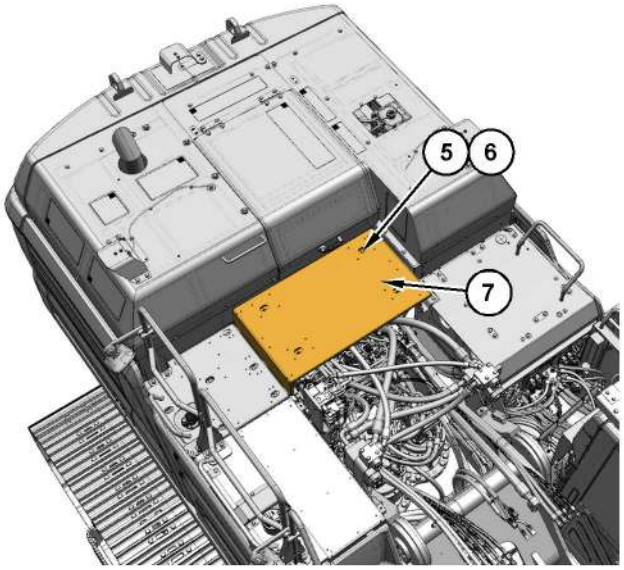


Illustration 299 g07562659

Typical example

(5) Bolt
(6) Washer
(7) Cover

4. Remove four bolts (5) and four washers (6). Remove cover (7).

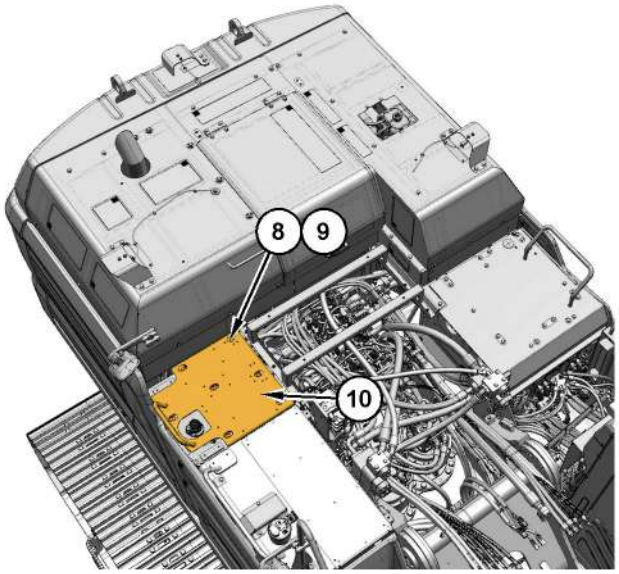


Illustration 300 g07562661

Typical example

(8) Bolt
(9) Washer
(10) Cover

5. Remove seven bolts (8) and seven washers (9). Remove cover (10).

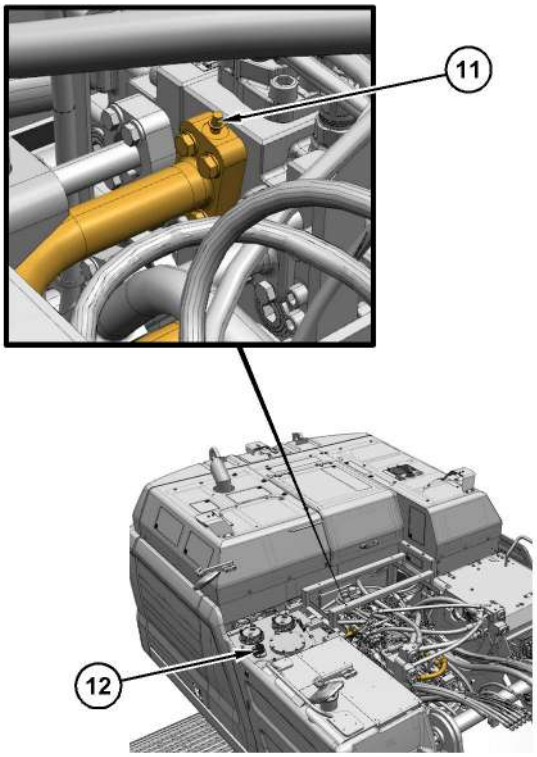


Illustration 301 g07561013

Main control valve

(11) Screw
(12) Hydraulic tank filler cap

6. Clean the area thoroughly to keep dirt out of hydraulic tank filler cap (12). (12).Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, System Pressure Release to release the pressure in the hydraulic system.

Once the hydraulic system pressure is relieved, open hydraulic tank filler cap (12).

7. Connect one end of hose (4) to screw (11). Put the other end of hose (4) into the hydraulic tank opening. Screw (11) is located at the front, right side of the main control valve.

8. Slowly loosen screw (11) by a maximum of 1/2 turn. This allows the hydraulic oil in the boom circuit to drain into the hydraulic tank. The boom will now start to lower.

Note: Refer to “General Hazard Information“ for information that pertains to containing fluid spillage.

Dispose the used fluids according to local regulations.

9. Make sure that the work tool has lowered all the way to the ground. Tighten screw (11) to 13 ± 2 N·m (115 ± 17 lb in).

10. Disconnect hose (4) from screw (11). Do not allow the oil that is contained in the hose to spill. Drain the oil into a suitable container.

11. Connect hose (4) to the original position on the reservoir and tighten clamp (if equipped).

Refer to Specifications, SENR3130, “Torque Specifications” for more information.

12. Install hydraulic tank filler cap (1).

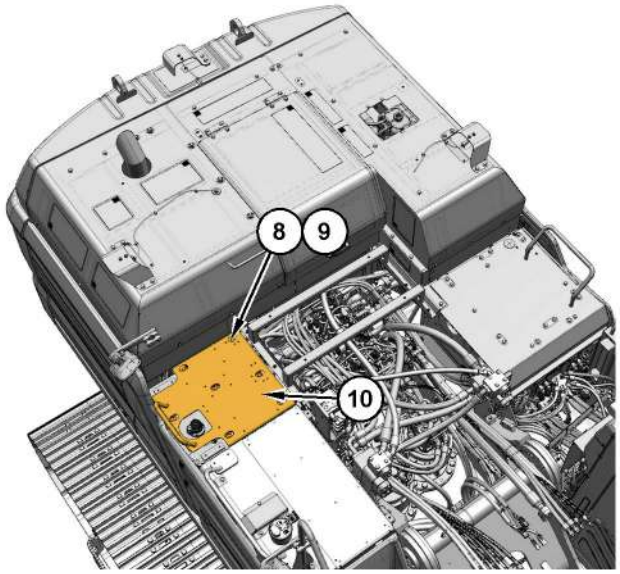


Illustration 302 g07562661

Typical example

(8) Bolt
(9) Washer
(10) Cover

13. Install seven bolts (8) and seven washers (9). Install cover (10).

Refer to Specifications, SENR3130, “Torque Specifications” for information on torque values.

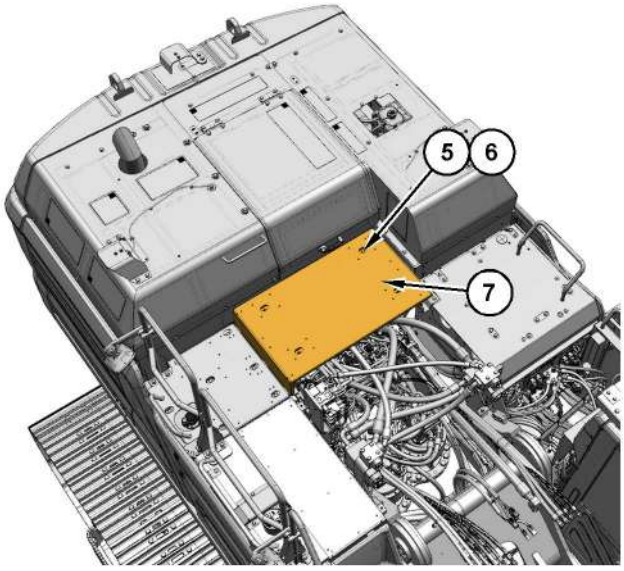


Illustration 303 g07562659

Typical example

(5) Bolt
(6) Washer
(7) Cover

14. Install four bolts (5) and four washers (6). Install cover (7).

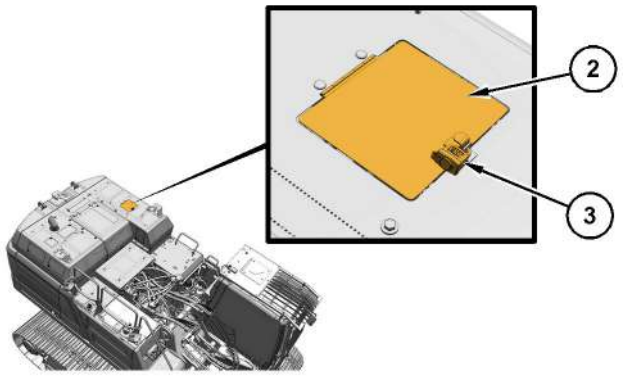


Illustration 304 g07561008

Typical example

(2) Cover
(3) Padlock

15. Close cover (2) and secure it with padlock (3).

Refer toRefer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, Access Door and Cover Locations for more information.

After completion of the manual boom lowering, make necessary repairs before you operate the machine again.

Pressure Release of Auxiliary Lines

WARNING

Personal injury can result from hot oil spray and raised work tools.

Make sure all the work tools have been lowered, the oil is cool and the pressure has been released from the hydraulic system before removing any components or lines.

Do not allow hot oil or components to contact skin.

Note: Refer to “General Hazard Information“ for information on containing fluid spillage.

Refer to the procedure below before any of the following conditions.

- The work tool is changed.
- The position of the ball valve is changed.

1. Turn the engine start switch to the OFF position. Refer to Operation and Maintenance, “Engine Starting” for more information.

2. Place the hydraulic lockout lever in the UNLOCKED position. Refer to Operation and Maintenance, “Operator Controls” for more information.

3. Release the pressure in the auxiliary lines by pressing the auxiliary control buttons or the auxiliary control pedal three times.

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, System Pressure Release for more information

4. Place the hydraulic lockout lever in the LOCKED position. Refer to Operation and Maintenance, “Operator Controls” for more information.

5. Change the work tool.

Note: There should be movement in the auxiliary hydraulic lines as the pressure is released. If there is no movement in the auxiliary hydraulic lines, start the engine and run the engine for 20 seconds. Repeat steps 1 through 5.

For additional information, consult your Cat dealer.

Operating Techniques

i08714166

Operating Technique Information

SMCS Code: 7000

WARNING

Know the maximum height and the maximum reach of your machine. Serious injury or death by electrocution can occur if the machine or the work tools are not kept a safe distance from electrical power lines. Keep a distance of at least 3000 mm (118 inch) plus an additional 10 mm (0.4 inch) for each 1000 volts over 50000 volts.

For safety, one of the following may require a greater distance:

- Local codes
- State codes
- Requirements of the job site

NOTICE
When swinging into a ditch, do not use the ditch to stop the swinging motion. Inspect the machine for damage if the boom is swung into a bank or an object.

Repeated stopping by an object can cause structural damage if the boom is swung into a bank or an object.

With certain boom-stick-bucket combinations, the bucket or worktool can hit the cab and/or the front structure of the machine. Always check for interference when first operating a new bucket or a new work tool. Keep the bucket or work tool away from the cab and away from the front structure during operation.

Whenever the tracks of the machine raise off the ground while digging, lower the machine back to the ground smoothly. DO NOT DROP OR CATCH IT WITH THE HYDRAULICS. Damage to the machine can result.

With certain combinations of work tools, the third pedal can have different functions. Always check the function of the third pedal before you use the third pedal.

Know the location of any buried cables. Mark the locations clearly before you dig.

Consult your Cat dealer for special work tool tips that are available for use in severe applications.

Move the machine whenever the position for operating the machine is not efficient. The machine can be moved forward or backward during the operating cycle.

When you operate the machine in close places, utilize the bucket or the other work tool to perform the following functions:

- Pushing the machine
- Pulling the machine
- Lifting the tracks

Use a comfortable travel speed while you operate the machine.

Operating efficiency can be increased by using more than one machine control to perform a task.

Never swing a load over a truck cab or workers.

Position the truck so that material can be loaded from the rear of the truck or from the side of the truck. Load the truck evenly so that the rear axles are not overloaded.

An oversize bucket or a bucket that is equipped with side cutters should not be used in rocky material. These types of buckets slow down the cycle. Damage to the bucket and to other machine components could result.

Coaching Tips

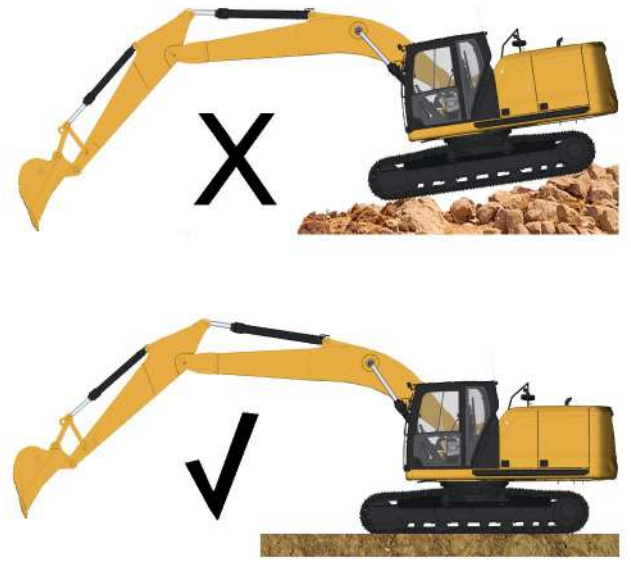


Illustration 305 g06223763

Digging with a stable machine increases productivity. Create a stable work platform.

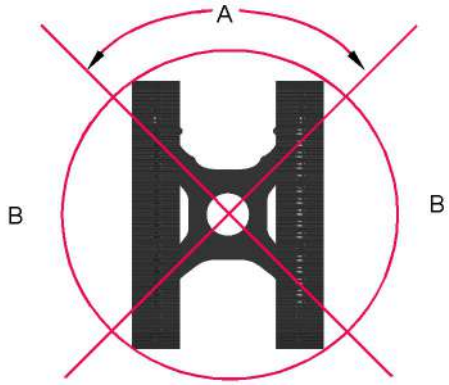


Illustration 306 g06210141

(A) Most stable dig
(B) Dump

For improved stability and durability: Do not dig over the drives or perpendicular to the tracks.

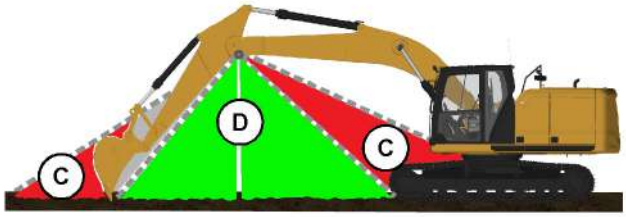


Illustration 307 g06212328

(C) Weak crowd force
(D) Ideal crowd force

Dig from the top down in layers. Try to have a full bucket by the time the stick is vertical, but do not reach too far with the stick. The most crowd force is generated with the stick +/- 30 degrees from vertical.

Minimize unneeded movement. Only curl/dump the bucket as much as required to hold/dump material.

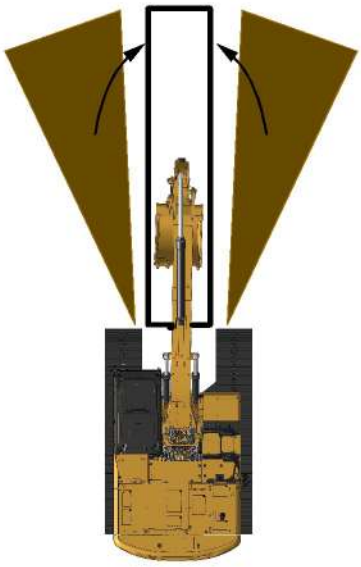


Illustration 308 g06210334

Minimize unneeded movement. During backfilling, start with the material closest to the trench.

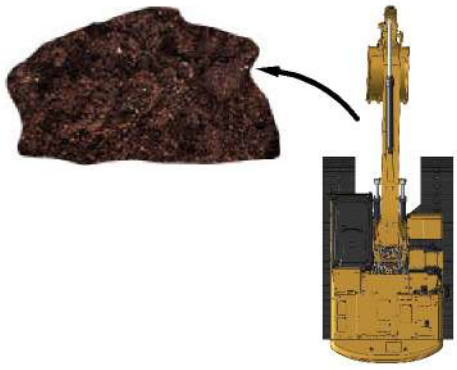


Illustration 309 g06210343

Watch your surroundings. Swing left to dump material for better visibility.

Watch the bucket. The bucket can contact the tracks or the cab.

Concentrate on being smooth, speed will come with practice.

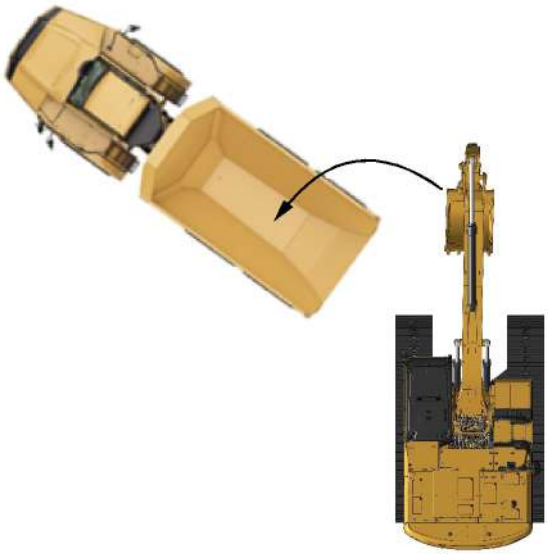


Illustration 310 g06212604

Truck placement will affect efficiency: 45 degree truck loading is more efficient than 90 degree. Spotting the truck too far from the excavator causes excessive motion.

Load from a bench when possible. Bench loading is more efficient.

Restricted Operation

Illustration 311 g06222487

Do not use the swing force to perform the following operations:

- Soil compaction
- Ground breaking
- Demolition

Do not swing the machine while the bucket tips are in the soil.

These operations will damage the boom, the stick, and the work tool and the operations will reduce the life of the equipment.

Illustration 312 g06212594

Do not use the dropping force of the bucket or work tool as a hammer. This will bring excessive force on the rear of the machine. Possible damage to the machine could result.

Illustration 313 g06222492

If the cylinder is operated at the end of the stroke during operations, excessive force will occur on the stopper on the inside of the cylinder. This will reduce the life of the cylinder and structures. To avoid this problem, always leave a small margin of play when the cylinder is operated.

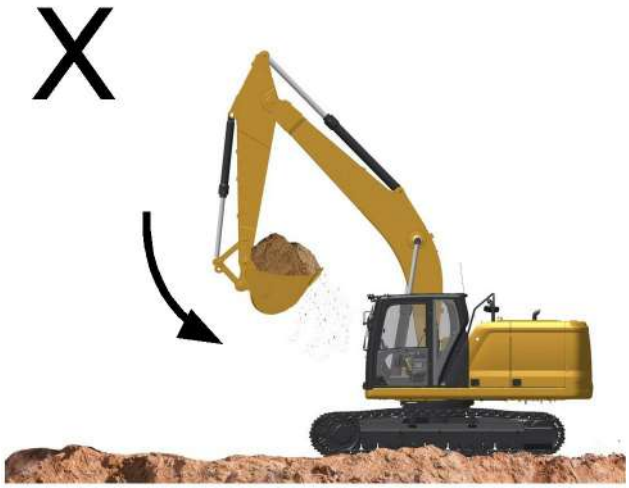


Illustration 314 g06222498

If the stick IN function is operated at full speed with a fully loaded bucket or heavy work tool attachment to the end of the cylinder stroke, excessive force will occur inside the stick cylinder. This action will reduce the life of the stick cylinder. To avoid this problem, always operate a stick IN function with moderate speed towards the end of cylinder stroke.

Illustration 315 g06222500

While the bucket is in the ground, do not use the travel force for any excavation. This operation will cause excessive force on the rear of the machine.

Illustration 316 g06222505

Do not use the dropping force of the rear of the machine for excavation. This operation will damage the machine.

Operating Precaution

Illustration 317 g06222507

NOTICE
Do not allow the machine to swing from the force of traveling when you use the bucket , the stick, or the boom to assist in travel. If the force from traveling causes the machine to swing, damage may occur to the swing motor and to the swing drive.

Do not use the force of the bucket, the stick, or the boom to assist in turning the machine while the machine is traveling. This technique is referred to as “jump steering”. This technique will damage the swing motor and the swing brake.

Illustration 318 g06222509

When deep holes are dug, do not lower the boom so that the bottom side of the boom touches the ground.

When deep holes are dug, do not allow the boom to interfere with the tracks.

Grade and Assist Operating Tips

The following image displays proper stick speeds for accurate grading. One of the factors to accuracy is the grade assist speed setting. The setting can be set to Quick, Normal, or Fine. The settings are found in the Grade Assist screen on the monitor.

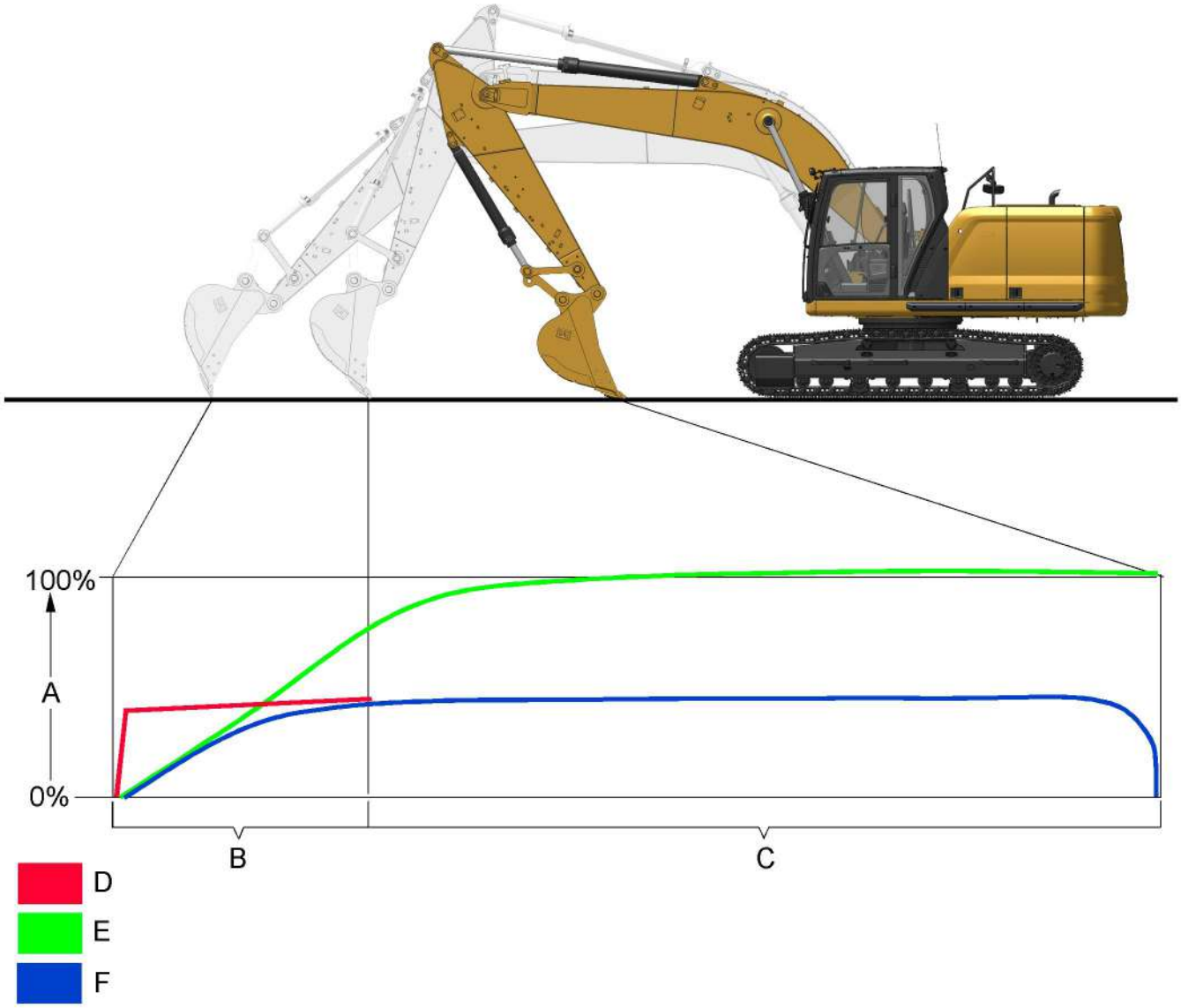


Illustration 319 g06250472

Stick speed vs. accuracy

(A) Stick joystick movement
(B) Joystick movement must be gradual
(C) In fine or normal mode, joystick input can be at 100 percent.
(D) Joystick movement too fast
(E) Good for fine or normal mode
(F) Good in any mode

For best results using Cat Grade, it is important to be cognizant of stick speed in order to obtain accurate results. When the bucket touches the ground before digging, the initial dig movement must be gradual. If operating in Fine or Normal mode, joystick speed can be increased to 100 percent after the slow initial engagement. Approximately 50 percent stick speed is necessary to maintain accuracy when in Quick mode after the slow initial engagement.

Cut/fill error can be minimized if the work tool is properly calibrated and the operator maintains a deliberate speed of operation.

Smart Boom

When using the smart boom function, it is necessary to slow down stick speed. Smart boom cannot keep up when the stick is operating at a rapid pace. This is particularly noticeable when the boom is at the raise/lower transition point and the stick is near vertical.

i07058371

Travel in Water and Mud

SMCS Code: 7000-V6

NOTICE
When working in or around any body of water, around a stream or river, or in conditions of heavy mud, be careful that the swing bearing, the swing drive gear, and the swivel joint do not dip into water, mud, sand, or gravel. If the swing bearing dips into water, mud, sand, or gravel, immediately grease the swing bearing until the used grease leaks from the outer circle of the swing bearing. Failure to carry out this procedure may cause premature wear in the swing bearing.

Illustration 320 g06223764

Depth of water to the center of the track carrier roller.

The following guidelines pertain to travel across water and travel through mud, sand, or gravel.

The machine can travel across a river only under the following conditions:

- The bed of the river is flat.
- The flow of the river is slow.
- The machine dips into the water only to the center of the track carrier roller (dimension A).

NOTICE
Do not allow the fan on the engine to contact the water while the machine travels through the water. Do not allow the fan on the engine to contact the water during a swing while the machine is in the water. Damage to the fan may occur if the fan contacts the water.

While you cross the river, carefully confirm the depth of the water with the bucket. Do not move the machine into an area that has a water depth that is greater than Dimension A.

The machine may sink gradually on soft ground. Therefore, you should frequently check the height of the undercarriage from ground level and the depth of water on the ground.

Check the swing gear by looking through the port for inspection that is on the upper frame. If there is water in the swing gear, contact your Cat dealer for the required maintenance on the swing gear.

After you travel through water, carefully clean the machine to remove any salt, sand, or other foreign matter.

Procedure for Removing the Machine from Water or Mud

NOTICE
Do not allow the machine to swing from the force of traveling when you use the bucket , the stick, or the boom to assist in travel. If the force from traveling causes the machine to swing, damage may occur to the swing motor and to the swing drive.

Illustration 321 g06222519

1. You may not be able to move the machine by using the travel controls only. In this case use both the travel control levers/pedals and the stick to pull the machine out of the water or ground.

Illustration 322 g06222525

2. The machine may slip because of a steep slope. The procedure in Step 1 may not work. In this case, first rotate the upper structure by 180°. Then use both the travel control levers/pedals and the stick to move the machine up the slope.

Illustration 323 g06212337

3. It may be impossible to travel because the bottom of the frame comes into contact with the ground or the undercarriage is clogged with mud or gravel. In this case, operate the boom and the stick together. Raise the track and rotate the track forward and backward to remove the mud and the gravel.

i08485621

Boom, Stick and Bucket Operation

SMCS Code: 7000

Digging

Illustration 324 g06212506

1. Position the stick at a 70 degree angle to the ground.

Illustration 325 g06212513

2. Position the bucket cutting edge at a 120 degree angle to the ground. Maximum breakout force can now be exerted with the bucket.

Illustration 326 g06222533

3. Move the stick toward the cab and keep the bucket parallel to the ground.

Illustration 327 g06222535

4. If the stick stops due to the load, raise the boom and/or perform a curl to adjust the depth of the cut.

5. To apply the greatest force at the cutting edge, decrease the down pressure as you move the stick toward the cab.

6. Maintain a bucket attitude that ensures a continuous flow of material into the bucket.

7. Continue the pass in a horizontal direction so that material peels into the bucket.

Illustration 328 g06222538

8. Close the bucket and raise the boom when the pass has been completed.

Illustration 329 g06223077

9. Engage the swing control when the bucket is clear of the excavation.

Illustration 330 g06223078

10. To dump a load, move the stick outward and open the bucket in a smooth motion.

Lifting Objects

WARNING

To prevent injury, do not exceed the rated load capacity of the machine. If the machine is not on level ground, load capacities will vary.

NOTICE
Damage to bucket cylinder, bucket or linkage could result if slings are placed incorrectly.

There may be local regulations and/or government regulations that govern the use of machines which lift heavy objects. Obey all local and government regulations.

Regional regulations may require the use of an overload warning device and boom and stick lowering control valves when used to lift objects.

If this machine is used to lift objects within Japan , Japanese regulations require the machine to be equipped with a shovel crane configuration.

Contact your Cat ® dealer for additional information.

Short slings will prevent excessive load swing.

Illustration 331 g06212526

Use the lifting eye that is provided on the linkage to lift objects.

If the lifting eye is used, the connection must be made with a sling or with a shackle.

Illustration 332 g06212532

An unstable condition can exist if a load exceeds the machine load rating or if a heavy load is swung over an end or over a side.

Illustration 333 g06212530

The most stable lifting position is over a corner of the machine.

Illustration 334 g06212535

For the best stability, carry a load close to the machine and to the ground.

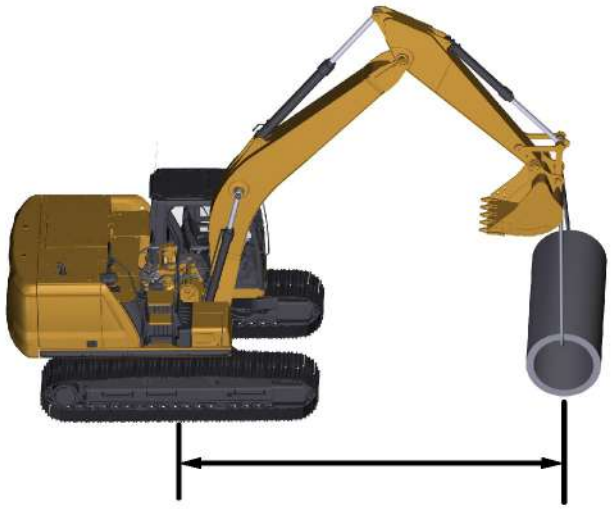


Illustration 335 g06212539

Lift capacity decreases as the distance from the swing centerline is increased.

Machines that are Equipped with a Long Reach Configuration

Machines with a long reach configuration require larger swing drift than standard machines when stopping, because inertial force in time of swing is large. So adjustments are made in timing for applying the swing brakes and speed of swinging.

Machines with a long reach configuration could be damaged and stability of the machine would be adversely affected if a control was suddenly operated, because inertial force of work tool is large.

i03875131

SmartBoom Operation
(If Equipped)

SMCS Code: 5461-ZS; 7332

⚠ WARNING

Personal injury or death can result from not following the proper procedures.

To avoid the possibility of injury or death, follow the established procedure.

WARNING

Activating the SmartBoom function and using the work tool joystick control while the front of the machine is elevated could result in unexpected machine motion. Unexpected machine motion could result in serious injury or death. Do not activate the SmartBoom function if the front of the machine is elevated by the front linkage.

WARNING

Do not elevate or lower the track when in the SmartBoom mode. Follow the operation procedures for the SmartBoom in the Operation and Maintenance Manual. Failure to follow these instructions can result in serious injury or death.

WARNING

Always make sure that the boom control joystick is in the NEUTRAL position before activating the SmartBoom control. Activating the SmartBoom control with the joystick out of the neutral position could resulted in unexpected machine motion which could result in serious injury or death.

WARNING

Do not select any SmartBoom mode, using the SmartBoom selector switch located on the console, while the tracks are elevated. Selecting the SmartBoom mode with the tracks elevated could result in a sudden drop of the machine which could result in serious injury or death.

WARNING

If any SmartBoom mode is active and the boom control joystick is in the BOOM DOWN position (forward) with a bucket or a work tool on the ground, pressing the disable button that is located on the front of the right hand joystick could cause a sudden boom down motion. This control function could lift the machine upward, with unexpected machine movement that could result in serious injury or death. Do not press the disable button while the SmartBoom mode is active and the boom control joystick is in the BOOM DOWN position (forward) with a bucket or a work tool on the ground.

WARNING

Do not attempt to lift the tracks of the machine by using the disable button and applying downward force with the boom lowering control while the machine is in any SmartBoom mode. Releasing the disable button will immediately return the machine to the active SmartBoom mode. This action could cause the machine to drop down abruptly which could result in serious injury or death.

The Caterpillar SmartBoom provides significant advantages in the following operations:

Excavation and Loading

The operator should select the SmartBoom UP AND DOWN mode for excavating operations and for loading operations. This mode is effective during the return cycle. The BOOM DOWN movement is assisted by gravity, and the pump flow that is normally required for the boom circuit is available for faster STICK OUT and SWING functions. More work is performed for the amount of hydraulic oil flow that is provided by the pumps. This results in faster cycle times and improved fuel efficiency.

When the SmartBoom UP AND DOWN mode is active, no downward hydraulic force is applied to the boom. The operator can intermittently apply downward hydraulic force when the force is required for bucket penetration. A button on the right joystick enables the operator to override the SmartBoom mode.

Hammering

The operator should select the SmartBoom DOWN mode for hammering operations. In the SmartBoom DOWN mode, the weight of the hammer plus the boom and the stick provides sufficient downward force for effective hammering. This mode prevents the hammer from rebounding. The boom follows the hammer downward freely as the tool penetrates the rock. This mode also reduces strain on the machine structures.

Advantages

In hammering, the SmartBoom provides the following advantages:

- The mode reduces shock in the cab.
- The mode reduces strain on machine structures.
- The mode prevents blank shots.
- The mode maintains optimum frequency.

In rock cleaning, the SmartBoom provides the following advantages:

- The mode reduces strain on machine structures.

- The mode reduces wear on the bucket and the teeth.
- The mode maintains optimum frequency.

In a leveling operation, the SmartBoom eases the operation. Only STICK IN actuation and bucket actuation are required to level the surface.

In material handling, the SmartBoom reduces the chance of damage below the material.

i06978374

Bucket - Remove and Install

SMCS Code: 6001; 6001-012; 6001-011; 6101; 6102; 6523

Removal Procedure

WARNING

Failure to follow the instruction below for the installation of a work tool may result in personal injury or death. Special care must be taken if more than one person is installing the work tool.

- **Confirm the verbal communication and the hand signals that will be used during the installation.**
- **Be alert for sudden movement of the front linkage and the work tool.**
- **Do not insert fingers into the bores of the support pins when the support pins and the bores are being aligned.**

NOTICE
To facilitate removal of the bucket pins without causing damage to the pins, the bearings, and/or the O-ring seals put the bucket on the floor and the stick in a vertical position, as shown.

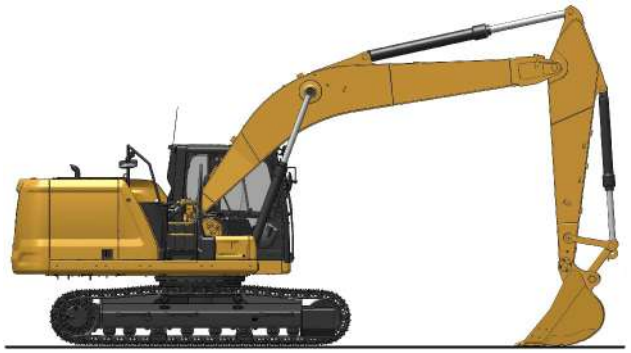


Illustration 336 g06181120

1. Start the engine. Park the machine on a hard, level surface. Position the bucket, the stick, and the bucket control linkage, as shown. Shut off the engine.

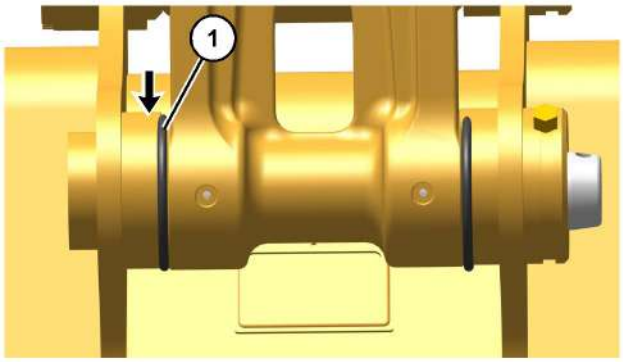


Illustration 337 g06192508

2. Slide O-ring seals (1) off the pin joints and onto the flanges of the bucket.

WARNING

When the pin assembly is removed, the linkage assembly may swing out of the bucket. To prevent possible personal injury, do not stand in front of the linkage assembly when the pin assembly is being removed.

Note: Removing the support pin may be difficult due to excessive pressure on the support pin. Remove the pressure on the support pin by adjusting the front linkage.

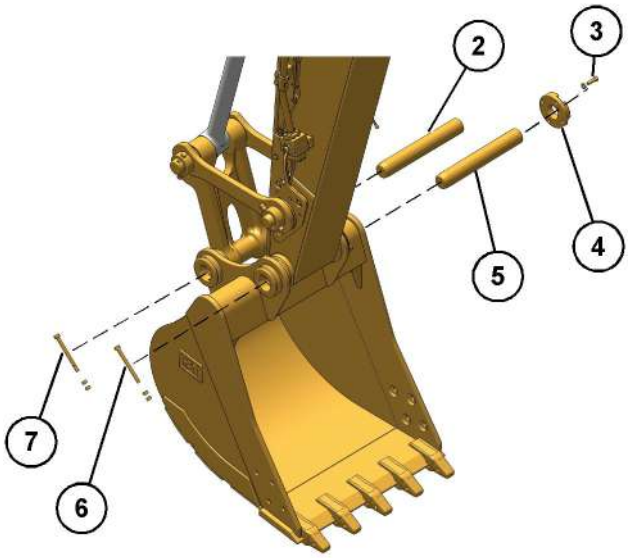


Illustration 338 g06186090

3. Remove nuts and retaining bolt (7) from support pin (2). Remove the support pin .

4. Remove bolts (3) and adapter plate (4). Remove the shims.

5. Remove nuts and retaining bolt (6) from support pin (5). Remove the support pin.

6. Start the engine and raise the stick out of the bucket.

7. Remove the O-ring seals (1) from the flanges on the bucket.

Note: After the support pins have been removed, make sure that the support pins do not become contaminated with sand or dirt. Make sure that the seals on the end of the stick and the seals on the end of the link do not become damaged.

Installation Procedure

1. Clean each pin and each pin bore. Lubricate each pin bore with molybdenum grease.

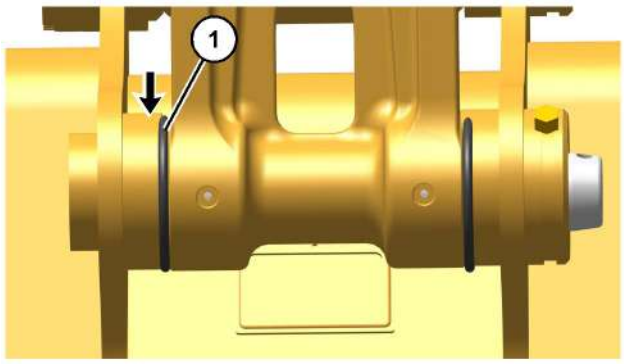


Illustration 339 g06192508

2. Position the O-ring seals (1) onto the flanges of the bucket.

3. Start the engine and lower the stick into the bucket until the pin bores are in alignment with each other. Stop the engine.

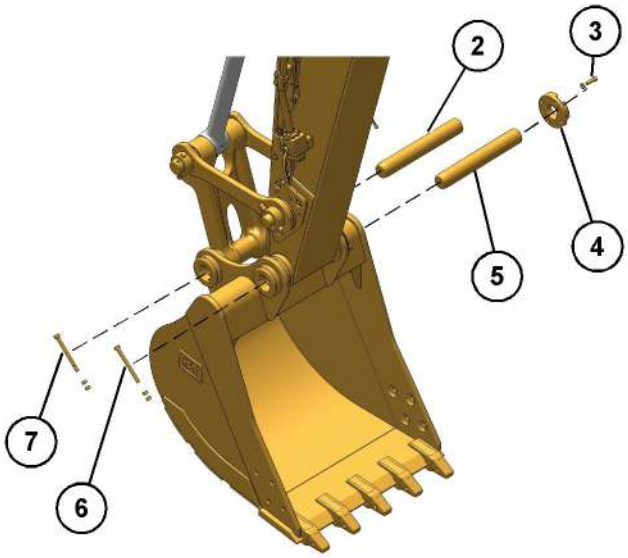


Illustration 340 g06186090

4. Install support pin (5). Align the retaining bolt hole in the support pin with the retaining bolt hole in the bucket.

5. Install the retaining bolt and nuts (6). Install adapter plate (4) without the shims, and without bolts (3) that hold the adapter plate.

6. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Bucket Linkage - Inspect/Adjust” to adjust the bucket clearance.

7. Slide O-ring seals (1) in position over the pin joints between the bucket and the stick.

8. Start the engine and position the bucket linkage into the bucket until the pin bores are in alignment with each other. Stop the engine.

9. Install support pin (2). Align the retaining bolt hole in the bucket pin with the retaining bolt hole in the bucket.

10. Install retaining bolt and nuts (7).

11. Slide the O-ring seals (1) over the pin joints between the bucket and the link assembly.

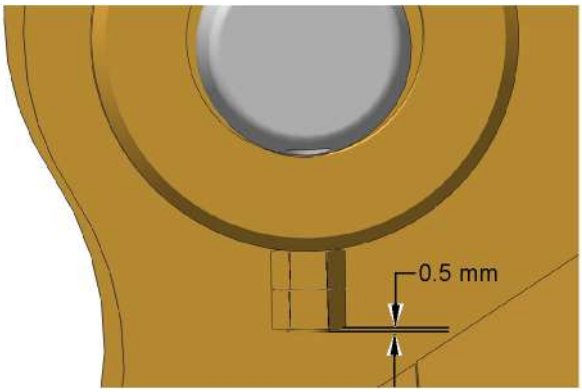


Illustration 341 g06192530

12. Tighten retaining nuts (6) and (7). Position the outside nut even with the end of the retaining bolt or 0.5 mm (0.02 inch) beyond the end of the retaining bolt. Tighten the inside nut against the outside nut.

13. Lubricate the bucket pins. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Bucket Linkage - Lubricate”.

i10092999

Quick Coupler Operation (Circuit for CW Coupler Hold to Run (If Equipped))

SMCS Code: 6129; 6522; 7000

General Operation

Note: If the machine is configured to sound a buzzer while operating the CW coupler, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, Quick Coupler Operation (Circuit for CW Coupler with Alarm).

Note: Machine can be configured with different quick coupler settings with Accelerator or without Accelerator function. And “Hold to Run” or “Alarm” or “Hydraulic Pin Grabber” For activation and deactivation consult your CAT dealer.

Note: If machine is equipped with Tilt Rotator, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, Tilt Rotator and consult your CAT Dealer.

This procedure describes the use of the hydraulic circuit with a Cat dedicated quick coupler. If a different quick coupler is used, contact your Cat dealer for pressure adjustment and consult the documentation for the quick coupler for proper operation.

- The engine start switch is on.
- The engine is running.
- The hydraulic lockout control must be in the UNLOCKED position to operate the quick coupler controls.

When the above conditions are achieved, the system will perform the desired operation.

The quick coupler is used to change work tools while the operator remains in the cab. The quick coupler can be used with a broad range of buckets and work tools. Each work tool must have a set of pins in order for the quick coupler to work properly.

The work tools are held onto the quick coupler by hydraulic pressure. If pressure is lost, a locking bar keeps the work tool locked with the force of built-in springs. Ensure that the hydraulic system and the blocking bar are working properly before using the quick coupler.

A lifting eye is included on the quick coupler. Release the work tool from the quick coupler to use the lifting eye to pick up loads. To lift a load with the lifting eye, extend the bucket cylinder until the quick coupler is in a VERTICAL position. Do not exceed the rated load for the machine.

NOTICE
Once the work tool has been properly attached to the coupler, no loosening of the work tool should occur. Refer to the Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Quick Coupler Installation and Removal” section for additional information. If at any point after the proper attachment and back drag testing of the work tool, should the work tool then become loose or if the rear pin of the work tool detaches from the movable hook, stop work immediately and safely ground and detach the work tool. Consult your Cat dealer to inspect the coupler prior to putting the coupler back into service. This situation could indicate potential coupler damage that may not be readily visible to the customer or operator of the machine and coupler.

Electric Switch Operation

Illustration 342 g06382398

Quick coupler switch (1) is located inside the cab on the switch panel to the left of the operator's seat. The electric switch has only one position for coupling the work tool and uncoupling the work tool. The switch is equipped with a safety lock (2). The locking tab must be pushed backward before the switch can be pressed.

Coupling the Work Tool

WARNING

Inspect the coupler wedge engagement before you operate the excavator.

Serious injury or death may result from an improperly engaged coupler.

Inspect coupler wedge engagement from the cab by rotating the bucket or the work tool inward. Extend the bucket cylinder to bring the coupler actuator into view and bring the stick in until the wedges are visible.

WARNING

Place the work tool or bucket in a safe position before engaging the quick coupler. Ensure that the work tool or bucket is not carrying a load.

Serious injury or death may result from engaging the work tool or bucket when it is in an unstable position or carrying a load.

WARNING

The buzzer will not sound when the switch is in the lock position. The position of the switch does not confirm the coupler pins are engaged. A physical test is required by dragging the attachment on the ground to confirm the coupler pins are engaged.

Note: With certain work tool combinations, including quick couplers, the work tool can hit the cab or the front of the machine. Always check for interference when first operating a new work tool.

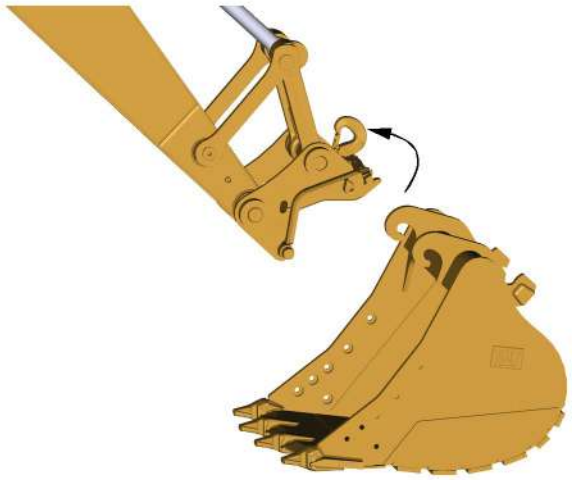


Illustration 343 g06220881

1. Position the work tool on a level surface.
2. Retract the bucket cylinder. Position the quick coupler in alignment between the hinges of the work tool.

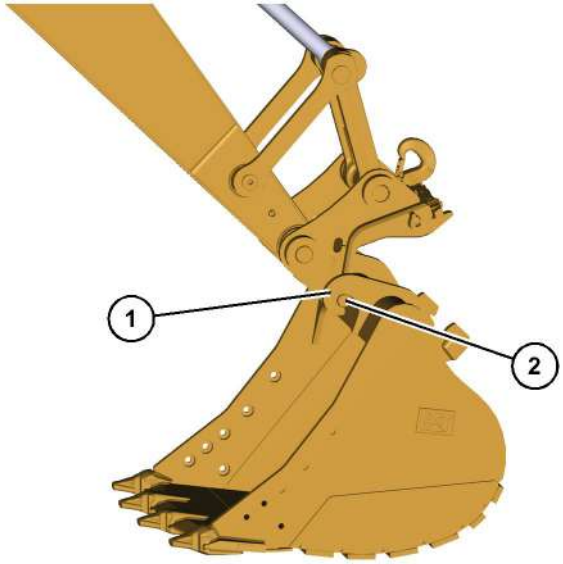


Illustration 344 g06220883

(1) Hinges
(2) Lower bosses

3. Move the stick forward and raise the stick until the lower bosses (2) engage the hinges (1) of the work tool.

Illustration 345 g06642184

4. Push the locking tab on the switch backward and then push the switch and hold. The monitor will display “quick coupler unlocking requested” .

Illustration 346 g06642183

5. If machine is set with accelerator, the system will automatically pressurize, while the coupler switch remains pushed and held, until the wedge is fully extended. The monitor will display “quick coupler unlocked” .

If machine is set without accelerator. Operate a hydraulic function (for example, hold the control lever of the bucket cylinder in the retract direction), while the coupler switch remains pushed and held, until the wedge is fully extended. The monitor will display “quick coupler unlocked” .

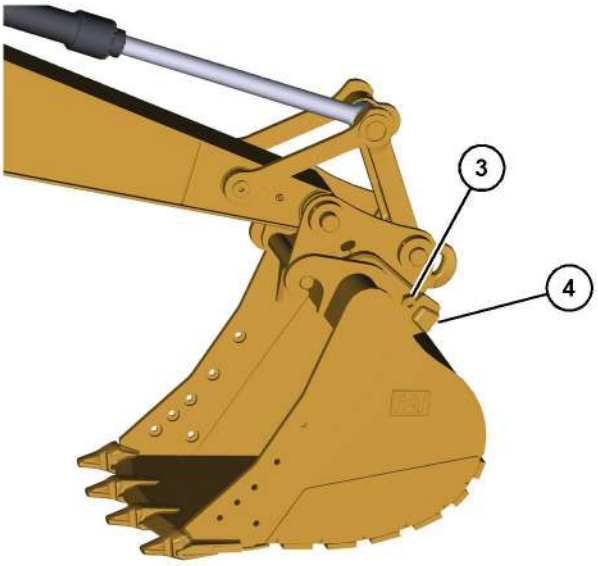


Illustration 347 g06220887

(3) Center bosses
(4) Locking area

6. Extend the bucket cylinder to rotate the quick coupler toward the work tool.

Center bosses (3) must engage with the cutout of the hinge.

Illustration 348 g06642184

7. Release coupler switch (1). The monitor will display “Quick Coupler Locking” .

Illustration 349 g06642185

8. If machine is set with accelerator, the system will automatically pressurize until the wedge is fully retracted. The monitor will display “Quick Coupler Locked - Verify Tool Locked” when the coupler is locked.

If machine is set without accelerator. Operate a hydraulic system function (for example, hold the control lever of the bucket cylinder in the retract direction) until the wedge is fully retracted and the monitor will display “Quick Coupler Locked - Verify Tool Locked” , when the coupler is locked.

⚠ WARNING

Crush injury. Could cause serious injury or death. Always confirm that the quick coupler is engaged onto the pins. Read the Operator's Manual.

⚠ WARNING

Inspect the quick coupler engagement before operating the machine.

Verify that the quick coupler is engaged per the procedure in the Operation and Maintenance Manual. Verify prior to operating the machine, after every engine start, and after an extended time of inactivity.

Serious injury or death may result from improperly engaged coupler.

9. Verify that the quick coupler and the work tool are locked together.

a. Retract the bucket cylinder and place the work tool on the ground.

b. Apply pressure to the work tool against the ground.

c. Drag the work tool backward.

NOTICE

Back drag the work tool on the ground to ensure the quick coupler is properly locked.

Do Not strike the work tool on the ground to ensure the quick coupler is properly locked. Striking the work tool on the ground will result in damage to the coupler cylinder.

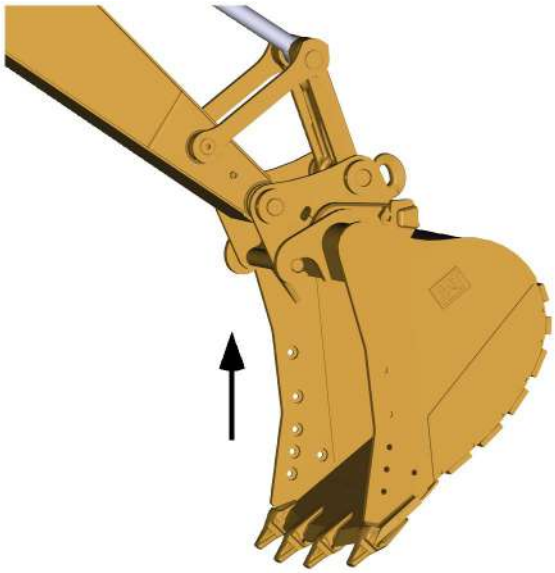


Illustration 350 g06220888

10. Raise the boom or raise the stick. Retract the bucket cylinder to confirm that the wedge is fully engaged. If the wedge is fully engaged, the work tool is locked in place. The work tool is ready to use.

Uncoupling the Work Tool

⚠ WARNING

Place the work tool or bucket in a safe position before disengaging the coupler. Disengaging the coupler will release the work tool or bucket from control of the operator.

Serious injury or death may result from disengaging the work tool or bucket when it is in an unstable position or carrying a load.

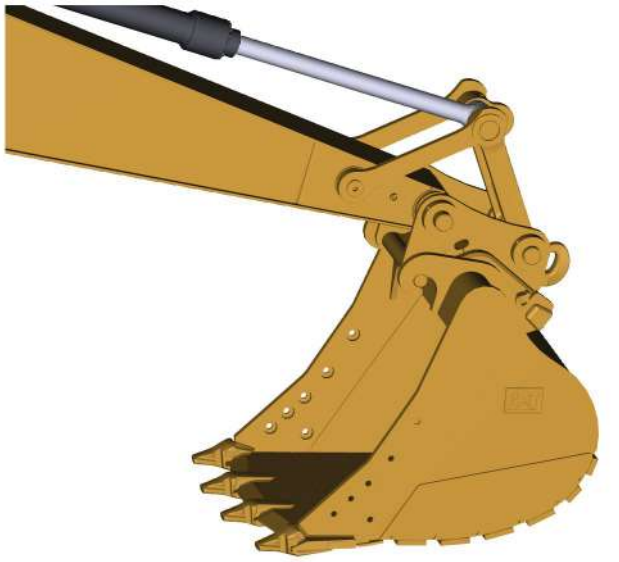


Illustration 351 g06220889

1. Level the bucket or level the work tool on the ground.

Illustration 352 g06642184

2. Push the locking tab on the switch backward and then push the switch and hold. The monitor will display “quick coupler unlocking requested” .

Illustration 353 g06642183

3. If machine is set with accelerator, the system will automatically pressurize, while the coupler switch remains pushed and held, until the wedge is fully extended and the monitor will display “quick coupler unlocked” .

If machine is set without accelerator. Ooperate a hydraulic function (for example, hold the control lever of the bucket cylinder in the retract direction), while the coupler switch remains pushed and held, until the wedge is fully extended. The monitor will display “quick coupler unlocked” .

Illustration 354 g06220891

4. Retract the bucket cylinder to move the quick coupler toward the machine while the coupler switch is being pushed and held.

Illustration 355 g06642184

5. Release coupler switch (1). The monitor will display “Quick Coupler Locking” .

Illustration 356 g06642185

6. If machine is set with accelerator, the system will automatically pressurize until the wedge is fully retracted. The monitor will display “Quick Coupler Locked - Verify Tool Locked” when the coupler is locked.

If machine is set without accelerator. Operate a hydraulic system function (for example, hold the control lever of the bucket cylinder in the retract direction) until the wedge is fully retracted and the monitor will display “Quick Coupler Locked - Verify Tool Locked” , when the coupler is locked.

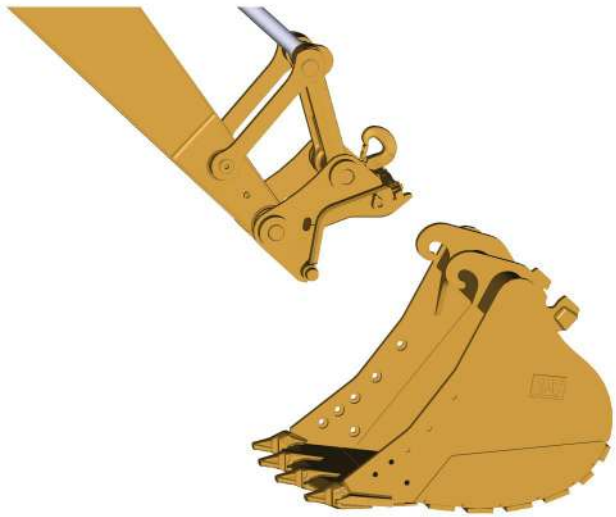


Illustration 357 g06220892

7. Lower the stick and move the stick toward the machine to disengage the quick coupler.

i10093001

Quick Coupler Operation (Hydraulic Pin Grabber Quick Coupler (If Equipped))

SMCS Code: 6129; 6522; 7000

General Operation

NOTICE
The Cat Quick Coupler (Hydraulic Pin Grabber) is not designed to be used in applications where there is long exposure to excessive vibration. The vibration caused by extensive use of a hydraulic hammer as well as the added weight of certain demolition tools such as shears, crushers, and pulverizers may cause premature wear and decreased service life of the coupler.

Be sure to carefully inspect the coupler daily for cracks, bent components, wear, distressed welds, etc. when operating with any of the above work tools.

Note: Machine can be configured with different quick coupler settings with Accelerator or without Accelerator function. And “Hold to Run” or “Alarm” or “Hydraulic Pin Grabber” For activation and deactivation consult your CAT dealer.

Note: If machine is equipped with Tilt Rotator, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, Tilt Rotator and consult your CAT Dealer.

The quick coupler is used to change work tools while the operator remains in the cab. The quick coupler can be used with a broad range of buckets and work tools. Each work tool must have a set of pins in order for the quick coupler to work properly.

The work tools are held onto the quick coupler by hydraulic pressure. If pressure is lost, a check valve in the hydraulic cylinder traps oil in the cylinder. Ensure that the hydraulic system is working properly before using the quick coupler.

A lifting eye is included on the quick coupler. Release the work tool from the quick coupler to use the lifting eye to pick up loads. To lift a load with the lifting eye, extend the bucket cylinder until the quick coupler is in a VERTICAL position. Do not exceed the rated load for the machine.

NOTICE
Once the work tool has been properly attached to the coupler, no loosening of the work tool should occur. Refer to the Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Quick Coupler Installation and Removal” section of the quick coupler for additional information. If at any point after the proper attachment and back drag testing of the work tool, should the work tool then become loose or if the rear pin of the work tool detaches from the movable hook, stop work immediately and safely ground and detach the work tool. Consult your Cat dealer to inspect the coupler prior to putting the coupler back into service. This situation could indicate potential coupler damage that may not be readily visible to the customer or operator of the machine and coupler.

Quick Coupler Operation

Electric Switch Operation

Illustration 358 g06382398

Quick coupler switch (1) is located inside the cab on the switch panel to the left of the operator's seat. The electric switch has only one position for coupling the work tool and uncoupling the work tool. The switch is equipped with a safety lock (2). The locking tab must be pushed backward before the switch can be pressed.

NOTICE
Once the work tool has been properly attached to the coupler, no loosening of the work tool should occur. Refer to the quick coupler Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Quick Coupler Installation and Removal” for additional information. If at any point after the proper attachment and back drag testing of the work tool, should the work tool then become loose or if the rear pin of the work tool detaches from the movable hook, stop work immediately and safely ground and detach the work tool. Consult your Cat dealer to inspect the coupler prior to putting the coupler back into service. This situation could indicate potential coupler damage that may not be readily visible to the customer or operator of the machine and coupler.

NOTICE
Inspection of the Center-Lock coupler is required after a failure of the primary engaging system or a miscoupling of the tool, causing the work tool to swing by the secondary lock. Contact your Cat dealer.

Refer to Special Instruction, REHS5676, “The Inspection Procedure for the Center-Lock Coupler” for the proper procedure.

Note: For machines operating hydromechanical work tools equipped with a Center-Lock Pin Grabber Coupler, the addition of a Hydromechanical Conversion Kit may also be required. Refer to the Operation and Maintenance Manual for the quick coupler for more information or consult your Cat dealer.

Coupling the Work Tool

WARNING

Place the work tool or bucket in a safe position before engaging the quick coupler. Ensure that the work tool or bucket is not carrying a load.

Serious injury or death may result from engaging the work tool or bucket when it is in an unstable position or carrying a load.

WARNING

Inspect the quick coupler engagement before operating the machine.

Serious injury or death may result from improperly engaged coupler.

WARNING

Crush injury. Could cause serious injury or death. Always confirm that the quick coupler is engaged onto the pins. Read the Operator's Manual.

WARNING

The alarm will go off when the coupler is locked and the monitor will display a message. These assurances do not confirm that the coupler pins are engaged. A physical test is required by dragging the attachment on the ground to confirm the coupler pins are engaged.

NOTICE
With certain work tool combinations, including quick couplers, the work tool can hit the cab or the front of the machine. Always check for interference when first operating a new work tool.

1. Position the bucket or the work tool on a level surface.
2. Make sure that the pins are in the bucket or the work tool. Make sure that the pin keepers are installed correctly.

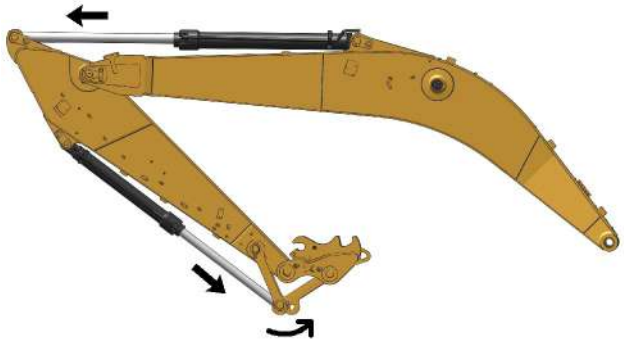


Illustration 359 g06187057

3. Extend the stick cylinder and fully extend the bucket cylinder until the quick coupler is curled past a vertical position. This action must be performed before pressing the switch.

Illustration 360 g06642184

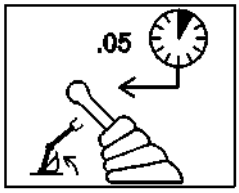


Illustration 361 g01231447

4. Push the locking tab on the switch backward and then push the switch and release. The buzzer will sound and the monitor will display “quick coupler unlocking requested” .

Illustration 362 g06642183

5. Hold the control lever for the bucket cylinder in the EXTEND position until the hook is fully unlocked. The buzzer will continue to sound and the monitor will display “quick coupler unlocked” .

Illustration 363 g06187063

6. Align the quick coupler with the work tool.

Illustration 364 g06187068

7. Rotate the quick coupler to grab the top pin.

Illustration 365 g06187086

8. Rotate the quick coupler downward to grab the bottom pin.

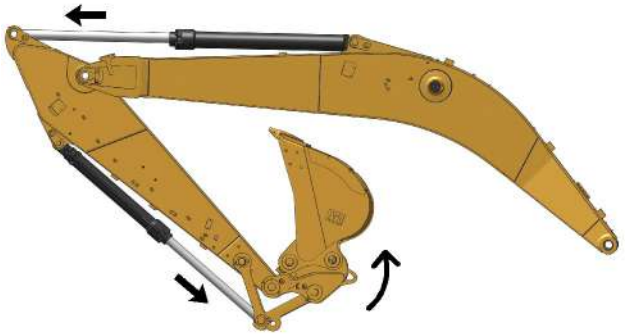


Illustration 366 g06187108

9. Extend the stick cylinder and extend the bucket cylinder until the work tool is curled past a vertical position.

This action must be performed before you push the coupler switch to lock the coupler.

Illustration 367 g06642184

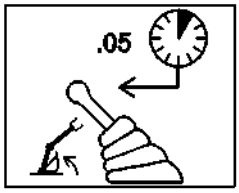


Illustration 368 g01231447

10. Push the locking tab on the switch backward and then push the switch and release. The buzzer will continue to sound and the monitor will display “quick coupler locking” .

Illustration 369 g06642185

NOTICE
Hold the bucket cylinder control lever in the EXTEND position while the quick coupler is locking. Failure to do so may result in unwanted movement of the work tool.

11. Hold the control lever for the bucket cylinder in theEXTEND position until the hook is fully locked. The buzzer will stop to sound and the monitor will display “Quick Coupler Locked - Verify Tool Locked” when the coupler is locked.

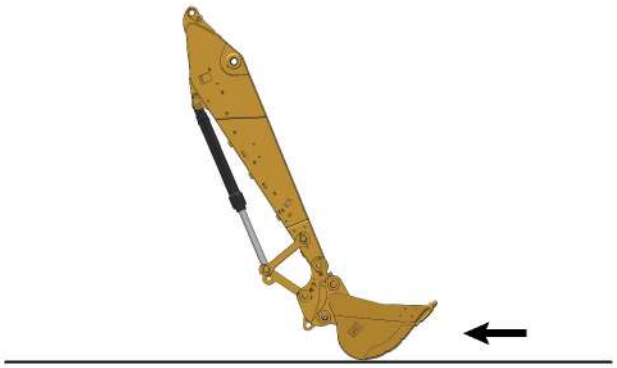


Illustration 370 g06187115

WARNING

Crush injury. Could cause serious injury or death. Always confirm that the quick coupler is engaged onto the pins. Read the Operator's Manual.

WARNING

Inspect the quick coupler engagement before operating the machine.

Verify that the quick coupler is engaged per the procedure in the Operation and Maintenance Manual. Verify prior to operating the machine, after every engine start, and after an extended time of inactivity.

Serious injury or death may result from improperly engaged coupler.

12. Verify that the quick coupler and the work tool are locked together.

a. Retract the bucket cylinder and place the work tool on the ground.

b. Apply pressure to the work tool against the ground.

c. Drag the work tool backward.

NOTICE
Back drag the work tool on the ground to ensure the quick coupler is properly locked.

Do Not strike the work tool on the ground to ensure the quick coupler is properly locked. Striking the work tool on the ground will result in damage to the coupler cylinder.

Uncoupling the Work Tool

⚠ WARNING

Place the work tool or bucket in a safe position before disengaging the coupler. Disengaging the coupler will release the work tool or bucket from control of the operator.

Serious injury or death may result from disengaging the work tool or bucket when it is in an unstable position or carrying a load.

NOTICE

Auxiliary hoses for work tools must be disconnected before the Hydraulic Quick Coupler is disengaged.

Pulling the work tool with the auxiliary hoses could result in damage to the host machine or the work tool.

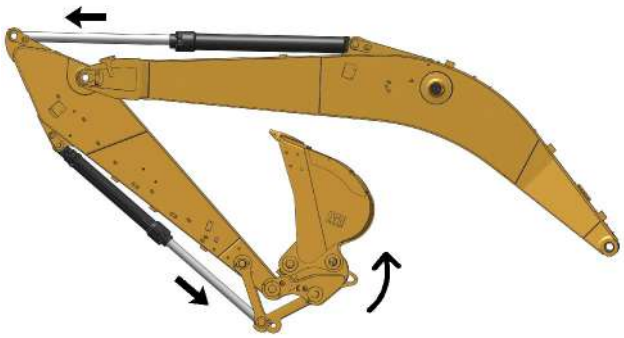


Illustration 371 g06187108

1. Extend the stick cylinder and fully extend the bucket cylinder until the work tool is curled past a vertical position. This action must be performed before pressing the switch.

Illustration 372 g06642184

2. Push the locking tab on the switch backward and then push the switch and release. The buzzer will sound and the monitor will display “quick coupler unlocking requested” .

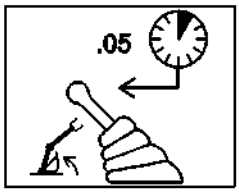


Illustration 373 g01231447

Illustration 374 g06642183

3. Hold the control lever for the bucket cylinder in the EXTEND position until the hook is fully unlocked. The buzzer will continue to sound and the monitor will display “quick coupler unlocked” .

Illustration 375 g06187142

4. Move the boom and the stick until the tool or the bucket is in the storage position. Keep the tool close to the ground.

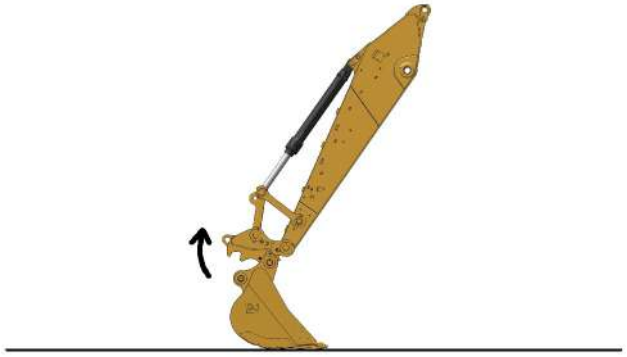


Illustration 376 g06187151

5. Rotate the quick coupler upward to release the bottom pin.

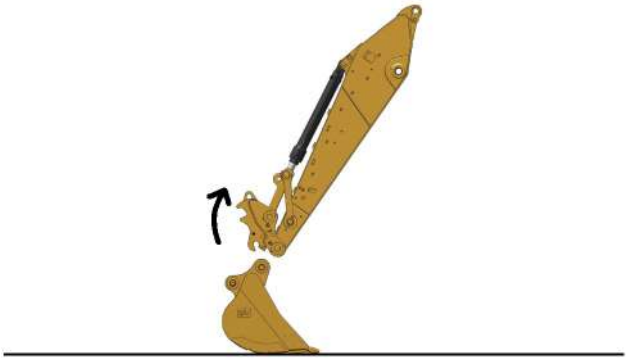


Illustration 377 g06187156

6. Continue to rotate the quick coupler upward to release the top pin and completely release the work tool from the quick coupler.

7. Move the stick to a position that is clear of the work tool.

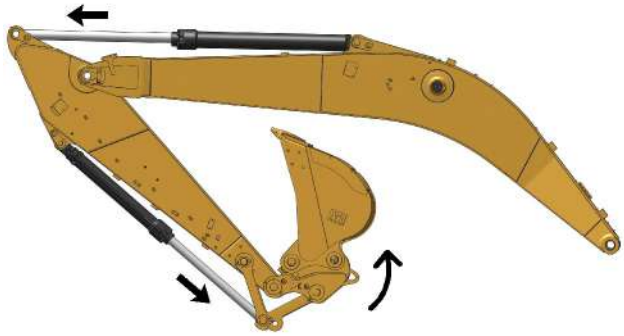


Illustration 378 g06187108

8. Extend the stick cylinder and extend the bucket cylinder until the work tool is curled past a vertical position. This action must be performed before you push the coupler switch to lock the coupler.

Illustration 379 g06642184

9. Push the locking tab on the switch backward and then push the switch and release. The buzzer will continue to sound and the monitor will display “quick coupler locking” .

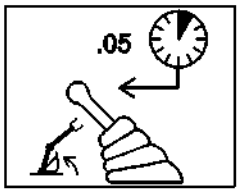


Illustration 380 g01231447

Illustration 381 g06642185

10. Hold the control lever for the bucket cylinder in the EXTEND position until the hook is fully locked. The buzzer will stop to sound and the monitor will display “Quick Coupler Locked - Verify Tool Locked” when the coupler is locked.

11. To lift objects with the lifting eye of the quick coupler, refer to “Coupler Lifting Eye Operation without Bucket” later in this chapter.

Coupling a Bucket that is Reversed

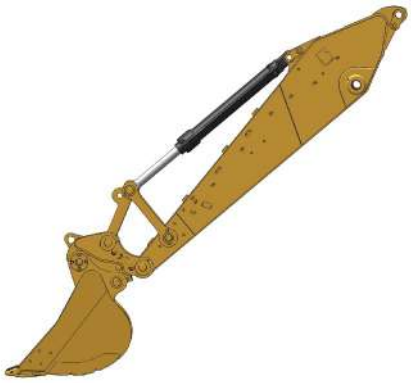


Illustration 382 g06187159

1. When you use a hydraulic pin grabber quick coupler, you can connect to a bucket that is in a reversed position. Refer to Illustration 382 for an example of connecting to a bucket that is in a reversed position.

2. Follow the same steps for coupling the work tool to couple the host machine to a bucket that is reversed. Refer to “Coupling the Work Tool” for the proper procedure.

NOTICE
When some Caterpillar buckets are used in the reverse position, it can be more difficult to couple the bucket and uncouple the bucket than in the normal position.

Care must be taken to ensure that the position of the boom, stick, and bucket are aligned to ensure smooth coupling. The coupler must be in position between the bucket bosses.

If the bucket is not fully engaged in the jaw of the coupler, the quick coupler can become snagged on the bucket bosses. The full weight of the bucket is then carried by the quick coupler sideplates, which can cause damage to the quick coupler.

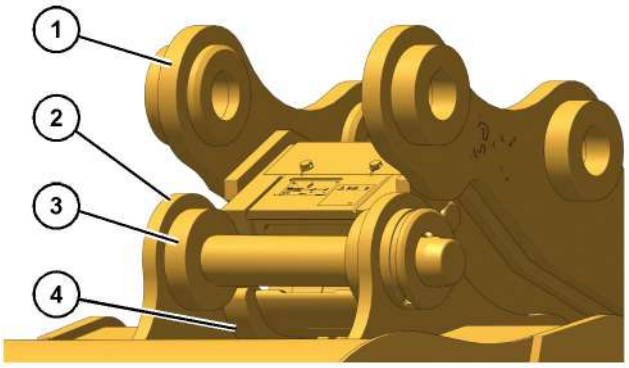


Illustration 383 g06187418

(1) Quick coupler
(2) Bucket
(3) Boss
(4) Hook

Coupler Lifting Eye Operation without Bucket

A lifting eye is included on the quick coupler. Release the work tool from the quick coupler to use the lifting eye to pick up loads. To lift a load with the lifting eye, extend the bucket cylinder until the quick coupler is in a VERTICAL position. Do not exceed the rated load for the machine. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, Lifting capacities for more information.

Note: The maximum load capacity of the coupler lifting eye is 12000 kg (26455 lb). Exceeding the maximum capacity could result in serious injury or death.

1. Remove the work tool. Refer to “Uncoupling the Work Tool” for the proper procedure.

Illustration 384 g06384615

2. Use the lifting eye of the quick coupler, as needed.

3. To reinstall the bucket or the work tool, refer to “Coupling the Work Tool” for the proper procedure.

i10093006

Quick Coupler Operation (Circuit for CW Coupler with Alarm (If Equipped))

SMCS Code: 6129; 6522; 7000

General Operation

Note: Machine can be configured with different Quick Coupler settings with accelerator or without accelerator function, and “Hold to Run” or “Alarm” or “Hydraulic Pin Grabber” For activation and deactivation consult your Cat dealer.

Note: If machine is equipped with Tilt Rotator, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, M0073418, “TRS10, TRS14, TRS18, and TRS23 Tilt-Rotator” and consult your Cat dealer.

This procedure describes the use of the hydraulic circuit with a Cat dedicated Quick Coupler. If a different Quick Coupler is used, contact your Cat dealer for pressure adjustment and refer to the documentation for the Quick Coupler for proper operation.

- The engine start switch is ON. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Operator Controls”.
- The engine is running.
- The hydraulic lockout control must be in the UNLOCKED position to operate the quick coupler controls. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Operator Controls”.

When the above conditions are achieved, the system will perform the desired operation.

The Quick Coupler is used to change work tools while the operator remains in the cab. The Quick Coupler can be used with a broad range of buckets and work tools. Each work tool must have a set of pins for the Quick Coupler to work properly.

The work tools are held onto the quick coupler by hydraulic pressure. If pressure is lost, a locking bar keeps the work tool locked with the force of built-in springs. Ensure that the hydraulic system and the locking bar are working properly before using the Quick Coupler.

A lifting eye is included on the Quick Coupler. Release the work tool from the Quick Coupler to use the lifting eye to pick up loads. To lift a load with the lifting eye, extend the bucket cylinder until the quick coupler is in a VERTICAL position. Do not exceed the rated load for the machine. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Lifting Capacities” for more information.

NOTICE
Once the work tool has been properly attached to the coupler, no loosening of the work tool should occur. Refer to the Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Quick Coupler Installation and Removal” section of the quick coupler for additional information. If at any point after the proper attachment and back drag testing of the work tool, should the work tool then become loose or if the rear pin of the work tool detaches from the movable hook, stop work immediately and safely ground and detach the work tool. Consult your Cat dealer to inspect the coupler prior to putting the coupler back into service. This situation could indicate potential coupler damage that may not be readily visible to the customer or operator of the machine and coupler.

Electric Switch Operation

Illustration 385 g07500529

(1) Quick coupler switch
(2) Safety lock

Quick coupler switch (1) is located inside the cab on the switch panel to the left of the operator's seat. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Operator Controls”. The electric switch has only one position for coupling the work tool and uncoupling the work tool. Quick coupler switch (1) is equipped with a safety lock (2). The locking tab must be pushed backward before quick coupler switch can be pressed.

Coupling the Work Tool

WARNING

Inspect the coupler wedge engagement before you operate the excavator.

Serious injury or death may result from an improperly engaged coupler.

Inspect coupler wedge engagement from the cab by rotating the bucket or the work tool inward. Extend the bucket cylinder to bring the coupler actuator into view and bring the stick in until the wedges are visible.

WARNING

Place the work tool or bucket in a safe position before engaging the quick coupler. Ensure that the work tool or bucket is not carrying a load.

Serious injury or death may result from engaging the work tool or bucket when it is in an unstable position or carrying a load.

WARNING

The buzzer will not sound when the switch is in the lock position. The position of the switch does not confirm the coupler pins are engaged. A physical test is required by dragging the attachment on the ground to confirm the coupler pins are engaged.

Note: With certain work tool combinations, including Quick Couplers, the work tool can hit the cab or the front of the machine. Always check for interference when first operating a new work tool.

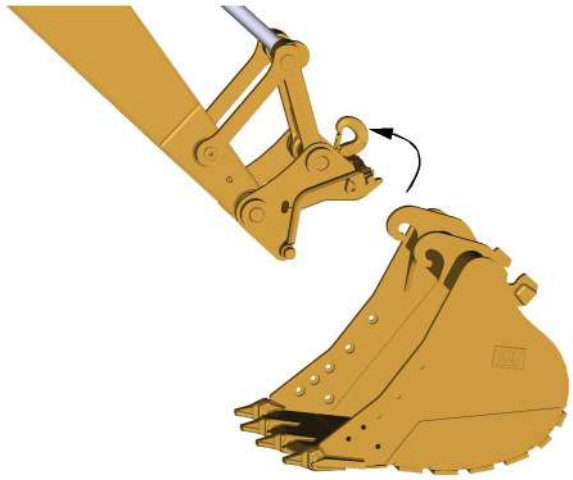


Illustration 386 g06220881

Engaging the work tool

1. Position the work tool on a level surface.

2. Retract the bucket cylinder. Position the Quick Coupler in alignment between the hinges of the work tool.

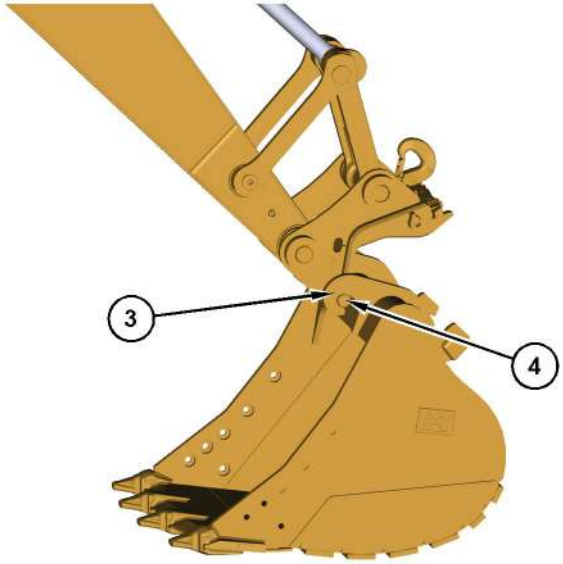


Illustration 387 g07499629

(3) Hinges
(4) Lower bosses

3. Move the stick forward and raise the stick until lower bosses (4) engage hinges (3) of the work tool.

Illustration 388 g06642184

Quick coupler locking icon

4. Push the locking tab on the quick coupler switch (1) backward and then push the switch and release. The monitor will display “Quick Coupler Unlocking Requested” . Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Monitoring System” for more information.

Illustration 389 g06642183

Quick coupler unlocking icon

5. If machine is set with accelerator, the system will automatically pressurize until the wedge is fully extended. The buzzer will continue to sound and the monitor will display “Quick Coupler Unlocked” .

If machine is set without accelerator, operate a hydraulic system function (for example, hold the control lever of the bucket cylinder in the retract direction) until the wedge is fully extended. The buzzer will continue to sound and the monitor will display “Quick Coupler Unlocked” .

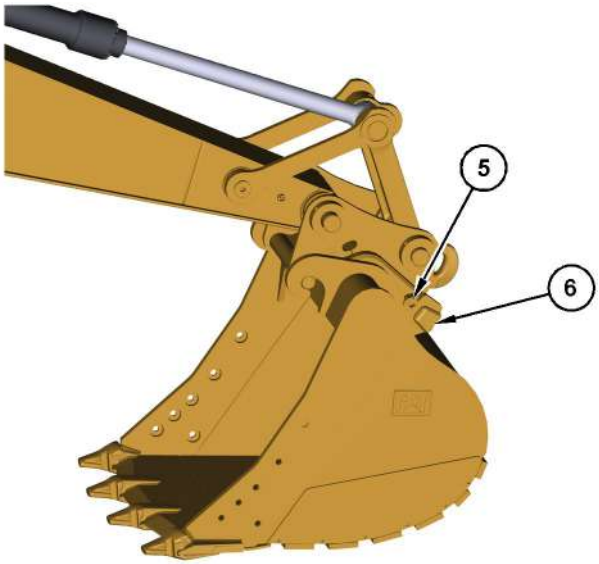


Illustration 390 g07499633

(5) Center bosses
(6) Locking area

6. Extend the bucket cylinder to rotate the Quick Coupler toward the work tool.

Center bosses (5) must engage with the cutout of the hinge.

Illustration 391 g06642184

Quick coupler locking icon

Illustration 392 g07500529

(1) Quick coupler switch
(2) Safety lock

7. Release quick coupler switch (1). The monitor will display “Quick Coupler Locking” .

Illustration 393 g06642185

Locking icon

8. If machine is set with accelerator, the system will automatically pressurize until the wedge is fully retracted. The buzzer will stop and the monitor will display “Quick Coupler Locked - Verify Tool Locked” when the coupler is locked.

If machine is set without accelerator, operate a hydraulic system function (for example, hold the control lever of the bucket cylinder in the retract direction) until the wedge is fully retracted. The buzzer will stop and the monitor will display “Quick Coupler Locked - Verify Tool Locked” when the coupler is locked.

WARNING

Crush injury. Could cause serious injury or death. Always confirm that the quick coupler is engaged onto the pins. Read the Operator's Manual.

WARNING

Inspect the quick coupler engagement before operating the machine.

Verify that the quick coupler is engaged per the procedure in the Operation and Maintenance Manual. Verify prior to operating the machine, after every engine start, and after an extended time of inactivity.

Serious injury or death may result from improperly engaged coupler.

9. Verify that the Quick Coupler and the work tool are locked together.

a. Retract the bucket cylinder and place the work tool on the ground.

b. Apply pressure to the work tool against the ground.

c. Drag the work tool backward.

NOTICE
Back drag the work tool on the ground to ensure the quick coupler is properly locked.

Do Not strike the work tool on the ground to ensure the quick coupler is properly locked. Striking the work tool on the ground will result in damage to the coupler cylinder.

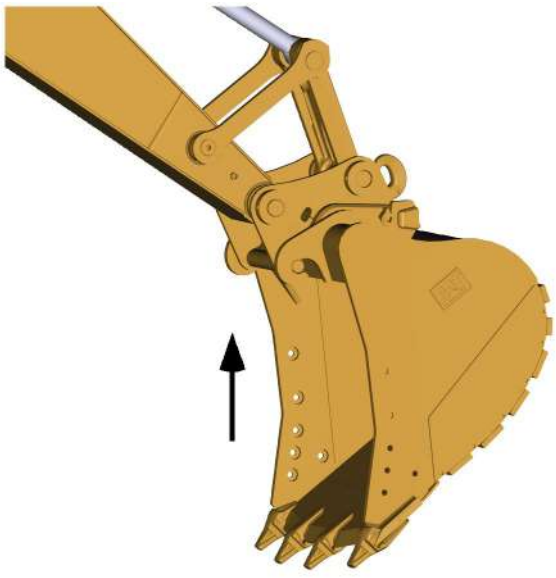


Illustration 394 g06220888
Retracting bucket cylinder

10. Raise the boom or raise the stick. Retract the bucket cylinder to confirm that the wedge is fully engaged. If the wedge is fully engaged, the work tool is locked in place. The work tool is ready to use.

Uncoupling the Work Tool

WARNING

Place the work tool or bucket in a safe position before disengaging the coupler. Disengaging the coupler will release the work tool or bucket from control of the operator.

Serious injury or death may result from disengaging the work tool or bucket when it is in an unstable position or carrying a load.

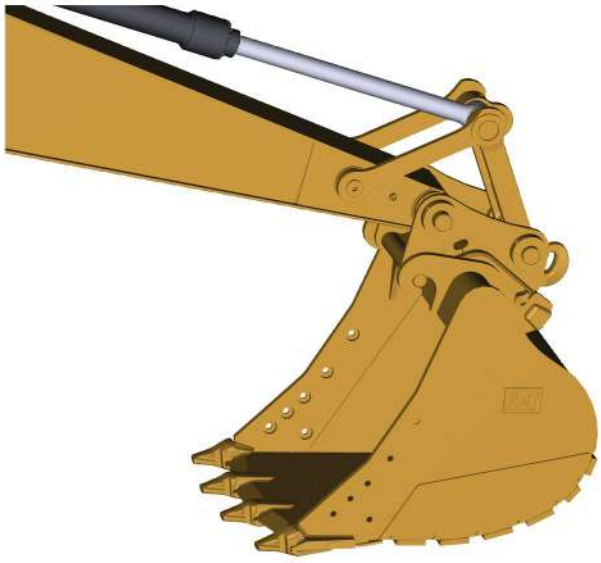


Illustration 395 g06220889
Placing the bucket on the ground

1. Level the bucket or level the work tool on the ground.

Illustration 396 g06642184
Quick coupler locking icon

2. Push the locking tab on the switch backward and then push the switch and release. The monitor will display “Quick Coupler Unlocking Requested” .

Illustration 397 g06642183
Quick coupler unlocking icon

3. If machine is set with accelerator, the system will automatically pressurize until the wedge is fully extended. The buzzer will continue to sound and the monitor will display “Quick Coupler Unlocked” .

If machine is set without accelerator, operate a hydraulic system function (for example, hold the control lever of the bucket cylinder in the retract direction) until the wedge is fully extended. The buzzer will continue to sound and the monitor will display “Quick Coupler Unlocked” .

Illustration 398 g06220891
Work tool engaged

4. Retract the bucket cylinder to move the Quick Coupler toward the machine while the coupler switch is being pushed and held.

Illustration 399 g06642184
Quick coupler locking icon

5. Release coupler switch (1). The monitor will display “Quick Coupler Locking” .

Illustration 400 g06642185
Locking icon

6. If machine is set with accelerator, the system will automatically pressurize until the wedge is fully retracted. The buzzer will stop and the monitor will display “Quick Coupler Locked - Verify Tool Locked” when the coupler is locked.

If machine is set without accelerator. Operate a hydraulic system function (for example, hold the control lever of the bucket cylinder in the retract direction) until the wedge is fully retracted. The buzzer will stop and the monitor will display “Quick Coupler Locked - Verify Tool Locked” when the coupler is locked.

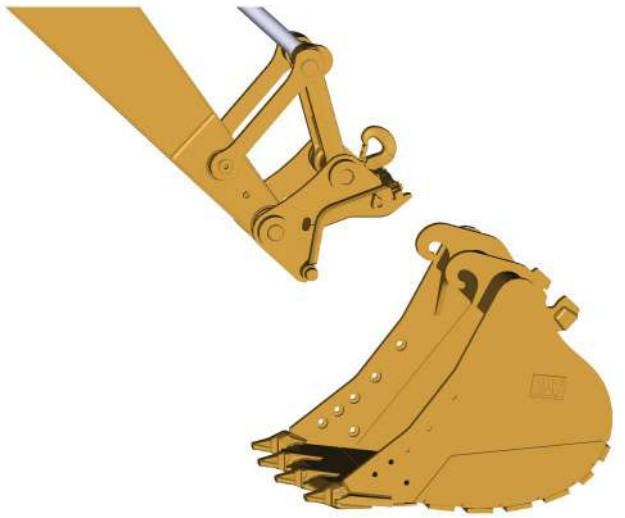


Illustration 401 g06220892

Work tool disengaged

7. Lower the stick and move the stick toward the machine to disengage the quick coupler.

i08826570

Work Tool Operation
(If Equipped)

SMCS Code: 6700; 7000

Hammer Operation (If Equipped)

Illustration 402 g06222793

NOTICE
Use only a hydraulic hammer that is recommended by Caterpillar.

Do not use Hammer on UHD (Ultra High Demolition) front. Hammer can be used only when retrofit boom is attached on UHD machines.

The use of a hydraulic hammer that is not recommended by Caterpillar could result in structural damage to the host machine.

Consult your Cat dealer for information on recommended hydraulic hammers.

Only use the hydraulic hammer to break rocks, concrete, and other hard objects. Before you start hydraulic hammer operation, place the machine on a level, stable surface.

Before you start hydraulic hammer operation, close the front window. Caterpillar recommends the installation of a window guard on the front window for protection from flying debris.

NOTICE
In order to avoid structural damage to the host machine or the hydraulic hammer, comply with the following:

Do not attempt to break rocks or concrete by burying the hammer tool completely into the rocks or concrete.

Do not apply a prying force to the hammer tool in order to remove the hammer tool from the material.

Do not allow the hydraulic hammer to operate at one location and for more than 15 seconds. Change the location of the hydraulic hammer and repeat the procedure. Failure to change the location of the hydraulic hammer could cause the hydraulic oil to overheat. Overheated hydraulic oil could damage the accumulator.

Stop the hydraulic hammer immediately if the jumper lines are pulsating violently. This indicates that the accumulator nitrogen charge is lost. Consult your Cat dealer for the necessary repair.

NOTICE
Do not use the dropping force of the hydraulic hammer to break rocks or other hard objects. This could cause structural damage to the machine.

Do not use the sides or back of the hydraulic hammer to move rocks or other hard objects. Doing this could cause damage not only to the hammer but to stick or boom cylinder.

Do not operate the hydraulic hammer with any of the cylinders fully retracted or extended. Doing this could cause structural damage to the machine, resulting in reduced machine life.

Do not use the hydraulic hammer to lift an object.

Do not operate the hydraulic hammer while the stick is vertical to the ground. This could allow the stick cylinder to vibrate excessively.

Operate the attachment control levers carefully to keep the hydraulic hammer tool from hitting the boom.

Do not operate the hydraulic hammer under water unless the hydraulic hammer is properly equipped. Operating the hydraulic hammer under water could damage the machine hydraulic system. Consult your Cat dealer for information on underwater operation.

Do not operate the hydraulic hammer with the upper structure sideways to the undercarriage. Before you start hydraulic hammer operation, place the upper structure in the recommended positions that are shown in illustration 403 . Any other operating positions could make the machine unstable. Any other operating positions could place excessive loads on the undercarriage.

Refer to the following for any additional questions about the operation and care of your Cat hydraulic hammer:

- Operation and Maintenance Manual, SEBU7346, “Hydraulic Hammers”
- The Operation and Maintenance Manual specific to your machine

An operation and maintenance decal, SMEU7397, is available for all hydraulic hammers. The decal provides procedures for operation and maintenance of the hydraulic hammers. The decal can be placed on the machine or the hammer. The decal can be obtained through the normal literature ordering channels.

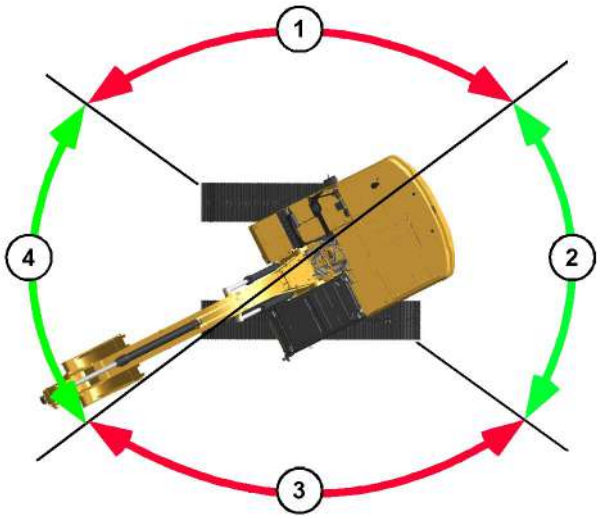


Illustration 403 g06192837

(1) Incorrect working position
(2) Correct working position
(3) Incorrect working position
(4) Correct working position

Shear Operation (If Equipped)

Illustration 404 g06222798

WARNING

Do not operate or work on this work tool unless you have read and understand the instructions and warnings in the Operation And Maintenance Manual for both the work tool and the host machine.

Failure to follow the instructions or heed the warnings could result in injury or death.

Contact your Caterpillar dealer for replacement manuals. Proper care is your responsibility.

NOTICE

Selection of a hydraulic shear must be done with extra care.

Use of a hydraulic shear not recommended by Caterpillar could result in structural damage to the host machine.

Consult your Cat dealer for hydraulic shear information.

WARNING

Serious injury or death could occur from the demolition of pipes, vessels, tanks or other containers that may contain gas, flammable materials or hazardous chemicals.

Do not perform any demolition work on these items until all of their contents have been removed.

Follow all regulations for the removal and disposal of these materials.

NOTICE
Using the demolition tool to level the work site or push over standing structures may damage the machine or the demolition tool. Use appropriate equipment to do site preparation or maintenance operations.

NOTICE
To avoid structural damage to the machine, do not break road surfaces by placing the cutting edge of the hydraulic shear on the ground and moving the machine.

Be sure that no one is near the work tool to prevent injury. Keep the work tool under control at all times to prevent injury. When a demolition tool is used, all personnel must maintain a minimum distance of 10 m (33 ft).

Close all windows. Make sure that all required guards are in place. Wear all required protective equipment. Follow the instructions in the Operation and Maintenance Manual for the work tool.

Crusher Operation (If Equipped)

WARNING

Improper operation and maintenance of the crusher could cause personal injury or death. Observe the following procedures for safe operation of the crusher.

Consult your Cat dealer for more information on the operation and maintenance of the crusher.

Do not operate the host machine with the work tool unless you have read and understood the instructions and warnings in the Operation and Maintenance Manual. Failure to follow the instructions or heed the warnings could result in machine or work tool damage, and/or serious injury or death. Contact your Cat dealer for a replacement manual, if needed.

When the crusher is installed on the host machine, always make sure that the protective guarding is in place.

Using the crusher in an incorrect manner can damage the machine and/or cause personal injury or death.

Always ensure that the work area is clear of ground personnel, due to the potential crush hazards with falling debris and machine movement.

Resting or placing your foot on the work tool pedal could result in unexpected movement of the machine / work tool which could result in personal injury or death. Always lock the crusher when not in use.

NOTICE
Selection of a hydraulic crusher must be done with extra care.

Use of a hydraulic crusher not recommended by Caterpillar could result in structural damage to the host machine.

Consult your Cat dealer for hydraulic crusher information.

Close all windows. Make sure that all required guards are in place. Wear all required protective equipment. Follow the instructions in the Operation and Maintenance Manual for the work tool.

Illustration 405 g06222800

Demolition work on the roof of a building could lead to serious personal injury if the building were to collapse and the excavator turned over or fell off the roof. The demolition work must be started ONLY AFTER surveying the building for its structural integrity.

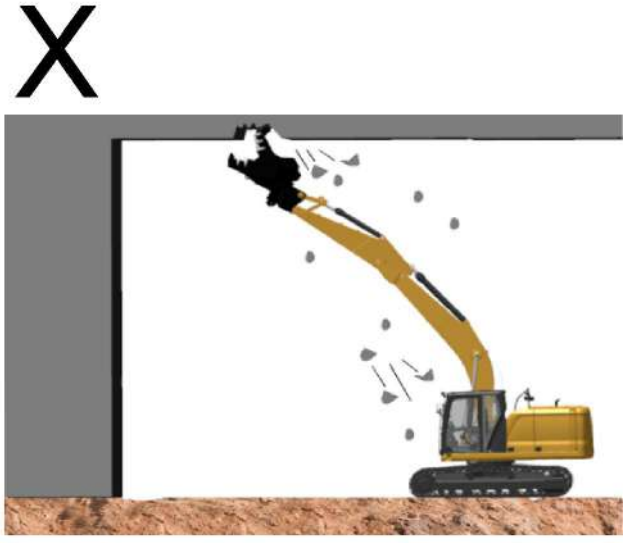


Illustration 406 g06222803

Crushing work above your head must be avoided because objects can fall and damage the machine.

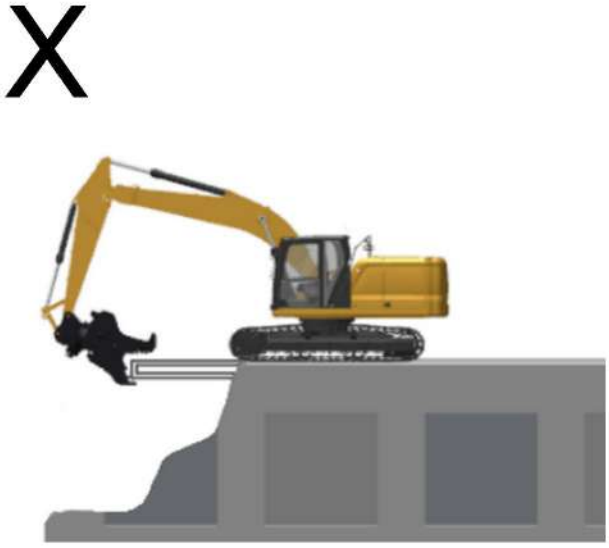


Illustration 407 g06222806

Do not perform demolition work at the base of the machine, because the ground could be unstable and cause the machine to fall.

Illustration 408 g06222809

Do not suddenly lower or stop the work tool, otherwise the excavator could turn over.

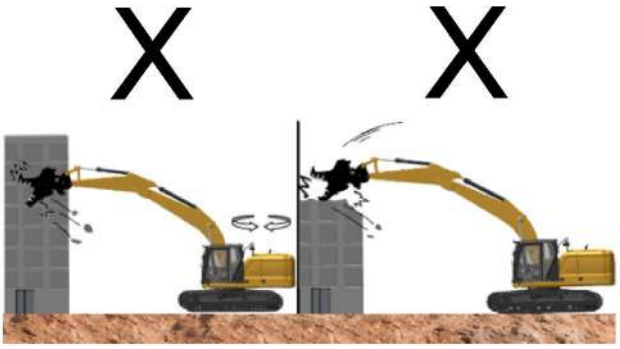


Illustration 409 g06222813

Crushing work using impact, swing, or dropping forces of the excavator could cause damages to the machine and also could lead to personal injury. As such, NEVER perform such an operation.

Illustration 411 g06222821

When performing work at elevated positions, always use care for the surroundings as well as for falling objects to avoid personal injury. Use guide personnel and signs as required.

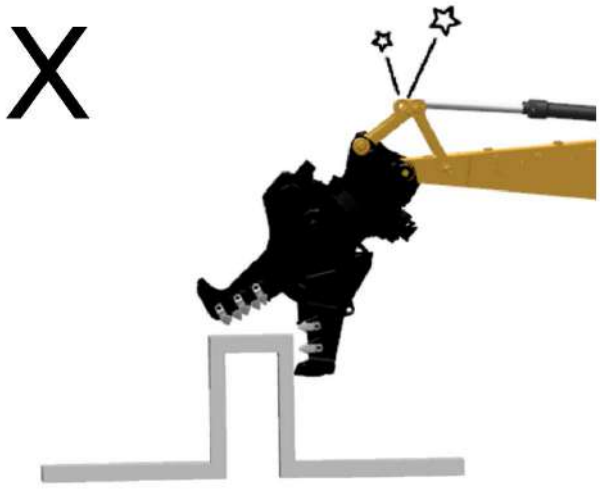


Illustration 410 g06222817

Crushing work with hydraulic cylinder at stroke end position could damage the excavator, resulting in shortening of lifespan. Also, as it could lead to unexpected personal injury due to breakage of the machine, do not perform any work at stroke end.

Illustration 412 g06222829

When working sideways, the track can lift. Avoid abrupt operation and operate slowly.

Illustration 413 g06222831

Crushers could interfere with the boom and the cab depending on the type and method of usage. Know the working range of the crusher being used.

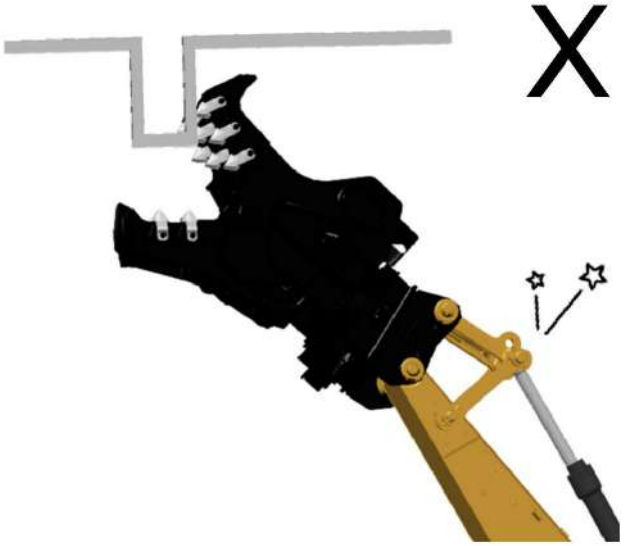


Illustration 414 g06222833

If the tooth of the crusher engages an object at a slant, excessive forces could be applied to the front regions. As such move the crusher to the front.

Illustration 415 g06222836

Never extend the boom cylinder suddenly. Sudden extension of the boom could cause tip backwards.

Illustration 416 g06222831

Sudden extension of the bucket cylinder, or sudden extension of the stick cylinder could cause damages at the stroke end position, resulting in personal injury. Operations that cause sudden extension of the cylinders is PROHIBITED!

Parking

i07868085

Stopping the Machine

SMCS Code: 7000

WARNING

Leaving the machine unattended when the engine is running may result in personal injury or death. Before leaving the machine operator station, neutralize the travel controls, lower the work tools to the ground and deactivate all work tools, and place the lever for the hydraulic lockout control in the LOCKED position.

Note: There may be regulations that define the requirements for the operator and/or support personnel to be present when the engine is running.

Park on a level surface. If the machine must be parked on a grade, chock the tracks securely.

Note: The swing parking brake is automatically applied when the machine is stopped. The swing parking brake is released when the engine is running and the joystick is activated.

1. Turn the engine speed dial counterclockwise to reduce engine speed.

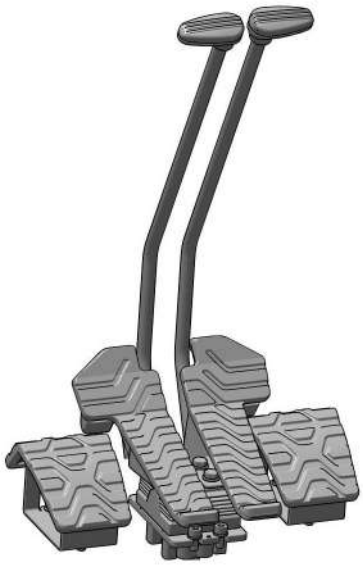


Illustration 417 g06181402

2. Release the travel levers/pedals to stop the machine.
3. Lower the work tool to the ground. Apply a slight downward pressure.
4. Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position.

i07088536

Freezing Conditions

SMCS Code: 7000

If freezing temperatures are expected, remove the mud and the dirt from each track roller frame. Park the machine on wood planks. Use the following procedure to clean each track roller frame.

Illustration 418 g06188791

1. Position the boom over one side of the machine.
2. Use boom down pressure to lift the track on one side off the ground. Operate the track in the forward direction. Then operate the track in reverse. Continue this procedure until the maximum amount of material is thrown off the track.
3. Lower the track onto the wood planks.
4. Repeat the procedure for the other track.
5. Clean the area around the carrier rollers and around the track rollers.
6. Lower the work tool onto a wood plank to prevent the work tool from touching the ground.

i07915139

Stopping the Engine

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

NOTICE
Stopping the engine immediately after it has been working under load can result in overheating and accelerated wear of engine components.

Refer to the following procedure to allow the engine to cool and to prevent excessive temperatures in the turbocharger housing, which could cause oil coking problems.

NOTICE
Never turn the battery disconnect switch to the OFF position while the engine is running. Serious damage to the electrical system may result.

1. Park the machine on level ground. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Stopping the Machine” for the recommended procedure.
2. While the machine is stopped, run the engine for 5 minutes at low idle. Idling the engine allows hot areas of the engine to cool gradually.
3. Turn the engine start ring to the OFF position or press button to stop the engine.

Note: If the “Regen Active” indicator is illuminated, do not shut off the engine. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Monitoring System” for more information on indicators.

Engine Shutdown Switch

NOTICE
Perform a walk around inspection after actuation of a shutdown device.

Take necessary corrective action to resolve the cause of the shutdown.

Ensure that no additional damage has been done or could occur before returning to operation.

Turn the engine start ring to the OFF position or press button to stop the engine. If the engine does not stop, perform the following procedure.

Note: Always use the engine start switch to stop the engine. Use the secondary engine stop control as an alternate method to stop the engine if the start switch fails.

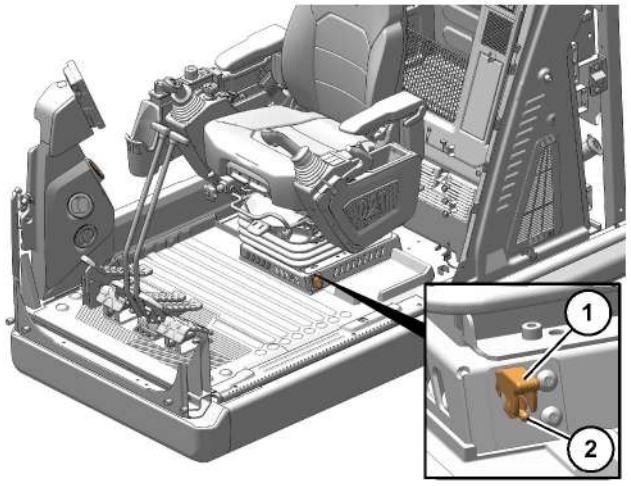


Illustration 419 g06181487

1. The switch is located below the left side of the operator seat.
2. Lift cover (1).
3. Push switch (2) upward. This should stop the engine and prevent the engine from being started again.
4. Return the switch to the original position. The engine will be enabled to start.

Note: Do not operate the machine again until the malfunction has been corrected.

5. Use the method that follows if the previous steps do not stop the engine.

Stop the Engine if an Electrical Malfunction Occurs

Turn the engine start switch to the OFF position. If the engine does not stop, perform the following procedure.

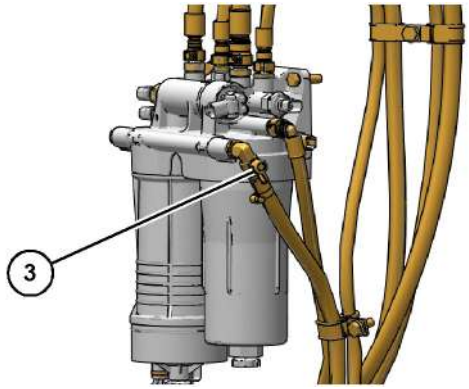


Illustration 420 g06209639

The fuel shutoff valve is on the fuel system water separator.

Shut off the fuel supply by turning the fuel shutoff valve (3) clockwise. The engine will stop after consuming the fuel in the fuel line. The engine may continue to run for a few minutes.

Repair the engine before you restart the engine. The fuel system may need to be primed. See Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Fuel System - Prime” for instructions.

i07103299

Leaving the Machine

SMCS Code: 7000

Illustration 421 g06224270

1. Use the steps and the hand holds when you dismount. When you dismount, face the machine and use both hands.
2. Inspect the engine compartment for debris. Clean out any debris to avoid a fire hazard.
3. Remove all flammable debris from the front bottom guard through the access doors to reduce a fire hazard. Discard the debris properly.
4. Always turn the battery disconnect switch to the OFF position before leaving the machine.
5. If the machine will not be operated for a month or more, remove the battery disconnect switch key.
6. Lock all compartments and all vandalism covers (if equipped).

i07735116

Machine Storage and Specified Storage Period

SMCS Code: 7000

Machine Storage

The Safety Section of this Operation and Maintenance Manual contains storage information for fuels, lubricants, and ether (if equipped).

The Operation Section of this Operation and Maintenance Manual contains information for short-term storage of this machine, including engine shutdown, parking, and instructions for leaving the machine.

For detailed steps on long-term storage refer to Special Instruction, SEHS9031, “Storage Procedure for Caterpillar Products”.

Specified Storage Period

The specified storage period of this machine is 1 year.

After the specified storage period has expired, consult your Cat dealer for inspect, repair, rebuild, install remanufactured, or install new components, and disposal options, and to establish a new specified storage period.

If a decision is made to remove the machine from service, refer to Decommissioning and Disposal for further information.

Transportation Information

i09916925

Shipping the Machine

SMCS Code: 7000; 7500

WARNING

Automatic Engine Speed Control (AEC) will increase engine speed automatically when you operate the control levers and/or travel pedals with AEC switch on.

When loading and unloading the machine from the truck or working in close quarters always turn AEC switch off to prevent any possibility of sudden movement of machine, which could result in serious injury or death.

Set the travel speed control switch to LOW before loading the machine. Never operate this switch when loading the machine on a trailer.

Investigate the travel route for overpass clearances. Make sure that there will be adequate clearance for the machine.

Remove ice, snow, or other slippery material from the loading dock and from the truck bed before you load the machine onto the transport machine. Removing ice, snow, or other slippery material will help to prevent the machine from slipping in transit.

Note: Obey all laws that govern the characteristics of a load (height, weight, width, and length). Observe all regulations that govern wide loads. Certain regions may require the removal of door hooks and cab bumpers, if equipped. Consult all local and regional regulations

Choose the flattest ground when you load the machine or when you unload the machine.

1. Before you load the machine, chock the trailer wheels or the rail car wheels.

2. When you use loading ramps, make sure that the loading ramps have adequate length, adequate width, adequate strength, and an adequate slope.

3. Maintain the slope of the loading ramps within 15 degrees of the ground.

4. Position the machine so that the machine can drive straight up the loading ramps. The final drives should be toward the rear of the machine. Do not operate the control levers while the machine is on the loading ramps.

5. When you drive over the loading ramp joint areas, maintain the balance point of the machine.

6. Lower the work tool to the bed or to the floor of the transport machine.

Note: Put appropriate shock-absorbing material between Cylinder/Cylinder guard and floor if there is potential risk to damage during transportation.

7. To prevent rolling of the machine or sudden movement of the machine, perform the following items:

- Chock both tracks.
- Install sufficient tie-downs at several locations.
- Fasten wire cables.

8. If equipped, remove door hooks, cab bumpers, and fuel tank step as necessary. Refer to local regulations.

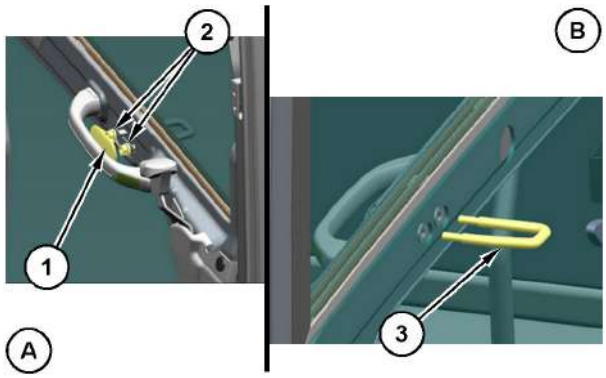


Illustration 422 g06516462

Typical example of door hook

(A) Inside
(B) Outside
(1) Cover
(2) Nuts
(3) Door Hook

a. Remove cover (1) and nuts (2) to remove door hook (3).

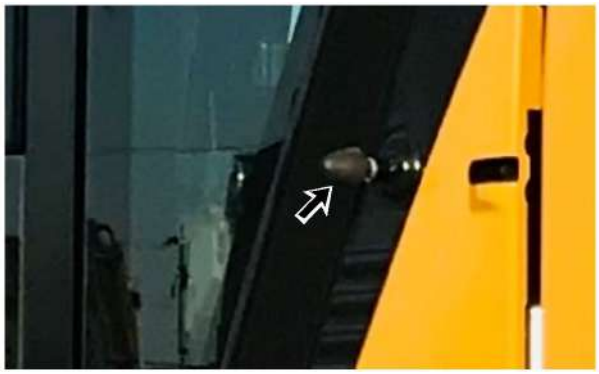


Illustration 423 g06516469
Typical example of cab bumper

b. Remove any bumpers on your cab.

NOTICE
Do not allow the chrome surface of the bucket cylinder rod to touch any part of the trailer. Damage to the rod can occur from impact with the trailer during transport.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Specifications”.

Shipping a Machine that is not Completely Assembled

If the machine must be shipped when the boom, stick, or counterweight is not assembled on the machine, follow the instructions in Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Operation”. If the boom and stick are not installed, do not install the counterweight or use the swing function for safe shipping.

⚠ WARNING

The ROPS structural certification depends on the support of the boom, stick, and counterweight in the event of a machine tip over or a machine roll-over incident.

When the machine needs to be moved without the boom, stick, or counterweight being installed, avoid any machine operations which could affect machine stability as a machine tip over or a machine rollover incident could result in serious injury or death.

The machine should be operated slowly on flat, stable ground or pavement by qualified operators.

i07539618

Securing the Machine

SMCS Code: 7000

⚠ WARNING

Do not transport the machine if there is a malfunction of the swing parking brake system.

The machine may swing during transportation if the swing parking brake system is not functioning properly which could result in injury or death.

Contact your Cat dealer for service.

Comply with any laws that govern the characteristics of a load (length, width, height, and weight).

1. Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position.
2. Turn the engine start ring to the OFF position or press button to stop engine.
3. Turn the battery disconnect switch to OFF and remove the disconnect switch key.
4. Remove the ether starting aid cylinder. See Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Ether Starting Aid Cylinder - Replace” for the removal procedure.
5. Lock the door and the access covers. Attach any vandalism protection.

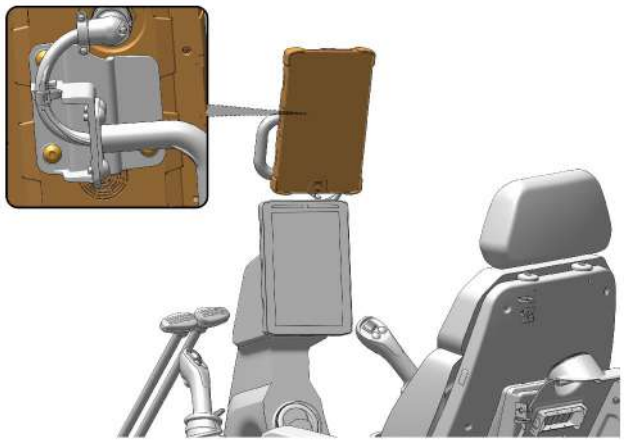


Illustration 424 g06181075

Note: Caterpillar strongly recommends removing the Cat Grade Control monitor (if equipped) before transporting the machine to protect the monitor from damage or theft.

6. Disconnect the wiring harness from the Cat Grade Control monitor. Remove the three screws that secure the monitor to the mounting bracket and remove the monitor. Remove the monitor from the cab and store in the monitor carrying case.

7. Cover the exhaust opening.

NOTICE
Do not allow the turbocharger to rotate while the engine is not operating. Damage to the turbocharger can result.

Note: Before you unload the excavator from the transport machine, remove the protective covering from the exhaust opening.

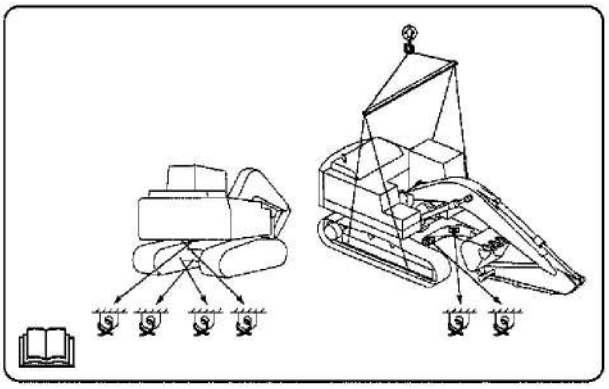


Illustration 425 g06289667

8. Chock the tracks and secure the machine with tie-downs. Make sure that you use the proper rated wire cable.

Use the front towing eyes on the lower frame, the rear towing eyes on the lower frame, and the rear towing eye that is on the upper frame.

Securely fasten all loose parts and all removed parts to the trailer or to the rail car.

When the engine is stopped, the swing parking brake is automatically applied. The swing brake prevents the upper structure from rotating.

NOTICE
In freezing weather, protect the cooling system with antifreeze, to the lowest outside expected temperature on the travel route. Or, drain the cooling system completely.

i06241206

Adjustable Gauge Undercarriage Frame

SMCS Code: 4150-VAR

WARNING

Before extending or retracting the track frames, be sure to keep all other people away from the machine.

Always use two or more people to do this work. Perform machine movements only after getting signals from a signal man.

The automatic engine speed control (AEC) switch must be in the OFF position and the travel speed switch must be in the LOW position.

Never make a sudden movement of the front equipment. When operating the front equipment, slowly activate the controls with extra care.

WARNING

Do not operate the machine if both track frames are retracted. Do not operate the machine if one track frame is retracted. The machine is unstable if either track frame is retracted. If either track frame is retracted, the machine could rollover, resulting in serious injury or death. If the machine is unstable, damage could occur to bolts connecting the car body and the track frames.

Fully extend the track frames when the machine is operated. Retract the track frames when the machine is unloaded. Retract the track frames when the machine is loaded.

Do not operate the machine if both track frames are retracted. Do not operate the machine if one track frame is retracted. The machine is unstable if either track frame is retracted.

NOTICE
Before starting adjustment of the track frames, clean the contacting areas of the car body and track frames, and their mounting bolts. Prior to installing the bolts, apply 9M-3710 Anti-Seize Compound to the underside of the head and to the threads of the bolts.

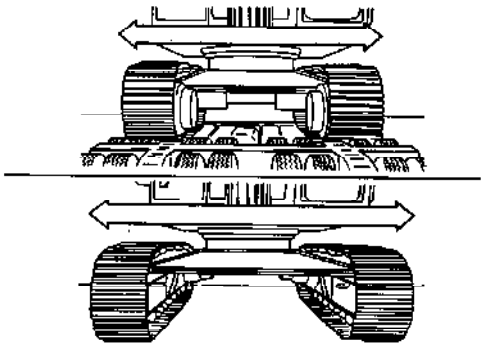


Illustration 426 g00285692

This machine has adjustable track frames that are held in place with bolts. Completely widen the track frames when the machine is being operated.

Retracting

Park the machine on a hard, level surface.

Retract the track frames one at a time.

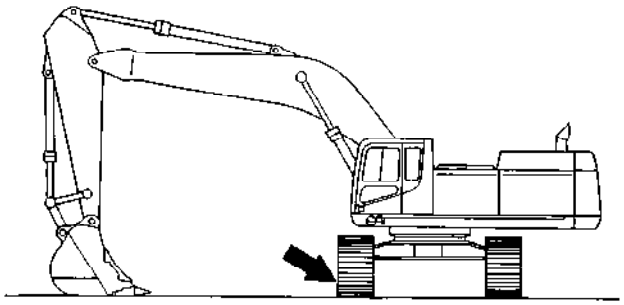


Illustration 427 g00581851

1. Position the machine with the front at a right angle to the track frame that is being retracted, as shown.
2. Stop the engine.

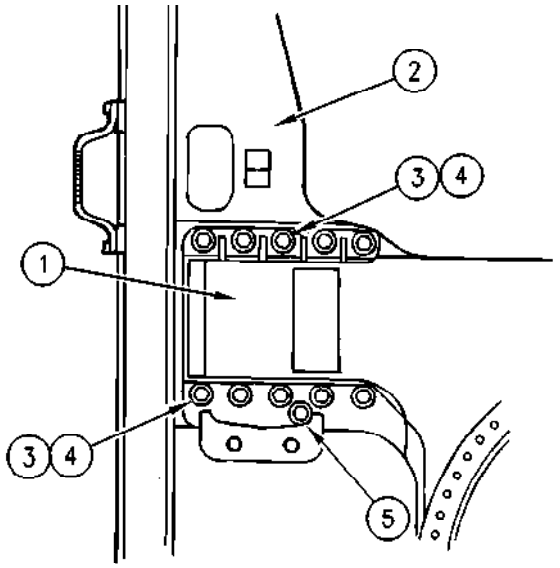


Illustration 428 g00697382

(1) Carbody
(2) Track frame
(3) Bolts
(4) Spacers
(5) Bolts

3. Remove 19 bolts (3) and 19 spacers (4). The bolts hold track frame (2) to carbody (1).

Note: When you move track frame (2) in order to retract the overall width, do not loosen two bolts (5) that are for the guide.

Note: Ten bolts (3) and spacers (4) are installed on the side with the idler. Nine bolts (3) and spacers (4) are installed on the side with the final drive .

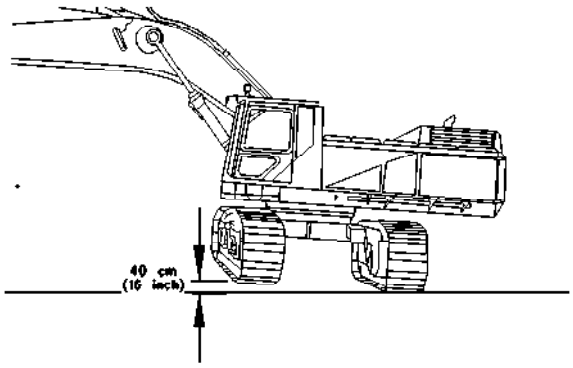


Illustration 429 g00697383

4. Start the engine. Apply downward pressure with the boom in order to raise the track approximately 40 cm (16 inch) above ground level.

5. Slowly run the raised track at a low idle. This will cause the raised track to slide toward the center of the machine. The full sliding distance should be 250 mm (10 inch).

6. After the raised track frame has been correctly retracted, lower the track frame to the ground.

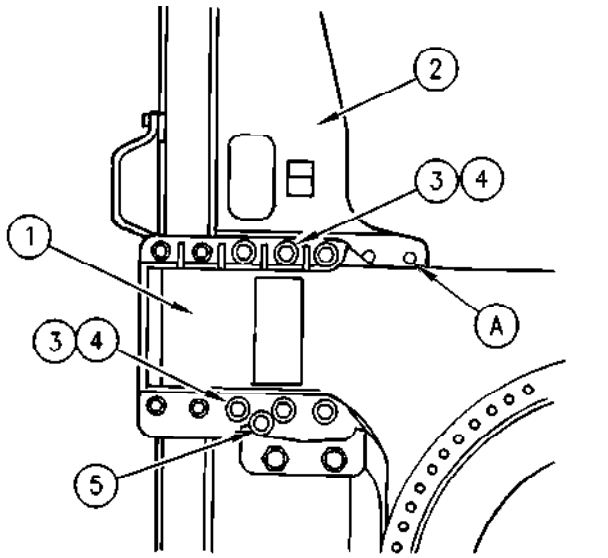


Illustration 430 g00697384

(1) Carbody
(2) Track frame
(3) Bolts
(4) Spacers
(5) Bolts

7. Align the bolt holes of carbody (1) and track frame (2). Install 11 bolts (3) and 11 spacers (4). If necessary, slowly operate the machine back and forth until the bolt holes are aligned. Tighten the bolts to a torque of 2800 ± 350 N·m (2065 ± 258 lb ft).

Note: To protect the bolt holes that are in the track frame from debris and mud, insert corks into 8 bolt holes (A).

8. Repeat Steps 1 through 7 for the other track frame.

Note: Store the 16 bolts (3) and 16 spacers (4) that were removed in this procedure in the tool box.

Extending

NOTICE
Damage to the car body guide on the track roller frame can result if the track is raised more than 60 mm (2.4 inch) off the ground, with the car body bolts removed.

Park the machine on a hard, level surface.

Extend the track frames one at a time.

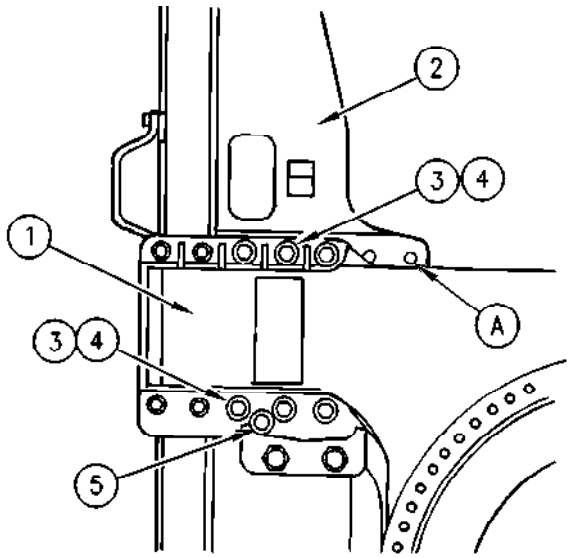


Illustration 431 g00697384

(1) Carbody
(2) Track frame
(3) Bolts
(4) Spacers
(5) Bolts

1. Remove the 8 corks that are in bolt holes (A).

2. Remove 11 bolts (3) and 11 spacers (4). The bolts hold track frame (2) to carbody (1).

Note: When you move track frame (2) in order to extend the overall width, do not loosen two bolts (5) that are for the guide.

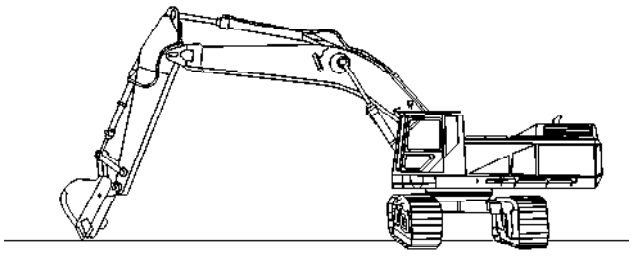


Illustration 432 g00286687

3. Position the boom over the opposite track frame with the stick at an approximate 80 degree angle to the ground. Place the bucket teeth into the ground, as shown. This machine position provides the best stability for extending the track frames.

4. Apply a downward pressure with the boom in order to slightly raise the track.

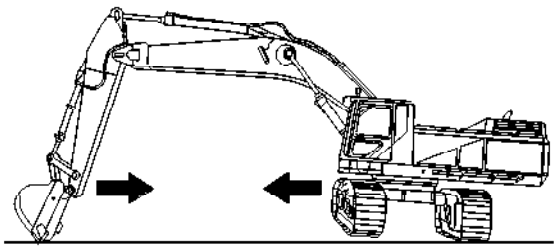


Illustration 433 g00286117

5. Use the STICK IN position to extend the track frame by moving the carbody away from the track.

6. After the track frame has been correctly extended, lower the raised track frame to the ground.

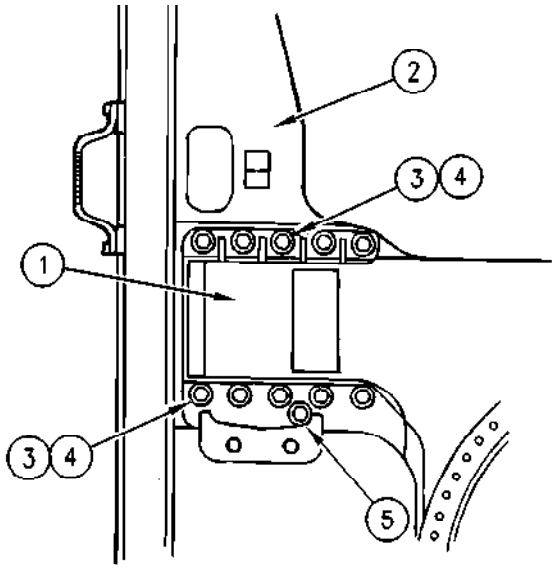


Illustration 434 g00697382

(1) Carbody
(2) Track frame
(3) Bolts
(4) Spacers
(5) Bolts

7. Align the bolt holes of carbody (1) and track frame (2). Install 19 bolts (3) and 19 spacers (4). If necessary, slowly operate the machine back and forth until the bolt holes are aligned. Tighten the bolts to a torque of 2800 ± 350 N·m (2065 ± 258 lb ft).

8. Repeat Steps 1 through 7 for the other track frame.

i09980794

Counterweight Removal and Installation

SMCS Code: 7056

WARNING

Unexpected machine movement can cause injury or death.

In order to avoid possible machine movement, move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position and attach a Special Instruction, SEHS7332, "Do Not Operate" or similar warning tag to the hydraulic lockout control.

WARNING

Personal injury or death can occur from a counterweight falling during removal or installation.

Do not allow personnel under or around the counterweight during removal or installation.

Make sure that the lifting device is in good condition and is capable of handling the weight of the counterweight.

WARNING

Personal injury or death can occur from a counterweight falling during removal or installation.

Before you remove the counterweight mounting bolts, read and understand the instructions and warnings in the Operation and Maintenance Manual.

WARNING

Make certain personnel are clear of cable when there is a load on it. Cable can break and cause personal injury.

WARNING

Personal injury or death can occur from a counterweight falling during removal or installation. Before you begin the Removal Procedure, make sure that the support blocks are installed and tightened properly.

WARNING

Crush Hazard. Read and Understand the Operation and Maintenance Manual before performing maintenance on equipment. Could cause serious injury or death.

WARNING

Unexpected machine damage and personal injury or death can occur from any machine operation without counterweight bolt tightened properly.

Make sure to tighten the counterweight mounting bolts when the counterweight is installed.

Machines Equipped without Counterweight Removal System

Counterweight Removal

Note: Before you remove the counterweight, disconnect the wirings for the rear view camera and work light (if equipped).

Prepare the machine for maintenance. Refer to "Prepare the Machine for Maintenance" for more information.

1. Position the machine on a surface that is hard and level. Lower the work tool to the ground.

2. Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Operator Controls".

Illustration 435 g06784241

3. Fasten a proper rated cable with shackles to the links. Use an appropriate lifting device to tension the cable.

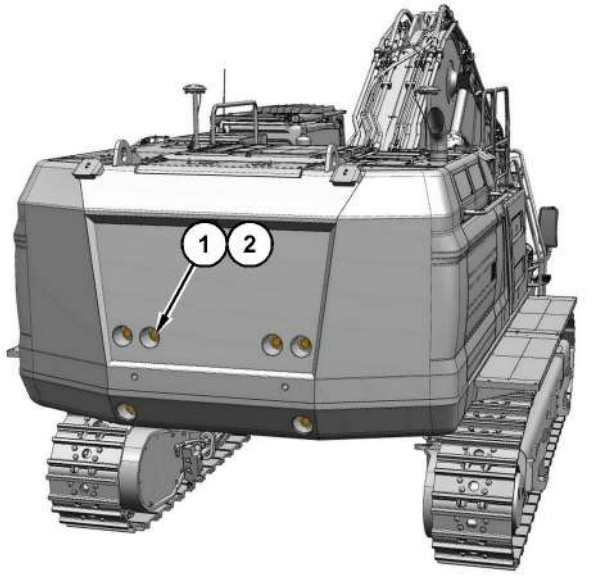


Illustration 436 g06791440

(1) Bolt
(2) Spacer

4. Remove six counterweight mounting bolts (1) and six spacers (2).

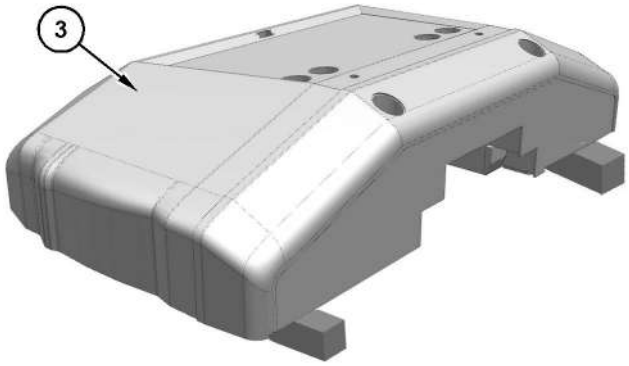


Illustration 437 g06784268

(3) Counterweight

5. Separate counterweight (3) from the machine. Lower counterweight (3) onto suitable supports as shown in Illustration 452 .

Counterweight Installation

Perform the installation procedure in reverse order.

Note: Apply anti-seize compound to the threads of the counterweight mounting bolts.

Note: Temporarily tighten the six counterweight mounting bolts (1). Decrease the tension on the lifting cable. Make sure that the counterweight is correctly positioned on the retaining plates. Tighten the bolts to a torque of 2800 ± 350 N·m (2065 ± 258 lb ft).

Note: After the counterweight has been installed, reconnect the wirings for the rear view camera and work light (if equipped).

Machines Equipped with Counterweight Removal System

WARNING

IMPROPER OPERATION OF THE COUNTERWEIGHT REMOVAL SYSTEM CAN RESULT IN SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH. DO NOT OPERATE THIS SYSTEM UNLESS YOU HAVE READ AND UNDERSTAND THE INSTRUCTIONS AND WARNINGS IN THE OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL.

WARNING

Before you remove the counterweight, check for signs of hydraulic oil leaking from the Counterweight Removal System. An oil leak may be a sign of a potential system failure and needs to be corrected before removing the counterweight mounting bolts. A hydraulic leak, along with other factors, can result in personal injury or death.

WARNING

Inadequate linkage cylinder pressure can cause the counterweight to lower quickly. This may result in personal injury or death.

Before removing bolts, make certain the lamp and system are working properly by following the established procedure.

Contact your Cat dealer for service.

WARNING

Personal injury can result from rotating and moving parts. Stay clear of all rotating and moving parts.

Never attempt adjustments while the machine is moving or the engine is running unless otherwise specified.

The machine must be parked on a level surface and the engine stopped.

Attach a “Do Not Operate” or similar warning tag to the start switch and controls before servicing, repairing, or making adjustments to the machine.

Counterweight Removal

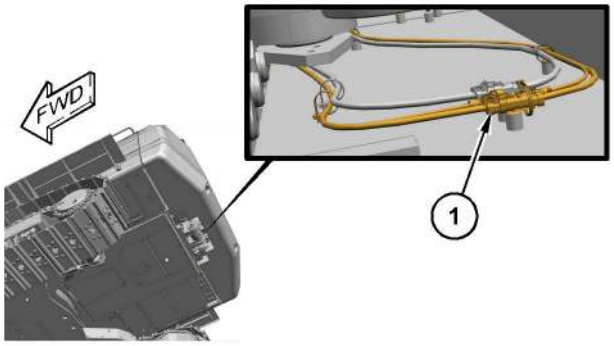


Illustration 438 g06784646

Bottom view

Some components removed for better clarity

(1) Rear view camera wiring

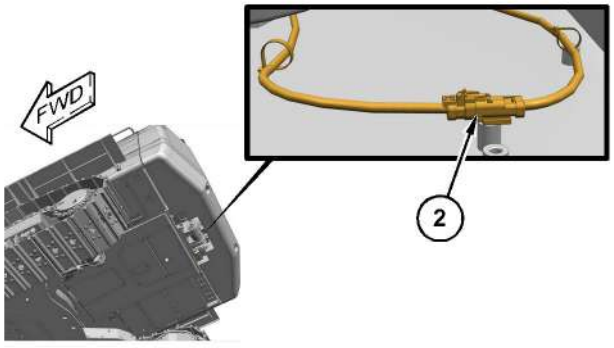


Illustration 439 g06784647

Bottom view

Some components removed for better clarity

(2) Work light wiring

Note: Before you remove the counterweight, disconnect rear view camera wiring (1) and work light wiring (2).

1. Position the machine on a surface that is hard and level.
2. Position the upper structure parallel to the tracks. Lower the work tool to the ground.
3. Set engine speed dial to “1” . Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Operator Controls”.
4. Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Operator Controls”.

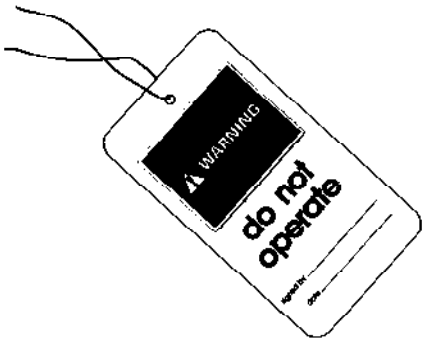


Illustration 440 g00104545

5. Attach a “Do Not Operate” warning tag or a similar warning tag to the start switch or to the controls.

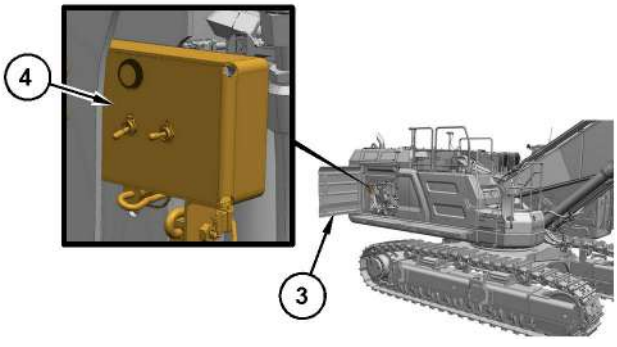


Illustration 441 g06784653

(3) Rear access door
(4) Switch box

6. Open rear access door (3) on the right side of the machine. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Access Door and Cover Locations”.

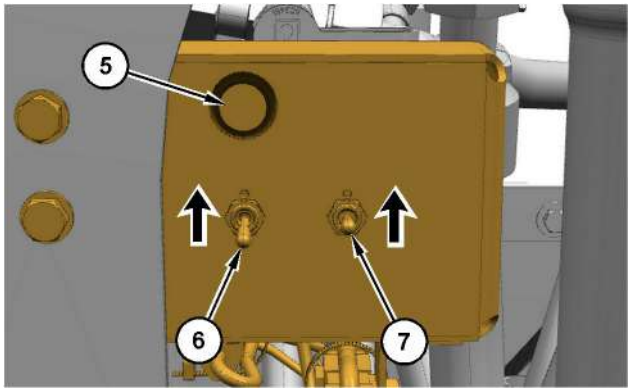


Illustration 442 g06784656

Switch box (4)

(5) Lamp
(6) Main switch
(7) Up/down switch

7. To ensure lamp (5) is working properly, move main switch (6) to the ON position and verify lamp (5) illuminates for 1 second before it turns off.

8. To ensure the system is working properly, hold UP on the up/down switch (7) until lamp (5) starts to flash.

Note: Consult your Cat ® dealer if lamp (5) does not start to flash as the system may not work properly which could result in personal injury.

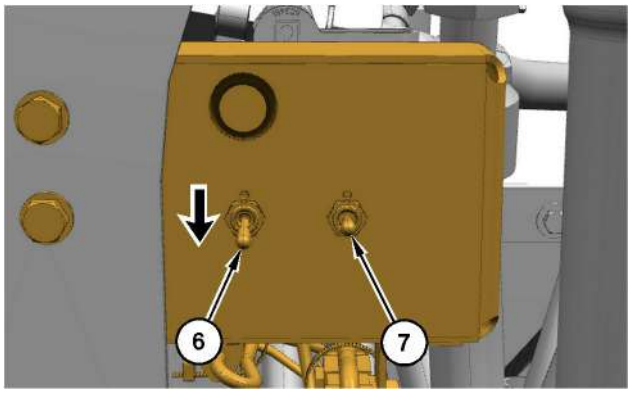


Illustration 443 g06784667

(6) Main switch
(7) Up/down switch

9. Move main switch (6) to the OFF position.

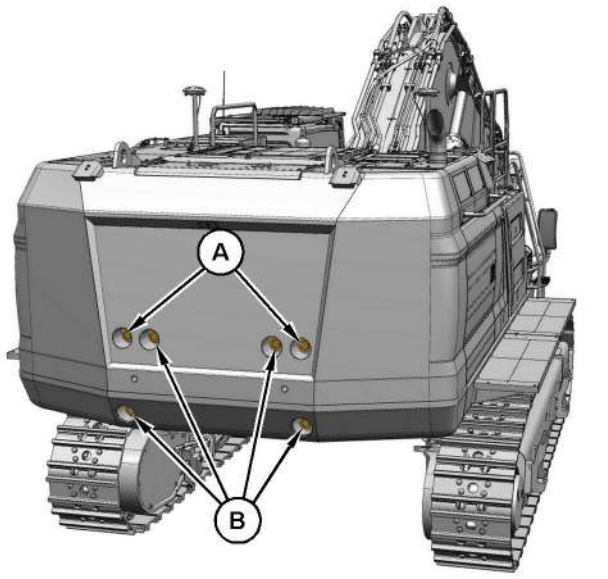


Illustration 444 g06784669

(A) Bolt
(B) Bolt

10. Remove bolts (A) from the counterweight.

11. Reinstall bolts (A) and tighten by hand until the bolts are fully engaged.

Note: Do not use tools to reinstall bolts (A).

12. Loosen bolts (A) two full revolutions.

Note: Do not remove bolts (A) from the counterweight.

13. Remove remaining bolts (B).

14. Remove bolts (A) by hand **.**

Note: Do not use tools to remove bolts (A).

Note: If unable to remove bolts (A) by hand, the counterweight removal system may not be appropriately supporting the weight of the counterweight. Adjustment of the linkage, or additional support, may be required to safely remove the final two bolts.

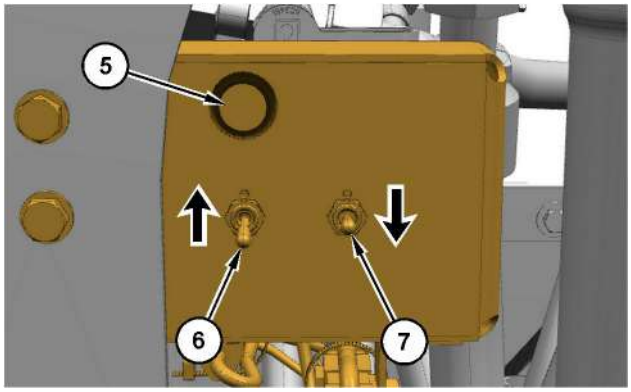


Illustration 445 g06784670

(5) Lamp
(6) Main switch
(7) Up/down switch

15. Move main switch (6) to the ON position.

16. Use up/down switch (7) to lower counterweight onto supports on the ground.

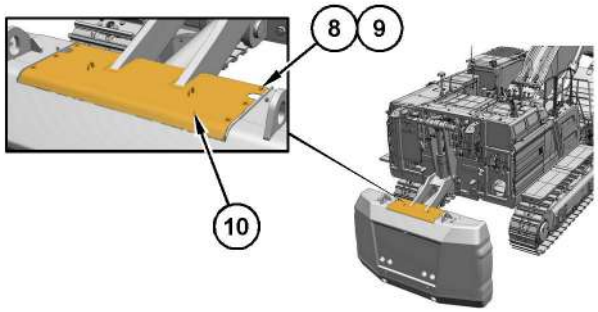


Illustration 446 g06784671

(8) Bolt
(9) Washer
(10) Cover

17. Remove six bolts (8) and six washers (9). Remove cover (10) after the counterweight is lowered onto supports on the ground.

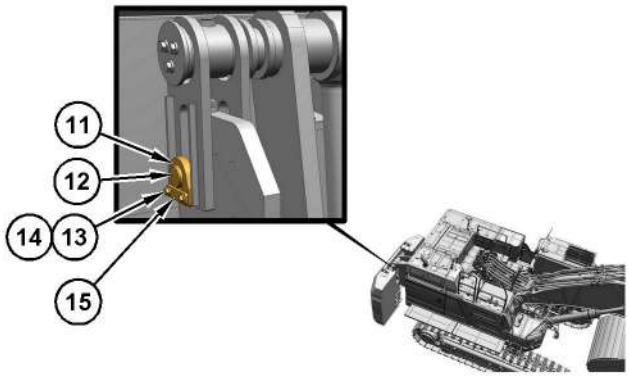


Illustration 447 g06784869

(11) Plate
(12) Pin
(13) Bolt
(14) Washer
(15) Plate

18. Remove two bolts (13) and two washers (14). Remove plate (15) and then remove plate (11).

Repeat this step for other side.

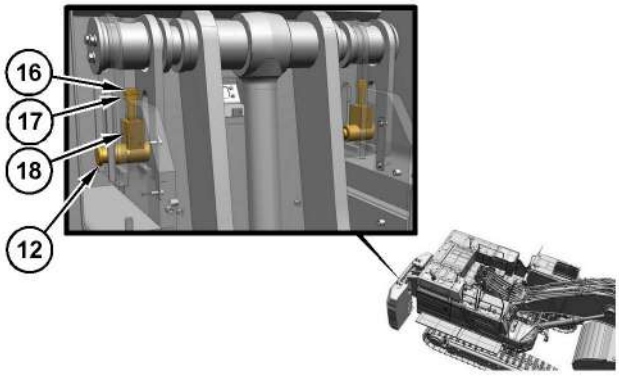


Illustration 448 g06785999

Some components removed for better clarity

(12) Pin
(16) Bolt
(17) Spacer
(18) Block

19. Loosen bolt (16) and spacer (17). Unbolt the two pins (12), and remove them from block (18).

Repeat this step for other side.

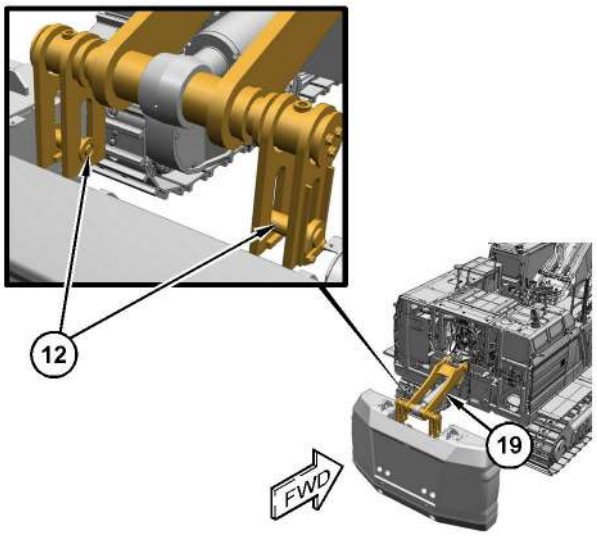


Illustration 449 g06784870

(12) Pin
(19) Linkage

20. Lift linkage (19) up a little and move two pins (12) back to linkage (20).

Install the components which were removed in Step 18 and Step 19.

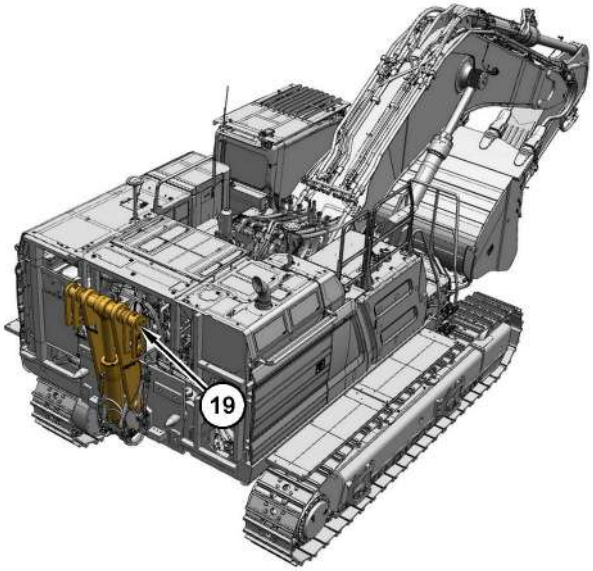


Illustration 450 g06784871

(19) Linkage

21. Move linkage (19) back to the machine.

Illustration 451 g06784878

22. Fasten a proper rated cable with shackles to the lifting eyes on the counterweight.

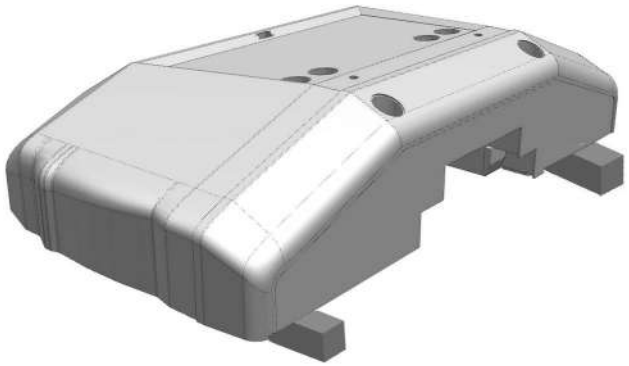


Illustration 452 g06784994

23. Use an appropriate lifting device to put the counterweight on suitable supports.

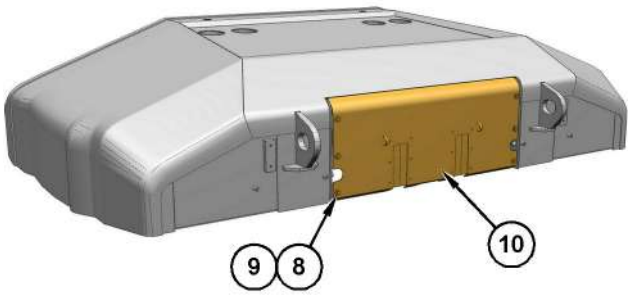


Illustration 453 g06791444

(8) Bolt
(9) Washer
(10) Cover

24. Tighten six bolts (8) and install six washers (9). Install counterweight cover (10) back.

Counterweight Installation

1. Position the machine on a surface that is hard and level.

2. Position the upper structure parallel to the tracks. Lower the work tool to the ground.

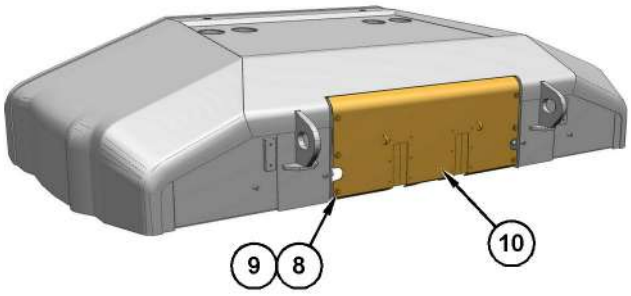


Illustration 454 g06791444

(8) Bolt
(9) Washer
(10) Cover

3. Remove six bolts (8) and six washers (9). Remove the counterweight cover (10).

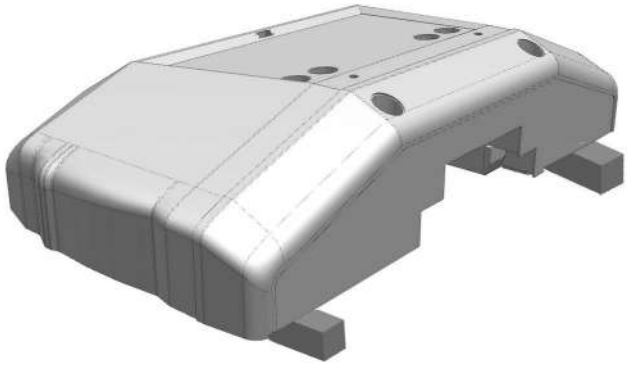


Illustration 455 g06784994

4. Use an appropriate lifting device to lift the counterweight from supports.

Illustration 456 g06784878

5. Fasten a proper rated cable with shackles to the lifting eyes on the counterweight and bring it near the machine.

6. Start the machine and set engine speed dial to “1” . Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Engine Starting”.

7. Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Operator Controls”.

Illustration 457 g00104545

8. Attach a “Do Not Operate” warning tag or a similar warning tag to the start switch or to the controls.

9. Open the rear access door on the right side of the machine. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Access Door and Cover Locations”.

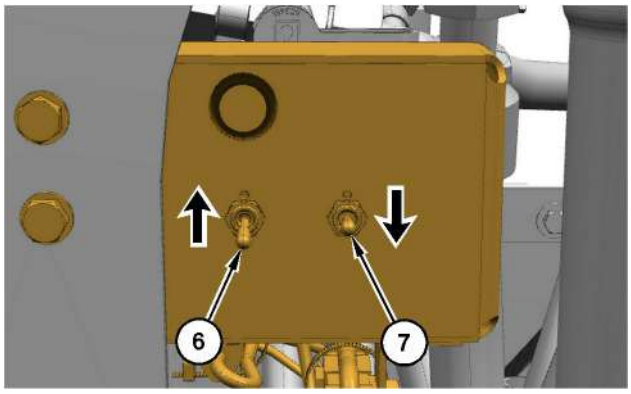


Illustration 458 g06787020

(6) Main switch
(7) Up/down switch

10. Move main switch (6) to the ON position.

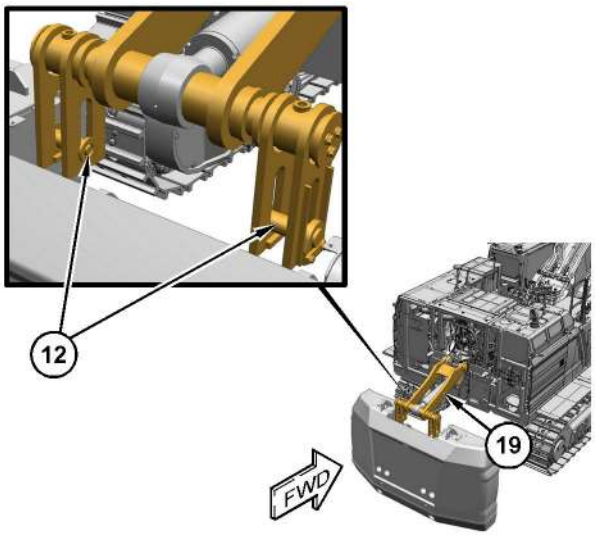


Illustration 459 g06784870

(12) Pin
(19) Linkage

11. Bring down linkage (19) and remove the two pins (12) from linkage (19).

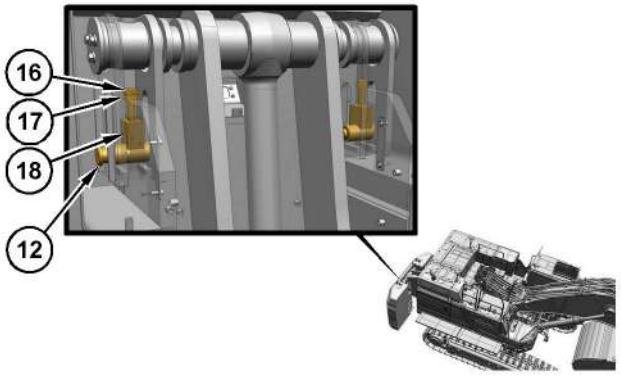


Illustration 460 g06785999

Some components removed for better clarity

(12) Pin
(16) Bolt
(17) Spacer
(18) Block

12. Install bolt (16) and spacer (17). Insert pin (12) into block (18).

Repeat this step for other side.

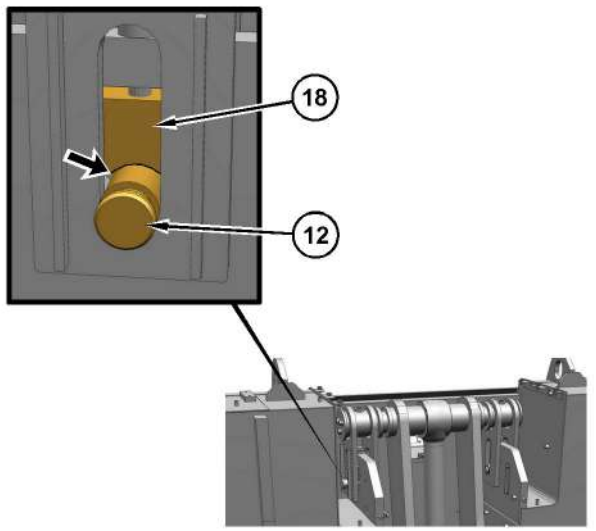


Illustration 461 g06786619

Some components removed for better clarity

(12) Pin
(18) Block

13. Set the linkage plate at the groove of the sleeve.

Repeat this step for other side.

14. Put pin (12) through slot holes of the linkage plates and counterweight pin plate and under the block (18).

Repeat this step for other side.

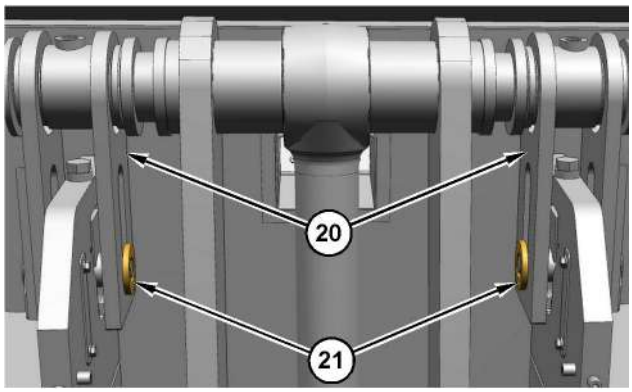


Illustration 462 g06786624

(20) Linkage plate
(21) Plate

15. Insert plate (21) between the bar of linkage plate (20).

Repeat this step for other side.

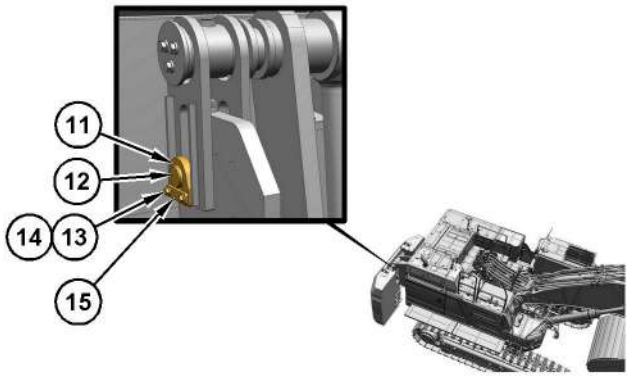


Illustration 463 g06784869

(11) Plate
(12) Pin
(13) Bolt
(14) Washer
(15) Plate

16. Install plate (11) as shown in above Illustration. Position plate (15) on plate (11) and install two bolts (13) and two washers (14). Tighten bolt (13) to a torque of 100 N·m (74 lb ft).

Repeat this Step for other side.

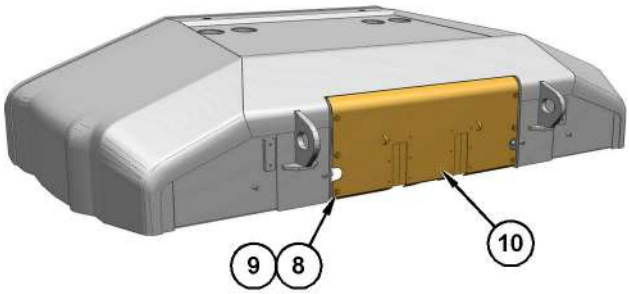


Illustration 464 g06791444

(8) Bolt
(9) Washer
(10) Cover

17. Tighten six bolts (8) and install six washers (9). Install counterweight cover (10) back.

18. Use up/down switch (7) to lift the linkage along with counterweight.

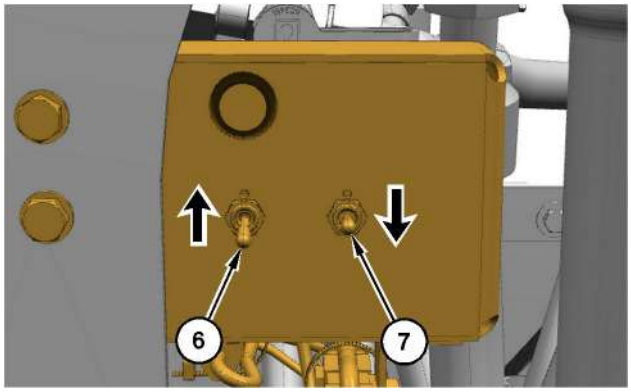


Illustration 465 g06787020

(6) Main switch
(7) Up/down switch

19. Move main switch (6) to the OFF position before tightening the counterweight mounting bolts.

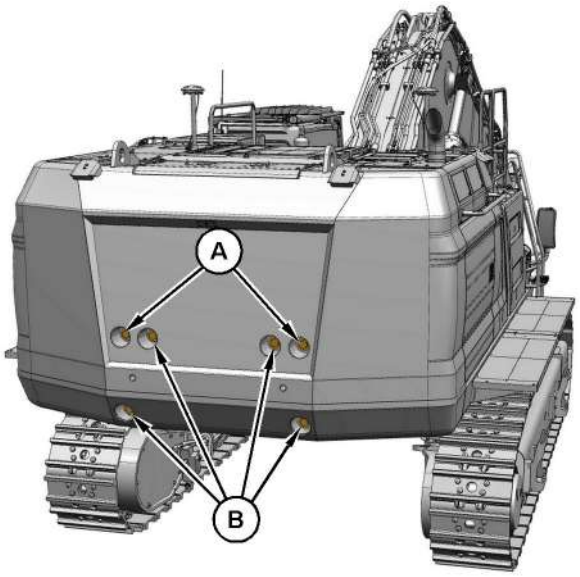


Illustration 466 g06784669

(A) Bolt
(B) Bolt

20. Coat the threads of the counterweight mounting bolts (A) and (B) with appropriate anti seize compound.

Tighten the counterweight mounting bolts (A) and (B) to a torque of 2800 ± 350 N·m (2065 ± 258 lb ft).

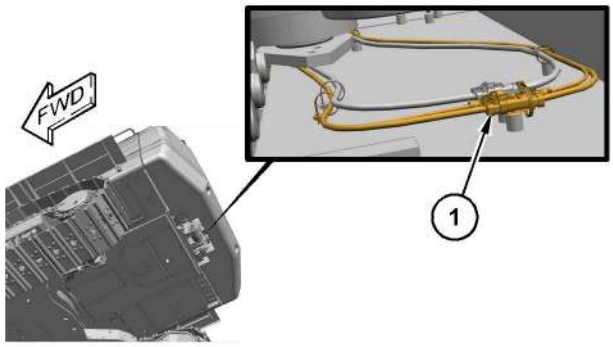


Illustration 467 g06784646

Bottom view
Some components removed for better clarity

(1) Rear view camera wiring

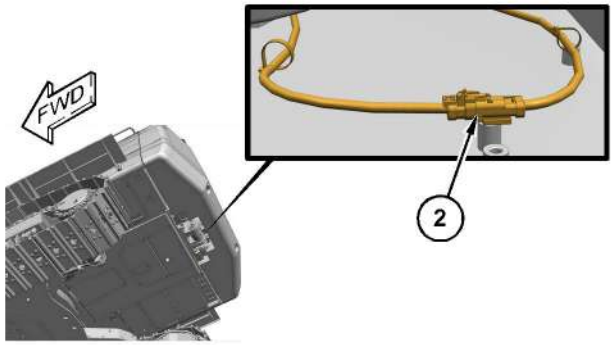


Illustration 468 g06784647

Bottom view
Some components removed for better clarity

(2) Work light wiring

Note: After the counterweight has been installed, reconnect rear view camera wiring (1) and work light wiring (2).

Adjust Position of Counterweight

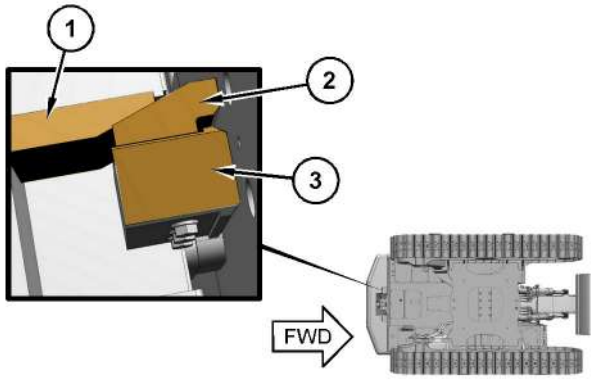


Illustration 469 g06787628

(1) Counterweight
(2) Upper frame plate
(3) Block

1. Check the contact status between counterweight (1) and upper frame plate (2) and readjust block (3) position to eliminate clearance when counterweight is installed again.
2. After adjusting block (3), check the alignment of the bolt holes between counterweight (1) and upper frame plate (2) from counterweight rear side. If there is a gap between counterweight (1) holes and upper frame plate (2) thread holes, let down Counterweight and readjust block (3) position.

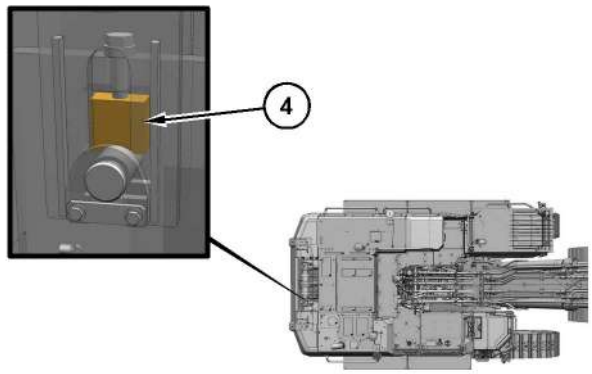


Illustration 470 g06787215

(4) Block

Counterweight is moved up by turning block (4) clockwise

Counterweight Is moved down by turning block (4) counterclockwise.

Release Linkage Cylinder Load

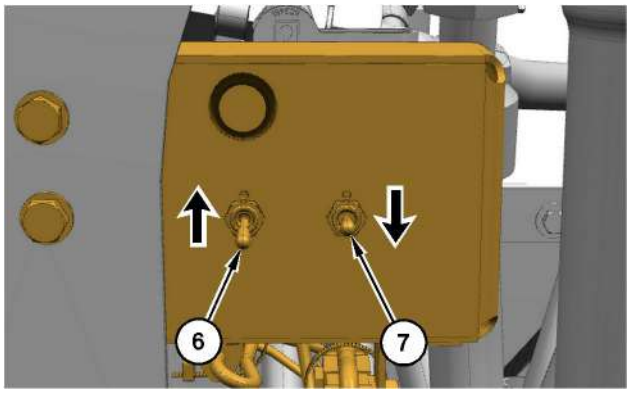


Illustration 471 g06787020

(6) Main switch
(7) Up/down switch

Move main switch (6) to the ON position. Press down on up/down switch (7) for less than 1 second to release cylinder load from the linkage support.

i09560186

Lifting and Tying Down the Machine

SMCS Code: 7000; 7500

WARNING

Improper lifting and tie-down techniques can allow the load to shift or fail resulting in personal injury or property damage. Use only properly rated cables and slings with lift and tie down points provided on the machine. Keep the deck of the transport vehicle clean and use anti-slip mats on steel decks.

Follow the instructions in Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Lifting and Tying Down the Machine” for the proper technique for securing the machine. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Specifications” for specific weight information.

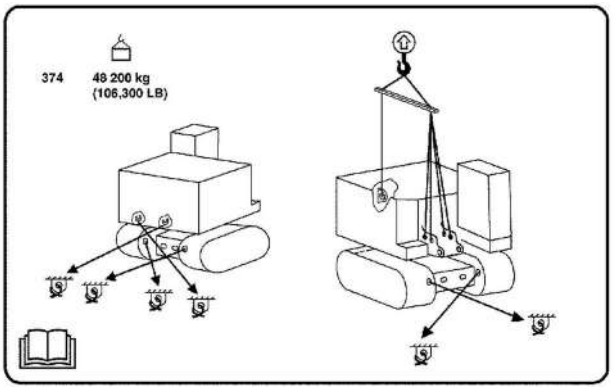


Illustration 472 g07578956

The lift and tie-down film is located near the base of the boom.

Lifting the machine

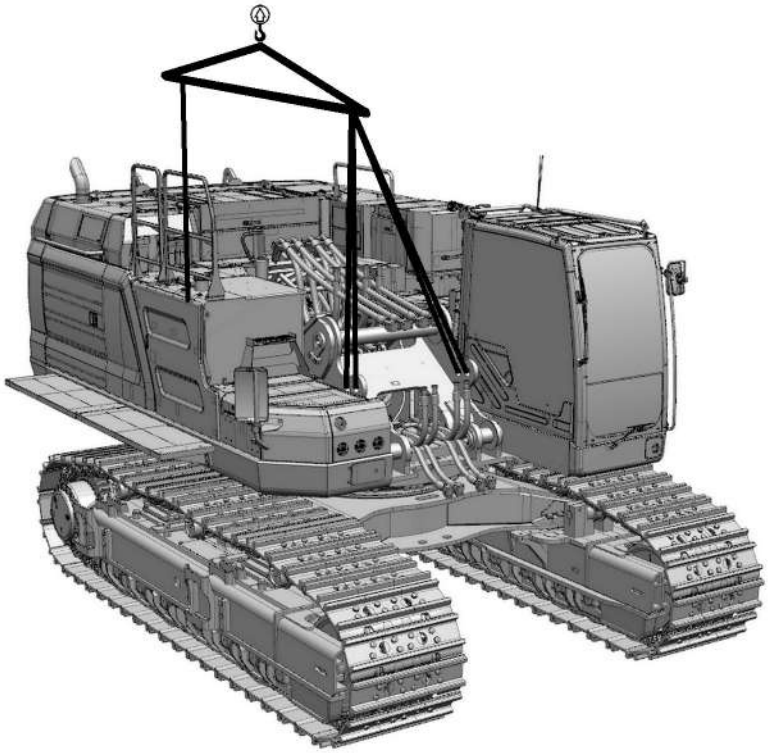


Illustration 473 g07578940

The machine center of gravity is at the center of the swing gear.

Lifting Point – To lift the machine, attach the lifting devices to the lifting points.

The weight and the instructions that are given herein describe the machine as the machine is manufactured by Caterpillar.

Refer to “Specifications“ for specific weight information.

Note: Only lift objects from approved lifting points and with approved lifting devices

1. Use proper rated cables and slings for lifting. The crane should be positioned so that the machine is lifted parallel to the ground.

2. To prevent contact with the machine, lifting cables should have sufficient length.

3. Remove counterweight, front implements, and engine hood.

4. Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position. Refer to“Operator Controls“ for more information.

5. Thread the cable between the first and second rollers at each end of the track.

6. Apply the proper protector to prevent machine/wire damage and slippage. Make sure that the rollers are not affected by the load.

Tying Down the Machine

Note: Obey all local and regional governmental regulations.

Diagonal Lashing

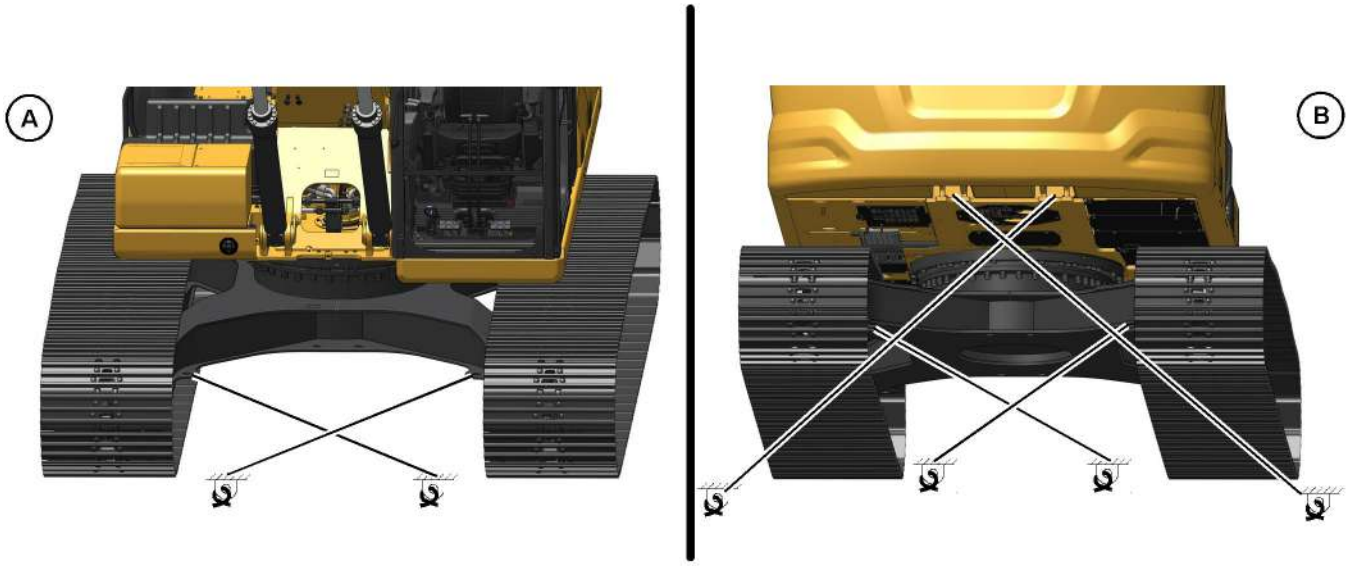


Illustration 474 g06320399

(A) Front of the machine (B) Rear of the machine

There are two methods that can be used to tie down a machine. Local and/or regional regulations will determine which method to use.

- Tying with undercarriage - Applicable for all machines
- Tying with upper frame (if required) - Applicable only for some machines or configurations

Tying Down the Machine

Tie Down Point – To tie down the machine, attach the tie-downs to the tie-down points.

The weight and the instructions that are given herein describe the machine as the machine is manufactured by Caterpillar.

Refer to “Specifications“ for specific weight information.

1. Use proper rated cables and shackles for tying down the machine.
2. Use the rear eyes and the front eyes that are provided on the lower frame to fasten tie-downs. Use corner protectors for sharp corners.
3. Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position.
4. Set the lashing angle, which is on the longitudinal axis of the machine and the cable, at 30 to 50 degrees.
5. Keep the transport vehicle surface clean (for example, trailer deck).
6. For steel deck transport vehicles use skid-inhibiting or anti-slip mats (for example, rubber mats) with a friction coefficient of at least 0.3.

Tying Down Force

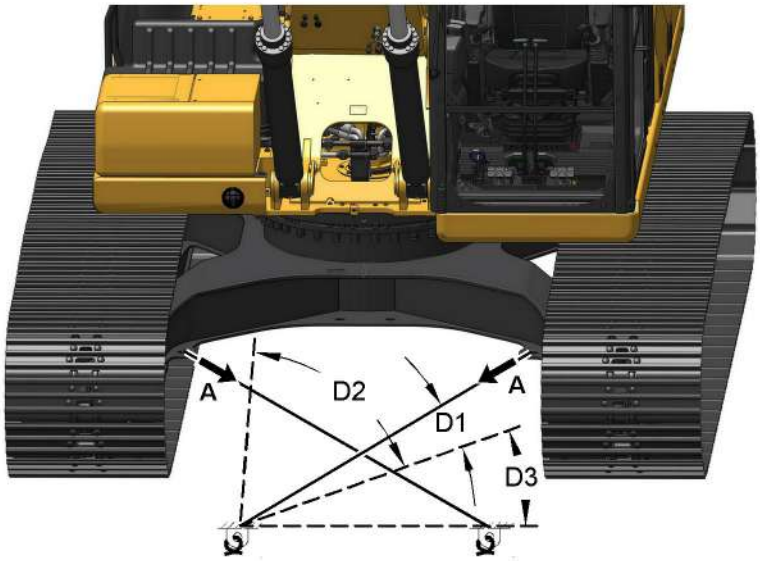


Illustration 475 g07491378

Table 48

Type of Frame	Tying Force (A)	D1	D2	D3
Base Frame	912 kN (205027 lb)	30 degrees	50 degrees	40 degrees
Upper Frame	Not Required			

Lifting the Machine Segments

Bucket

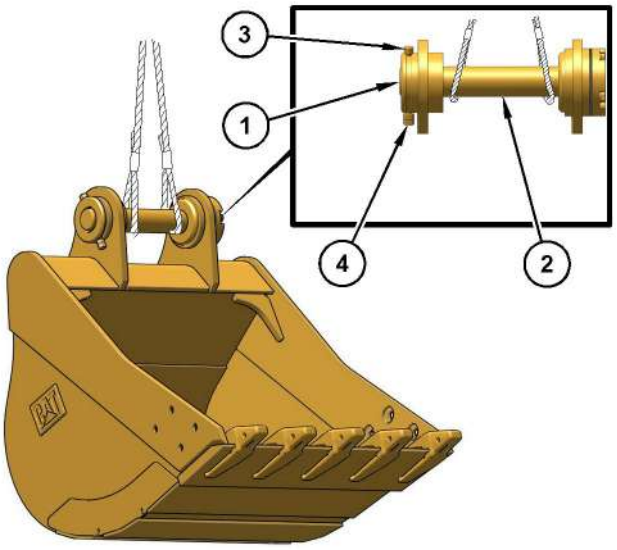


Illustration 476 g07494870

(1) Pin
(2) Sleeve
(3) Bolt
(4) Nut

Install pin (1) and install sleeve (2) in the brackets of the bucket. The previous illustration indicates the method to secure pin (1) with two bolts (3) and four nuts (4). Fasten two proper rated wire cables to pin (1).

Refer to Specifications, SENR3130, “Torque Specifications” for more information.

Towing Information

i09557366

Towing the Machine

SMCS Code: 7000

⚠ WARNING

Personal injury or death could result when towing a disabled machine incorrectly.

Block the machine to prevent movement before final drives are disengaged. The machine can roll free if it is not blocked. With final drives disengaged, the machine cannot be stopped or steered.

Follow the recommendations below, to properly perform the towing procedure.

Relieve the hydraulic tank and line pressure before any disassembly.

Even after the machine has been turned off, the hydraulic oil can still be hot enough to burn. Allow the hydraulic oil to cool before draining.

NOTICE

To tow the machine, both final drives must be disengaged.

Do not operate the travel motors with the final drives disengaged. Damage could result.

These towing instructions are for moving a disabled machine for a short distance at low speed. Move the machine at a speed of 2 km/h (1.2 mph) or less to a convenient location for repair. Always haul the machine if long distance moving is required.

Shields must be provided on both machines. This will protect the operator if the tow line or the tow bar breaks.

Do not allow an operator to be on the machine that is being towed.

Before you tow the machine, make sure that the tow line or the tow bar is in good condition. Do not use a wire rope that is kinked, twisted, or damaged. Make sure that the tow line or the tow bar has enough strength for the towing procedure that is involved. The strength of the tow line or of the tow bar should be at least 150 percent of the gross weight of the towed machine. This requirement is for a disabled machine that is stuck in the mud and for being towed on a grade.

Do not use a chain for pulling a disabled machine. A chain link can break. This may cause personal injury. Use a wire rope with ends that have loops or rings. Put an observer in a safe position to watch the pulling procedure. The observer can stop the procedure if the wire rope starts to break. Stop pulling whenever the towing machine moves without moving the towed machine.

During towing, do not allow anyone to step between the towing and the towed machines.

Do not allow the wire rope to be straddled while the machine is being towed.

Keep the tow line angle to a minimum. Do not exceed a 30 degree angle from the straight ahead position.

Avoid towing the machine on a slope.

Quick machine movement could overload the tow line or the tow bar. This could cause the tow line or the tow bar to break. Gradual, steady machine movement will be more effective.

Prior to releasing the brake of the final drive, firmly lock both tracks to prevent the machine from moving suddenly. When the machine is ready to be towed, release the brake of the final drive. Refer to “Final Drive Sun Gear Removal“.

Normally, the towing machine should be as large as the disabled machine. Make sure that the towing machine has enough brake capacity, enough weight, and enough power. The towing machine must be able to control both machines for the grade that is involved and for the distance that is involved.

You must provide sufficient control and sufficient braking when you are moving a disabled machine downhill. This may require a larger towing machine or additional machines that are connected to the rear of the disabled machine. This will prevent the machine from rolling away out of control.

All situation requirements cannot be listed. Minimal towing machine capacity is required on smooth, level surfaces. Maximum towing machine capacity is required on an incline or on a surface that is in poor condition.

Do not tow a loaded machine.

Consult your Cat ® dealer for the equipment that is necessary for towing a disabled machine.

Retrieval and Towing of Machine

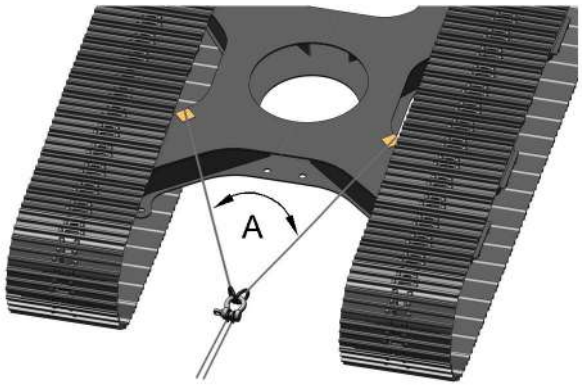


Illustration 477 g06289671

(A) Angle

Note: Shackles must be used for towing the machine. The wire rope should be horizontal and straight to the track frame.

Install a properly rated wire rope to the lower frame of the towing machine and the lower frame of the towed machine. The permissible force for the lower frame is 100 percent of the gross weight of the towed machine.

Note: To prevent damage to the wire rope or the lower frame of the machines, use protective sleeves on the corners of the lower frame.

Retrieve the disabled machine carefully. The applied load for each wire rope should be equal. Angle (A) between each wire rope should be 60 degree maximum. Operate the machine at a low speed.

Lightweight Towing

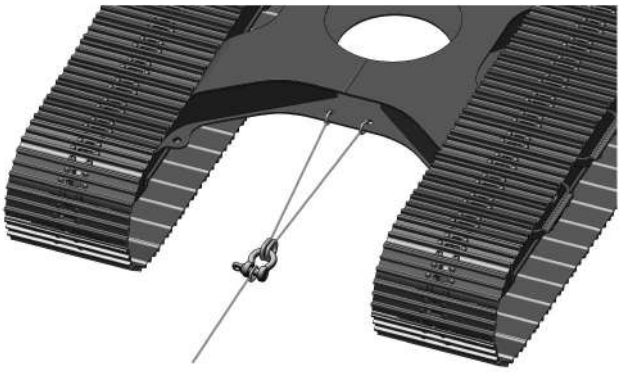


Illustration 478 g06186106

Refer to Operation and Maintenance, “Specifications” for the maximum load for lightweight towing.

Shackles must be used for towing the machine. The wire rope should be horizontal and straight to the track frame.

Install a properly rated wire rope to the lower frame of the towing machine and the lower frame of the towed machine. Operate the machine at a low speed.

i06954175

Final Drive Sun Gear Removal

SMCS Code: 4050

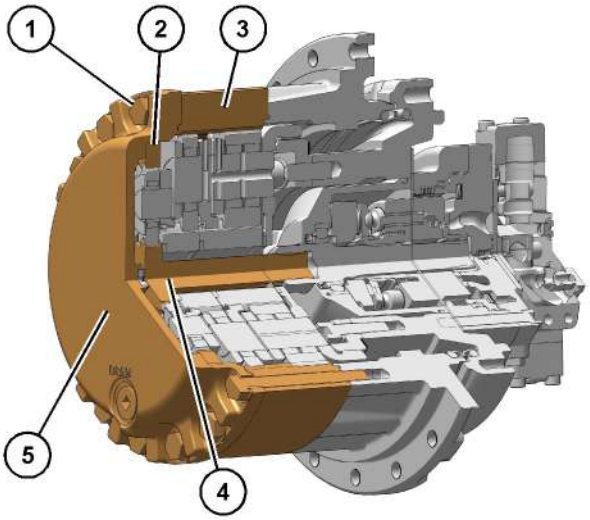


Illustration 479 g06188195

(1) Bolt
(2) Ring gear
(3) Ring gear
(4) Sun gear
(5) Final drive cover

WARNING

Without the sun gear in place, the brakes are ineffective. Personal injury or death could result. Provide other means to hold or stop the machine.

1. Thoroughly clean the area around the final drive. Make sure that you also clean the track shoes that are positioned above the final drive.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “General Hazard Information” for information on containing fluid spillage.

2. Drain the final drive oil into a suitable container. See Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Final Drive Oil - Change” for the procedure.

3. Remove 14 of 16 cover bolts (1) from final drive cover (5). Do not leave a bolt in the top hole of the cover.

4. Insert an alignment dowel through the top hole of the cover and into the threads in the final drive housing. This is necessary to support ring gear (2) and ring gear (3) while you are removing the final drive cover.

5. Remove one track shoe to allow access to the face between final drive cover (5) and ring gear (2).

6. Loosen remaining two cover bolts (1).

7. Use a hammer and a wedge to separate final drive cover (5) and ring gear (2). Make sure that ring gear (2) and ring gear (3) stay in place.

8. Remove remaining two cover bolts (1) and final drive cover (5).

9. Remove sun gear (4) from final drive.

10. Install final drive cover (5) and 16 cover bolts (1).

11. Fill the final drive with new oil. See Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Final Drive Oil - Change” for the procedure.

12. Repeat Steps 1 through 11 for the other final drive.

13. Refer to the Service Manual for information on the installation of the final drive sun gear.

Engine Starting (Alternate Methods)

i08251220

Engine Starting with Jump Start Cables
(If Equipped)

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

⚠ WARNING

Failure to properly service the batteries may cause personal injury.

Prevent sparks near the batteries. They could cause vapors to explode. Do not allow the jump start cable ends to contact each other or the machine.

Do not smoke when checking battery electrolyte levels.

Electrolyte is an acid and can cause personal injury if it contacts skin or eyes.

Always wear eye protection when starting a machine with jump start cables.

Improper jump start procedures can cause an explosion resulting in personal injury.

Always connect the battery positive (+) to battery positive (+) and the battery negative (−) to battery negative (−).

Jump start only with an energy source with the same voltage as the stalled machine.

Turn off all lights and accessories on the stalled machine. Otherwise, they will operate when the energy source is connected.

NOTICE
To prevent damage to engine bearings and to electrical circuits when you jump-start a machine, do not allow the stalled machine to touch the machine that is used as the electrical source.

Turn on (close) the battery disconnect switch prior to the boost connection to prevent damage to electrical components on the stalled machine.

Use only equal voltage for starting. Check the battery and starter voltage rating of your machine. Use only the same voltage for jump starting. Use of a welder or higher voltage will damage the electrical system.

Severely discharged maintenance free batteries do not fully recharge from the alternator after jump starting. The batteries must be charged to proper voltage with a battery charger. Many batteries thought to be unusable are still rechargeable.

Refer to Special Instruction, SEHS7633, “Battery Test Procedure” for complete testing and charging information. This publication is available from your Cat dealer.

When the auxiliary start receptacles are not available, use the following procedure.

1. Prepare the machine for maintenance. Refer to “Prepare the Machine for Maintenance“. Lower the equipment to the ground. Move all controls to the HOLD position. Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position.
2. Turn the engine start switch on the stalled machine to the OFF position. Refer to “Engine Starting“. Turn off all accessories.
3. Turn the battery disconnect switch on the stalled machine to the ON position. Refer to “Battery Disconnect Switch“.
4. Move the machine that is being used as an electrical source near the stalled machine so that the jump-start cables reach the stalled machine. **Do not allow the machines to contact each other.**
5. Stop the engine of the machine that is being used as an electrical source. If you are using an auxiliary power source, turn off the charging system.

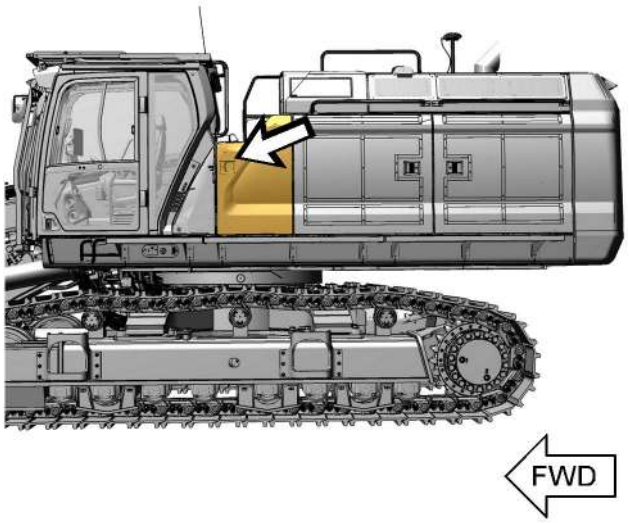


Illustration 480 g06600608

Battery is located behind the left front access door

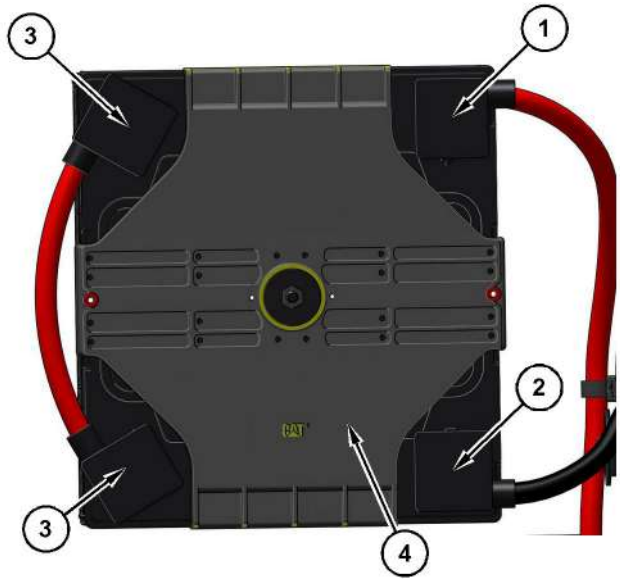


Illustration 481 g06600679

(1) Red positive post to starter
(2) The black negative post connects to the battery disconnect switch.
(3) Do not use these two connections for jump starting. The red positive post is connected in series to the black negative post.
(4) Cover

6. Ensure that battery caps on both machines are tight and correctly placed. Ensure that batteries in the stalled machine are not frozen. Make sure that the batteries have enough electrolyte.

Note: The positive terminal of the 24 V system of the source and the negative terminal of the 24 V system of the source must be identified correctly before the jumper cables are connected. The positive terminal of the 24 V system of the discharged battery must be identified correctly before the jumper cables are connected.

7. The positive ends of the jump-start cable are red. Connect one positive end of the jump-start cable to the positive cable terminal of the discharged battery. Some machines have battery sets.

Note: Batteries that are in series may be in separate compartments. Use the terminal that is connected to the starter solenoid. This battery or battery set is normally on the same side of the machine as the starter.

Do not allow the positive cable clamps to contact any metal except for the battery terminals.

8. Connect the other positive end of the jump-start cable to the positive cable terminal of the electrical source.

9. Connect one negative end of the jump-start cable to the negative cable terminal of the electrical source.

10. Finally, connect the other negative end of the jump-start cable to the frame of the stalled machine. Do not connect the jump-start cable to the battery post. Do not allow the jump-start cables to contact the battery cables, the fuel lines, the hydraulic lines, or any moving parts.

11. Start the engine of the machine that is being used as an electrical source or energize the charging system on the auxiliary power source.

12. Wait at least two minutes before you attempt to start the stalled machine. This will allow the batteries in the stalled machine to partially charge.

13. Attempt to start the stalled engine. Refer to “Engine Starting“ for the correct starting procedure.

14. Immediately after you start the stalled engine, disconnect the jump-start cables in reverse order.

i08233130

Engine Starting with Auxiliary Start Receptacle
(If Equipped)

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

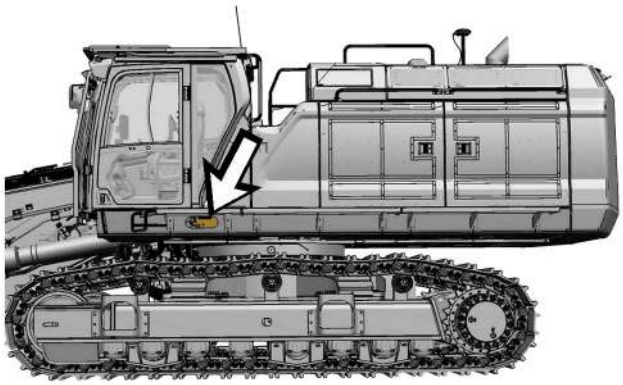


Illustration 482 g06592385

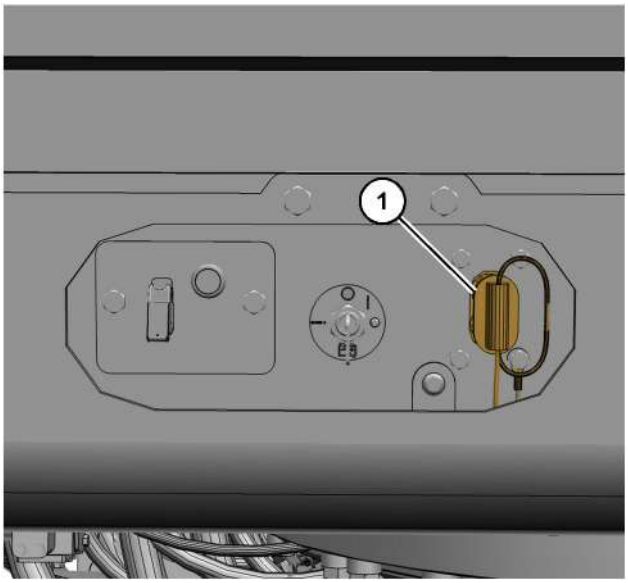


Illustration 483 g06592402

(1) Receptacle

Some Caterpillar products may be equipped with an auxiliary start receptacle as a standard part. If your machine is not equipped with an auxiliary start receptacle, the machine can be equipped with an auxiliary start receptacle from parts service. This will ensure that a permanent receptacle is always available to jump-start the machine.

There are two cable assemblies that can be used to jump-start the stalled machine. You can jump-start the stalled machine from another machine that is equipped with an auxiliary start receptacle or with an auxiliary power pack. Your Caterpillar dealer can provide the correct cable lengths for your application.

1. Determine the reason that the engine will not start.

Reference: Refer to Special Instruction, SEHS7633, “Battery Test Procedure” for more information.

2. Ensure that the travel control levers on the stalled machine are in the CENTER position. Engage the hydraulic lockout control. Engage the parking brake. Lower all work tools to the ground. Move all controls to HOLD.

3. Turn the engine start switch key on the stalled machine to the OFF position. Turn off all accessories.

4. Turn the battery disconnect switch on the stalled machine to ON.

5. Move the machine that is being used as a power source close to the stalled machine. The jump-start cables should reach the batteries on both machines. **DO NOT ALLOW THE MACHINES TO CONTACT EACH OTHER.**

6. Stop the engine on the machine that is being used as a power source. If you use an auxiliary power source, turn off the charging system.

7. Connect the appropriate jump-start cable to the auxiliary start receptacle on the stalled machine.

8. Connect the other end of the jump-start cable to the auxiliary start receptacle of the machine that is being used as a power source.

9. Start the engine on the machine that is being used as a power source or energize the charging system on the auxiliary power source.

10. Wait for a minimum of 2 minutes while the batteries in the stalled machine partially charge.

11. Attempt to start the stalled engine.

12. Immediately after the stalled engine starts, disconnect the jump-start cable from the power source.

13. Disconnect the other end of the jump-start cable from the stalled machine.

14. Conclude the failure analysis on the starting charging system of the stalled machine, as required. Check the machine while the engine is running and the charging system is in operation.

Maintenance Section

Maintenance Access

i08233131

Access Door and Cover Locations

SMCS Code: 726A-CH

Engine Hood

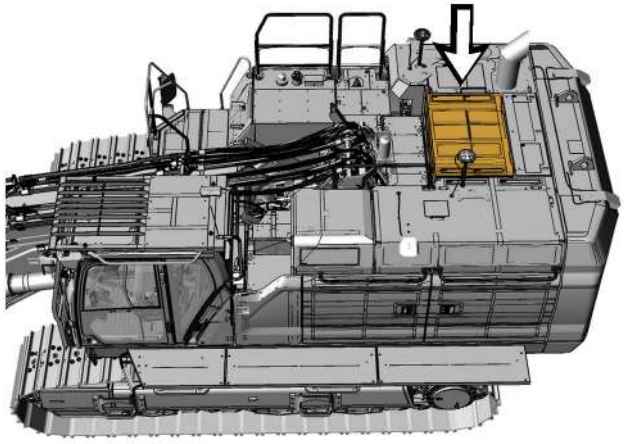


Illustration 484 g06592425

Left Front Access Door

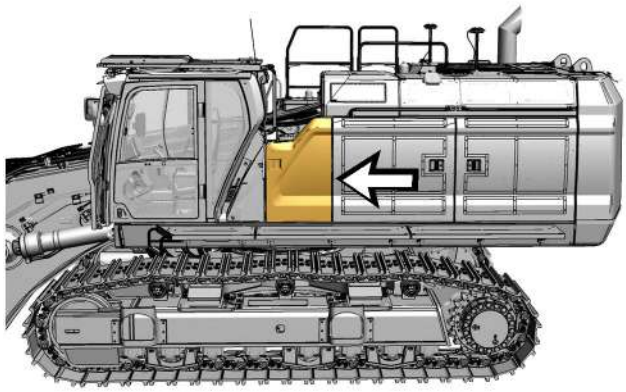


Illustration 485 g06592427

Left Middle Access Door

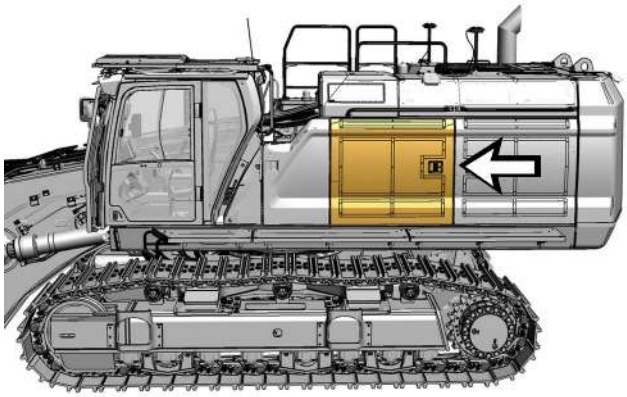


Illustration 486 g06592445

Left Rear Access Door

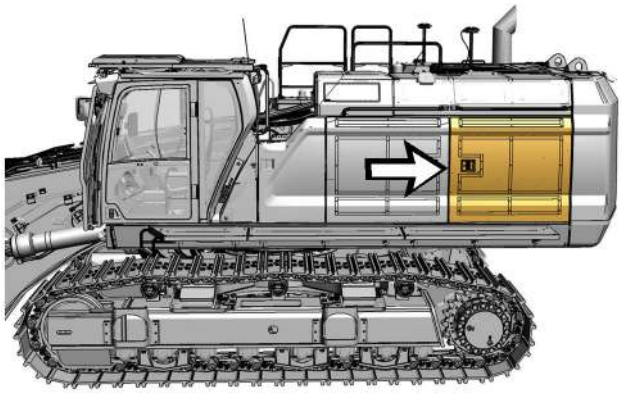


Illustration 487 g06592449

Right Access Door

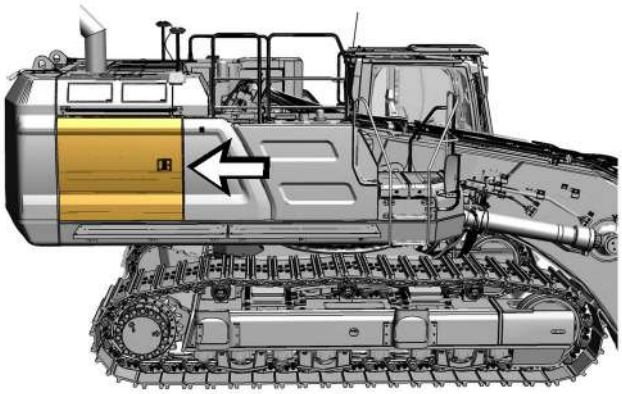


Illustration 488 g06592451

Lubricant Viscosities and Refill Capacities

i09415412

Lubricant Viscosities
(Fluids Recommendations)

SMCS Code: 7581

General Information for Lubricants

When you are operating the machine in temperatures below −20 °C (−4 °F), refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, SEBU5898, “Cold Weather Recommendations for All Caterpillar Machines”. This publication is available from your Cat ® dealer.

Refer to the “Lubricant Information” section in the latest revision of the Operation and Maintenance Manual, SEBU6250, “Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations” for a list of Cat ® engine oils and for detailed information.

The footnotes are a key part of the tables. Read all footnotes that pertain to the machine compartment in question.

Selecting the Viscosity

To select the proper oil for each machine compartment, refer to the “Lubricant Viscosity for Ambient Temperature” table. Use the oil type AND oil viscosity for the specific compartment at the proper ambient temperature.

The proper oil viscosity grade is determined by the minimum ambient temperature (the air in the immediate vicinity of the machine). Measure the temperature when the machine is started and while the machine is operated. To determine the proper oil viscosity grade, refer to the “Min” column in the table. This information reflects the coldest ambient temperature condition for starting a cold machine and for operating a cold machine. Refer to the “Max” column in the table for operating the machine at the highest temperature that is anticipated. Unless specified otherwise in the “Lubricant Viscosities for Ambient Temperatures” tables, use the highest oil viscosity that is allowed for the ambient temperature.

Machines that are operated continuously should use oils that have the higher oil viscosity in the final drives and in the differentials. The oils that have the higher oil viscosity will maintain the highest possible oil film thickness. Refer to “General Information for Lubricants” article, “Lubricant Viscosities” tables, and any associated footnotes. Consult your Cat dealer if additional information is needed.

NOTICE
Not following the recommendations found in this manual can lead to reduced performance and compartment failure.

Engine Oil

Cat oils have been developed and tested to provide the full performance and life that has been designed and built into Cat engines.

Cat DEO-ULS or oils that meet the Cat ECF-3 specification, API CJ-4, and the newer API CK-4, are required for use in the applications listed below. Cat DEO-ULS and oils meeting Cat ECF-3 specification, API CJ-4, the newer API CK-4, and ACEA E9 oil categories have been developed with limited sulfated ash, phosphorus, and sulfur. These chemical limits are designed to maintain the expected aftertreatment devices life, performance, and service interval. If oils meeting the Cat ECF-3 specification, API CJ-4, the newer API CK-4 specifications are not available, oils meeting ACEA E9 may be used. ACEA E9 oils meet the chemical limits designed to maintain aftertreatment device life. ACEA E9 oils are validated using some but not all ECF-3 and API CJ-4 standard engine performance tests. Consult your oil supplier when considering use of an oil that is not Cat ECF-3, API CJ-4, or the newer API CK-4 qualified.

Failure to meet the listed requirements will damage aftertreatment-equipped engines and can negatively impact the performance of the aftertreatment devices. The Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) if equipped, will plug sooner and require more frequent DPF ash service intervals.

Typical aftertreatment systems may include the following:

- Diesel Particulate Filters (DPF)
- Diesel Oxidation Catalysts (DOC)
- Selective Catalytic Reduction (SCR)
- Lean NOx Traps (LNT)

Other systems may apply.

Oils that are per API CI-4 or prior categories are not allowed. These oils have high ash and are not appropriate for use in engines with aftertreatment devices.

Table 49

Lubricant Viscosities for Ambient Temperatures						
Compartment or System	**Oil Type and Performance Requirements**	**Oil Viscosities**	**°C**		**°F**	
			Min	**Max**	**Min**	**Max**
Engine Crankcase for all Machines	**Cat DEO-ULS Cold Weather**	SAE 0W-40	−40	40	−40	104
	Cat DEO-ULS SYN	SAE 5W-40	−30	50	−22	122
	Cat DEO-ULS	SAE 10W-30	−18	40	0	104
		SAE 15W-40	−10	50	14	122
Pump Coupling (If Equipped)	**Cat DEO-ULS**	SAE 10W-30	−18	40	0	104

Hydraulic Systems

Refer to the “Lubricant Information” section in the latest revision of the Operation and Maintenance Manual, SEBU6250, “Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations” for detailed information.

The following are the preferred oils for use in most Cat machine hydraulic systems:

- Cat HYDO Advanced 10 SAE 10W
- Cat HYDO Advanced 20 SAE 20W
- Cat HYDO Advanced 30 SAE 30
- Cat BIO HYDO Advanced, Multigrade

Cat HYDO Advanced oils allow 6000 hours or higher oil drain intervals for most applications. S·O·S Services oil analysis is recommended when the oil drain interval is increased to 6000 hours or higher. In comparison, non-Cat commercial hydraulic oils (second choice oils) allow 2000 hours oil drain interval. Itis recommended to follow the maintenance interval schedule for oil filter changes and for oil sampling that is stated in the Operation and Maintenance Manual for your particular machine. Consult your Cat dealer for details. When switching to Cat HYDO Advanced fluids, cross contamination with the previous oil should be kept to less than 10%.

Second choice oils are listed below.

- Cat MTO
- Cat DEO
- Cat DEO-ULS
- Cat TDTO
- Cat TDTO Cold Weather
- Cat TDTO-TMS
- Cat DEO-ULS Cold Weather

Note: Oil drain intervals of the oils listed above are less than those of Cat HYDO Advanced oils. The oil drain interval of these oils is typically 2000 hours and up to a maximum of 4000 hours. An exception is Cat TDTO Cold Weather oil which allows 6000 hours or higher oil drain interval. S·O·S Services oil analysis is required when the oils listed above are used in Cat hydraulic system components and hydrostatic transmissions.

Table 50

Lubricant Viscosities for Ambient Temperatures						
Compartment or System	**Oil Type and Performance Requirements**	**Oil Viscosities**	**°C**		**°F**	
			Min	**Max**	**Min**	**Max**
Hydraulic System	**Cat HYDO Advanced 10** Cat TDTO	SAE 10W	−20	40	−4	104
	Cat HYDO Advanced 20 Cat TDTO	SAE 20W	–5	45	23	113
	Cat HYDO Advanced 30 Cat TDTO	SAE 30	10	50	50	122
	Cat BIO HYDO Advanced	“ISO 46” Multi-Grade	−30	50	−22	122
	Cat MTO Cat DEO-ULS Cat DEO	SAE10W-30	−20	40	−4	104
	Cat DEO-ULS Cat DEO	SAE15W-40	−15	50	5	122
	Cat TDTO-TMS	Multi-Grade	−15	50	5	122
	Cat DEO-ULS SYN	SAE 5W-40	−25	40	−13	104
	Cat DEO-ULS Cold Weather	SAE0W-40	−40	40	−40	104
	Cat TDTO Cold Weather	SAE 0W-20	−40	40	−40	104

For applications requiring the use of fire-resistant hydraulic fluids, recommends the use of EcoSafe FR-46. This product is a fully synthetic, non-aqueous hydraulic fluid. Water based and glycol-based hydraulic products are not recommended for use in Cat machine hydraulic systems. EcoSafe FR-46 is an ISO 46 multi-grade product. For more information refer to the product information provided by the manufacturer of EcoSafe hydraulic oil. Refer to your Cat dealer for availability.

Other Fluid Applications

Table 51

Excavators, Front Shovels, Mass Excavators, Demolition Excavators, and Track Material Handlers Lubricant Viscosities for Ambient Temperatures						
Compartment or System	**Oil Type and Performance Requirements**	**Oil Viscosity Grade**	**°C**		**°F**	
			Min	**Max**	**Min**	**Max**
Final Drives and Swing Drives	**Cat TDTO Cold Weather**	SAE 0W-20	-40	0	-40	32
	Cat TDTO	SAE 10W	−30	0	-22	32
		SAE 30(1)	−30	35	−22	95
		SAE 50	-15	50	5	122
	Cat TDTO-TMS	Multi-Grade	−25	25	−13	77
Track Roller Frame Recoil Spring and Pivot Shaft Bearings	**Cat TDTO Cold Weather**	SAE 0W-20	−40	0	−40	32
	Cat TDTO	SAE 10W	−30	0	−22	32
		SAE 30(1)	−20	25	−4	77

(continued)

(Table 51, contd)

Excavators, Front Shovels, Mass Excavators, Demolition Excavators, and Track Material Handlers Lubricant Viscosities for Ambient Temperatures						
Compartment or System	Oil Type and Performance Requirements	Oil Viscosity Grade	°C		°F	
			Min	Max	Min	Max
		SAE 50	0	50	32	122
	Cat TDTO-TMS	Multi-Grade	−25	25	−13	77
Track Idlers and Track Rollers	Cat DEO-ULS Cat DEO	SAE 15W-40(1)	-10	50	14	122
	Cat DEO Cold Weather	SAE 0W-40	−40	40	−40	104
	Cat DEO-ULS SYN	SAE 5W-40	−35	40	−31	104
	Cat FDAO SYN	Multi-Grade	-30	50	-22	122

(1) Factory fill oil for standard configuration machines.

Special Lubricants

Grease

To use a non-Cat grease, the supplier must certify that the lubricant is compatible with Cat grease.

Each pin joint should be flushed with the new grease. Ensure that all old grease is removed. Failure to meet this requirement may lead to failure of a pin joint.

Table 52

Recommended Grease						
Compartment or System	Grease Type	NLGI Grade	°C		°F	
			Min	Max	Min	Max
External Lubrication Points	Cat Prime Application Grease	NLGI Grade 2	−20	140	−4	284
	Cat Extreme Application Grease	NLGI Grade 1	−20	140	−4	284
		NLGI Grade 2	−15	140	+5	284
	Cat Extreme Application Grease-Artic	NLGI Grade 0.5	-50	130	-58	266
	Cat Extreme Application Grease-Desert	NLGI Grade 2	−10	140	+14	284
	Cat Utility Grease	NLGI Grade 2	−20	140	−4	284
	Cat Ball Bearing Grease	NLGI Grade 2	−20	160	−4	320

Diesel Fuel Recommendations

Diesel fuel must meet Caterpillar Specification for Distillate Fuel and the latest revisions of “ASTM D975” and “EN 590” to ensure optimum engine performance. Refer to Special Publication, SEBU6250, “Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations” for the latest fuel information and for Cat fuel specification.

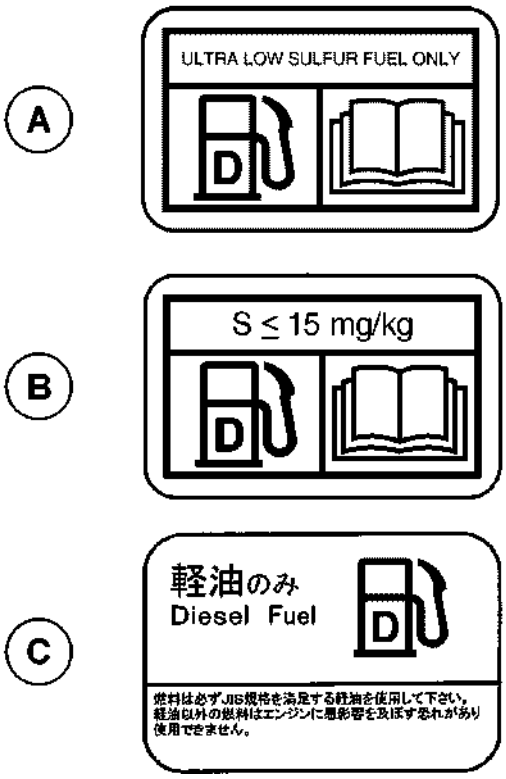


Illustration 489 g03218956

(A) North America film
(B) Europe, Africa, Middle East film
(C) Japan film

NOTICE
Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel (ULSD) fuel 0.0015 percent (≤15 ppm (mg/kg)) sulfur is required by regulation for use in engines certified to nonroad Tier 4 standards (U.S. EPA Tier 4 certified) and that are equipped with exhaust aftertreatment systems.

European/China ULSD 0.0010 percent (≤10ppm (mg/kg)) sulfur fuel is required by regulation for use in nonroad engines type-approved to EU Stage V / China Nonroad Stage IV. Additionally, the Cetane number should not be less than 45, and the bio-diesel content should not be greater than 20% volume/volume.

Misfueling with fuels of higher sulfur level can have the following negative effects:

- **Shorten the time interval between aftertreatment device service intervals (cause the need for more frequent service intervals)**
- **Adversely impact the performance and life of aftertreatment devices (cause loss of performance)**
- **Reduce regeneration intervals of aftertreatment devices**
- Reduce engine efficiency and durability.
- Increase the wear.
- Increase the corrosion.
- Increase the deposits.
- Lower fuel economy
- Shorten the time period between oil drain intervals (more frequent oil drain intervals).
- Increase overall operating costs.

Failures that result for the use of improper fuels are not Caterpillar factory defects. Therefore, the cost of repairs would not be covered by a Caterpillar warranty.

Caterpillar does not require the use of ULSD in nonroad and machine applications that are not Tier 4/Stage V certified engines and are not equipped with aftertreatment devices. For Tier 4/Stage V certified engines, always follow operating instructions to ensure that the correct fuels are used.

Refer to Special Publication, SEBU6250, “Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations” for more details about fuels, lubricants, and Tier 4/Stage V requirements.

Diesel Exhaust Fluid

General Information

Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) is a liquid that is injected into the exhaust system of engines equipped with Selective Catalytic Reduction (SCR) systems. SCR reduces emissions of nitrogen oxides (NOx) in diesel engine exhaust.

Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) is also known under other names including Aqueous Urea Solution (AUS) 32, AdBlue, or generically referred to as urea.

In engines equipped with SCR emissions reduction system, DEF is injected in controlled amounts into the engine exhaust stream. At the elevated exhaust temperature, urea in DEF is converted to ammonia. The ammonia chemically reacts with NOx in diesel exhaust in the presence of the SCR catalyst. The reaction converts NOx into harmless nitrogen (N2) and water (H2O).

DEF Recommendations

For use in Cat engines, DEF must meet all the requirements defined by “ISO 22241-1” Requirements.

Caterpillar recommends the use of DEF available through the Cat parts ordering system for use in Cat engines equipped with SCR systems.

In North America, commercial DEF that is API approved and meets all the requirements defined in “ISO 22241-1” may be used in Cat engines that are equipped with SCR systems.

Outside of North America, commercial DEF that meets all requirements defined in “ISO 22241-1” may be used in Cat engines that are equipped with SCR systems.

The supplier should provide documentation to prove that the DEF is compliant with the requirements of “ISO 22241-1”.

NOTICE
Cat ® does not warrant the quality or performance of non-Cat fluids.

NOTICE
Do not use agriculture grade urea solutions. Do not use any fluids that do not meet “ISO 22241-1” Requirements in SCR emissions reduction systems. Use of these fluids can result in numerous problems including damage to SCR equipment and a reduction in NOx conversion efficiency.

DEF is a solution of solid urea that is dissolved in demineralized water to produce a final concentration of 32.5% urea. DEF concentration of 32.5% is optimal for use in SCR systems. DEF solution of 32.5% urea has the lowest attainable freeze point of −11.5 °C (11.3 °F). DEF concentrations that are higher or lower than 32.5% have higher freeze points. DEF dosing systems and “ISO 22241-1” specifications are designed for a solution that is approximately 32.5%.

Caterpillar offers a refractometer, Cat part number 360-0774, that can be used to measure DEF concentration. Follow the instructions provided with the instrument. Appropriate commercial portable refractometers can be used to determine urea concentration. Follow the instructions from the manufacturer.

DEF Guidelines

DEF solution is typically colorless and clear. Changes to color or clarity are indicators of quality issues. Quality of DEF can degrade when stored and handled inappropriately or if DEF is not protected from contamination. Details are provided below.

If quality issues are suspected, testing of DEF should focus on urea percentage, alkalinity as NH3 and biuret content. DEF that does not pass all these tests or that is no longer clear should not be used.

Materials compatibility

DEF is corrosive. Due to the corrosion caused, DEF must be stored in tanks constructed of approved materials. Recommended storage materials:

Stainless Steels:

- 304 (S30400)
- 304L (S30403)
- 316 (S31600)
- 316L (S31603)

Alloys and metals:

- Chromium Nickel (CrNi)
- Chromium Nickel Molybdenum (CrNiMo)
- Titanium

Non-metallic materials:

- Polyethylene
- Polypropylene
- Polyisobutylene
- Teflon (PFA)
- Polyfluoroethylene (PFE)
- Polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF)
- Polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE)

Materials NOT compatible with DEF solutions include Aluminum, Magnesium, Zinc, Nickel coatings, Silver and Carbon steel, and Solders containing any of the above. Unexpected reactions may occur if DEF solutions come in contact with any non-compatible material or unknown materials.

Bulk storage

Follow all local regulations covering bulk storage tanks. Follow proper tank construction guidelines. Tank volume typically should be 110% of planned capacity. Appropriately vent indoor tanks. Plan for control of overflow of the tank. Heat tanks that dispense DEF in cold climates.

Bulk tank breathers should be fitted with filtration to keep airborne debris from entering the tank. Desiccant breathers should not be used because water will be absorbed, which potentially can alter DEF concentration.

Handling

Follow all local regulations covering transport and handling. DEF transport temperature is recommended to be −5 °C (23 °F) to 25 °C (77 °F). All transfer equipment and intermediate containers should be used exclusively for DEF. Containers should not be reused for any other fluids. Ensure that transfer equipment is made from DEF-compatible materials. Recommended material for hoses and other non-metallic transfer equipment includes:

- Nitrile Rubber (NBR)
- Fluoroelastomer (FKM)
- Ethylene Propylene Diene Monomer (EPDM)

The condition of hoses and other nonmetallics that are used with DEF should be monitored for signs of degradation. DEF leaks are easily recognizable by white urea crystals that accumulate at the site of the leak. Solid urea can be corrosive to galvanized or unalloyed steel, aluminum, copper, and brass. Leaks should be repaired immediately to avoid damage to surrounding hardware.

Cleanliness

Contaminants can degrade the quality and life of DEF. Filtering DEF is recommended when dispensed into the DEF tank. Filters should be compatible with DEF and should be used exclusively with DEF. Check with the filter supplier to confirm compatibility with DEF before using. Mesh-type filters using compatible metals, such as stainless steel, are recommended. Paper (cellulose) media and some synthetic filter media are not recommended because of degradation during use.

Care should be taken when dispensing DEF. Spills should be cleaned immediately. Machine or engine surfaces should be wiped clean and rinsed with water. Caution should be used when dispensing DEF near an engine that has recently been running. Spilling DEF onto hot components will cause harmful vapors.

Stability

NOTICE
Storing Diesel Exhaust Fluid in high heat areas is not recommended. Do not store DEF in high heat generating areas on the machine, such as the pump compartment or the engine compartment. The quality of the DEF can degrade when exposed to high temperatures.

DEF fluid is stable when stored and handled properly. The quality of DEF rapidly degrades when stored at high temperatures. The ideal storage temperature for DEF is between −9 °C (15.8 °F) and 25 °C (77 °F). DEF that is stored above 35 °C (95 °F) for longer than 1 month must be tested before use. Testing should evaluate Urea Percentage, Alkalinity as NH3 and Biuret content.

The length of storage of DEF is listed in the following table:

Table 53

Storage Temperature	Expected DEF Life
Below 25 °C (77 °F)	18 months
25 °C (77 °F) to 30 °C (86 °F)	12 months
30 °C (86 °F) to 35 °C (95 °F)	6 months
Above 35 °C (95 ° F)	test quality before use

Refer to “ISO 22241” document series for more information about DEF quality control.

Note: Dispose of all fluids according to applicable regulations and mandates.

Fuel Additives

Cat Diesel Fuel Conditioner and Cat Fuel System Cleaner are available for use when needed. These products are applicable to diesel and biodiesel fuels. Consult your Cat dealer for availability.

Biodiesel Fuel Recommendations

NOTICE
Never use raw vegetable or plant-based oils in place of esterified biodiesel.

The use of oils that are not esterified can lead to engine damage, up to and including engine failure.

Biodiesel is a fuel that can be made from various renewable resources that include vegetable oils, animal fat, and waste cooking oil. These oils and fats are chemically processed (esterified), and filtered to remove water and contaminants.

For biodiesel storage requirements, consult your fuel supplier.

Note: In some regions, biodiesel blends are known as Fatty Acid Methyl Ester (FAME).

Use biodiesel blends that meet national, regional, and local standards.

For more information on biodiesel standards, and to reduce the risks associated with biodiesel usage, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, SEBU6250, “Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations”.

Biodiesel Blend Limits

NOTICE
The use of biofuel blends above the acceptable limit can lead to higher engine downtime.

Biodiesel blend levels up to B20 are acceptable to use in this product.

The use of higher biodiesel blend levels are acceptable in regions where mandated. Consult your Cat dealer.

Note: The energy density of biodiesel blends above B20 are noticeably lower than diesel fuel.

Note: For engines equipped with emission aftertreatment devices, biodiesel blends must be blended with U.S. Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel, or European Sulfur Free Diesel.

Coolant Information

The information provided in this “Coolant Recommendation” section should be used with the “Lubricants Information” provided in the latest revision of Operation and Maintenance Manual, SEBU6250, “Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations”.

The following two types of coolants may be used in Cat diesel engines:

Preferred – Cat ELC (Extended Life Coolant)

Acceptable – Cat DEAC (Diesel Engine Antifreeze/ Coolant)

NOTICE
Never use water alone as a coolant. Water alone is corrosive at engine operating temperatures. In addition, water alone does not provide adequate protection against boiling or freezing.

Table 54

Recommendations for Finished Coolants for use in Cat engines				
Coolant Type	**Recommendations**	**Product**	**Service hours (1)(2)**	**Required Maintenance(3)**
Cat ELC, Cat ELI, or commercial coolant that meets Cat EC-1	Preferred	Cat ELC	12000 hours or 6 years	Add Cat ELC Extender at 6000 service hours or one half of service life
		Cat ELI (water based) (4)	12000 hours or 6 years	Add Cat ELC Extender at 6000 service hours or one half of service life

(continued)

(Table 54, contd)

Recommendations for Finished Coolants for use in Cat engines				
	Min requirements	Cat EC-1 specification and “ASTM D6210” and Organic Additive Technology (OAT) based on a combination of a monocarboxylic acid and a dicarboxylic acid. Free of phosphate, borate, and silicate. Tolyltriazole: minimum typical concentration of 900 ppm Nitrite: minimum typical concentration of 500 ppm in new coolants	6000 hours or 6 years	Add Extender at 3000 service hours or one half of service life
Cat DEAC, Cat SCA, conventional coolants, and commercial extended life coolants that do not meet EC-1	Acceptable	Cat DEAC	3000 hours or 3 years	SCA at maintenance intervals
		Cat SCA (water based) (4)	3000 hours or 2 years	SCA at maintenance intervals
	Min requirements for fully formulated Heavy-Duty Commercial coolants	“ASTM D6210” and Nitrite (as NO2) concentration: Minimum of 1200 ppm (70 grains/US gal) and maximum of 2400 ppm (140 grains/US gal) Silicon concentration: minimum of 100 ppm and maximum of 275 ppm	3000 hours or 2 years	SCA at maintenance intervals
	Min requirements for SCA and water (4) (5)	Commercial supplemental coolant additive and water having Nitrite (as NO2) concentration: Minimum of 1200 ppm (70 grains/US gal) and maximum of 2400 ppm (140 grains/US gal) Silicon concentration: minimum of 100 ppm and maximum of 275 ppm	3000 hours or 1 year	Per manufacturer recommendations

(1) New Coolants at 50 volume percent diluted. Coolants that are prediluted at the coolant manufacturer must be diluted with water that meets Reagent 4 “ASTM D1193” requirements.
(2) Maintain the in-service coolant at the given limits.
(3) For appropriate maintenance procedures, refer to the details given in this Chapter. For applications that allow the use of Cat ELI in water, a minimum of 7.5 percent of Cat ELI is recommended. For applications that allow the use of SCA and water, a minimum of 6 percent to a maximum of 8 percent concentration of Cat SCA are recommended.
(4) Water-based coolants are not allowed for use in machines that has NOx reduction aftertreatment devices, in engines that has AATAC and in Marine engines that have SWAC
(5) There are currently no industry standards to define the quality of water-based conventional coolants. To control the quality of SCA and water coolants, the commercial SCA additive package should pass ASTM D6210 when this package is used in a glycol-based coolant. Do not use a commercial SCA additive package that only meets the ASTM D3306 or equivalent specification when used in a glycol-based coolant.

i09914232

Capacities (Refill)

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

Table 55

Approximate Refill Capacities			
Component or System	**Liters**	**US gal**	**Recommended Type**
Fuel Tank	920	243.2	Refer to “Lubricant Viscosities“.
Cooling System	71	18.8	
Coolant Reservoir	4.5	1.20	
Engine Crankcase with Filter	62	16.4	
Hydraulic System (1)	386	101.9	
Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) Tank	80	21.1	
Each Swing Drive	10	2.6	
Each Final Drive	21	5.5	
	kg	**lbs**	
Refrigerant (2)	1.1	2.4	R-134a
Swing Gear	46	101	Refer to “Lubricant Viscosities“.

(1) The amount of hydraulic fluid that is needed to refill the hydraulic system after performing “Hydraulic System Oil - Change“.
(2) Refer to Combined Manual, SENR5664, “Air Conditioning and Heating R134a for All Caterpillar Machines” for additional information.

i07445339

S·O·S Information

SMCS Code: 1000; 1348; 3080; 4050; 5050; 7000; 7542-008

S·O·S Services is a highly recommended process for Cat customers to use in order to minimize owning and operating cost. Customers provide oil samples, coolant samples, and other machine information. The dealer uses the data in order to provide the customer with recommendations for management of the equipment. In addition, S·O·S Services can help determine the cause of an existing product problem.

Refer to Special Publication, SEBU6250, “Caterpillar Machine Fluid Recommendations” for detailed information concerning S·O·S Services.

The effectiveness of S·O·S Services is dependent on timely submission of the sample to the laboratory at recommended intervals.

Refer to the Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Maintenance Interval Schedule” for a specific sampling location and a service hour maintenance interval.

Consult your Cat dealer for complete information and assistance in establishing an S·O·S program for your equipment.

Maintenance Support

i07477696

Prepare the Machine for Maintenance

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

Refer to the following procedure before you perform any maintenance to the machine.

⚠ WARNING

Personal injury can result from hydraulic oil pressure and hot oil.

Hydraulic oil pressure can remain in the hydraulic system after the engine has been stopped. Serious injury can be caused if this pressure is not released before any service is done on the hydraulic system.

Make sure all of the attachments have been lowered, oil is cool before removing any components or lines. Remove the oil filler cap only when the engine is stopped, and the filler cap is cool enough to touch with your bare hand.

NOTICE
Care must be taken to ensure that fluids are contained during performance of inspection, maintenance, testing, adjusting, and repair of the product. Be prepared to collect the fluid with suitable containers before opening any compartment or disassembling any component containing fluids.

Refer to Special Publication, PERJ1017, “Dealer Service Tool Catalog” for tools and supplies suitable to collect and contain fluids on Cat ® products.

Dispose of all fluids according to local regulations and mandates.

Note: Permit only one operator on the machine. Keep all other personnel away from the machine or in view of the operator.

1. Park the machine on a dry, level, solid surface that is free of any debris.

Note: The surface must be solid enough to support the weight of the machine and any tooling that is used to support the machine.

2. Engage the parking brake. Place wheel blocks in front and behind the wheels or tracks.

3. Lower all work tools to the ground.

4. Stop the engine.

5. Release the pressure in the hydraulic system. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “System Pressure Release” for more information.

Perform a visual inspection first. If the visual checks are completed but the problem has not been identified, perform operational checks. If the problem has not been identified, perform instrument tests. This procedure will help to identify system problems.

i09769685

Service Interval Chart

SMCS Code: 7000

The service interval chart is located inside the cab and on the window.

Refer to this Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Maintenance Interval Schedule” for the correct maintenance intervals and procedures that are specific to your machine.

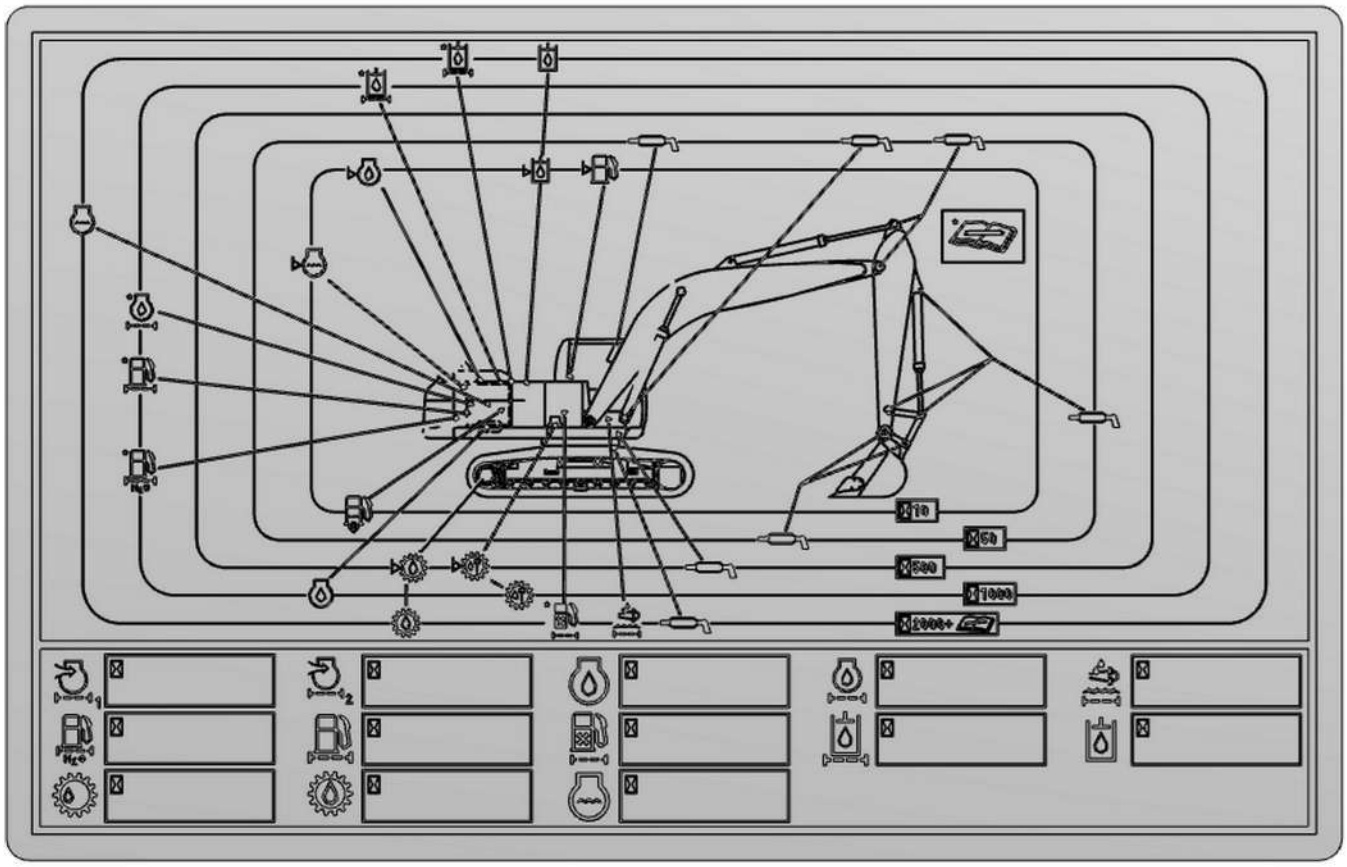


Illustration 490 g07586488

Service hour interval – Hourly interval in which a maintenance procedure should be performed.

Coolant level – Check the coolant level.

Cooling system coolant – Change the ELC (Extended Life Coolant) .

Engine air filter primary element – Clean or replace the primary air filter element.

Engine air filter secondary element – Replace the secondary air filter element.

Engine oil level – Check the engine oil level.

Engine oil – Change the engine oil.

Engine oil filter – Change the engine oil filter.

Final drive oil level – Check the final drive oil level.

Final drive oil – Change the final drive oil.

Fuel level – Check the fuel level.

Fuel system filter – Replace the fuel system filters.

Fuel system water separator – Drain the water separator.

Fuel system water separator element – Replace the fuel system water separator element.

Grease zerk – Lubricate the designated locations.

Hydraulic oil level – Check the hydraulic oil level.

Hydraulic oil – Change the hydraulic oil.

Hydraulic oil filter – Change the hydraulic oil filter.

Swing drive oil level – Check the swing drive oil level.

Swing drive oil – Change the swing drive oil.

i07327912

System Pressure Release

SMCS Code: 1250-553-PX; 1300-553-PX; 1350-553-PX; 5050-553-PX; 6700-553-PX; 7540-553-PX

⚠ WARNING

Personal injury or death can result from sudden machine movement.

Sudden movement of the machine can cause injury to persons on or near the machine.

To prevent injury or death, make sure that the area around the machine is clear of personnel and obstructions before operating the machine.

Coolant System

⚠ WARNING

Pressurized system: Hot coolant can cause serious burn. To open cap, stop engine, wait until radiator is cool. Then loosen cap slowly to relieve the pressure.

To relieve the pressure from the coolant system, turn off the machine. Allow the cooling system pressure cap to cool. Remove the cooling system pressure cap slowly in order to relieve pressure.

Hydraulic System

The release of hydraulic pressure in a hydraulic circuit is required before service is performed to that hydraulic circuit. Release the pressure in the following hydraulic circuits before any hydraulic lines are disconnected or removed from that hydraulic circuit.

- Boom hydraulic circuit
- Stick hydraulic circuit
- Bucket hydraulic circuit
- Swing hydraulic circuit
- Travel hydraulic circuit
- Attachment hydraulic circuits (if equipped)
- Pilot hydraulic circuit
- Return hydraulic circuit

Note: Refer to the Disassembly and Assembly Manual for additional information concerning service of the components of specific hydraulic circuits.

Release of Hydraulic Pressure from the Main Hydraulic System

⚠ WARNING

Personal injury can result from hydraulic oil pressure and hot oil.

Hydraulic oil pressure can remain in the hydraulic system after the engine has been stopped. Serious injury can be caused if this pressure is not released before any service is done on the hydraulic system.

Make sure all of the work tools have been lowered to the ground, and the oil is cool before removing any components or lines. Remove the oil filler cap only when the engine is stopped, and the filler cap is cool enough to touch with your bare hand.

NOTICE
Care must be taken to ensure that fluids are contained during performance of inspection, maintenance, testing, adjusting, and repair of the product. Be prepared to collect the fluid with suitable containers before opening any compartment or disassembling any component containing fluids.

Refer to Special Publication, PERJ1017, “Dealer Service Tool Catalog” for tools and supplies suitable to collect and contain fluids on Cat ® products.

Dispose of all fluids according to local regulations and mandates.

Perform the following steps to release the hydraulic system pressure from the main hydraulic system. For information on any fluids and capacities, refer to this Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Lubricant Viscosities" and "Capacities (Refill)" for more information.

Note: For additional safety, wrap hydraulic joint with material that could absorb/reduce any residual pressure of oil when released. Loosen the joint slowly, pause, and carefully check hydraulic joint for tensions indicating presence of pressure or spring force in lines or components.

1. Position the machine on level ground.

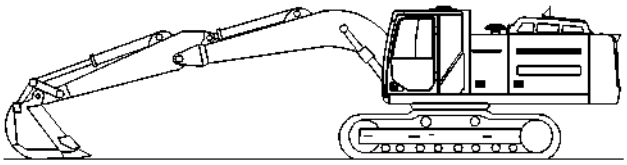


Illustration 491 g02137969

2. Fully retract the stick cylinder rod. Adjust the position of the bucket so that the bucket is parallel to the ground. Lower the boom until the bucket is flat on the ground. Refer to Illustration 491 .

3. Release the system pressure from the implement and swing hydraulic circuits.

a. Shut off the engine.

Note: Perform Step 3b through Step 3d immediately after the engine is shut off to insure adequate pilot system pressure is available to release the pressure in the hydraulic circuits.

b. Turn the engine start switch to the ON position without starting the engine.

c. Place the hydraulic activation control lever in the UNLOCKED position.

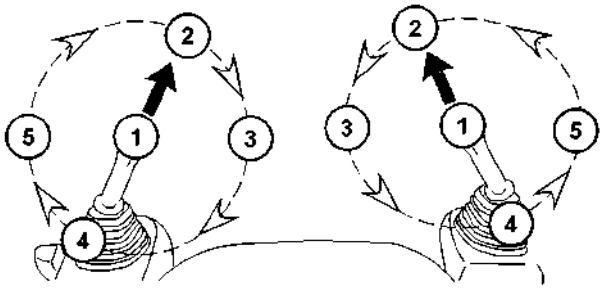


Illustration 492 g03315377

d. Move both joysticks in a circular motion to the FULL STROKE positions multiple times until the pilot accumulator has been exhausted.

Note: Pilot pressure is required to relieve hydraulic system pressure.

e. Place the hydraulic activation control lever in the LOCKED position.

f. Start the engine to recharge pilot accumulator.

Note: Do not activate any levers when recharging pilot accumulator.

g. Shut off the engine.

h. Repeat Step 3b through Step 3g until the high-pressure lines have been released.

Each time the accumulator is recharged, start the joysticks at different positions or rotate in the reverse direction. Doing so will ensure that the same circuit is not being relieved each time.

Note: Pressure could build on these circuits after pressure is released due to linkage settling or bucket rolling.

Note: To release pressure in a single circuit, move the joysticks or pedals of the hydraulic circuit that requires service to the full stroke positions after moving joysticks in a circular motion. Moving the joysticks or pedals to the full stroke position will release the high pressure only in that single hydraulic circuit. Moving the joysticks or pedals to the full stroke position will also release any pressure that might be present in the pilot hydraulic circuit.

4. Release hydraulic system pressure in the attachment circuits, if equipped.

a. Start the engine to charge pilot accumulator.

b. Shut off the engine.

Note: Perform Step 4c through Step 4e immediately after the engine is shut off to insure adequate pilot system pressure is available to release the pressure in the hydraulic circuits.

c. Turn the engine start switch to the ON position without starting the engine.

d. Place the hydraulic activation control lever in the UNLOCKED position.

e. Activate the switch or pedal for the attachment circuit.

f. Place the hydraulic activation control lever in the LOCKED position.

g. Repeat Step 4a through Step 4f for each attachment circuit.

5. After releasing the hydraulic pressure in each of the desired hydraulic circuits, place the hydraulic activation control lever in the LOCKED position.

6. Turn the engine start switch to the OFF position.

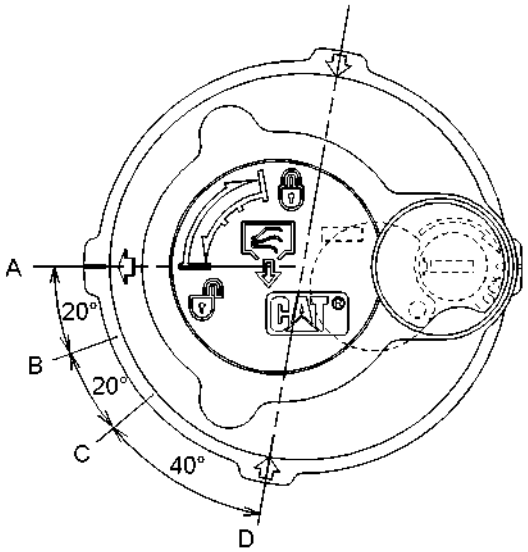


Illustration 493 g02275615

Filler cap

(A) LOCK position
(B) PRESSURE RELEASE - START position
(C) PRESSURE RELEASE - END position
(D) OPEN position

7. Release the pressure that may be present in the return hydraulic circuit with the following procedure. Refer to Illustration 493 for filler cap positions.

a. Turn the filler cap counterclockwise and move the arrow from position (A) to position (B).

b. Release the pressure for a minimum of 45 seconds by moving the arrow from position (B) to position (C).

c. Push the filler cap down and move the arrow from position (C) to position (D).

Note: The travel hydraulic circuit is open to the hydraulic tank. Pressure from the travel circuit is released by releasing pressure from the return circuit.

Note: If a hydraulic line for the boom, the stick or the bucket must be disconnected, utilize the purge screws. Refer to Purge Screws (Boom, Stick and/or Bucket Hydraulic Circuits).

Purge Screws (Boom, Stick and/or Bucket Hydraulic Circuits)

If a hydraulic line for the boom, the stick or the bucket must be disconnected, utilize the purge screws.

⚠ WARNING

Personal injury can result from hydraulic oil pressure and hot oil.

Hydraulic oil pressure can remain in the hydraulic system after the pilot pressure is released. Serious injury can result if this remaining pressure is not released before any service is done on the hydraulic system.

Make sure that the remaining pressure has been released by utilizing the purge screws that are located on the boom, stick and bucket lines. Before any purge screw is turned, the bucket and or all of the attachments must be lowered to the ground or properly supported.

1. Locate a section of hose that will tightly fit over one of the purge screws.

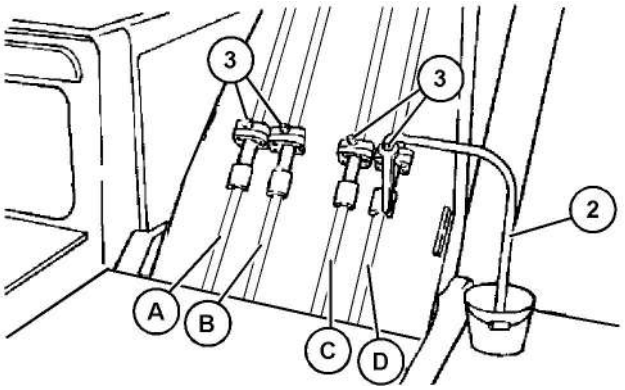


Illustration 494 g06235838

374 Stick and Bucket circuits

(2) Hose
(3) Purge screws (one on each line)
(A) Line for Stick In
(B) Line for Bucket Open
(C) Line for Bucket Close
(D) Line for Stick Out

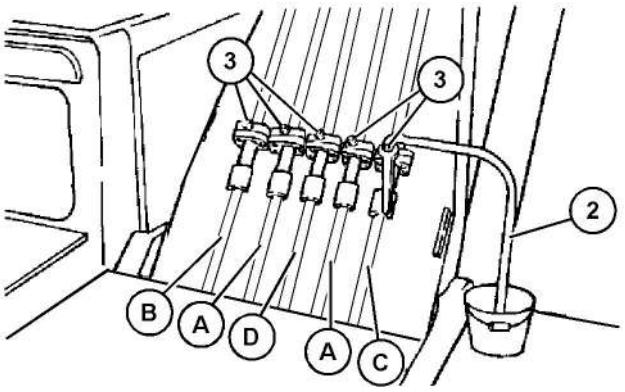


Illustration 495 g06235851

390 Stick and Bucket circuits

(2) Hose
(3) Purge screws (one on each line)
(A) Lines for Stick In
(B) Line for Bucket Open
(C) Line for Bucket Close
(D) Line for Stick Out

2. Connect one end of drain hose (2) to purge screw (3). Insert the other end of drain hose (2) into an empty container.

3. Loosen purge screw (3) by 1/2 turn. Hydraulic oil will be drained from the drain hose to the container.

Note: Dispose of drained fluid according to local regulations.

4. Tighten purge screw (3) to a torque of 13 ± 2 N·m (9.6 ± 1.5 lb ft) after all of the hydraulic oil has been drained from the line.

5. Repeat Step 2 through Step 4 for all the stick and bucket circuits.

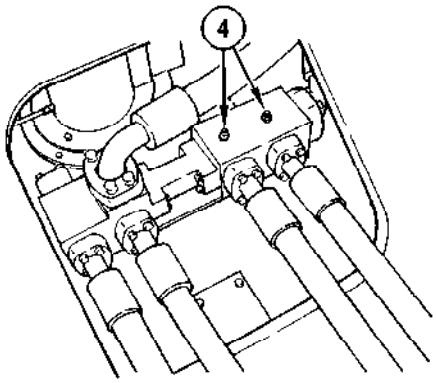


Illustration 496 g00582502

(4) Purge screws for the boom

6. Locate the purge screws for the boom circuit on the boom cylinder lines.

7. Repeat Step 2 through Step 4 for all the boom circuits.

8. Remove the drain hose and install the hydraulic tank fill cap.

9. The pressure in the multiple hydraulic circuits that require service is now released and lines and components can be disconnected or removed from those hydraulic circuits.

i07746333

Welding on Machines and Engines with Electronic Controls

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

Do not weld on any protective structure. If it is necessary to repair a protective structure, contact your Cat dealer.

Proper welding procedures are necessary to avoid damage to the electronic controls and to the bearings. When possible, remove the component that must be welded from the machine or the engine and then weld the component. If you must weld near an electronic control on the machine or the engine, temporarily remove the electronic control to prevent heat related damage. The following steps should be followed to weld on a machine or an engine with electronic controls.

1. Turn off the engine. Place the engine start switch in the OFF position.

2. If equipped, turn the battery disconnect switch to the OFF position. If there is no battery disconnect switch, remove the negative battery cable at the battery.

NOTICE
Do NOT use electrical components (ECM or sensors) or electronic component grounding points for grounding the welder.

3. Clamp the ground cable from the welder to the component that will be welded. Place the clamp as close as possible to the weld. Make sure that the electrical path from the ground cable to the component does not go through any bearing. Use this procedure to reduce the possibility of damage to the following components:

- Bearings of the drive train
- Hydraulic components
- Electrical components
- Other components of the machine

4. Protect any wiring harnesses and components from the debris and the spatter which is created from welding.

5. Use standard welding procedures to weld the materials together.

i04807435

Severe Service Application

SMCS Code: 1000

An engine which operates outside of normal conditions is operating in a severe service application.

An engine that operates in a severe service application may need more frequent maintenance intervals in order to maximize the following conditions:

- Reliability
- Service life

The number of individual applications cause the impossibility of identifying all of the factors which may contribute to severe service operation. Consult your Caterpillar dealer for the unique maintenance that may be necessary for your engine.

An application is a severe service application if any of the following conditions apply:

Severe Environmental Factors

- Frequent operation in dirty air
- Frequent operation at an altitude which is above 1525 m (5000 ft)
- Frequent operation in ambient temperatures which are above 32° C (90° F)
- Frequent operation in ambient temperatures which are below 0° C (32° F)

Severe Operating Conditions

- Frequent operation with inlet air which has a corrosive content
- Operation with inlet air which has a combustible content
- Operation which is outside of the intended application
- Operation with a plugged fuel filter
- Extended operation at low idle (more than 20% of hours)
- Frequent cold starts at temperatures below 0° C (32° F)
- Frequent dry starts (starting after more than 72 hours of shutdown)
- Frequent hot shutdowns (shutting down the engine without the minimum of 2 minutes to 5 minutes of cool down time)
- Operation above the engine rated speed
- Operation below the peak torque speed
- Operating with fuel which does not meet the standards for distillate diesel fuel as stated in Special Publication, SEBU6250, “Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations” “Distillate Diesel Fuel”
- Operating with a blend of distillate fuel which contains more than 20 percent biodiesel

Improper Maintenance Procedures (Maintenance Procedures Which May Contribute to a Severe Service Application)

- Inadequate maintenance of fuel storage tanks from causes such as excessive water, sediment, and microorganism growth.

- Extending maintenance intervals beyond the recommended intervals
- Using fluids which are not recommended in Special Publication, SEBU6250, “Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations”
- Extending maintenance intervals for changing the engine oil and engine coolant without S·O·S validation
- Extending maintenance intervals for changing air filters, oil filters, and fuel filters
- Failure to use a water separator
- Using filters which are not recommended by Special Publication, PEWJ0074, “2008 Cat Filter and Fluid Application Guide”
- Storing the engine for more than 3 months but less than 1 yr (For information about engine storage, refer to Special Publication, SEHS9031, “Storage Procedure for Caterpillar Products”)

i10111121

Maintenance Interval Schedule

SMCS Code: 7000

Ensure that all safety information, warnings, and instructions are read and understood before any operation or any maintenance procedures are performed.

The user is responsible for the performance of maintenance. All adjustments, the use of proper lubricants, fluids, filters, and the replacement of components due to normal wear and aging are included. Failure to adhere to proper maintenance intervals and procedures may result in diminished performance of the product and/or accelerated wear of components.

Use mileage, fuel consumption, service hours, or calendar time, WHICH EVER OCCURS FIRST, to determine the maintenance intervals. Products that operate in severe operating conditions may require more frequent maintenance. Refer to the maintenance procedure for any other exceptions that may change the maintenance intervals.

Note: Before each consecutive interval is performed, all maintenance from the previous interval must be performed.

The following guidelines should be followed if the service hours are not met:

Items listed between 10 and 100 service hours should be performed at least every 3 months.

Items listed between 250 and 500 service hours should be performed at least every 6 months.

Items listed between 1000 service hours and 2500 service hours should be performed at least every year.

When Required

“ Air Conditioner/Cab Heater Filter (Recirculation) - Inspect/Replace“ 340
“ Battery Electrolyte Level - Check“ 341
“ Battery or Battery Cable - Inspect/Replace“. . . . 341
“ Bucket Lifting Eye - Inspect“ 353
“ Bucket Linkage - Inspect/Adjust“ 354
“ Bucket Tips - Inspect/Replace“ 356
“ Cab Air Filter (Fresh Air) - Clean/Replace“ 362
“ Condenser (Refrigerant) - Clean“ 363
“ DEF Filler Screen - Clean“ 369
“ Diesel Exhaust Fluid - Drain“ 371
“ Camera - Clean“ 362
“ Engine Air Filter Primary and/or Secondary Element - Replace“ 375
“ Ether Starting Aid Cylinder - Replace“ 387
“ Film (Product Identification) - Clean“ 388
“ Fuel System - Prime“ 391
“ Fuel Tank Strainer - Clean“ 397
“ Fuses - Replace“ 398
“ Hydraulic System - Purge“ 401
“ Light Emitting Diode Lamp (LED) - Replace“ . . . 418
“ Oil Filter - Inspect“ 420
“ Radiator, Aftercooler and Oil Cooler Cores - Clean“ 421
“ Rollover Protective Structure (ROPS) - Inspect“ 422
“ Track Adjustment - Adjust“ 427
“ Window - Check“ 430
“ Window Washer Reservoir - Fill“ 431
“ Window Wiper - Inspect/Replace“ 431
“ Windows - Clean“. 431

Every 10 Service Hours or Daily for First 50 Hours

“ Boom and Stick Linkage - Lubricate“ 344
“ Bucket Linkage - Lubricate“ 355

Every 10 Service Hours or Daily

“ Travel Alarm - Test“ 429
“ Air Cleaner Dust Valve - Clean/Inspect“. 340
“ Bucket Lifting Eye - Inspect“ 353
“ Cooling System Coolant Level - Check“. 366
“ Engine Oil Level - Check“ 378
“ Fuel System Water Separator - Drain“ 396
“ Fuel Tank Water and Sediment - Drain“ 397
“ Hydraulic System Oil Level - Check“ 415
“ Indicators and Gauges - Test“. 418
“ Seat Belt - Inspect“ 422
“ Track Adjustment - Inspect“ 429

“ Undercarriage - Check“ 430

Every 50 Service Hours

“ Boom and Stick Linkage - Lubricate“ 344
“ Bucket Linkage - Lubricate“ 355

Initial 500 Service Hours

“ Cooling System Coolant Sample - Obtain“ 367
“ Engine Oil and Filter - Change“. 380
“ Final Drive Oil - Change“ 389
“ Swing Drive Oil - Change“. 424

Every 500 Service Hours

“ Boom, Stick, and Frame - Inspect“ 345
“ Engine Oil Sample - Obtain“ 379
“ Final Drive Oil Level - Check“ 389
“ Final Drive Oil Sample - Obtain“ 390
“ Hydraulic System Oil Sample - Obtain“ 416
“ Swing Bearing - Lubricate“ 423
“ Swing Drive Oil Level - Check“ 425
“ Swing Drive Oil Sample - Obtain“ 426

Every 1000 Service Hours

“ Battery - Clean“ 341
“ Battery Hold-Down - Tighten“ 341
“ Battery or Battery Cable - Inspect/Replace“. . . . 341
“ Belt - Inspect/Adjust/Replace“. 342
“ Engine Oil and Filter - Change“. 380
“ Fuel System Primary Filter (Water Separator) Element - Replace“ 391
“ Fuel System Secondary Filter - Replace“. 393
“ Hydraulic System Oil Filter - Replace“ 412
“ Hydraulic System Oil Filter - Replace“ 410
“ Hydraulic Tank Breather - Replace“ 417
“ Swing Drive Oil - Change“. 424

Every 2000 Service Hours

“ Cooling System Coolant Sample - Obtain“ 367
“ Final Drive Oil - Change“ 389
“ Swing Gear - Lubricate“. 426

Every 2500 Service Hours

“ Engine Valve Lash - Check“ 387

Every 3000 Service Hours

“ Hydraulic System Oil Filter (Return) - Replace“ 406

Every 3 Years

“ Seat Belt - Replace“. 423

Every 5000 Service Hours

“ ARD Spark Plug - Clean“. 339
“ Diesel Exhaust Fluid Filter - Replace“ 373
“ Diesel Exhaust Fluid Injector - Replace“ 374
“ Diesel Particulate Filter - Clean“ 375
“ Receiver Dryer (Refrigerant) - Replace“. 421

Every 6000 Service Hours or 3 Years

“ Cooling System Coolant Extender (ELC) - Add“ 365
“ Hydraulic System Oil - Change“ 402

Every 10 000 Service Hours

“ DEF Manifold Filters - Replace“ 369

Every 12 000 Service Hours or 6 Years

“ Cooling System Coolant (ELC) - Change“ 363

i08251838

ARD Spark Plug - Clean
(Emission-Related Component)

SMCS Code: 1555-070

WARNING

Engine hood and engine hood parts can be hot while engine is running or immediately after engine shutdown. Hot parts or hot components can cause burns or personal injury. Do not allow these parts to contact your skin, when engine is running or immediately after engine shutdown. Use protective clothing or protective equipment to protect your skin.

NOTICE
If the engine is running or the key is in the ON position the ARD plug will continue to fire. Turn the key to the OFF position before servicing the ARD plug.

Prepare the machine for maintenance. Refer to “Prepare the Machine for Maintenance“.

Allow the exhaust system to cool before performing this procedure.

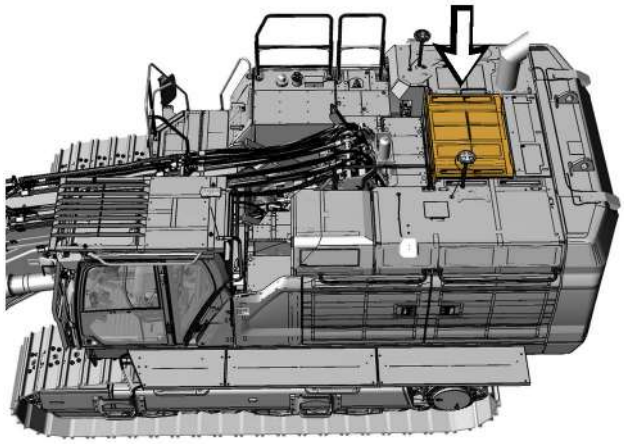


Illustration 497 g06592425

1. Open the engine compartment access door. Refer to “Engine Starting“.

2. Remove any dirt or debris from the area around the spark plug.

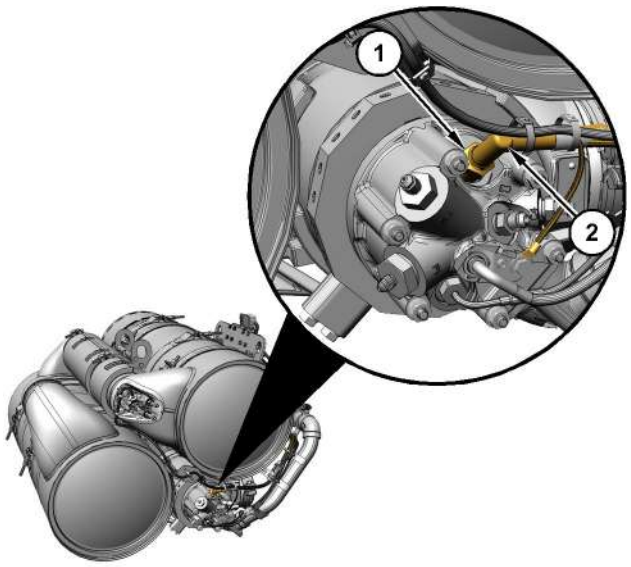


Illustration 498 g06600710

(1) Spark plug
(2) Wiring harness

3. Remove wiring harness (2) from spark plug (1).

4. Use a deep well socket and a breaker bar to loosen the spark plug. If necessary, consult with your Cat ® dealer for the part number of the socket. After the spark plug has been loosened, use the socket to remove the spark plug by hand in order to detect problems with the threads.

5. After removing spark plug (1), clean the ground probe inside the After treatment Regeneration Device (ARD) combustion head by running a Plug Bore Brush through the hole in the ARD combustion head. Run the brush through the hole several times.

6. Carefully clean the spark plug using a nonmetallic cleaning pad. If the probe appears to be bent, replace the spark plug. Otherwise, install the original spark plug (1).

Note: The spark plug may be damaged if the spark plug is dropped. Do not install a spark plug that has been dropped.

NOTICE
Do not overtighten the spark plug. The shell can be cracked and the gasket can be deformed. The metal can deform and the gasket can be damaged. The shell can be stretched. This will loosen the seal that is between the shell and the insulator, allowing combustion pressure to blow past the seal. Serious damage to the engine can occur.

Use the proper torque.

7. Install spark plug (1) by hand until the spark plug contacts the ARD. Tighten the spark plug to a torque of 43.4 N·m (32.0 lb ft) to 51.5 N·m (38.0 lb ft).

8. Connect wiring harness (2).

9. Close the engine compartment access door.

i08251228

Air Cleaner Dust Valve - Clean/ Inspect

SMCS Code: 1051-571-VL

Prepare the machine for maintenance. Refer to “Prepare the Machine for Maintenance“.

1. Open the rear access door on the right side of the machine. Refer to “Access Door and Cover Locations“.

2. The air filter housing is in the engine compartment.

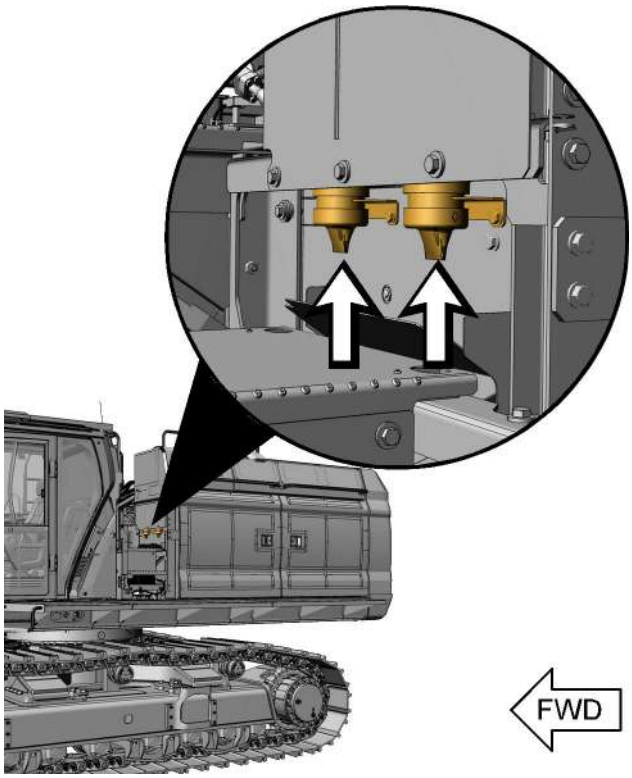


Illustration 499 g06600601

Dust valve

3. Check the dust valve after every 10 service hours or at the end of each day. Actuate the valve by squeezing the lips of the valve to remove any accumulated debris.

4. Close the rear access door.

i06954215

Air Conditioner/Cab Heater Filter (Recirculation) - Inspect/ Replace

SMCS Code: 1054-510-A/C; 1054-040-A/C

NOTICE
An air recirculation filter element plugged with dust will result in decreased performance and service life to the air conditioner or cab heater.

To prevent decreased performance, clean the filter element, as required.

The air conditioner filter is on the lower left side of the cab behind the seat.

1. Slide the operator seat forward.

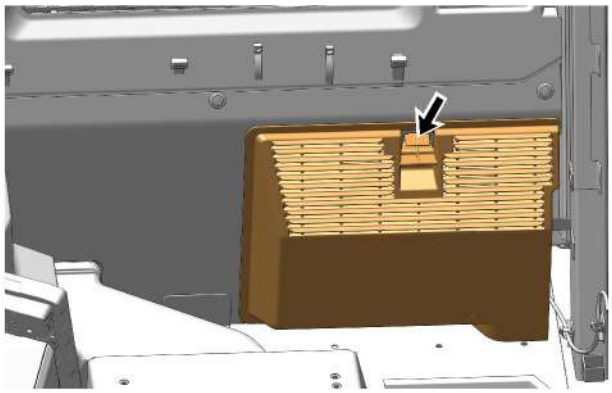


Illustration 500 g06181599

2. Release the cover latch.

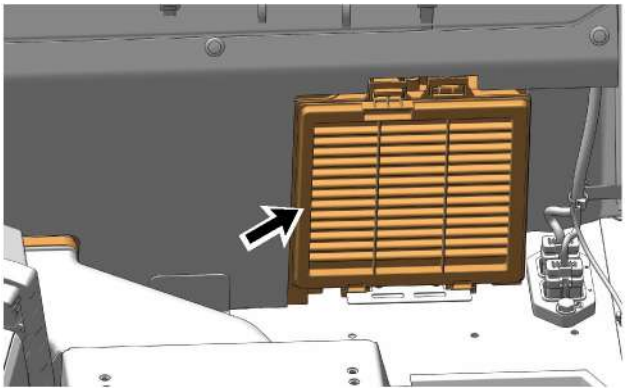


Illustration 501 g06181603

3. Slide the filter element upward.

4. Tap the air filter to remove the dirt. Do not use compressed air to clean the filter.

5. After you clean the filter element, inspect the filter element. If the filter element is damaged or badly contaminated, use a new filter element. Make sure that the filter element is dry.
6. Install the filter element.
7. Install the cover.

NOTICE
Failure to reinstall the filter element for the air conditioning system will contaminate and damage the system components.

i00934864

Battery - Clean

SMCS Code: 1401-070

Clean the battery surface with a clean cloth. Keep the terminals clean and keep the terminals coated with petroleum jelly. Install the post cover after you coat the terminal post with petroleum jelly.

i06019968

Battery Electrolyte Level - Check

SMCS Code: 1401; 1401-535; 1401-535-FLV

WARNING

All lead-acid batteries contain sulfuric acid which can burn the skin and clothing. Always wear a face shield and protective clothing when working on or near batteries.

Note: If the machine is operated in extreme temperatures, check the electrolyte level Every 500 Service Hours or 3 months.

When the engine is not run for long periods of time or when the engine is run for short periods, the batteries may not fully recharge. Ensure a full charge in order to help prevent the battery from freezing.

1. Clean the battery surface with a clean cloth. Clean the terminals and the cable clamps. Coat the clamps and the terminals with silicone lubricant or petroleum jelly. Install the post cover.
2. Inspect the electrolyte level in each battery cell. Maintain the electrolyte level to the bottom of the filler openings. Use distilled water. If distilled water is not available, use clean drinking water.

i00934872

Battery Hold-Down - Tighten

SMCS Code: 7257

Tighten the hold-downs for the battery in order to prevent the batteries from moving during machine operation.

i04064489

Battery or Battery Cable - Inspect/Replace

SMCS Code: 1401-561; 1401-510; 1401-040; 1401; 1402-040; 1402-510

WARNING

Personal injury can result from battery fumes or explosion.

Batteries give off flammable fumes that can explode. Electrolyte is an acid and can cause personal injury if it contacts the skin or eyes.

Prevent sparks near the batteries. Sparks could cause vapors to explode. Do not allow jumper cable ends to contact each other or the engine. Improper jumper cable connections can cause an explosion.

Always wear protective glasses when working with batteries.

1. Turn all of the switches to the OFF position. Turn the engine start switch key to the OFF position.
2. Turn the battery disconnect switch to the OFF position. Remove the key.
3. Disconnect the negative battery cable at the battery.
4. Disconnect the positive battery cable at the battery.
5. Disconnect the battery cables at the battery disconnect switch. The battery disconnect switch is connected to the machine frame.
6. Make necessary repairs or replace the battery.
7. Connect the battery cable at the battery disconnect switch.
8. Connect the positive battery cable of the battery.
9. Connect the negative battery cable of the battery.
10. Install the key and turn the battery disconnect switch to the ON position.

i09789210

Belt - Inspect/Adjust/Replace

SMCS Code: 1357-040; 1357-510; 1357-025; 1397-025; 1397-510; 1397-040

⚠ WARNING

Personal injury can result from rotating and moving parts. Stay clear of all rotating and moving parts.

Never attempt adjustments while the machine is moving or the engine is running unless otherwise specified.

The machine must be parked on a level surface and the engine stopped.

Attach a “Do Not Operate” or similar warning tag to the start switch and controls before servicing, repairing, or making adjustments to the machine.

⚠ WARNING

Accidental machine starting can cause injury or death to personnel working on the machine.

To avoid accidental machine starting, turn the battery disconnect switch to the OFF position and remove the key. If the machine is not equipped with a battery disconnect switch, disconnect the battery cables from the battery and tape the battery clamps.

Place a do not operate tag at the battery disconnect switch location to inform personnel that the machine is being worked on.

NOTICE
Keep all parts clean from contaminants.

Contaminants may cause rapid wear and shortened component life.

NOTICE
Not following the recommendations found in this manual can lead to reduced performance and compartment failure.

Prepare the machine for maintenance. Refer to “Prepare the Machine for Maintenance“ for more information.

For maximum engine performance and maximum utilization of your engine, inspect the belts for wear and for cracking. Check the belt tension. Adjust the belt tension to minimize belt slippage. Belt slippage will decrease the belt life. Belt slippage will also cause poor performance of the alternator and of any driven equipment.

If new belts are installed, recheck the belt adjustment after 30 minutes of operation. If two belts or more are required for an application, replace the belts in belt sets. If only one belt of a pair is replaced, the new belt will carry more load as the older belts are stretched. The additional load on the new belt could cause the new belt to break.

Note: This engine is equipped with a belt tightener that automatically adjusts the belt to the correct tension.

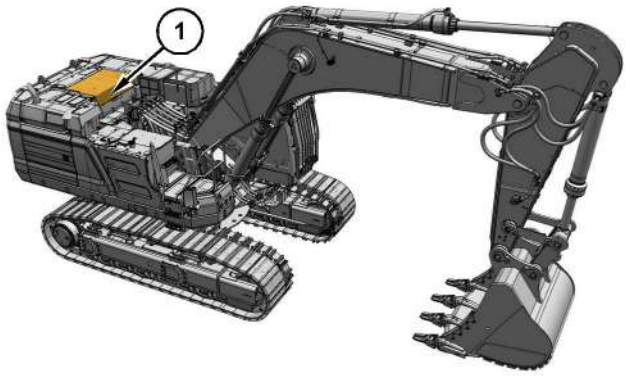


Illustration 502 g07594973

(1) Engine hood

1. Open engine hood (1). Refer to “Access Door and Cover Locations“ for more information.

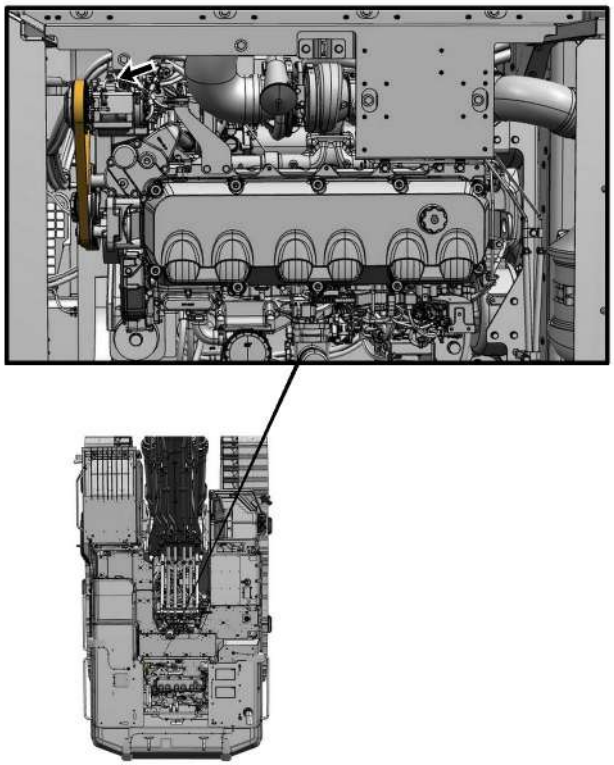


Illustration 503 g07594977

Top view of the machine
Location of the belt

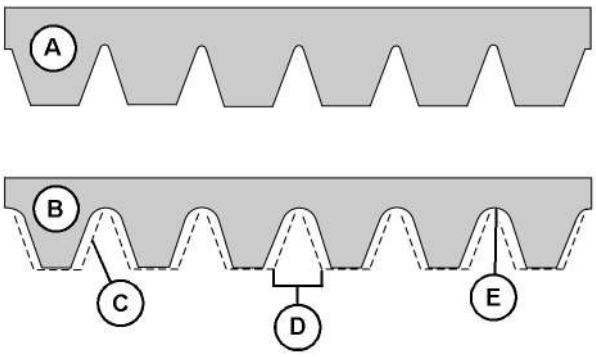


Illustration 504 g06206193

(A) New belt
(B) Worn belt

2. Inspect the condition of the serpentine belt. Over time the belt ribs will lose material (C). The space between the ribs will increase (D). The loss of material will cause the pulley sheave to contact the belt valley. This will lead to belt slippage and accelerated wear (E). Replace the belt if the belt is worn or frayed.

3. If the belt requires replacement, perform Step 3a through Step 3d.

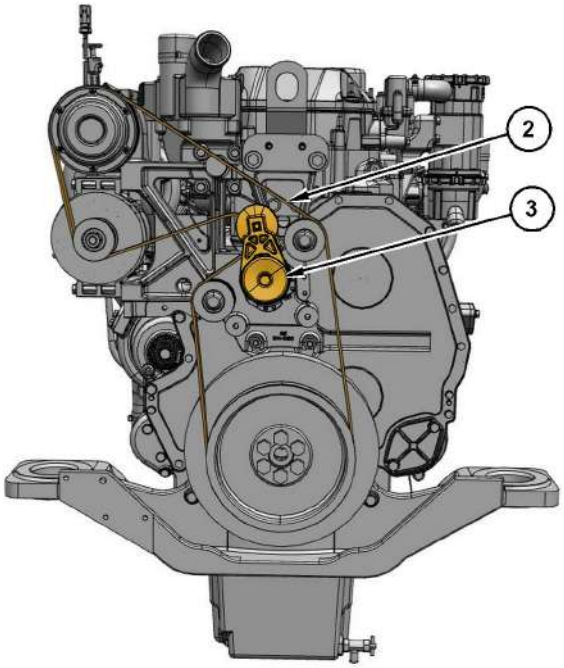


Illustration 505 g07594983

Some parts removed for better clarity

(2) Belt
(3) Belt tensioner

a. Rotate belt tensioner (3) counter clockwise to remove belt (2).

b. Remove belt (2).

c. Install new belt (2).

d. Rotate belt tensioner (3) clockwise to install new belt (2).

Note: This engine is equipped with a belt tightener that automatically adjusts the belt to the correct tension.

4. Close engine hood (1). Refer to “Access Door and Cover Locations“ for more information.

i07531958

Boom and Stick Linkage - Lubricate

SMCS Code: 6501-086; 6502-086

Note: Caterpillar recommends the use of 5% molybdenum grease for lubricating the boom, and stick linkage. Refer to Special Publication, SEBU6250, “Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations” for more information on molybdenum grease.

Apply lubricant through all fittings after operation under water.

Wipe all fittings before you apply lubricant.

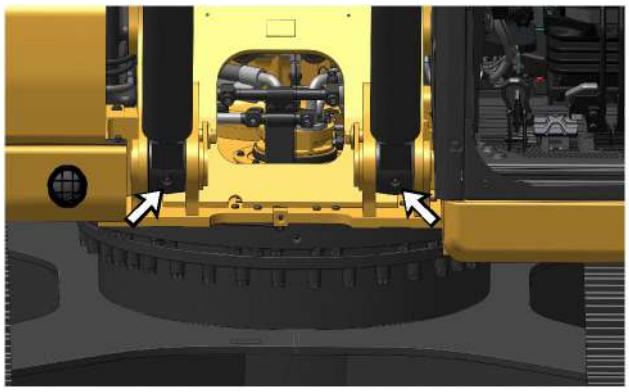


Illustration 506 g06183509

1. Apply lubricant through the fitting at the base of each boom cylinder.

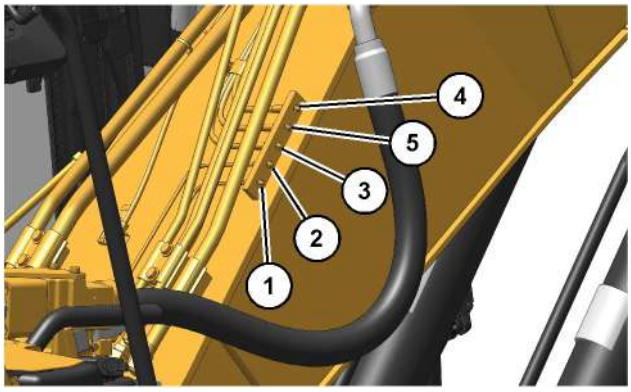


Illustration 507 g06183534

Note: Your machine may have the fittings mounted in a vertical position as shown in the illustration above, or your machine may have the fittings mounted in a horizontal position.

2. The fittings are at the base of the boom. The fittings can be serviced from the platform on the fuel tank. To lubricate the lower boom bearings, apply lubricant through fittings (1) and (2).

3. Apply lubricant through fittings (3) and (4) for the boom cylinder rod.

4. Apply lubricant through fitting (5) for the stick cylinder head.

Note: To ensure proper lubrication of the lower boom bearings and of the boom cylinder rod end bearings, lubricant should be applied through fittings (1), (2), (3), and (4). Apply lubricant first when the boom is raised and any attachment is suspended. Then apply lubricant when the boom is lowered and the attachment is rested on the ground with a slight downward pressure.

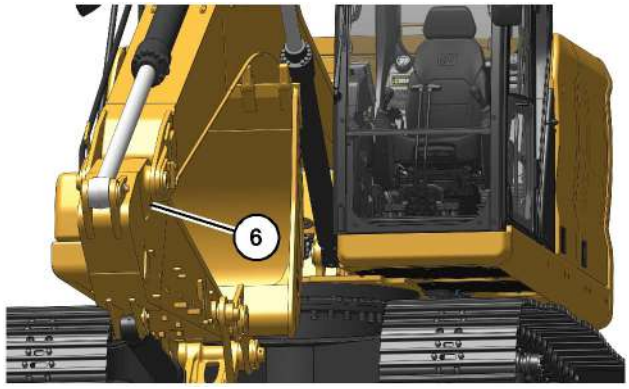


Illustration 508 g06183854

5. Apply lubricant through fitting (6). Fitting (6) is at the connection point of the boom and of the stick.

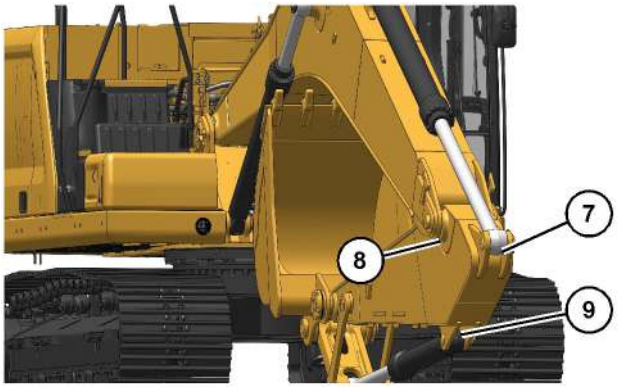


Illustration 509 g06183864

6. Apply lubricant through fitting (7) on the stick cylinder rod. Apply lubricant through fitting (8) at the connection point of the boom and of the stick. Apply lubricant through fitting (9) at the bucket cylinder head end.

i09692251

Boom, Stick, and Frame - Inspect

SMCS Code: 6501; 6502; 6506

WARNING

Unexpected machine movement can cause injury or death.

To avoid possible machine movement, move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position and attach a Special Instruction, SEHS7332, "Do Not Operate" or similar warning tag to the hydraulic lockout control.

WARNING

Access to this service point may require climbing on the equipment. Slipping or falling while climbing on the equipment could result in personal injury or death. Refer to the Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Mounting and Dismounting" topic, for safety information.

WARNING

Personal injury or death may occur from failure to adhere to the following warnings.

The boom can fall if a control is moved or if a hydraulic component fails.

Do not rely on a hydraulic cylinder to hold the boom.

Support the boom during all service procedures.

WARNING

Boom load may cause cylinder oil pressure to reach relief pressure of the boom lowering control device when the boom is supported by one cylinder. Boom can lower suddenly, causing possible injury or death.

To avoid possible injury or death, be sure no one is under or near the work tool before manually lowering the boom.

Keep all personnel away from the boom drop area when lowering the boom with the engine stopped.

NOTICE
The areas highlighted are of particular importance but other areas must not be neglected. The entire structure must be carefully examined.

Prepare the machine for maintenance. Refer to "Prepare the Machine for Maintenance".

All earthmoving equipment is prone to a high degree of wear. Regular inspections for structural damage are necessary.

The interval between these inspections depends on the factors that follow.

- The age of the machine.
- The severity of the application.
- The loads that have been carried on the machine.
- The amount of routine servicing that has been carried out.

If the machine has been involved in any accident, the machine must be inspected thoroughly. Inspect the machine regardless of the date of the last inspection.

The machine must be clean before the machine is inspected.

Proper repair of frames and structures requires specific knowledge of the following subjects.

- Materials that have been used to manufacture the frame members.
- Frame member construction.
- Repair techniques that are recommended by the manufacturer.

Consult your Cat ® dealer if repairs are necessary. The Cat ® dealer is qualified to carry out repairs on your behalf.

All repairs should be carried out by a Cat ® dealer. If you carry out your own repairs, contact your Cat ® dealer for advice about proper repair techniques.

Particular attention should be given to all welded structures. Inspect the following items thoroughly for cracks and for defects:

- Boom
- Stick
- Blade
- Upper frame
- Lower frame
- Bucket linkage lifting eye

Boom

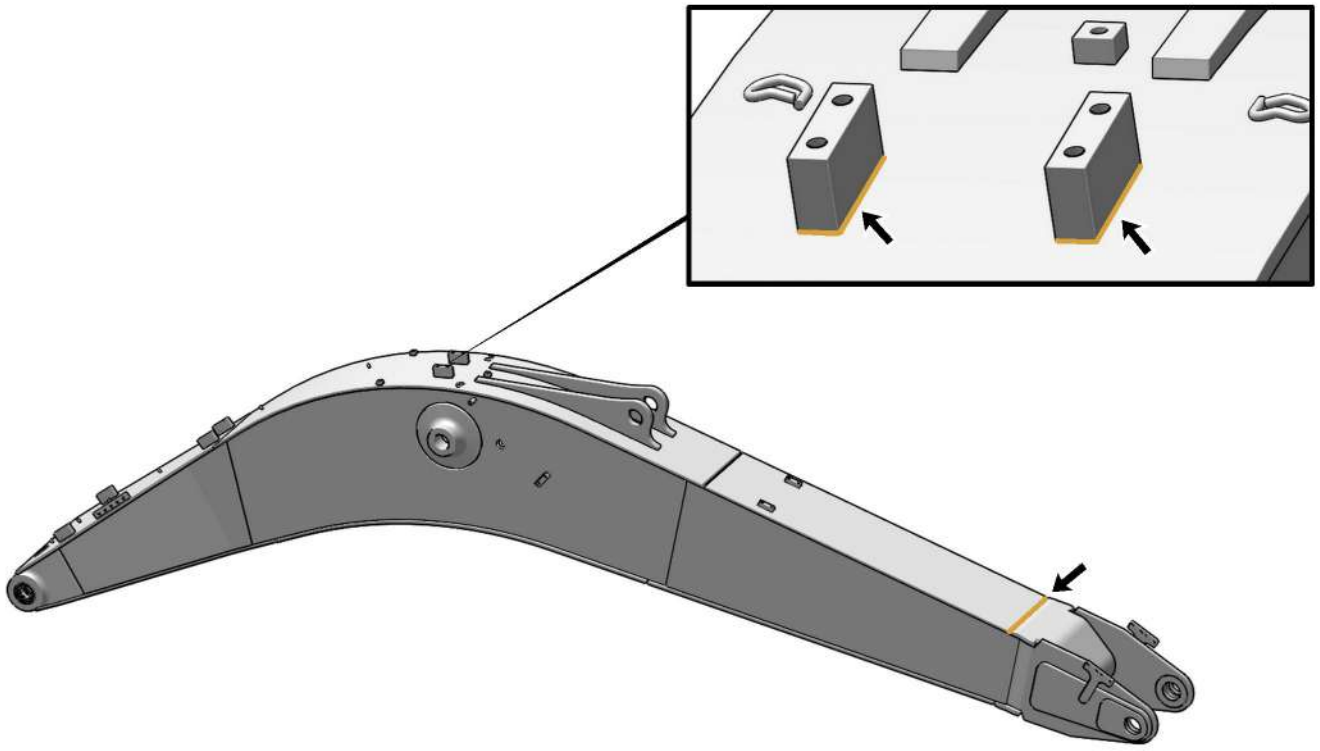


Illustration 510 g07552764

Typical example

Checkpoints on boom

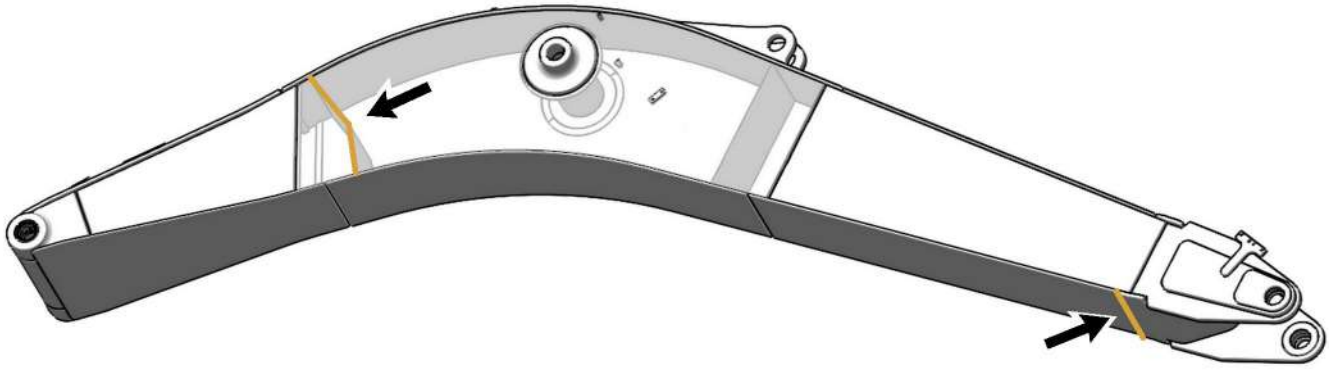


Illustration 511 g07552769

Typical example

Checkpoints on boom

Check all welded joints and check the mounting points on the boom. Refer to illustration 510 and illustration 511 for more information.

Note: Replace any hardware that is loose, damaged, or missing with original replacement parts only.

Stick

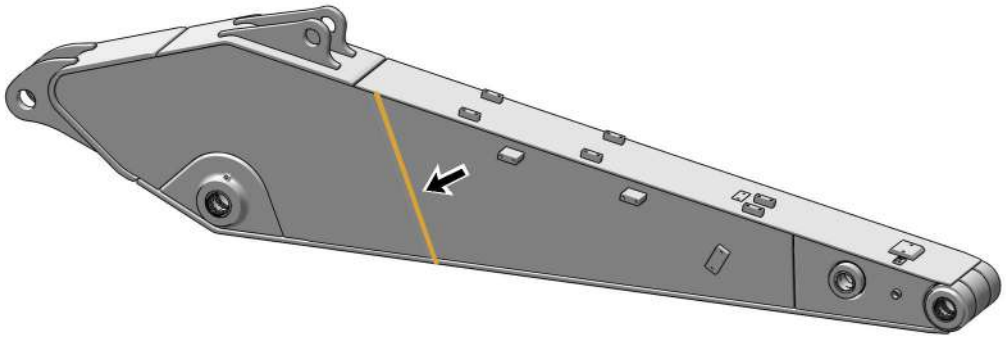


Illustration 512 g07552777

Typical example

Checkpoints on stick

Check all welded joints and check the mounting points for the stick.

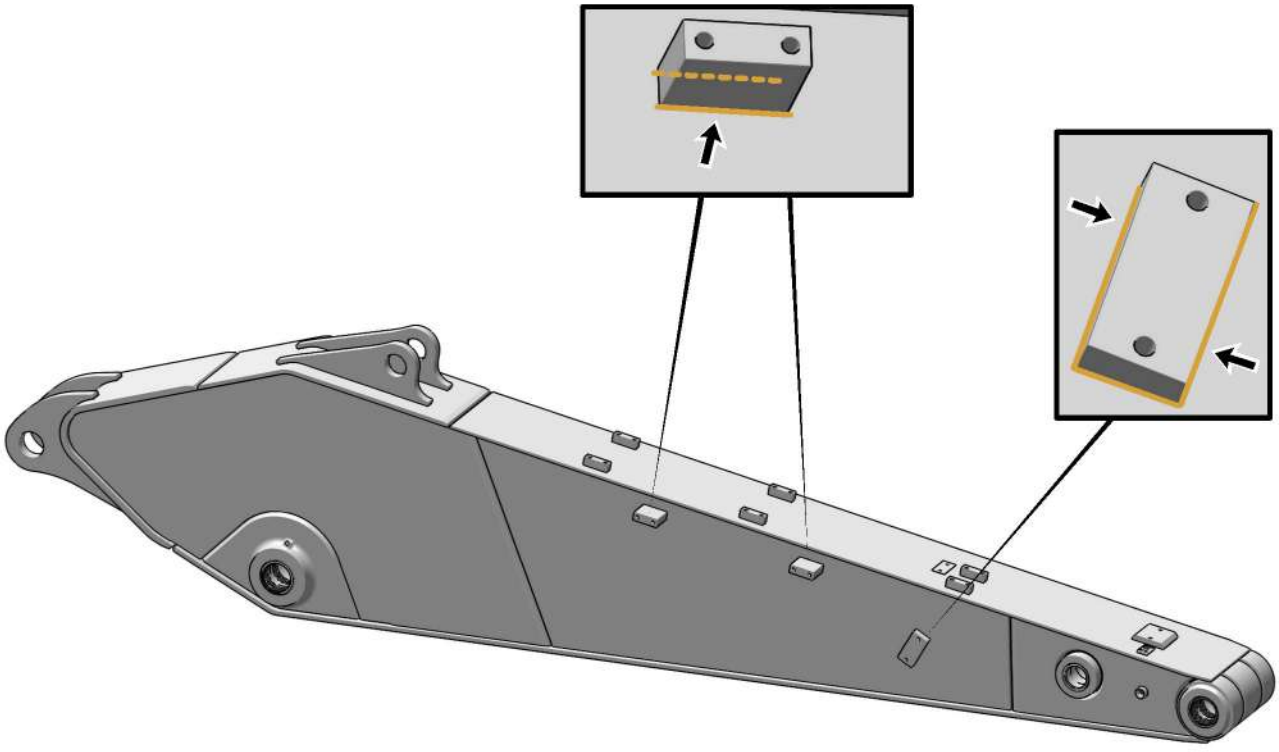


Illustration 513 g07552783

Typical example

Checkpoints on stick

Similarly, check on other side of the stick. Refer to illustration 512 and illustration 513 for more information.

Upper Frame

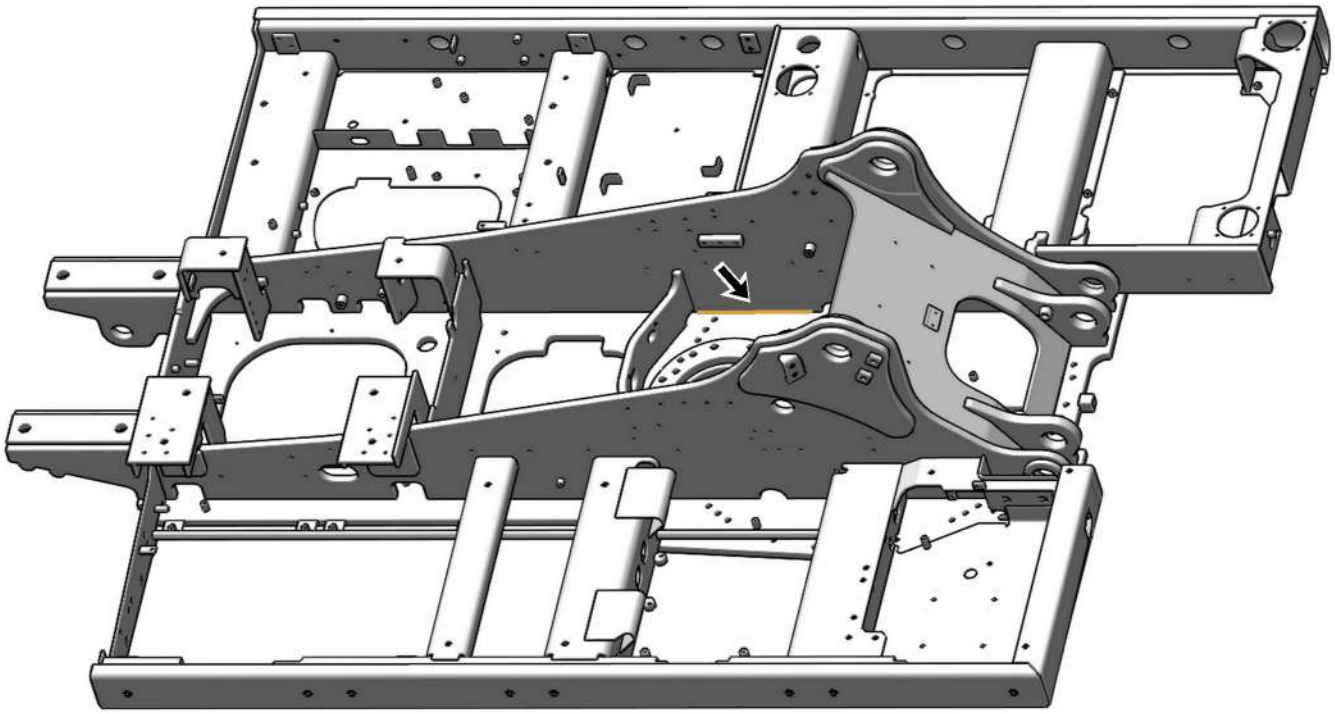


Illustration 514 g07552789

Checkpoints on upper frame

Visual inspection on both left and right side of upper frame

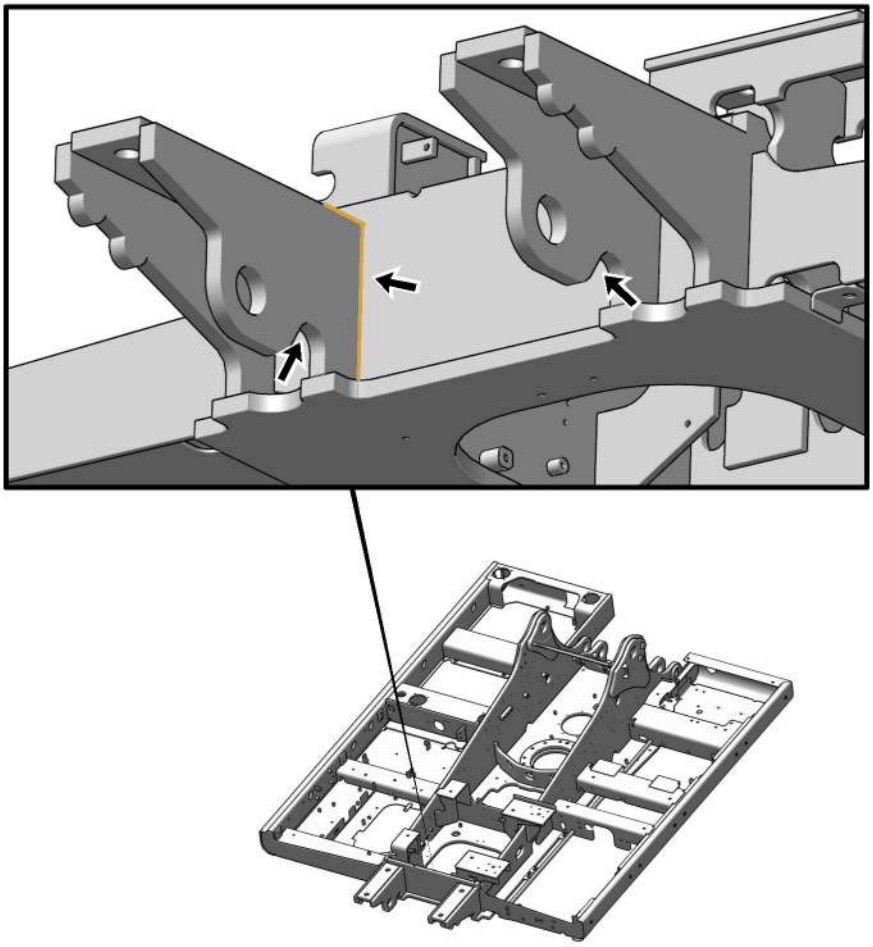


Illustration 515 g07552796

Checkpoints on upper frame

Visual inspection on both left and right side of the machine

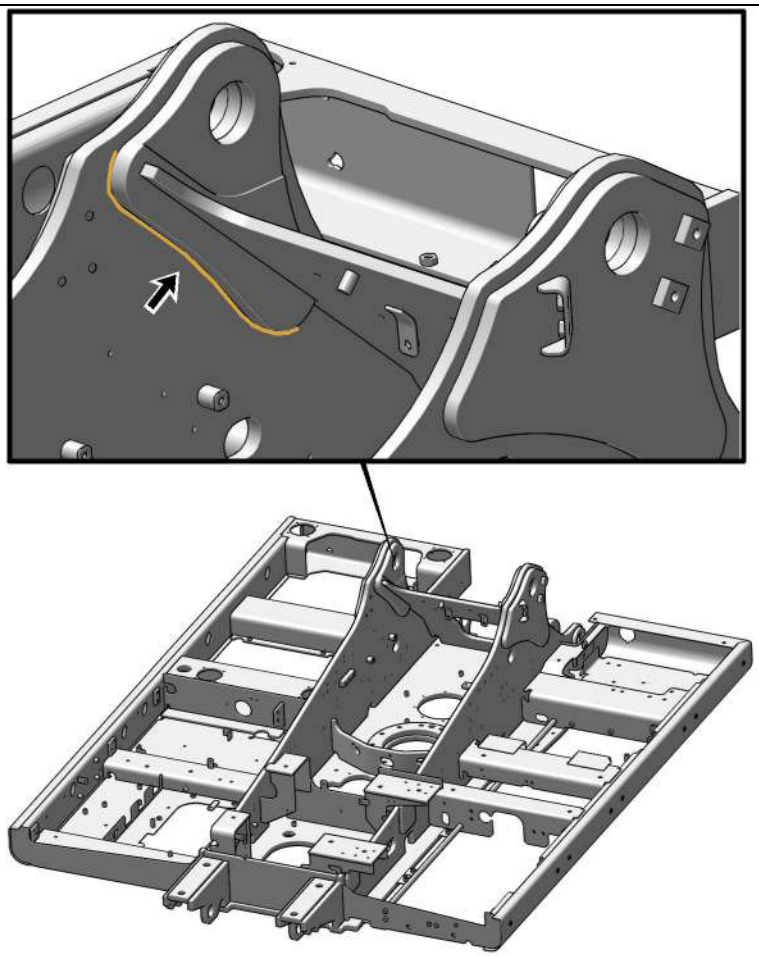


Illustration 516 g07552810

Checkpoints on upper frame

Visual inspection on both left and right side of upper frame

Check for damaged panels. Specifically look for any damage to the cab that might invalidate the certification. The cab is a safety device that must be maintained in good condition. Check for loose hardware or missing hardware. Refer to illustration 514 , illustration 515 , and illustration 516 for more information.

Note: Replace any hardware that is loose, damaged, or missing with original replacement parts only.

Lower Frame

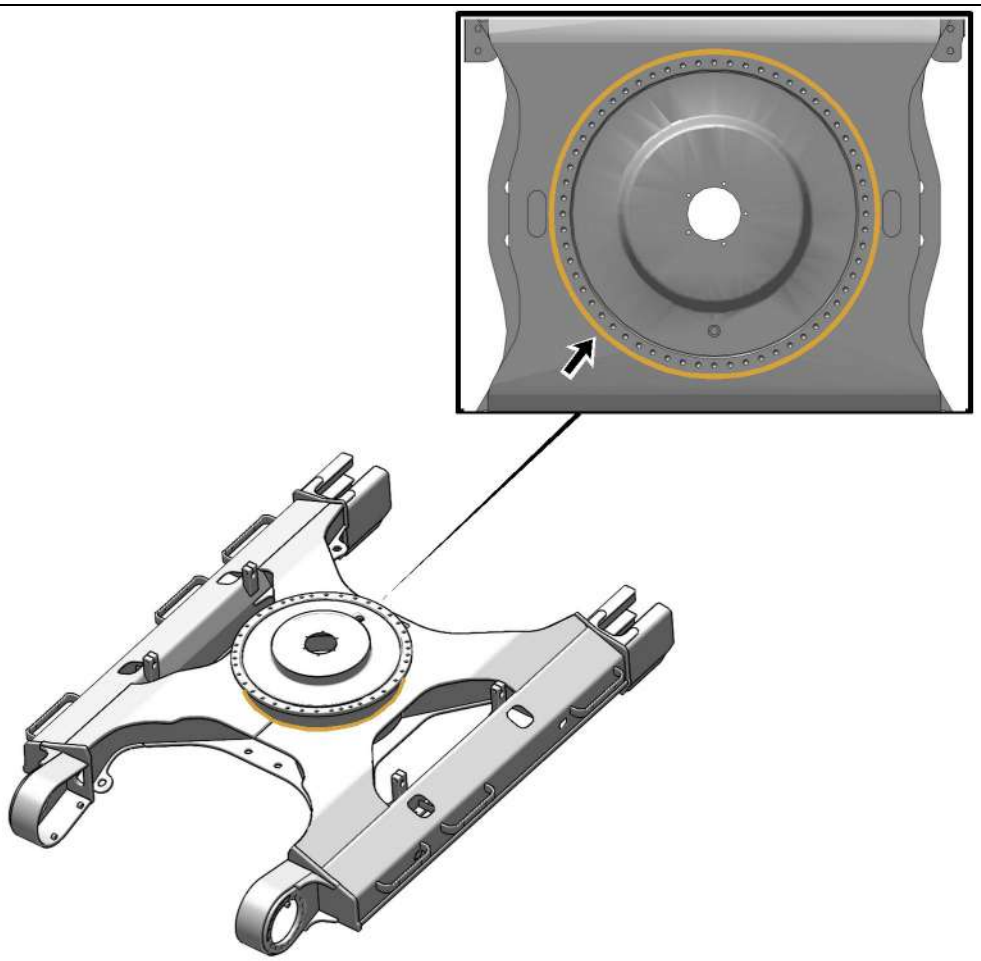


Illustration 517 g07552819

Typical example

Checkpoints on lower frame

Check the weld joints in the lower structure. Check for loose hardware or missing hardware.

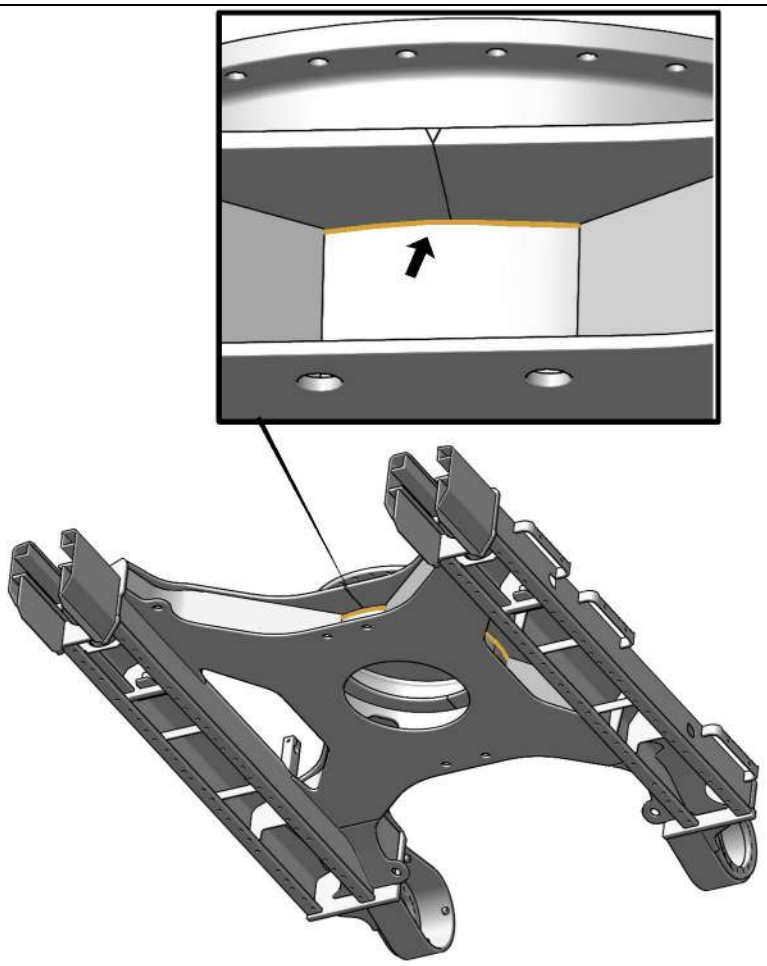


Illustration 518 g07552823

Typical example

Checkpoints on lower frame

Check the weld joints in the lower structure. Check for loose hardware or missing hardware. Refer to illustration 517 and illustration 518 for more information.

i08707939

Bucket Lifting Eye - Inspect

SMCS Code: 1122; 6001

WARNING

Unexpected machine movement can cause injury or death.

To avoid possible machine movement, move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position and attach a Special Instruction, SEHS7332, “Do Not Operate” or similar warning tag to the hydraulic lockout control.

Prepare the machine for maintenance. Refer to “Prepare the Machine for Maintenance“.

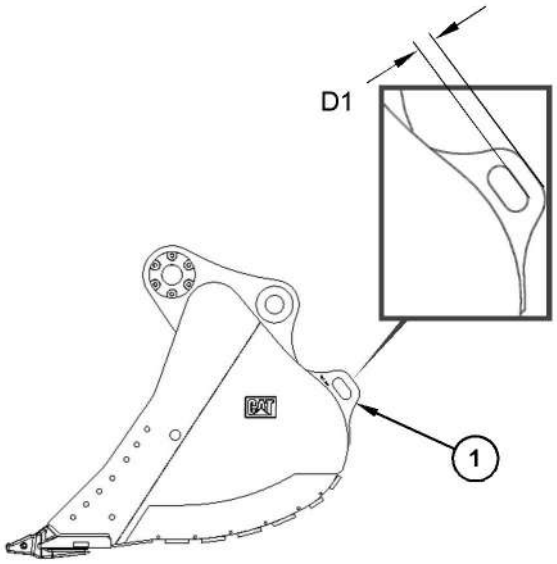


Illustration 519 g06750345

Typical example of bucket

(1) Bucket lifting eye
(D1) Minimum allowable thickness

Table 56

Linkage	Nominal Thickness	Minimum Allowable Thickness (D1)
B	24 mm (0.9 inch)	21 mm (0.8 inch)
CB	29 mm (1.1 inch)	25 mm (1.0 inch)
DB	34 mm (1.3 inch)	29 mm (1.1 inch)
TB	44 mm (1.7 inch)	39 mm (1.5 inch)
VB	49 mm (1.9 inch)	43 mm (1.7 inch)
HB	59 mm (2.3 inch)	51 mm (2.0 inch)

Visually inspect bucket lifting eye (1). If any of the following conditions exist, consult your Cat ® dealer.

- Excessive pitting or corrosion
- Excessive nicks or gouges
- Excessive wear or cracking of the welds
- Wall thickness is below minimum allowable thickness (D1). Refer to Table 56 .

i08683901

Bucket Linkage - Inspect/ Adjust

SMCS Code: 6513-040; 6513-025

If equipped with adjustable bucket linkage, perform the following steps.

⚠ WARNING

Unexpected machine movement can cause injury or death.

To avoid possible machine movement, move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position and attach a Special Instruction, SEHS7332, "Do Not Operate" or similar warning tag to the hydraulic lockout control.

NOTICE
Improperly adjusted bucket clearance could cause galling on the contact surfaces of the bucket and stick, resulting in excessive noise and/or damaged O-ring seals.

Prepare the machine for maintenance. Refer to "Prepare the Machine for Maintenance".

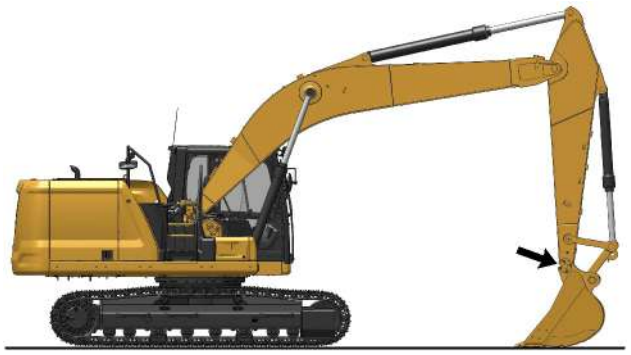


Illustration 520 g06185692

Area for linkage adjustment

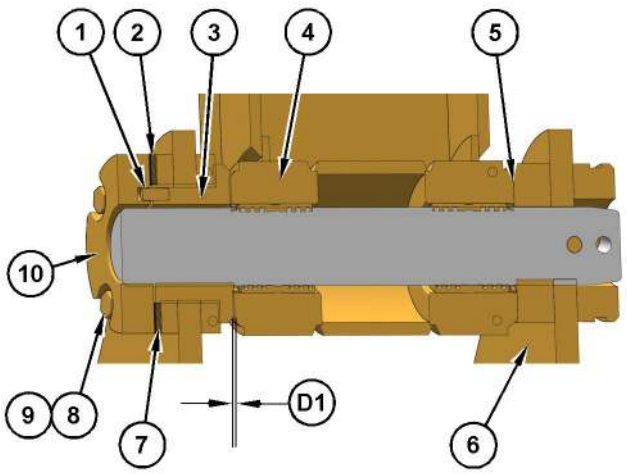


Illustration 521 g06733974

(1) Pin
(2) Shim
(3) Flange
(4) Stick boss
(5) No gap
(6) Bucket boss
(7) Location
(8) Bolt
(9) Washer
(10) Plate
(D1) Bucket clearance

The clearance of the bucket control linkage on this machine can be adjusted by shimming. If the gap between the bucket and the stick becomes excessive, adjust bucket clearance (D1) to 0.5 to 1.0 mm (0.02 to 0.04 inch).

Two shims of different thickness are used at location (7). The thicknesses of the shims are 0.5 mm (0.02 inch) and 1.0 mm (0.04 inch).

1. Position the machine on a level surface and lower the bucket to the ground.

2. Slowly operate the swing control lever until stick boss (4) and the bucket boss (6) are in full face contact at no gap (5). This will help to determine the total clearance of the connection point of the stick and of the bucket.

3. Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Operator Controls”.

4. Stop the engine. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Stopping the Engine”.

5. Measure bucket clearance (D1), which is the existing total clearance.

6. Determine the number of shims that need to be removed from shims (2) by using the following calculation:

Subtract 0.5 mm (0.02 inch) or 1.0 mm (0.04 inch) from bucket clearance (D1).

7. Remove the appropriate number of shims at location (7) to meet the above thickness. Make sure that you use a minimum of three 0.5 mm (0.02 inch) shims. To remove the shims, remove bolts (8), washers (9), and plate (10).

8. After the correct number of shims has been removed and pin (1) is aligned with the pin hole, install plate (10), bolts (8), and washers (9). Tighten the bolts to 240 ± 40 N·m (175 ± 30 lb ft).

9. After installation, make sure that bucket clearance (D1) is still correct.

i07659933

Bucket Linkage - Lubricate

SMCS Code: 6513-086

Note: Caterpillar recommends the use of 5% molybdenum grease for lubricating the bucket linkage. Refer to Special Publication, SEBU6250, “Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations” for more information on grease.

Wipe all fittings before you apply lubricant.

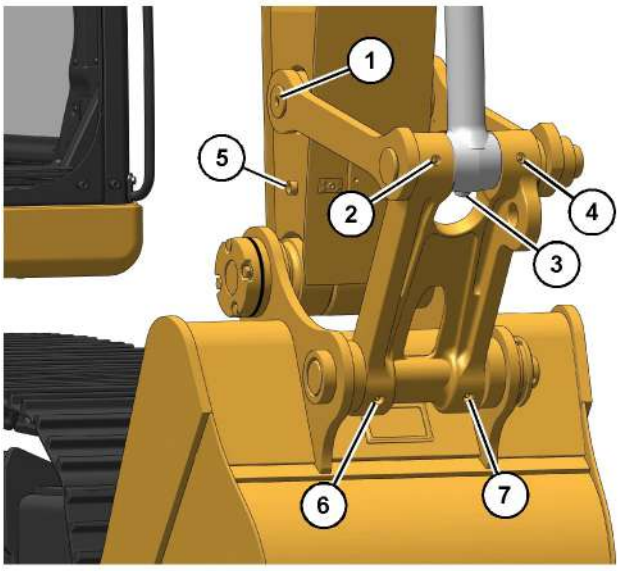


Illustration 522 g06183336

Note: Completely fill all cavities of the bucket control linkage with grease when you initially install a bucket.

1. Apply lubricant through fittings for the linkages (1), (2), (3), and (4).

2. Apply lubricant through fittings for the bucket (5), (6), and (7).

Note: Service the above fittings after you operate the bucket under water.

i09598478

Bucket Tips - Inspect/Replace

SMCS Code: 6805-510; 6805-040

WARNING

Personal injury or death can result from bucket falling.

Block the bucket before changing bucket tips or side cutters.

WARNING

Retaining bolts can have sharp edges that may cause personal injury. Do not hold the bolts by hand. Use appropriate tools to hold and remove bolts.

K Series GET Drive-through System Bucket Tips

Note: To maximize the life of the bucket tip and the penetration of the bucket tip, the bucket tip can be rotated.

Illustration 523 g01055179

Acceptable wear

Illustration 524 g01055196

Replace this bucket tip.

Check the bucket tips for wear. If the bucket tip has a hole, replace the bucket tip.

Removal Procedure

WARNING

Retainer pin, when struck with force, can fly out and cause injury to nearby people.

Make sure the area is clear of people when driving retainer pins.

To avoid injury to your eyes, wear protective glasses when striking a retainer pin.

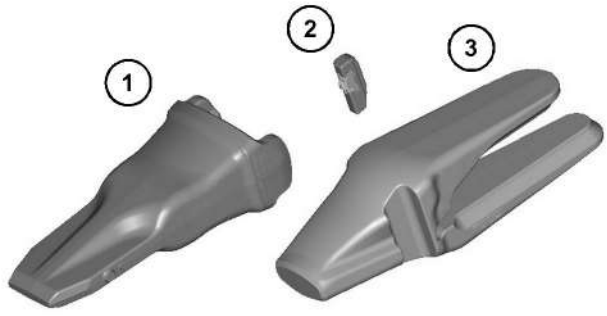


Illustration 525 g06528662

(1) Bucket tip
(2) Retainer
(3) Adapter

Note: Retainers are often damaged during the removal process. Caterpillar recommends the installation of a new retainer when bucket tips are rotated or replaced.

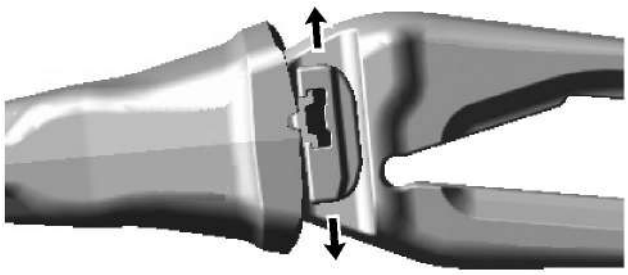


Illustration 526 g01054386

Internal view

1. Use a hammer and a punch to drive out the retainer. The retainer can be removed from the top of the bucket tip or from the bottom of the bucket tip.

2. Remove the bucket tip from the adapter with a slight counterclockwise rotation.

Installation Procedure

1. Clean the adapter, if necessary.

2. Install the new bucket tip or the rotated bucket tip onto the adapter with a slight clockwise rotation.

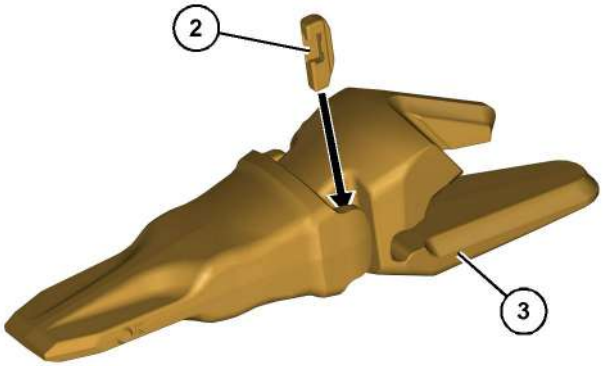


Illustration 527 g06528668

Proper location for installing the retainer

3. The retainer can be installed from the top of the bucket tip or from the bottom of the bucket tip. Use a hammer and a 1 inch X 1 inch X 8 inch steel bar stock to drive retainer (2) into adapter (3).

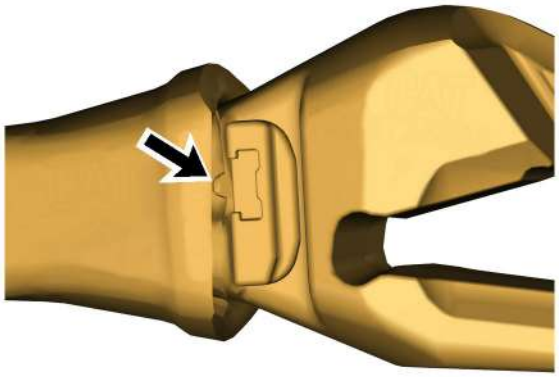


Illustration 528 g06528672

Internal View

The latch of the retainer is properly seated in the recess of the bucket tip.

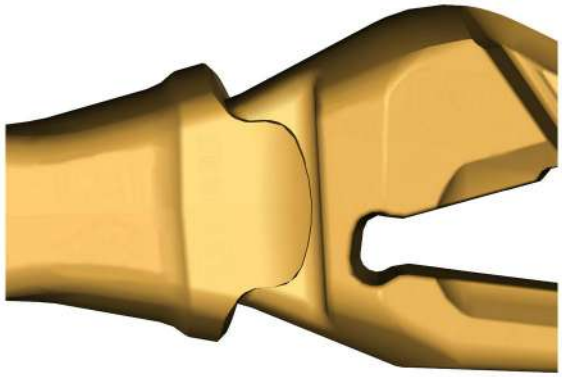


Illustration 529 g06528674

A properly installed retainer does not extend beyond the ear of the bucket tip.

4. The retainer is properly seated if the retainer can be moved slightly by the technicians hand. If the retainer cannot be moved, adjust the retainer, as needed. The ends of the retainer should not extend beyond the ear of the bucket tip.

J Series GET Bucket Tips

⚠ WARNING

Block the bucket before changing the bucket teeth.

To prevent possible injury to the eyes, wear a protective face shield when striking the pin.

The pin, when struck, can fly out and cause injury to nearby personnel.

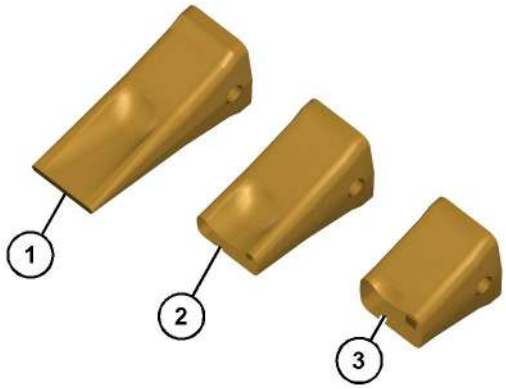


Illustration 530 g06528680

(1) Usable tip
(2) Replaceable bucket tip
(3) Overworn tip

Check the bucket tips for wear. If the bucket tip has a hole, replace the bucket tip.

1. Remove the pin from the bucket tip. The pin can be removed by one of the following methods.

- Use a hammer and a punch from the retainer side of the bucket to drive out the pin.
- Use a Pin-Master. Follow Step 1a through Step 1c for the procedure.

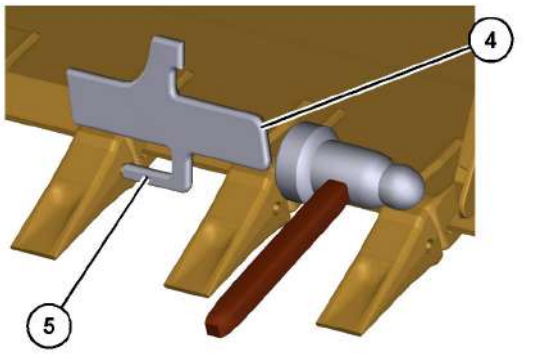


Illustration 531 g06214793

(4) Back of Pin-Master
(5) Extractor

a. Place the Pin-Master on the bucket tip.

b. Align extractor (5) with the pin.

c. Strike the Pin-Master at the back of the tool (4) and remove the pin.

Note: Discard the old pin and the retainer assembly. When you change tips, use a new pin and a new retainer assembly. Refer to the appropriate parts manual for your machine.

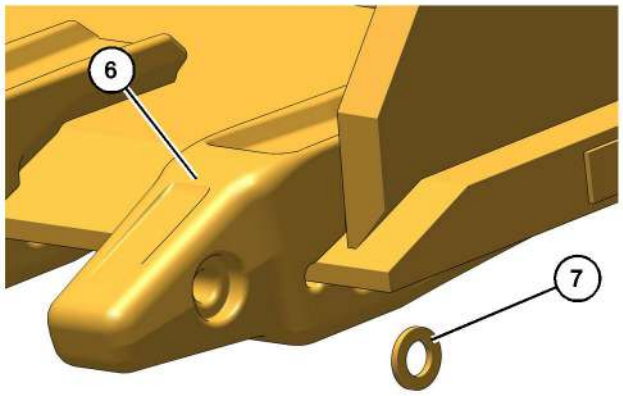


Illustration 532 g06214921

(6) Retainer assembly
(7) Adapter

2. Clean the adapter and the pin.

3. Fit retainer assembly (6) into the counterbore that is in the side of adapter (7). Make sure that the face of the retainer assembly with the marking “OUTSIDE” is visible.

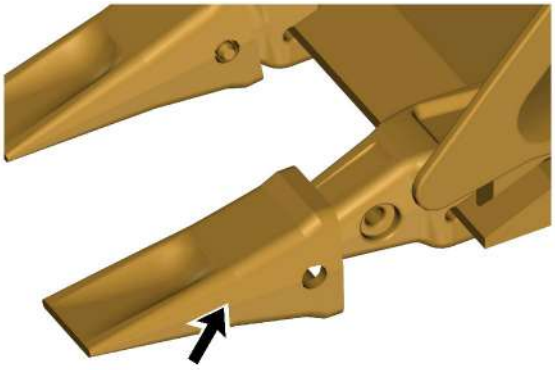


Illustration 533 g06214795

4. Install the new bucket tip onto the adapter.

Note: The bucket tips can be rotated by 180 degrees to allow the tip to wear evenly. You may also move the tips from the outside teeth to the inside teeth. Check the tips often. If wear is present on the tips, rotate the tips. The outside teeth generate the most wear.

5. Drive the pin through the bucket tip. The pin can be installed by using one of the following methods:

- From the same side of the retainer, drive the pin through the bucket tip, the retainer assembly, and the adapter.
- Use a Pin-Master. Follow Step 5a through Step 5e for the procedure.

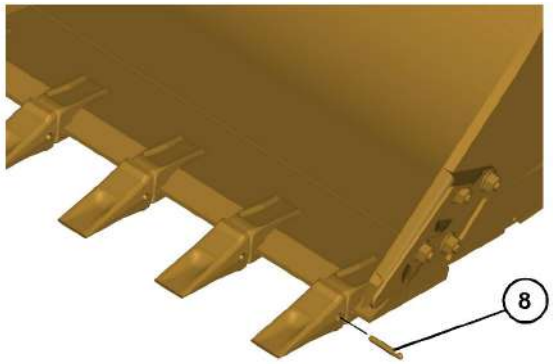


Illustration 534 g06214803

(8) Pin

a. Insert pin (8) through the bucket tip.

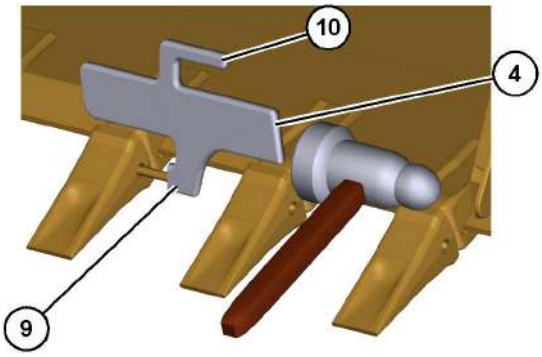


Illustration 535 g06214807

b. Place the Pin-Master over the bucket tips so that the pin will fit into the counterbore of the pin holder (9).

c. Strike the Pin-Master with a hammer at the back of the tool (4) to insert the pin.

d. Slide pin holder (9) away from the pin and rotate the tool slightly to align pin setter (10) with the pin.

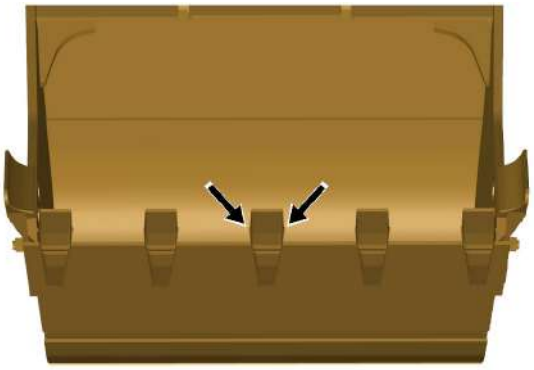


Illustration 536 g06214812

Final assembly of pin into bucket tip

e. Strike the end of the tool until the pin is fully inserted.

Bucket Tips (Cat® Advansys) - If Equipped

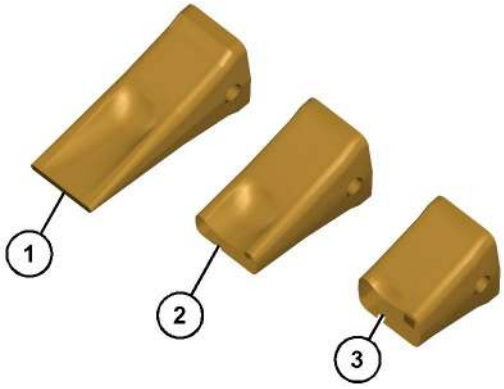


Illustration 537 g06528680

(1) Usable tip
(2) Replaceable bucket tip
(3) Overworn tip

Check the bucket tips for wear. If the bucket tip has a hole, replace the bucket tip.

Removal

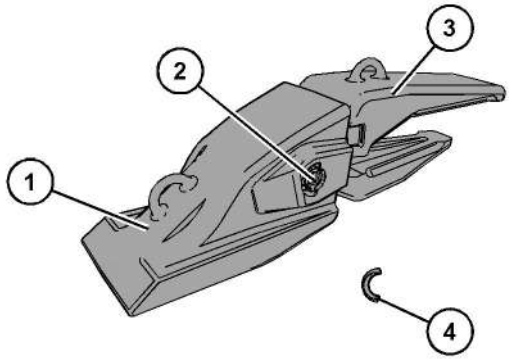


Illustration 538 g06528701

(1) Bucket Tip
(2) Retainer
(3) Adapter
(4) Compression Sleeve

1. Use a 1/2" ratchet and rotate the retainer (2) 180 degrees to the unlocked position.

2. Remove the bucket tip (1) from adapter (3).

3. Clean adapter (3).

Installation

1. Clean the adapter and the area around the latch, if necessary.

2. Install the new bucket tip (1) onto the adapter (3).

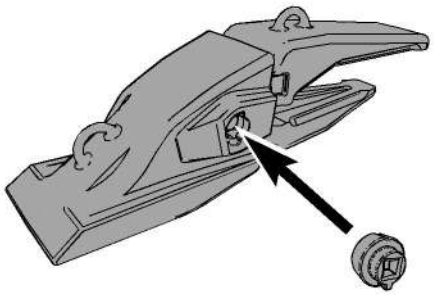


Illustration 539 g06528728

3. Use a 1/2" ratchet to rotate the retainer (2) 180 degrees to the locked position.

Side Cutters

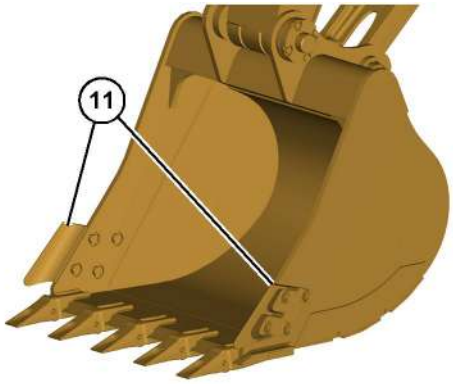


Illustration 540 g06214814

Bucket With Side Cutters

1. Remove the mounting bolts and the side cutters (11).

2. Clean the mounting surface of the side plate on the bucket and of the side cutter. Remove any burrs or protrusions on the mating surfaces.

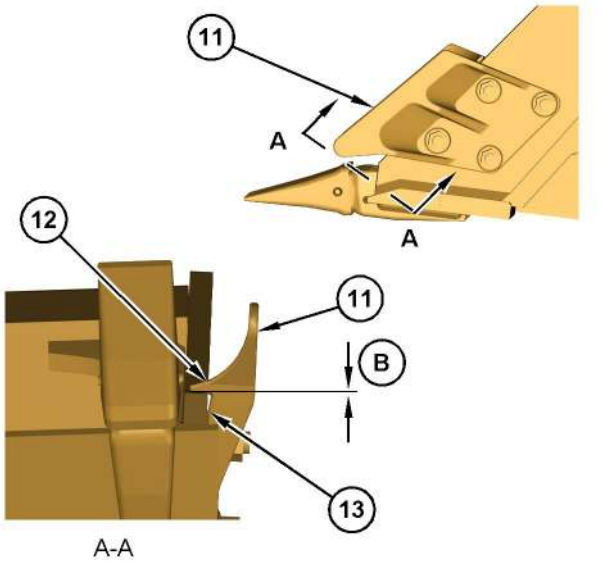


Illustration 541 g06214887

(12) Shear ledge on a side cutter
(13) Side plate on a bucket
(B) 0.0 mm (0.0 inch)

Note: Some side cutters may be rotated for additional wear.

3. Install the side cutter.

Note: Certain bolts may require thread compound.

4. Hand tighten the bolts.

5. Make sure that there is not a gap between the side plate on the bucket and the shear ledge on the side cutter.

6. Torque the mounting bolts to the correct specification.

Side Protectors (If Equipped)

Inspect the wear of the side protector. When too much wear is present, replace the protector.

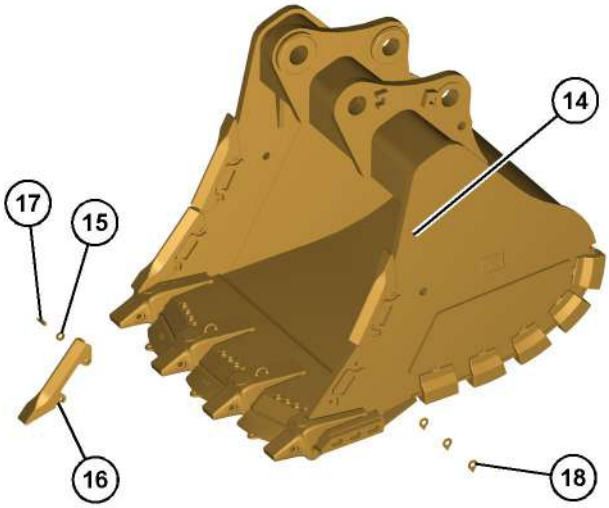


Illustration 542 g06219766

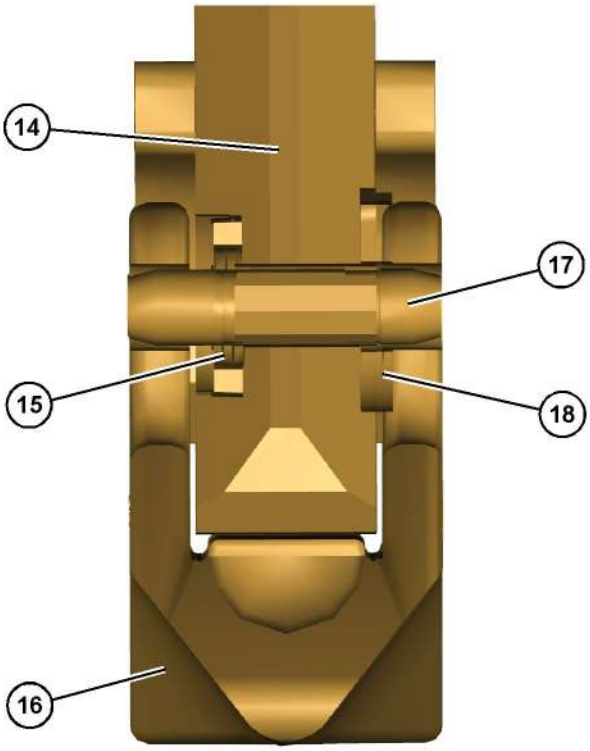


Illustration 543 g06219767

(14) Side plate
(15) Retainer
(16) Side protector
(17) Pin
(18) Shim

1. Hit pin (17) from the side of the bucket without the retainer to remove side protector (16) from side plate (14).

2. Clean side protector (16), pin (17), retainer(15), and side plate (14) before installation.

Note: Lateral clearance between the side plate and the side protector should not exceed 1 mm (0.04 inch). Shims (18) may be required to decrease the lateral clearance which will decrease movement. Install the shims between the side plate and the side protector on the opposite side of the retainer.

3. Put retainer (15) in side plate (14).

4. Align two pin holes of the new protector and the side plate. Hit the pin from the retainer side of the bucket.

Note: If the pin and/or the retainer are worn, replace the pin and/or the retainer.

i07092323

Cab Air Filter (Fresh Air) - Clean/Replace

SMCS Code: 7342-070; 7342-510

The cab air filter is on the left side of the cab.

1. Use the ignition key to open the access panel.

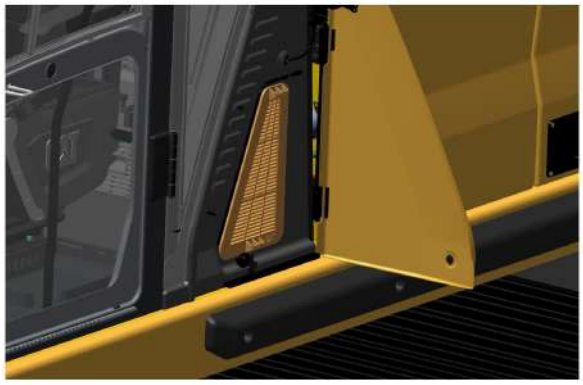


Illustration 544 g06182115

2. Remove air filter (1).

3. Tap the air filter to remove the dirt. Do not use compressed air to clean the filter.

4. After you clean the air filter, inspect the air filter. If the air filter is damaged or badly contaminated, use a new air filter.

5. Install the air filter.

6. Close and lock the access panel.

i08233133

Camera - Clean (If Equipped)

SMCS Code: 7348-070

WARNING

Failure to use an appropriate external ladder or an appropriate platform for direct access to the cameras could result in slipping and falling which could result in personal injury or death. Be sure to use an appropriate external ladder or an appropriate platform for direct access to the cameras.

The counterweight of the machine and the engine hood of the machine are not approved as maintenance platforms.

WARNING

Unexpected machine movement can cause injury or death.

In order to avoid possible machine movement, move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position and attach a Special Instruction, SEHS7332, "Do Not Operate" or similar warning tag to the hydraulic lockout control.

Note: When you access the cameras for cleaning, be sure to observe safe procedures for access. Maintain a three-point contact and/or use a body harness.

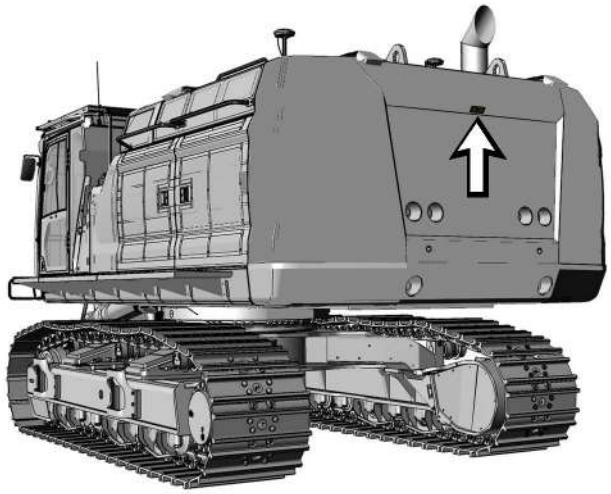


Illustration 545 g06592468

The rear view camera is located on top of the counterweight.

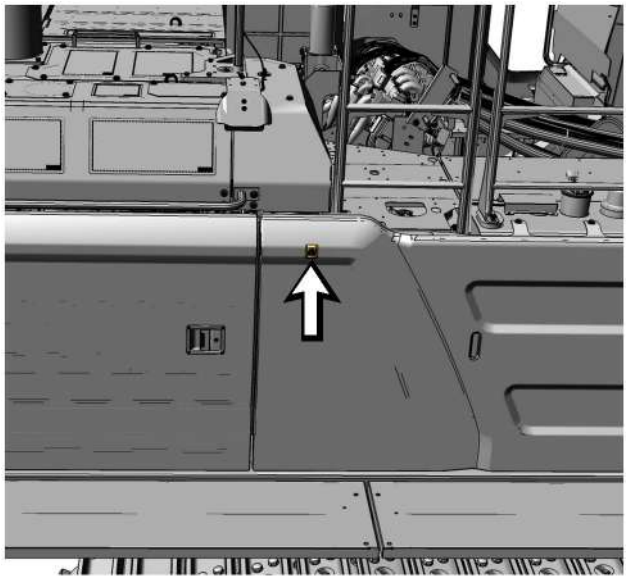


Illustration 546 g06592490

The side view camera is located on the right side to the rear of the Fuel Tank.

If necessary, use a damp cloth in order to clean the glass of the camera. The camera is sealed. The camera is not affected by a wash with high-pressure spray.

Note: Alternatively, cameras may be cleaned from ground level by using a wash with a high-pressure spray or a damp rag on a wand.

i02189743

Condenser (Refrigerant) - Clean

SMCS Code: 1805-070

NOTICE
If excessively dirty, clean condenser with a brush. To prevent damage or bending of the fins, do not use a stiff brush.

Repair the fins if found defective.

1. Open the middle access door on the left side of the machine. The condenser is located behind the engine air precleaner.

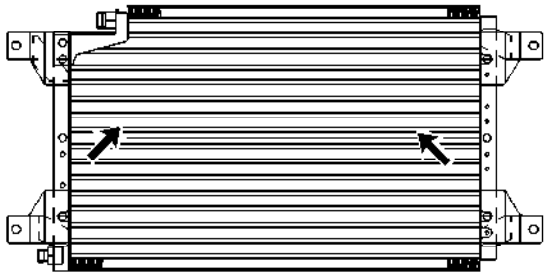


Illustration 547 g00537515

2. Inspect the condenser for debris. Clean the condenser, if necessary.

3. Use clean water to wash off all dust and dirt from the condenser.

4. Close the access door.

i05331702

Cooling System Coolant (ELC) - Change

SMCS Code: 1350-044

NOTICE
Mixing Extended Life Coolant (ELC) with other products reduces the effectiveness of the coolant and shortens coolant life. Use only Caterpillar products or commercial products that have passed the Caterpillar EC-1 specifications for premixed or concentrate coolants. Use only Caterpillar Extender with Caterpillar ELC. Failure to follow these recommendations could result in the damage to cooling systems components.

If ELC cooling system contamination occurs, refer to Special Publication, SEBU6250, “Cat Extended Life Coolant (ELC)”.

This machine was factory filled with Extended Life Coolant.

NOTICE
Care must be taken to ensure that fluids are contained during performance of inspection, maintenance, testing, adjusting, and repair of the product. Be prepared to collect the fluid with suitable containers before opening any compartment or disassembling any component containing fluids.

Refer to Special Publication, PERJ1017, “Dealer Service Tool Catalog” for tools and supplies suitable to collect and contain fluids on Cat ® products.

Dispose of all fluids according to local regulations and mandates.

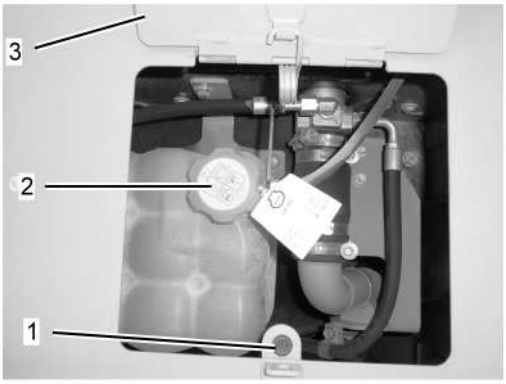


Illustration 548 g03377499

1. Open the access cover by removing the bolt. (1) Lift the access cover to the open position. (3) The cooling system pressure cap is located on top of the machine above the left rear access door. (2).

2. Slowly loosen the cooling system pressure cap (2) in order to release pressure. Remove the cooling system pressure cap.

3. Open the left rear access panel by removing the bolts that secure the panel to the machine.

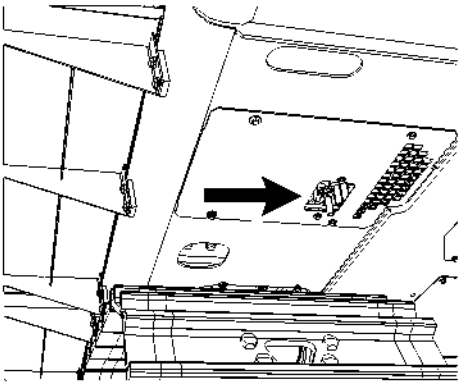


Illustration 549 g03377715

4. Remove the access cover that is under the radiator.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “General Hazard Information” for information that pertains to containing fluid spillage.

5. Open the drain valve that is on the bottom of the radiator. Allow the coolant to drain into a suitable container.

Note: Dispose of drained fluids according to local regulations.

6. Flush the cooling system with clean water until the draining water is clean.

7. Close the drain valve.

8. Add the Extended Life Coolant. See Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Capacities (Refill)”.

9. Start the engine. Operate the engine without the cooling system pressure cap until the water temperature regulator opens and the coolant level stabilizes.

10. Maintain the coolant level within 13 mm (0.5 inch) of the bottom of the filler pipe.

11. Check the gasket of the cooling system pressure cap. If the gasket is damaged, replace the pressure cap.

12. Install the cooling system pressure cap and close the access cover for the cooling system pressure cap. Install the bolts for the access cover.

13. Stop the engine.

14. Open the left middle access door.

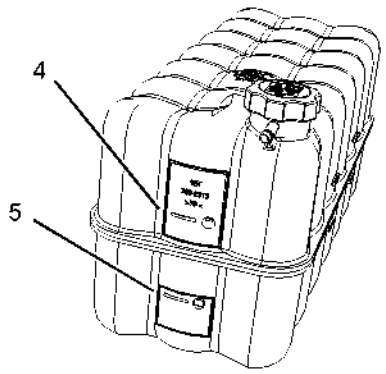


Illustration 550 g03377742

Coolant reservoir

(4) "FULL"
(5) "LOW"

15. Check the coolant reservoir. Maintain the coolant level between the "FULL" mark (A) and the "LOW" mark (B).

16. If additional coolant is necessary, remove the reservoir cap on top of the coolant reservoir and add the appropriate coolant solution.

17. Install the reservoir cap.

18. Close the left middle access door.

19. Close the left rear access panel and install the bolts for the left rear access panel.

20. Install the access cover that is under the radiator.

i05331973

Cooling System Coolant Extender (ELC) - Add

SMCS Code: 1352; 1353; 1395

NOTICE
Mixing Extended Life Coolant (ELC) with other products reduces the effectiveness of the coolant and shortens coolant life. Use only Caterpillar products or commercial products that have passed the Caterpillar EC-1 specifications for premixed or concentrate coolants. Use only Caterpillar Extender with Caterpillar ELC. Failure to follow these recommendations could result in the damage to cooling systems components.

If ELC cooling system contamination occurs, refer to Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Cat Extended Life Coolant (ELC)".

This machine was factory filled with Extended Life Coolant.

NOTICE
Care must be taken to ensure that fluids are contained during performance of inspection, maintenance, testing, adjusting, and repair of the product. Be prepared to collect the fluid with suitable containers before opening any compartment or disassembling any component containing fluids.

Refer to Special Publication, PERJ1017, "Dealer Service Tool Catalog" for tools and supplies suitable to collect and contain fluids on Cat ® products.

Dispose of all fluids according to local regulations and mandates.

When a Caterpillar Extended Life Coolant (ELC) is used, an Extender must be added to the cooling system. See Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Cooling Recommendations" for all cooling system requirements.

Use a coolant conditioner test kit in order to check the concentration of the coolant.

NOTICE
Mixing Extended Life Coolant (ELC) with other products reduces the effectiveness of the coolant and shortens coolant life. Use only Caterpillar products or commercial products that have passed the Caterpillar EC-1 specifications for premixed or concentrate coolants. Use only Caterpillar Extender with Caterpillar ELC. Failure to follow these recommendations could result in the damage to cooling systems components.

If ELC cooling system contamination occurs, refer to Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Cat Extended Life Coolant (ELC)".

This machine was factory filled with Extended Life Coolant.

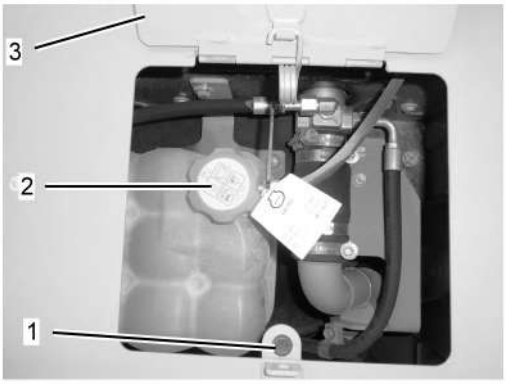


Illustration 551 g03377757

1. Open the access cover (3) for the cooling system pressure cap (2). The access cover for the cooling system pressure cap is located on top of the machine above the left rear access door. Remove bolt (1) . to open the access cover .

2. Slowly loosen the cooling system pressure cap in order to release system pressure. Remove the pressure cap.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “General Hazard Information” for information on containing fluid spillage.

3. You may have to drain some coolant from the radiator so that Caterpillar Extender can be added to the cooling system.

Note: Always discard drained fluids according to local regulations.

4. Add Extender to the cooling system. Refer to the following topics for the proper amount of Caterpillar Extender:

- Special Publication, SEBU6250, “Cat Extended Life Coolant (ELC)”
- Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Capacities (Refill)”

5. Inspect the gasket of the cooling system pressure cap. If the gasket is damaged, replace the pressure cap.

6. Install the cooling system pressure cap.

7. Close the access door for the cooling system pressure cap.

i05333384

Cooling System Coolant Level - Check

SMCS Code: 1350-040; 1350-535-FLV; 1395-535-FLV

1. Open the middle access door on the left side of the machine.

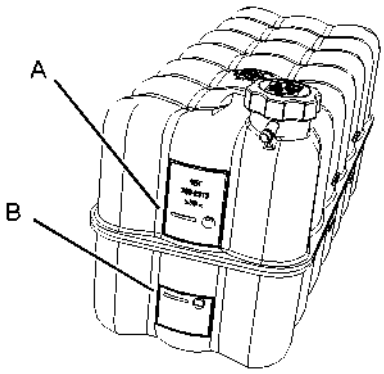


Illustration 552 g03378511

Coolant reservoir

(A) “FULL”
(B) “LOW”

2. Check the coolant level of the coolant reservoir. Maintain the coolant level between the “FULL” mark and the “LOW” mark. If the coolant reservoir is empty, follow Steps 2a through 2i.

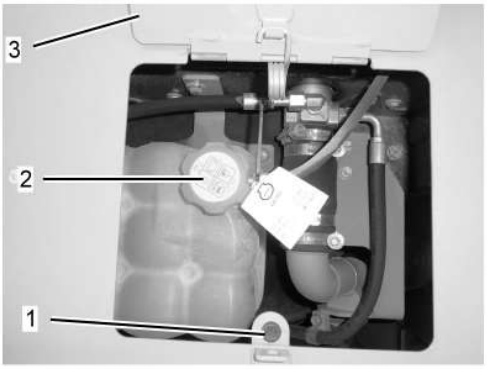


Illustration 553 g03378512

a. Open the access cover (3) for the cooling system pressure cap (2). The access cover for the cooling system pressure cap is located on top of the machine above the left rear access door. Remove bolt (1) and slide the access cover open.

b. Slowly loosen the cooling system pressure cap in order to relieve system pressure. Remove the pressure cap.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “General Hazard Information” for information on containing fluid spillage.

c. Add the appropriate coolant solution to the cooling system. Refer to the following topics:

- Operation and Maintenance Manual, SEBU6250, “Cooling System Specifications”
- Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Capacities (Refill)”

d. Start the engine. Operate the engine without the cooling system pressure cap until the water temperature regulator opens and the coolant level stabilizes.

e. Maintain the coolant level within 13 mm (0.5 inch) of the bottom of the filler pipe.

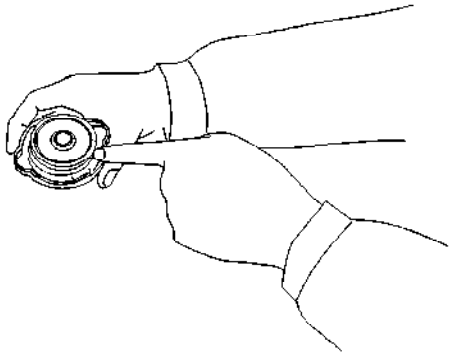


Illustration 554 g00102170

f. Inspect the condition of the gasket on the pressure cap. If the gasket is damaged, replace the pressure cap.

g. Install the cooling system pressure cap.

h. Stop the engine.

i. Close the access cover for the cooling system pressure cap. Install and tighten bolts (1) and (2).

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “General Hazard Information” for information on containing fluid spillage.

3. If additional coolant is necessary, remove the reservoir cap and add the appropriate coolant solution.

4. Install the reservoir cap.

5. Close the left access door.

i09001224

Cooling System Coolant Sample - Obtain

SMCS Code: 1395-554; 1395-008

WARNING

Use caution when servicing a warm machine. Fluids (hydraulic oil, engine oil, transmission fluid, coolant, etc.) can be extremely hot. Severe burns will result from contact with hot fluids.

WARNING

Pressurized System: Hot coolant can cause serious burns. To open the cooling system filler cap, stop the engine and wait until the cooling system components are cool. Loosen the cooling system pressure cap slowly in order to relieve the pressure.

The cooling system coolant should be sampled and monitored with regular frequency. The samples should be analyzed per the following guidelines:

- **Level 1 analysis: Every 250 hours**
- **Level 2 analysis: Every 2000 hours**

Note: Obtain a Coolant Sample (Level 1) every 250 hours if the cooling system is filled with anything other than Cat ® ELC (Cat ® Extended Life Coolant) or Commercial EC-1 coolants. This includes the following type of coolants.

- Cat ® Diesel Engine Antifreeze/Coolant (DEAC)
- Commercial heavy-duty coolant/antifreeze

Note: A level 1 analysis may indicate the need for a Level 2 analysis.

Note: A Level 2 analysis is required after 500 hours of operation for the following reasons: (Cat ® DEAC)

- The cooling system is new
- The cooling system has been refilled
- The cooling system has been converted to a new coolant

NOTICE
Always use a designated pump for oil sampling, and use a separate designated pump for coolant sampling. Using the same pump for both types of samples may contaminate the samples that are being drawn. This contaminate may cause a false analysis and an incorrect interpretation that could lead to concerns by both dealers and customers.

NOTICE
Care must be taken to ensure that fluids are contained during performance of inspection, maintenance, testing, adjusting, and repair of the product. Be prepared to collect the fluid with suitable containers before opening any compartment or disassembling any component containing fluids.

Refer to Special Publication, PERJ1017, “Dealer Service Tool Catalog” for tools and supplies suitable to collect and contain fluids on Cat ® products.

Dispose of all fluids according to local regulations and mandates.

Prepare the machine for maintenance. Refer to “Prepare the Machine for Maintenance“.

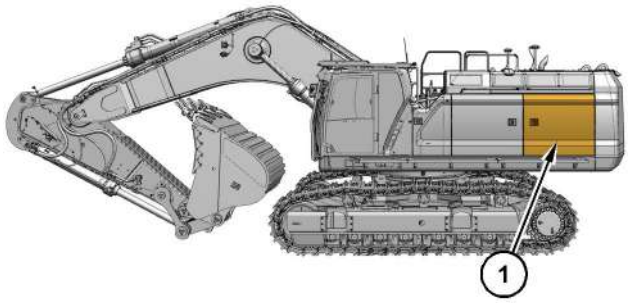


Illustration 555 g06966186

(1) Access door

Open the left rear access door (1). Refer to “Access Door and Cover Locations“.

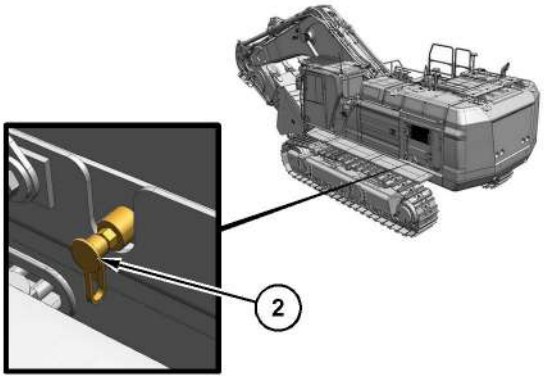


Illustration 556 g06966192

(2) Coolant sample port

Coolant sample port (2) is located on the radiator compartment behind the left rear access door (1).

Obtain the sample of the coolant as close as possible to the recommended sampling interval. To receive the full effect of Scheduled Oil Sampling analysis (S·O·S analysis), establish a consistent trend of data. To establish a pertinent history of data, perform consistent samplings that are evenly spaced. Supplies for collecting samples can be obtained from your Cat ® dealer.

Use the following guidelines for proper sampling of the coolant:

- Complete the information on the label for the sampling bottle before you begin to take the samples.
- Keep the unused sampling bottles stored in plastic bags.
- Obtain coolant samples directly from the coolant sample port. You should not obtain the samples from any other location.
- Obtain the coolant sample while the coolant is at operating temperature.
- Keep the lids on empty sampling bottles until you are ready to collect the sample.
- Place the sample in the mailing tube immediately after obtaining the sample to avoid contamination.
- Never collect samples from expansion bottles.
- Never collect samples from the drain for a system.

Submit the sample for Level 1 analysis.

For additional information about coolant analysis, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, SEBU6250, “Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations” or consult your Cat dealer.

i08373285

DEF Filler Screen - Clean
(Emission Related Component)

SMCS Code: 108K-070-Z3

NOTICE
Ensure that the engine is stopped before any servicing or repair is performed.

NOTICE
Care must be taken to ensure that fluids are contained during performance of inspection, maintenance, testing, adjusting, and repair of the product. Be prepared to collect the fluid with suitable containers before opening any compartment or disassembling any component containing fluids.

Refer to Special Publication, NENG2500, “Cat Dealer Service Tool Catalog” or refer to Special Publication, PECJ0003, “Cat Shop Supplies and Tools Catalog” for tools and supplies suitable to collect and contain fluids on Cat products.

Dispose of all fluids according to local regulations and mandates.

The filler neck adapter filter screen in the diesel exhaust fluid tank will need to be cleaned or replaced if contaminated.

1. Prepare the machine for maintenance. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Prepare the Machine for Maintenance”.

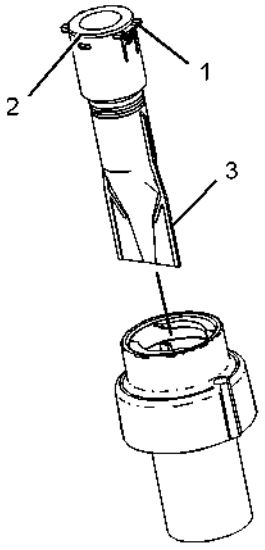


Illustration 557 g03618438

2. Use a screwdriver or pick to press the tabs (1).

3. Pull the screen assembly (2) upward from both sides and remove from the fill neck adapter

4. Use water or compressed air to clean out the filter screen (3). If there is any debris inside, let dry and remove the debris by turning the screen upside down and dumping debris out. If the debris cannot be removed or the filter screen is damaged, replace the filler neck adapter filter screen.

i08364413

DEF Manifold Filters - Replace
(Emission Related Component)

SMCS Code: 108K-510-FI

NOTICE
Ensure that the engine is stopped before any servicing or repair is performed.

NOTICE
Care must be taken to ensure that fluids are contained during performance of inspection, maintenance, testing, adjusting, and repair of the product. Be prepared to collect the fluid with suitable containers before opening any compartment or disassembling any component containing fluids.

Refer to Special Publication, NENG2500, “Cat Dealer Service Tool Catalog” or refer to Special Publication, PECJ0003, “Cat Shop Supplies and Tools Catalog” for tools and supplies suitable to collect and contain fluids on Cat products.

Dispose of all fluids according to local regulations and mandates.

Note: Refer to Special Instruction, REHS8231, “Removal Procedures for Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) Connectors” for the correct removal procedure of hose assemblies (1) and (5).

1. Prepare the machine for maintenance. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Prepare the Machine for Maintenance”.

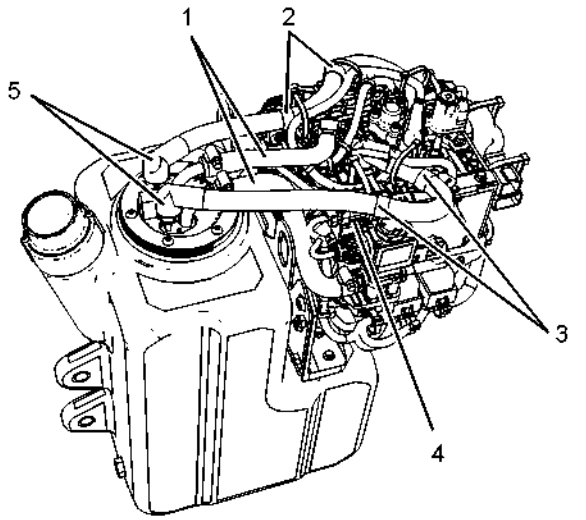


Illustration 558 g03662693

Typical Example

2. Clamp off hoses (1).

3. Remove clips (2) and (3). Disconnect harness assemblies (4). Remove hose assemblies (1) and (5).

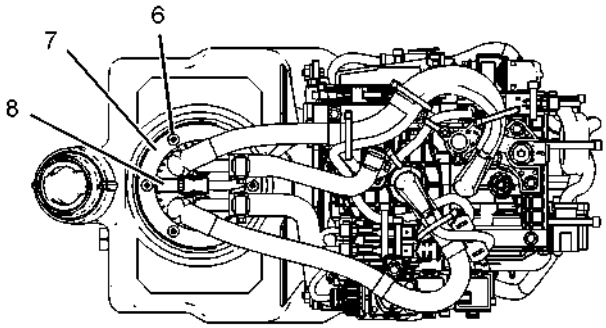


Illustration 559 g03665701

Typical Example

4. Remove bolts (6), plate (7), tank manifold (8), and gasket (not shown).

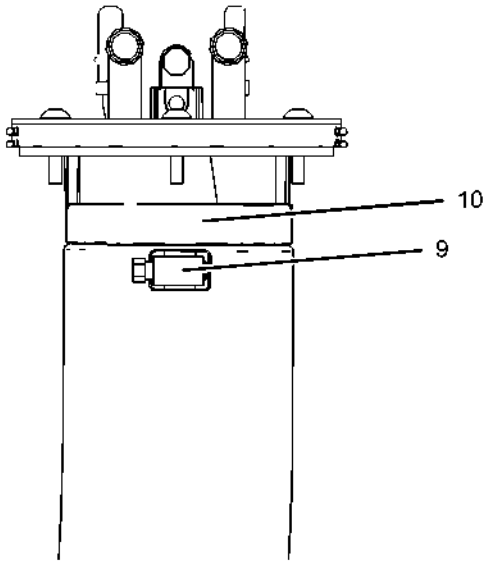


Illustration 560 g03665737

5. Unscrew the band clamp (9) and remove the band clamp from the filter base (10).

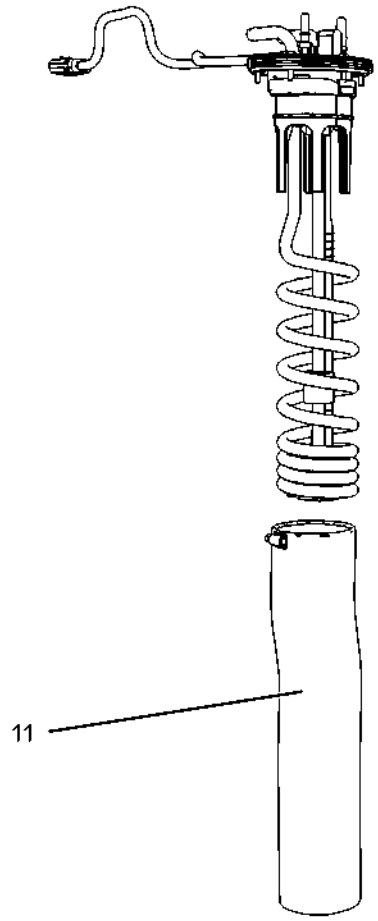


Illustration 561 g03664911

6. Remove the filter (11) from the filter base.

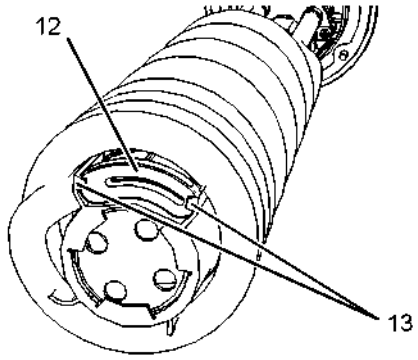


Illustration 562 g03666075

7. Remove the suction filter (12) at the bottom of the header coils by pulling tabs (13). Replace with a new suction filter.

8. Install new filter by pulling filter over the manifold coils up to the bottom of the assembled filter base.

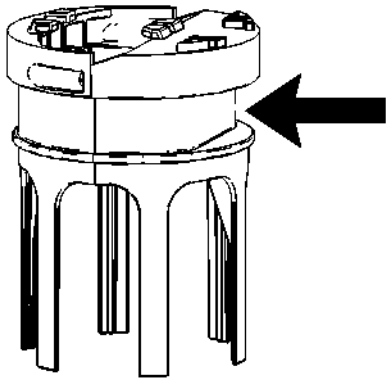


Illustration 563 g03665754

9. Tighten the band clamp 4.5 ± 0.7 N·m (40 ± 6 lb in), ensuring that the band clamp is aligned, as shown in illustration 563 , to the flat spot on the base. Ensure that the filter does not bunch when tightening the band clamp.

10. Install the tank manifold following steps 4 through 6 in reverse order with a new gasket.

11. Tighten bolts (6) in an alternating sequence to 5 ± 1 N·m (44 ± 9 lb in). Tighten bolts (6) a second time in an alternating sequence to 5 ± 1 N·m (44 ± 9 lb in). Apply rubber lubricant to the o-ring seal inside of hose assemblies (1).

i08289027

Diesel Exhaust Fluid - Drain
(Emission Related Component)

SMCS Code: 108K-543

NOTICE
Care must be taken to ensure that fluids are contained during performance of inspection, maintenance, testing, adjusting, and repair of the machine. Be prepared to collect the fluid with suitable containers before opening any compartment or disassembling any component containing fluids.

Dispose of all fluids according to local regulations and mandates.

1. Prepare the machine for maintenance. Refer to “Prepare the Machine for Maintenance“.

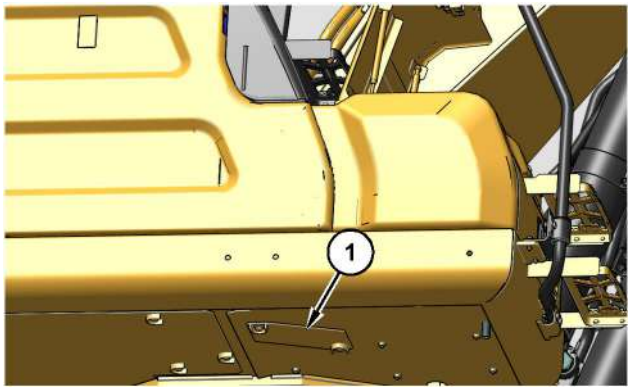


Illustration 564 g06613965

(1) Access cover

2. Remove access cover (1) to reveal drain plug.

3. Remove drain plug and drain the diesel exhaust fluid into a suitable container.

4. Install and tighten the drain plug to a torque of 20 ± 3 N·m (177 ± 26 lb in).

5. Reinstall access cover (1).

i08610604

Diesel Exhaust Fluid - Fill
(Emission Related Component)

SMCS Code: 108K-544

WARNING

Personal injury can result from improper handling of chemicals.

Make sure you use all the necessary protective equipment required to do the job.

Make sure that you read and understand all directions and hazards described on the labels and material safety data sheet of any chemical that is used.

Observe all safety precautions recommended by the chemical manufacturer for handling, storage, and disposal of chemicals.

NOTICE
Ensure that the engine is stopped before any servicing or repair is performed.

NOTICE
Care must be taken to ensure that fluids are contained during performance of inspection, maintenance, testing, adjusting, and repair of the product. Be prepared to collect the fluid with suitable containers before opening any compartment or disassembling any component containing fluids.

Refer to Special Publication, NENG2500, “Cat Dealer Service Tool Catalog” or refer to Special Publication, PECJ0003, “Cat Shop Supplies and Tools Catalog” for tools and supplies suitable to collect and contain fluids on Cat products.

Dispose of all fluids according to local regulations and mandates.

Prepare the machine for maintenance. Refer to “Prepare the Machine for Maintenance“.

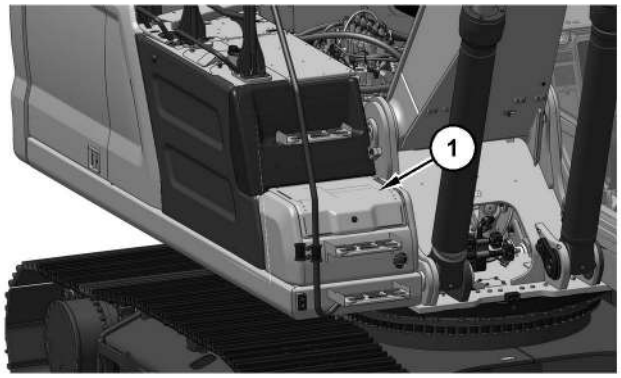


Illustration 565 g06721822

Typical example

(1) Storage box door

1. Open storage box door (1). The Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) tank is located behind the storage box. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Access Door and Cover Locations”.

Illustration 566 g06280503

DEF tank filler cap

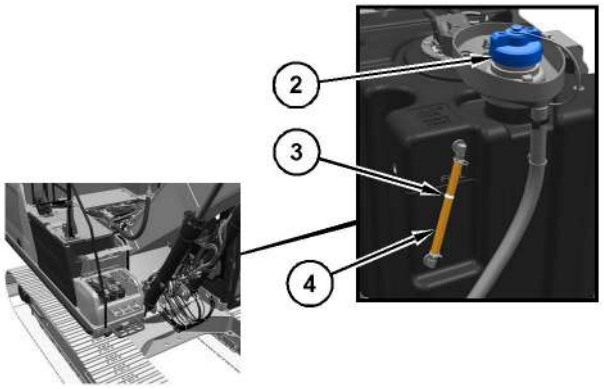


Illustration 567 g06721817

DEF tank filler cap location

(2) DEF tank filler cap
(3) Full mark
(4) DEF level gauge

2. Refer to “General Hazard Information“ for information on containing fluid spillage.

Clean blue DEF tank filler cap (2) and the surrounding area.

3. Remove blue DEF tank filler cap (2).

4. Fill the tank with diesel exhaust fluid (DEF). DEF level gauge (4) is located on the front side of DEF tank. Do not fill above white full mark (3).

Note: Do not fill the DEF tank from a contaminated container or funnel.

Note: Do not over fill the DEF tank. DEF can freeze and may need room for expansion.

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Capacities (Refill)” for the capacity of the DEF tank for your machine.

5. Install blue DEF tank filler cap (2).

Refer to “Lubricant Viscosities“ for more information on diesel exhaust fluid (DEF) guidelines.

i08238441

Diesel Exhaust Fluid Filter - Replace

SMCS Code: 108K-510-FI

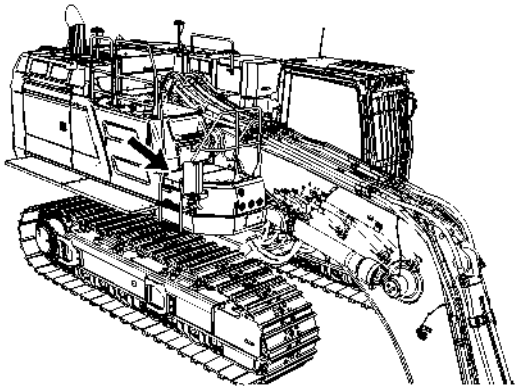


Illustration 568 g06596906

The Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) filter is located on the DEF tank. The DEF tank is located next to the storage box on the right side of the machine.

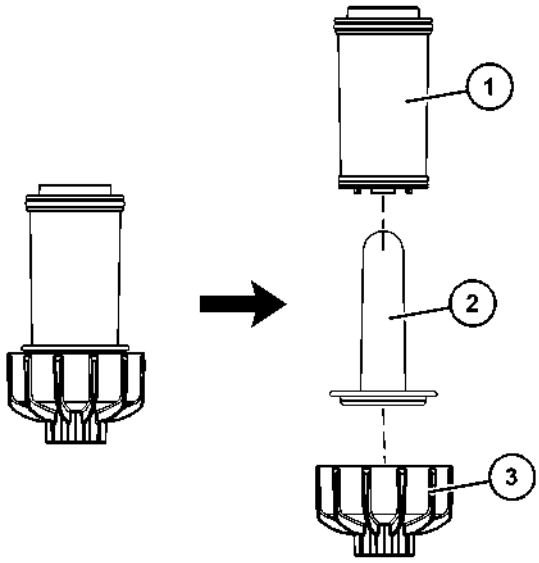


Illustration 569 g06597010

Typical Example

(1) DEF filter
(2) Rubber cone insert
(3) Filter cap

NOTICE
Ensure that the engine is stopped before any servicing or repair is performed.

NOTICE
Care must be taken to ensure that fluids are contained during performance of inspection, maintenance, testing, adjusting, and repair of the product. Be prepared to collect the fluid with suitable containers before opening any compartment or disassembling any component containing fluids.

Refer to Special Publication, NENG2500, “Cat Dealer Service Tool Catalog” or refer to Special Publication, PECJ0003, “Cat Shop Supplies and Tools Catalog” for tools and supplies suitable to collect and contain fluids on Cat products.

Dispose of all fluids according to local regulations and mandates.

Prepare the machine for maintenance. Refer to “Prepare the Machine for Maintenance“.

1. Remove DEF filter cap (3) with a 27.0 mm (1.06 inch) wrench.

2. Remove rubber cone insert (2) from DEF filter (1).

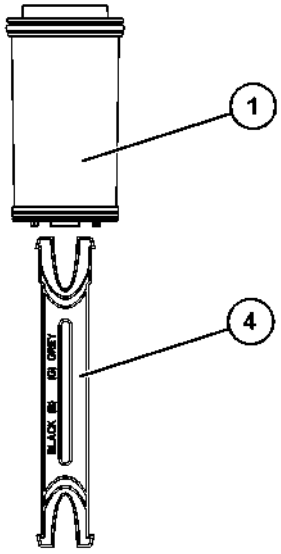


Illustration 570 g06597016

Typical Example

(1) DEF filter
(4) DEF filter removal tool

3. Insert DEF filter removal tool (4) into DEF filter (1) and remove DEF filter (1).

Note: Wear gloves when you handle DEF filter removal tool (4).

4. Clean the area around the filter housing.

5. Apply a thin coat of lubricant to the seals of new DEF filter (1).

6. Install new DEF filter (1) and rubber cone insert (2). Torque the DEF filter to 20 ± 5 N·m (177 ± 44 lb in) with a 27.0 mm (1.06 inch) wrench.

i08364429

Diesel Exhaust Fluid Injector - Replace
(Emission Related Component)

SMCS Code: 108I-510

1. Prepare the machine for maintenance. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Prepare the Machine for Maintenance”.

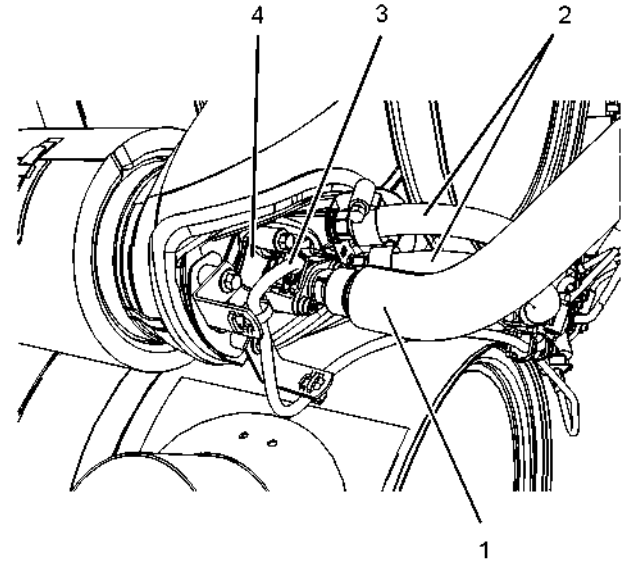


Illustration 571 g03363165

Typical example shown

2. Remove the diesel exhaust fluid (DEF) line (1) from the injector (4).

3. Remove the coolant lines (2) from the injector.

4. Remove the electrical connector (3) from the injector.

5. Remove the bolts from the injector and remove the injector.

6. Replace gasket. The steel side of the gasket should face towards diesel particulate filter (DPF) outlet.

7. Replace the injector.

8. Apply anti-seize to bolt threads.

9. Torque the bolts of the injector to 5 N·m (3.7 lb ft). Retighten all bolts to 5 N·m (3.7 lb ft), then turn 90°.

10. Connect the electrical connector.

11. Connect the coolant lines.

12. Connect the DEF line.

i08778225

Diesel Particulate Filter - Clean (Emission Related Component)

SMCS Code: 108F-070; 1091-070

Prepare the machine for maintenance. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Prepare the Machine for Maintenance” for more information.

Consult your Cat dealer when the DPF needs to be cleaned.

The approved Caterpillar DPF maintenance procedure requires that one of the following actions be taken when the DPF needs to be cleaned:

- The DPF from your machine can be replaced with a new DPF
- The DPF from your machine can be replaced with a remanufactured DPF
- The DPF from your machine can be cleaned by your local authorized Cat dealer, or a Caterpillar approved DPF cleaning machine, and reinstalled

Note: To maintain emissions documentation, the DPF that is removed from the machine when the DPF is cleaned must be reinstalled on the same machine.

Note: A specific ash service regeneration must be performed before removing a DPF that will be cleaned. All three scenarios listed above require a reset of the ash monitoring system in the engine ECM.

i08309004

Engine Air Filter Primary and/or Secondary Element - Replace

SMCS Code: 1054-510-SE; 1054-510-PY

Primary Air Filter Element - Replace

NOTICE
Service the air cleaner only with the engine stopped. Engine damage could result.

NOTICE
Service the engine air filter elements only when a message or a warning is displayed on the monitor display. Do not open the filter compartment unless service is indicated. Opening the filter compartment when not necessary to do so increases the chance of dirt contamination in engine air intake system components.

NOTICE
Short air filter life can result if the pre-cleaner system malfunctions. If air filter life is drastically reduced from typical for the operating conditions, consult your Cat dealer.

NOTICE
Do not use the air filter elements longer than 1 year.

The engine air cleaner assembly is located behind the front access door on the left side of the machine.

1. Prepare the machine for maintenance. Refer to “Prepare the Machine for Maintenance“.

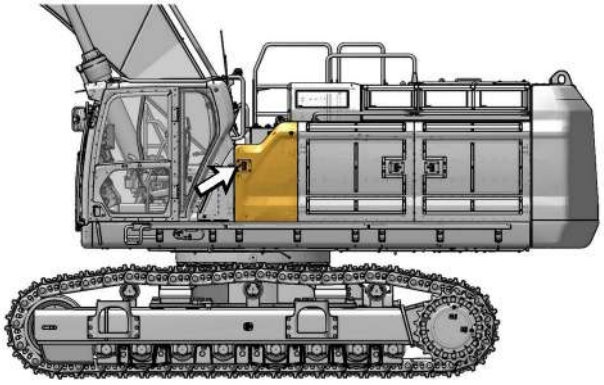


Illustration 572 g06623508

2. Open the front access door on the left side of the machine.

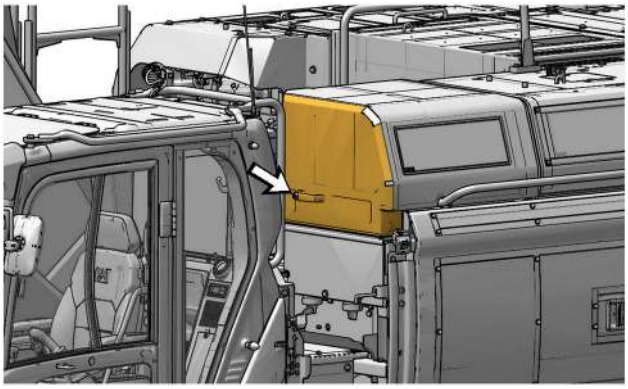


Illustration 573 g06623511

3. Open the filter access door.

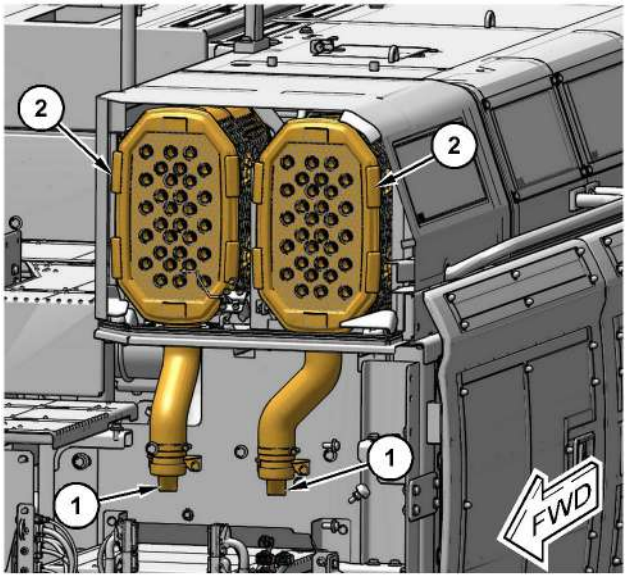


Illustration 574 g06623513

(1) Outlet tube
(2) Latch

4. Squeeze outlet tube (1) to purge the dirt from the outlet tube.

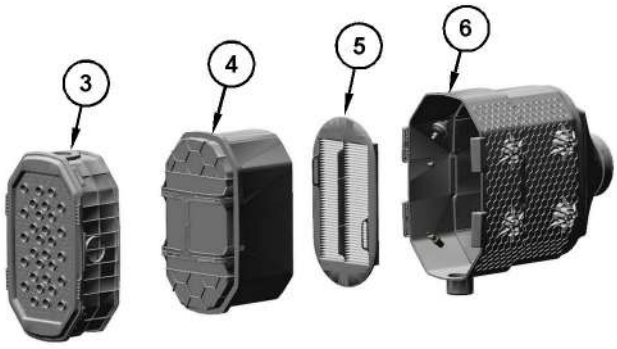


Illustration 575 g06623514

(3) Pre-cleaner
(4) Primary air filter element
(5) Secondary air filter element
(6) Air filter housing

5. Release latches (2) that secure pre-cleaner (3) to engine air filter housing (6).

6. Remove pre-cleaner (3).

7. Clean inside the air filter housing where the pre-cleaner was removed.

NOTICE
Caterpillar does not recommend cleaning the primary air filter element. Caterpillar only recommends to replace the primary air filter element. Caterpillar does not cover costs for damage to engine components caused by cleaning the primary air filter element.

Observe the following guidelines if you attempt to clean the primary filter element:

Do not tap or strike the filter element in order to remove dust.

Do not wash the filter element.

Use low pressure compressed air in order to remove the dust from the filter element. Air pressure must not exceed 207 kPa (30 psi). Direct the air flow up the pleats and down the pleats from the inside of the filter element. Take extreme care in order to avoid damage to the pleats.

Do not clean the air filter element more than three times. The air filter element must be replaced if the filter has been in use for one year, regardless of the number of times the filter has been cleaned.

Do not use air filters with damaged pleats, gaskets, or seals. Dirt entering the engine will cause damage to engine components.

NOTICE
Do not clean the air filter elements by bumping or tapping. This could damage the seals. Do not use elements with damaged pleats, gaskets, or seals. Damaged elements will allow dirt to pass through. Engine damage could result.

8. Remove primary air filter element (4). Replace the filter element as necessary.

Note: Replace the primary filter if the filter has been in use for 1 year.

9. Clean inside the air filter assembly housing.

Note: Do not allow any dirt or debris to contact the secondary air filter element (5).

10. Inspect the seal area ensure that no foreign debris has fallen into the seal area. Clean the air cleaner interior to remove remaining dust or debris

11. Without removing secondary air filter element (5), inspect the filter element for damage. Replace if necessary or dirty. Refer to “Secondary Air Filter Element - Replace”.

12. Install the secondary air filter element.

13. Install the primary filter.

Note: Filters must be fully installed before the pre-cleaner can be attached. If the pre-cleaner cannot be fully latched, verify that the filter elements are properly seated.

14. Install the pre-cleaner and secure the latches that hold the pre-cleaner to the air filter housing.

15. Close the access door.

Secondary Air Filter Element - Replace

NOTICE
Always replace the secondary element. Do not attempt to reuse it by cleaning. Engine damage could result.

NOTICE
Do not use the air filter elements longer than 1 year.

NOTICE
Replace the secondary filter element when you service the primary element for the third time. If a clean primary element has been installed and the filter element indicator is still flashing, replace the secondary filter element. Also if the exhaust smoke remains black and a clean primary filter element has been installed, replace the secondary filter element.

1. Open the front access door on the left side of the machine.

2. Refer to the section “Primary Air Filter Element - Replace”. Remove the pre-cleaner from the engine air filter housing. Remove the primary air filter element from the air filter housing.

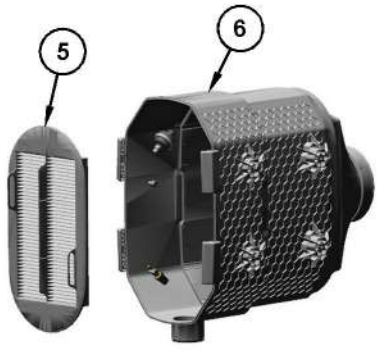


Illustration 576 g06623516

(5) Secondary air filter element
(6) Air filter housing

3. Secondary air filter element (5) is pressed into the rear portion of engine air filter housing (6). Pull forward on the secondary air filter element to remove the element from the engine air filter housing.

4. Cover the air inlet opening. Clean inside the air cleaner housing.

5. Clean all surfaces of the pre-cleaner cover and body.

6. Uncover the air inlet opening.

7. Carefully press the secondary air filter element into the rear portion of the engine air filter housing.

Note: Be certain that the new secondary air filter element is properly seated in the filter housing. Also, check to see that no damage to the filter element has occurred during installation.

8. Install the primary air filter element and the pre-cleaner.

9. Close the access door.

i09761785

Engine Oil Level - Check

SMCS Code: 1000-535

WARNING

Hot oil and hot components can cause personal injury. Do not allow hot oil or hot components to contact skin.

WARNING

Hot engine components can cause injury from burns. Before performing maintenance on the engine, allow the engine and the components to cool.

WARNING

Do not operate or work on this engine unless you have read and understand the instructions and warnings in the Operation and Maintenance Manual. Failure to follow the instructions or heed the warnings could result in injury or death. Contact any Caterpillar dealer for replacement manuals. Proper care is your responsibility.

WARNING

Access to this service point may require climbing on the equipment. Slipping or falling while climbing on the equipment could result in personal injury or death. Refer to the Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Mounting and Dismounting" topic, for safety information.

NOTICE
Do not overfill the crankcase. Engine damage can result.

Note: In addition to an engine oil level gauge, your machine may be equipped with an automated function for checking fluid levels. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Engine Starting" regarding the automated system. If the machine is on an incline or the engine has been stopped only for a short time, then the engine oil does not return to the crankcase and the fluid level cannot be properly checked by either method.

Prepare the machine for maintenance. Refer to "Prepare the Machine for Maintenance". Check that the oil level after the engine has been stopped for at least 30 minutes.

Check the oil level while the engine is stopped. Do not check the oil level while the engine is running.

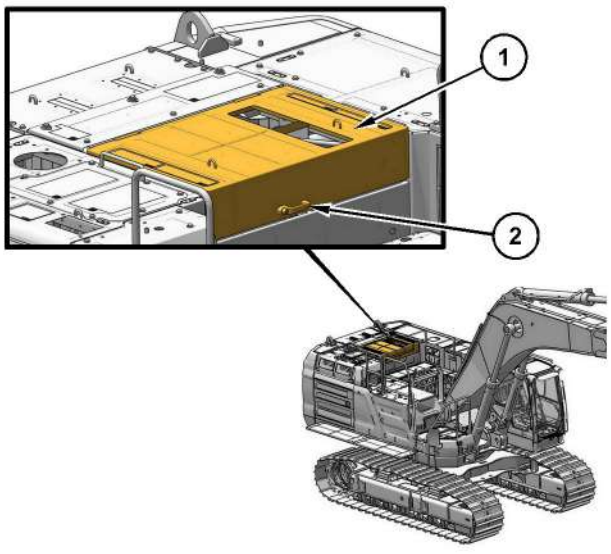


Illustration 577 g07581687

Typical example

(1) Engine hood
(2) Handle

1. Open engine hood (1) by using handle (2). Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Access Door and Cover Locations” for more information.

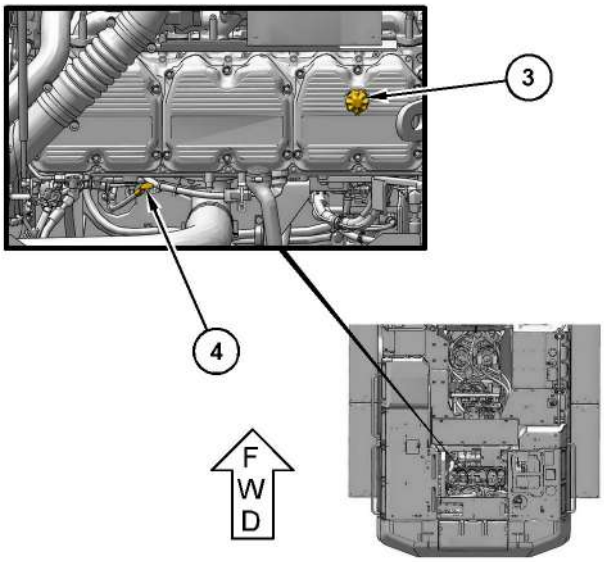


Illustration 578 g07581694

Typical example

(3) Oil filler cap
(4) Oil level gauge

2. Clean oil filler cap (3) and area surrounding oil filler cap (3).

3. Remove oil level gauge (4). Wipe the oil off from oil level gauge (4) and reinsert oil level gauge (4).

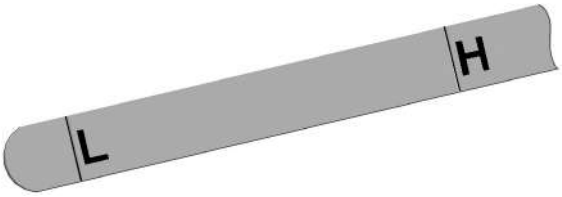


Illustration 579 g06183475

4. Remove oil level gauge (4) and check oil level gauge (4). The oil level should be between the “H” mark and the “L” mark.

NOTICE
Operating your engine when the oil level is above the “H” mark could cause the crankshaft to dip into the oil. This could lead to excessively high oil temperatures which can reduce the lubricating characteristics of the oil, lead to bearing damage, and could result in loss of engine power.

Note: Refer to “General Hazard Information“ for information on Containing Fluid Spillage.

5. Remove oil filler cap (3) to add oil, if necessary. Refer to “Lubricant Viscosities“ and Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Capacities (Refill)” for more information.

Note: If the oil is deteriorated or badly contaminated, change the oil regardless of the maintenance interval.

6. Clean oil filler cap (3) and area surrounding oil filler cap (3). Install oil filler cap (3).

7. Close engine hood (1) by using handle (2). Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Access Door and Cover Locations” for more information.

i08233138

Engine Oil Sample - Obtain

SMCS Code: 1000; 1000-008; 1348-008; 1348-554-SM; 7542-554-OC; 7542-008; 7542-554-SM

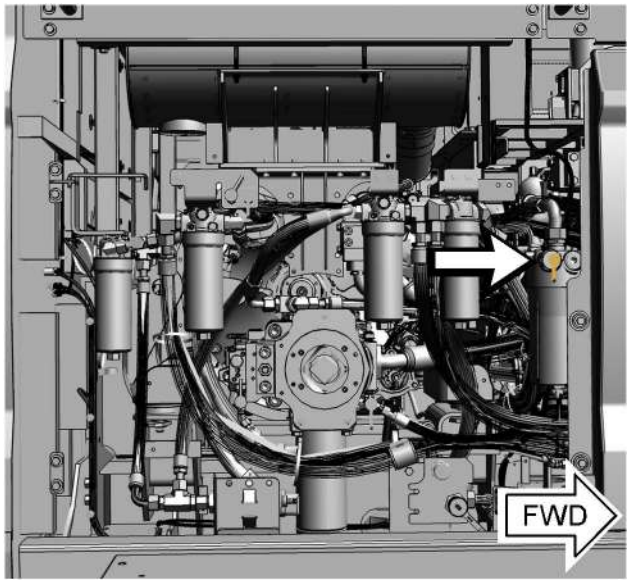


Illustration 580 g06591387

Obtain a sample of the engine oil from the engine oil sampling valve that is located on the engine oil filter housing. In the right rear access compartment. Refer to Special Publication, SEBU6250, “S·O·S Oil Analysis” for information that pertains to obtaining a sample of the engine oil. Refer to Special Publication, PEGJ0047, “How To Take A Good Oil Sample” for more information about obtaining a sample of the engine oil.

i08755799

Engine Oil and Filter - Change

SMCS Code: 1318-510

Selection of the Oil Change Interval

WARNING

Accidental machine starting can cause injury or death to personnel working on the machine.

To avoid accidental machine starting, turn the battery disconnect switch to the OFF position and remove the key. If the machine is not equipped with a battery disconnect switch, disconnect the battery cables from the battery and tape the battery clamps.

Place a do not operate tag at the battery disconnect switch location to inform personnel that the machine is being worked on.

WARNING

Hot oil and hot components can cause personal injury. Do not allow hot oil or hot components to contact skin.

WARNING

Access to this service point may require climbing on the equipment. Slipping or falling while climbing on the equipment could result in personal injury or death. Refer to the Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Mounting and Dismounting" topic, for safety information.

WARNING

Crush Hazard!

Machine access doors can pinch, trap, or crush personnel when being closed.

Use caution while closing machine access doors. Ensure that all personnel are clear of the machine before closing the access doors.

NOTICE
Care must be taken to ensure that fluids are contained during performance of inspection, maintenance, testing, adjusting, and repair of the product. Be prepared to collect the fluid with suitable containers before opening any compartment or disassembling any component containing fluids.

Refer to Special Publication, PERJ1017, "Dealer Service Tool Catalog" for tools and supplies suitable to collect and contain fluids on Cat ® products.

Dispose of all fluids according to local regulations and mandates.

NOTICE
Do not under fill or overfill engine crankcase with oil. Either condition can cause engine damage.

NOTICE
Keep all parts clean from contaminants.

Contaminants may cause rapid wear and shortened component life.

NOTICE
Not following the recommendations found in this manual can lead to reduced performance and compartment failure.

NOTICE
The engine oil and filter change interval for standard service application is every 1000 hours when the following requirements are met:

- Utilize Cat ® Recommended Fluids
- Utilize Cat ® Filters
- Utilize S·O·S Services at recommended interval

When these requirements are not met, the oil and filter change interval should be every 500 hours, or use S·O·S Services oil sampling and analysis program to determine an acceptable oil change interval.

If you select an interval for oil and filter change that is too long, you may damage the engine.

NOTICE
When operating in any of the conditions or environments outlined in this Operation and Maintenance Manual, Severe Service Application, use S·O·S Services oil analysis to determine the best oil and filter change interval.

When S·O·S Services are not used in severe service applications, the oil and filter change interval should be every 250 hours..

If you select an interval for oil and filter change that is too long, you may damage the engine.

Refer to “Lubricant Viscosities“ for more information.

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Maintenance Interval Schedule” for more information.

Refer to “Severe Service Application“ for more information.

Refer to “S·O·S Information“ for more information.

Use the table below to determine the appropriate oil and filter change interval.

Table 57

Selection of Oil and Filter Change Interval				
	Conditions			Interval
	Cat ® Recommended Fluids	Cat ® Filters	S·O·S Services	
Standard Service Application	YES	YES	YES	1000 hours
	YES	YES	NO	500 hours
	YES	NO	YES	500 hours
	NO	YES	YES	500 hours
	NO	NO	NO	250 hours
Severe Service Application	NO	NO	NO	250 hours
	YES	YES	NO	250 hours
	YES	YES	YES	Use S·O·S(1)
	YES	NO	YES	Use S·O·S(1)
	NO	YES	YES	Use S·O·S(1)

(1) If operating in any of the conditions or environments outlined in the Severe Service Application, use S·O·S (Scheduled Oil Sampling) Services oil analysis to determine the best oil change interval.

Note: Initial oil and filter change is required at initial 500 hours.

Procedure for Changing Engine Oil and Filter

Note: If the sulfur content in the fuel is greater than 1.5 percent by weight, use an oil that has a Total Base Number (TBN) of 30. Reduce the oil change interval by one-half.

Note: Drain the crankcase while the oil is warm. Draining while oil is warm allows waste particles that are suspended in the oil to drain. As the oil cools, the waste particles will settle to the bottom of the crankcase. The particles will not be removed by draining the oil and the particles will recirculate in the engine lubrication system with the new oil.

Prepare the machine for maintenance. Refer to “Prepare the Machine for Maintenance“.

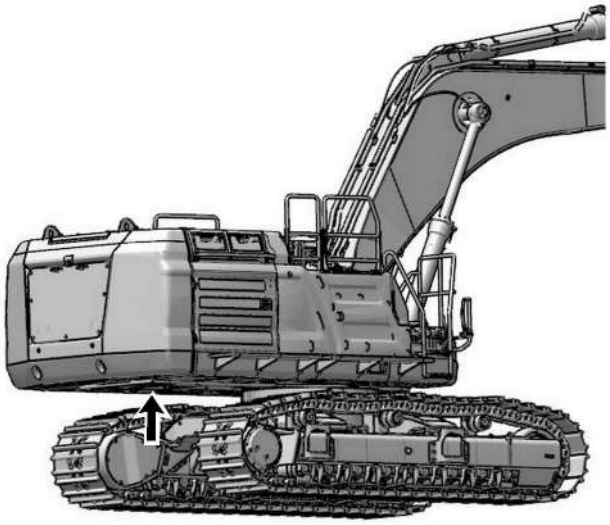


Illustration 581 g06767969

Location of crankcase access cover

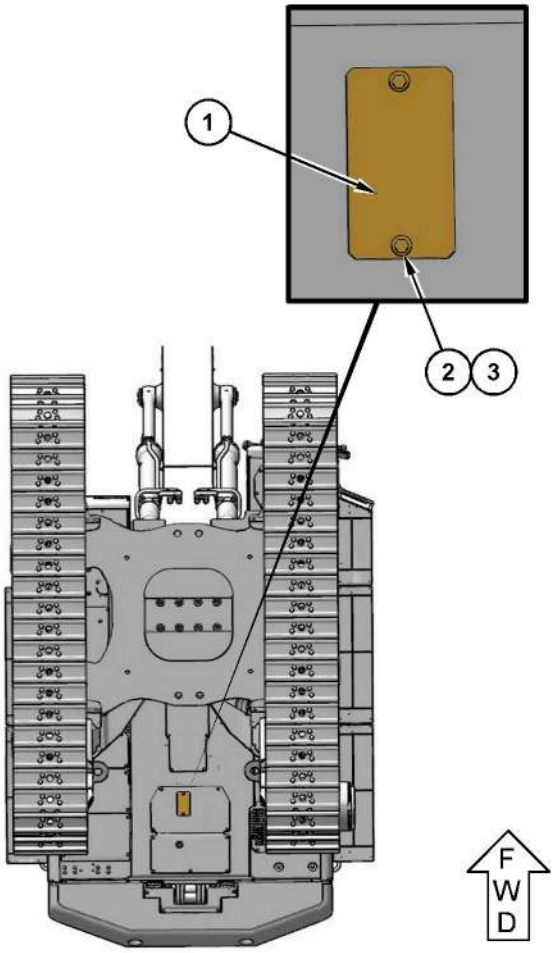


Illustration 582 g06767974

Bottom view of the machine

(1) Cover
(2) Bolt
(3) Washer

1. Cover (1) is located at the rear of the machine. Refer to Illustration 581 and Illustration 582 for the location of cover (1).

2. Remove two bolts (2) and two washers (3) that secure cover (1). Remove cover (1) and gain access to the crank case.

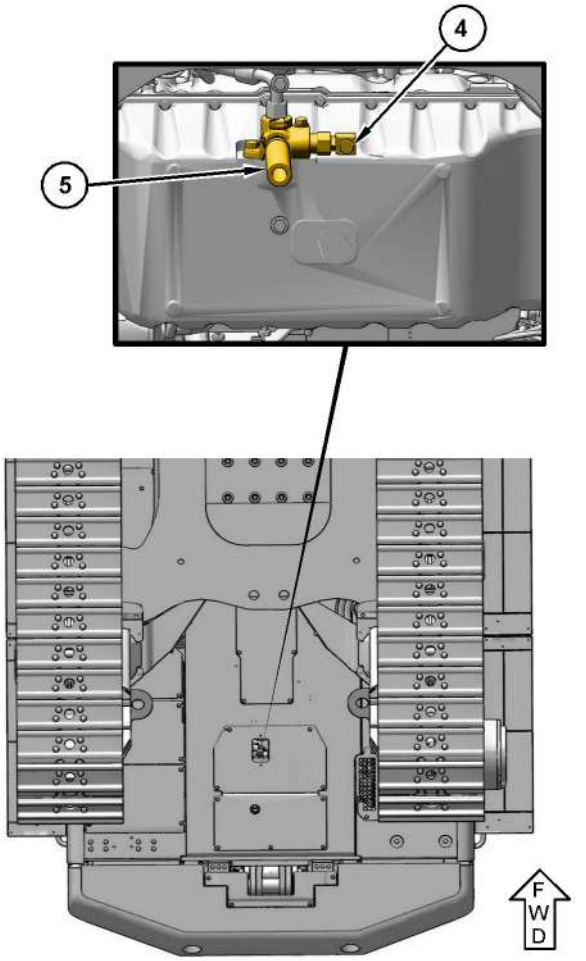


Illustration 583 g06768018

Bottom view of machine
Some components removed for better clarity
(4) Crankcase drain valve
(5) Drain hose

Note: Refer to “General Hazard Information“ for information on Containing Fluid Spillage.

3. Open the crankcase drain valve (4) to drain the oil through drain hose (5). Allow the oil to drain into a suitable container.

Note: Discard any drained fluids according to local regulations.

4. Close the crankcase drain valve (4).

5. Install cover (1). Secure cover (1) with two bolts (2) and two washers (3). Refer to Specifications, SENR3130, “Torque Specifications” for the recommended torque.

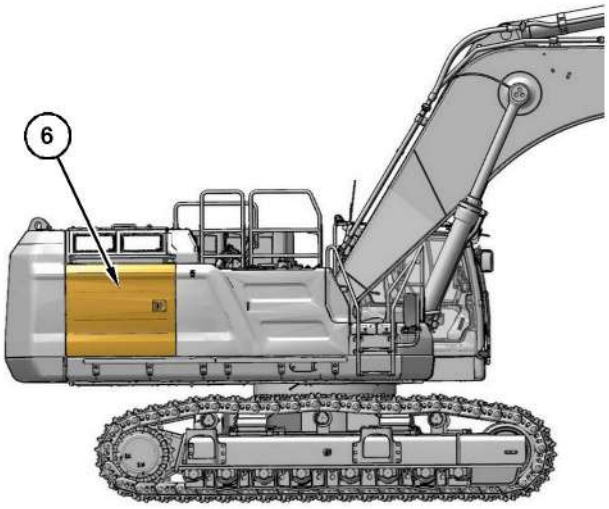


Illustration 584 g06767999

Right side of machine
(6) Access door

6. Open access door (6) at the right side of the machine. Refer to “Access Door and Cover Locations“ for more information.

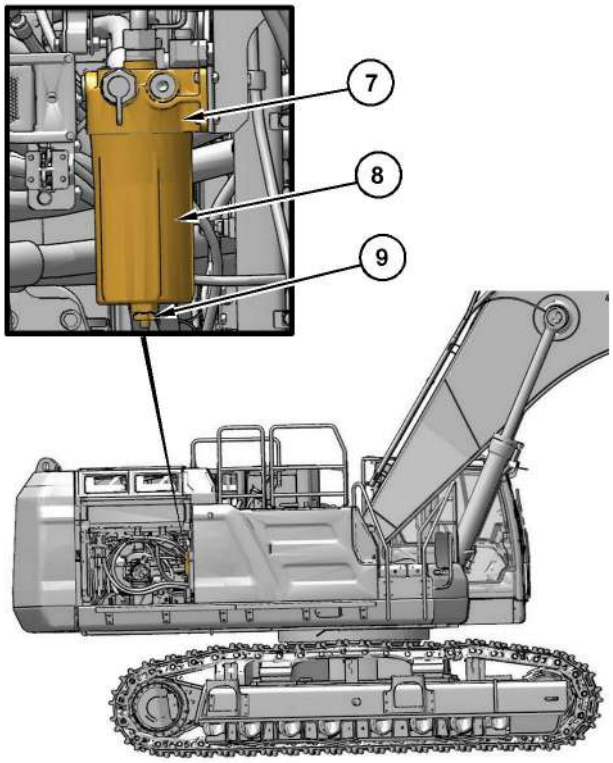


Illustration 585 g06768024

Some components removed for better clarity

(7) Oil filter housing base
(8) Oil filter housing
(9) Drain valve

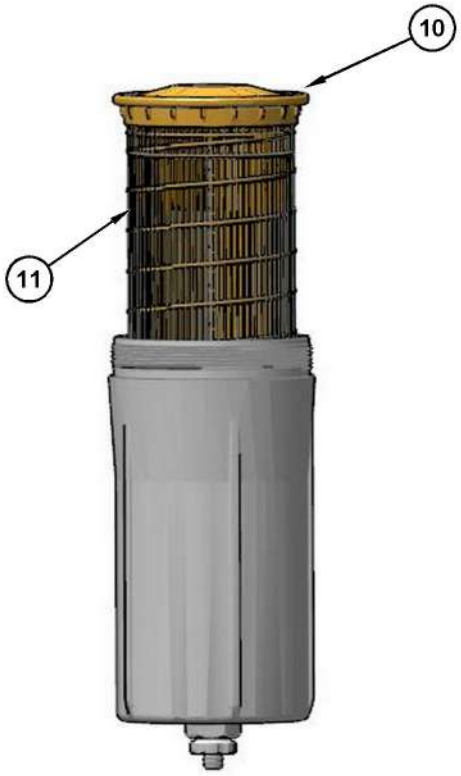


Illustration 586 g06768005

Some components removed for better clarity

Expanded view of oil filter element with oil filter housing

(10) Gasket
(11) Oil filter element

Note: Refer to “General Hazard Information“ for information on Containing Fluid Spillage.

7. Loosen drain valve (9) and allow the oil to drain out of oil filter housing (8). Drain valve (9) is at the bottom of oil filter housing (8)

Note: Discard any drained fluids according to local regulations.

Note: If equipped with a fast fill system, the oil can be drained and filled using the fast fill coupler. Refer to “Fast Fill (If Equipped)” in this chapter.

8. Remove oil filter housing (8) from oil filter housing base (7). Refer to “Oil Filter - Inspect“ for more information.

9. Clean oil filter housing base (7).

10. Remove oil filter element (11) from oil filter housing (8).

Note: Discard used oil filter element (11) according to local regulations.

11. Clean oil filter housing (8).

12. Install new oil filter element (11) into oil filter housing (8).

13. After installing new oil filter element (11), hand tighten drain valve (9) at the bottom of oil filter housing (8).

14. Apply a thin coat of engine oil to gasket (10) of new oil filter element (11).

15. Use a socket wrench to install oil filter housing (8) with a new oil filter element (11) into oil filter housing base (7). Hand tighten until metal to metal contact is achieved

16. Again tighten drain valve (9) at the bottom of oil filter housing (8).

Note: Refer to Specifications, SENR3130, “Torque Specifications” for the recommended torque.

17. Close access door (6) at the right side of the machine. Refer to “Access Door and Cover Locations“ for more information.

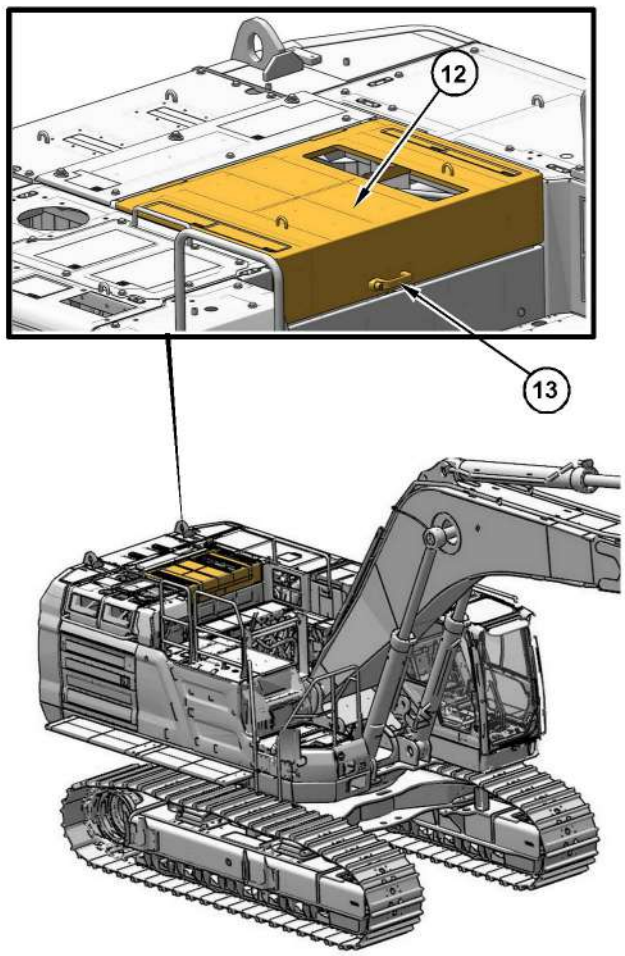


Illustration 587 g06768012

(12) Access cover
(13) Handle

18. Open access cover (12) on top of the machine using handle (13). Refer to “Access Door and Cover Locations“ for more information.

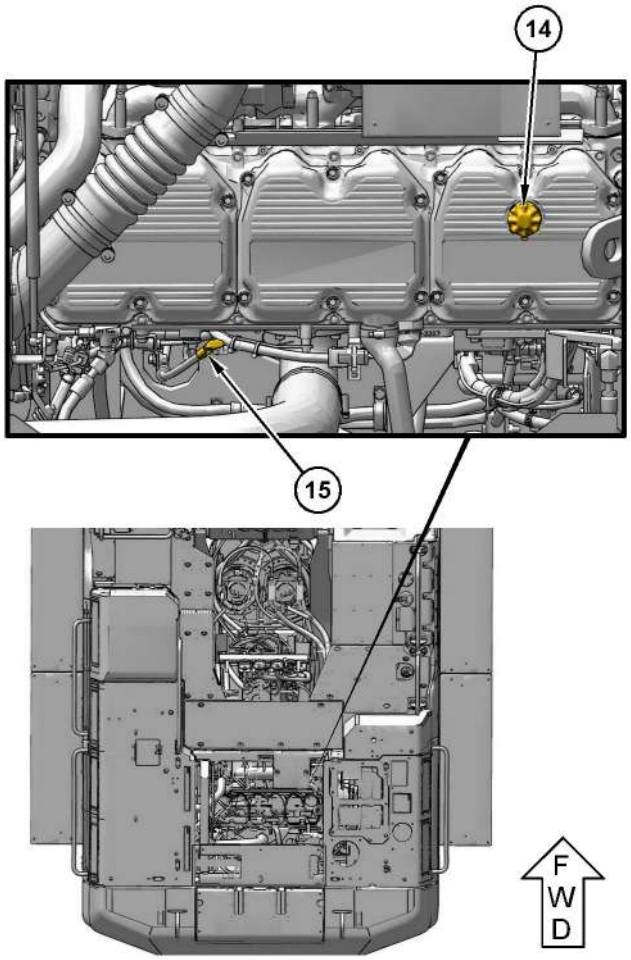


Illustration 588 g06768031

Top view of the machine

Some components removed for better clarity

(14) Oil filler cap
(15) Oil level gauge

19. Clean oil filler cap (14) and area surrounding oil filler cap (14). Remove oil filler cap (14). Fill the crankcase with new oil. Refer to “Capacities (Refill)“ and “Lubricant Viscosities“ for more information. Clean oil filler cap (14) and install oil filler cap (14).

20. Start the engine and allow the oil to warm. Refer to “Engine Starting“ for more information. Check the engine for leaks. Stop the engine. Refer to “Stopping the Engine“ for more information.

21. Wait for 30 minutes to allow the oil to drain back into the crankcase. Check the oil level with oil level gauge (15). Refer to the illustration 588 for the location of oil level gauge (15).

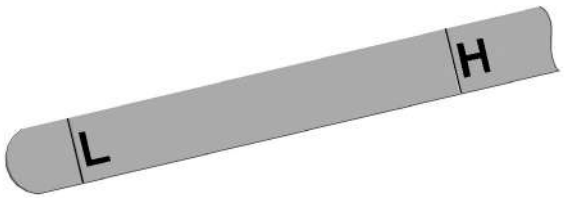


Illustration 589 g06183475

Oil level gauge

22. Maintain the oil between the “L” and “H” marks on oil level gauge (15). If necessary, add the engine oil. Refer to “Capacities (Refill)“ and “Lubricant Viscosities“ for more information.

23. Close access cover (12) on top of the machine using handle (13). Refer to “Access Door and Cover Locations“ for more information.

Fast Fill (If Equipped)

If your machine is equipped with a deluxe service center, you may drain and add the engine oil through the fast fill port.

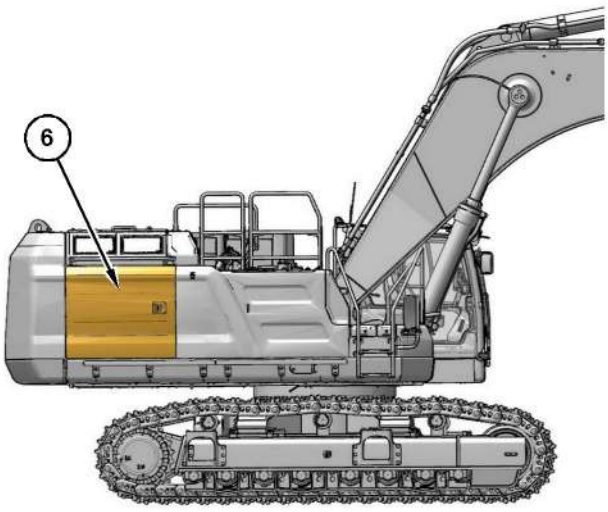


Illustration 590 g06767999

Right side of machine

(5) Access door

1. Open access door (6) at the right side of the machine. Refer to “Access Door and Cover Locations“ for more information.

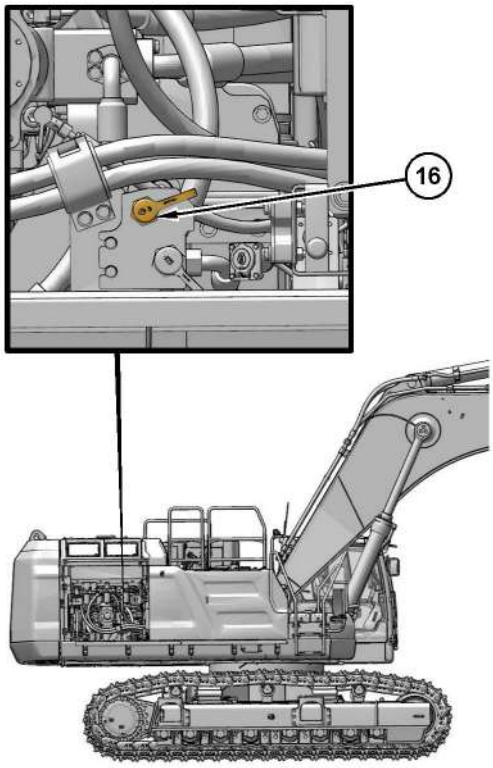


Illustration 591 g06768160

Some components removed for better clarity

(16) Dust cover

2. Remove the dust cover (16).

3. Attach a hose that is equipped with a nozzle.

Note: Make sure that the nozzle and the receiver are free from debris before attaching.

4. Drain the engine oil or add the engine oil, as needed. Refer to “Capacities (Refill)“ and “Lubricant Viscosities“ for more information.

5. Install dust cover (16).

6. Close access door (6) at the right side of the machine. Refer to “Access Door and Cover Locations“ for more information.

i07956821

Engine Valve Lash - Check

SMCS Code: 1102-082; 1102-535; 1102; 1105-025; 1105-535; 1121-535; 1209; 1209-082; 1209-535; 7527

Note: Procedures for adjusting the valve lash can be found in Systems Operation/Testing and Adjusting, “Valve Lash Adjustment”. Consult your Cat dealer for assistance.

⚠ WARNING

Ensure that the engine cannot be started while this maintenance is being performed. To help prevent possible injury, do not use the starting motor to turn the flywheel.

Hot engine components can cause burns. Allow additional time for the engine to cool before measuring/adjusting valve lash clearance.

i04688455

Ether Starting Aid Cylinder - Replace
(If Equipped)

SMCS Code: 1456-510-CD

⚠ WARNING

Breathing ether vapors or repeated contact of ether with skin can cause personal injury. Personal injury may occur from failure to adhere to the following procedures.

Use ether only in well ventilated areas.

Do not smoke while changing ether cylinders.

Use ether with care to avoid fires.

Do not store replacement ether cylinders in living areas or in the operator's compartment.

Do not store ether cylinders in direct sunlight or at temperatures above 49 °C (120 °F).

Discard cylinders in a safe place. Do not puncture or burn cylinders.

Keep ether cylinders out of the reach of unauthorized personnel.

To avoid possible injury, be sure the brakes are applied and all controls are in HOLD or NEUTRAL when starting the engine.

The ether cylinder is located inside the rear access door on the left side of the machine.

Refer to Operation and Maintenance, “Fire Prevention and Explosion Prevention” before you replace the ether cylinders.

1. Open the rear access door on the left side of the machine.

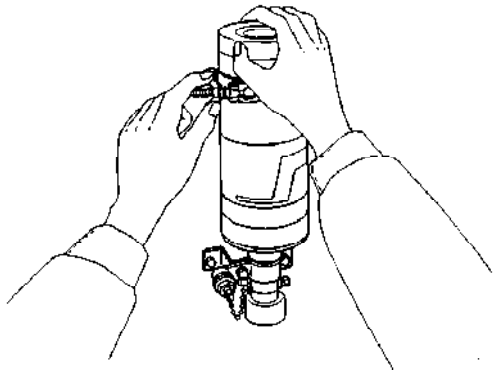


Illustration 592 g00751767

2. Loosen the cylinder retaining clamp.

3. Unscrew the empty ether starting aid cylinder and remove the empty ether starting aid cylinder.

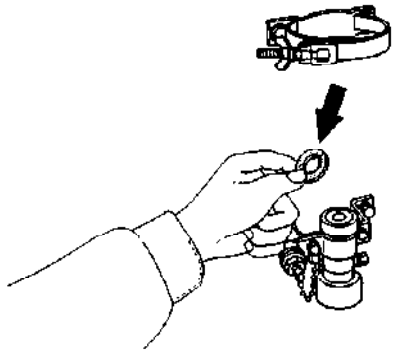


Illustration 593 g00751769

4. Remove the used gasket.

5. Install a new gasket.

Note: A new gasket is provided with each new ether starting aid cylinder.

6. Install the new ether starting aid cylinder.

7. Tighten the ether starting aid cylinder hand tight.

8. Tighten the cylinder retaining clamp securely.

9. Close the access door.

i09951711

Film (Product Identification) - Clean

SMCS Code: 7405-070; 7557-070

Illustration 594 g07667893

Cleaning of the Films

Make sure that all the product identification films are legible. Make sure that the recommended procedures are used to clean the product identification films. Ensure that all the product identification films are not damaged or missing. Clean the product identification films or replace the films.

Hand Washing

Use a wet solution with no abrasive material that contains no solvents and no alcohol. Use a wet solution with a “pH” value between 3 and 11. Use a soft brush, a rag, or a sponge to clean the product identification films. Avoid wearing down the surface of the product identification films with unnecessary scrubbing. Ensure that the surface of the product identification films is flushed with clean water and allow the product identification films to air dry.

Power Washing

Power washing or washing with pressure may be used to clean product identification films. However, aggressive washing can damage the product identification films.

Excessive pressure during power washing can damage the product identification films by forcing water underneath the product identification films. Water lessens the adhesion of the product identification film to the product, allowing the product identification film to lift or curl. These problems are magnified by wind. These problems are critical for the perforated film on windows.

To avoid lifting of the edge or other damage to the product identification films, follow these important steps:

- Use a spray nozzle with a wide spray pattern.
- A maximum pressure of 83 bar (1200 psi)
- A maximum water temperature of 50° C (120° F)
- Hold the nozzle perpendicular to the product identification film at a minimum distance of 305 mm (12 inch).
- Do not direct a stream of water at a sharp angle to the edge of the product identification film.

i06882903

Final Drive Oil - Change

SMCS Code: 4050-044-FLV

WARNING

Hot oil and hot components can cause personal injury. Do not allow hot oil or hot components to contact skin.

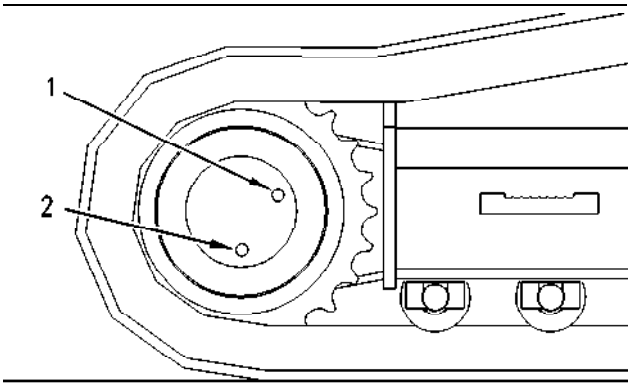


Illustration 595 g00822278

(1) Oil level plug
(2) Oil drain plug

1. Position one final drive so that oil drain plug (2) is at the bottom.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “General Hazard Information” for information on Containing Fluid Spillage.

2. Remove drain plug (2) and level plug (1). Allow the oil to drain into a suitable container.

3. Clean the plugs and inspect the O-ring seals. If wear or damage is evident, replace the drain plug, the level plug, and/or the O-ring seals.

4. Install drain plug (2).

5. Fill the final drive to the bottom of the opening on level plug (1). See Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Lubricant Viscosities” and Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Capacities (Refill)”.

Note: If the oil fills slowly, the fill hole may be blocked by the planetary gear. Rotate the final drive to move the planetary gear away from the fill hole.

Note: Overfilling the final drive will cause the seals on the travel motor to allow hydraulic oil or water to enter the final drive. The final drive may become contaminated.

6. Install level plug (1).

7. Perform Step 1 to Step 6 on the other final drive. Use a different container for the oil so that the oil samples from the final drives will be separate.

8. Completely remove the oil that has spilled onto surfaces.

9. Start the machine and allow the final drives to run through several cycles.

10. Stop the machine. Check the oil level.

11. Check the drained oil for metal chips or for particles. If there are any chips or particles, consult your Cat dealer.

12. Properly dispose of the drained material. Obey local regulations for the disposal of the material.

i03914051

Final Drive Oil Level - Check

SMCS Code: 4050-535-FLV

WARNING

Hot oil and hot components can cause personal injury. Do not allow hot oil or hot components to contact skin.

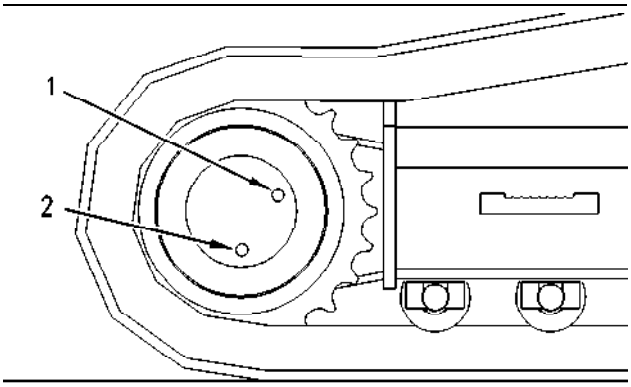


Illustration 596 g00822278

(1) Oil level plug
(2) Oil drain plug

1. Position one final drive so that oil drain plug (2) is at the bottom.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “General Hazard Information” for information on Containing Fluid Spillage.

2. Remove oil level plug (1).

3. Check the oil level. The oil should be near the bottom of the level plug opening.

4. Add oil through the level plug opening, if necessary. See Operation and Maintenance, “Lubricant Viscosities”.

Note: If the oil fills slowly, the fill hole may be blocked by the planetary gear. Rotate the final drive in order to move the planetary gear away from the fill hole.

Note: Overfilling the final drive will cause the seals on the travel motor to allow hydraulic oil or water to enter the final drive. The final drive may become contaminated.

5. Clean oil level plug (1). Inspect the O-ring seal. Replace the O-ring seal if the O-ring seal is worn or damaged.

6. Install oil level plug (1).

7. Repeat the procedure for the other final drive.

i03756611

Final Drive Oil Sample - Obtain

SMCS Code: 4011-008; 4050-008; 4050-SM; 7542-008

WARNING

Hot oil and hot components can cause personal injury. Do not allow hot oil or hot components to contact skin.

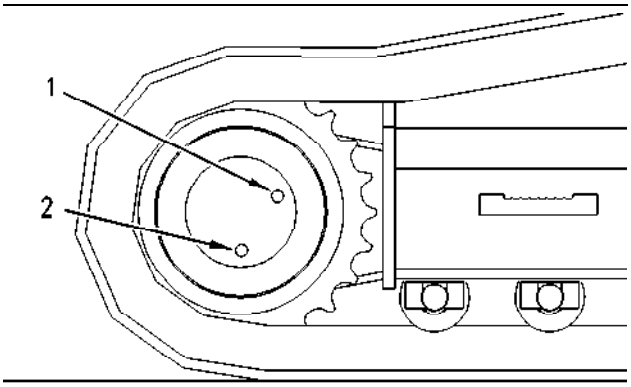


Illustration 597 g00822278

(1) Oil level plug
(2) Oil drain plug

1. Position the final drive so that oil drain plug (2) is at the bottom.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “General Hazard Information” for information on Containing Fluid Spillage.

2. Remove oil level plug (1).

3. Obtain a sample of the final drive oil through the hole for the oil level plug.

4. Install oil level plug (1).

Refer to Special Publication, SEBU6250, “Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations” “S·O·S Oil Analysis” for more information on obtaining a sample of the final drive oil. For additional information about taking an oil sample, refer to Special Publication, PEGJ0047, “How To Take A Good Oil Sample”.

i07318401

Fuel System - Prime

SMCS Code: 1250-548

WARNING

Fuel leaked or spilled onto hot surfaces or electrical components can cause a fire. To help prevent possible injury, turn the start switch off when changing fuel filters or water separator elements. Clean up fuel spills immediately.

NOTICE
Care must be taken to ensure that fluids are contained during performance of inspection, maintenance, testing, adjusting, and repair of the product. Be prepared to collect the fluid with suitable containers before opening any compartment or disassembling any component containing fluids.

Refer to Special Publication, PERJ1017, “Dealer Service Tool Catalog” for tools and supplies suitable to collect and contain fluids on Cat ® products.

Dispose of all fluids according to local regulations and mandates.

NOTICE
Do not loosen the fuel lines at the fuel manifold. The fittings may be damaged and/or a loss of priming pressure may occur when the fuel lines are loosened.

NOTICE
Do not allow dirt to enter the fuel system. Thoroughly clean the area around a fuel system component that will be disconnected. Fit a suitable cover over any disconnected fuel system components.

Prime the fuel system to fill the fuel filter, and prime the fuel system to purge trapped air. The fuel system should be primed under the following conditions:

- The fuel tank is running low.
- The machine has been stored.
- The fuel filter is being replaced.
- The fuel system has been repaired.

1. Turn the engine start switch to the ON position. Leave the engine start switch in the ON position for 4 minutes.

2. Verify that the water separator is full of fuel.

3. If the water separator is not full of fuel, turn the engine start switch OFF and then turn the engine start switch ON. Turning the engine start switch off and on will cycle the fuel priming pump again.

4. When the water separator is full of fuel, attempt to start the engine. If the engine starts and the engine runs rough or the engine misfires, operate at low idle until the engine is running smoothly. If the engine cannot be started, or if the engine continues to misfire or smoke, repeat Step 1.

i09762846

Fuel System Primary Filter (Water Separator) Element - Replace

SMCS Code: 1263-510-FQ

WARNING

Personal injury or death may result from failure to adhere to the following procedures.

Fuel leaked or spilled onto hot surfaces or electrical components can cause a fire.

Clean up all leaked or spilled fuel. Do not smoke while working on the fuel system.

Turn the disconnect switch OFF or disconnect the battery when changing fuel filters.

NOTICE
Do not fill the fuel filters with fuel before installing the fuel filters. The fuel will not be filtered and could be contaminated. Contaminated fuel will cause accelerated wear to fuel system parts.

Prepare the machine for maintenance. Refer to “Prepare the Machine for Maintenance“.

Refer to Specifications, SENR3130, “Torque Specifications”.

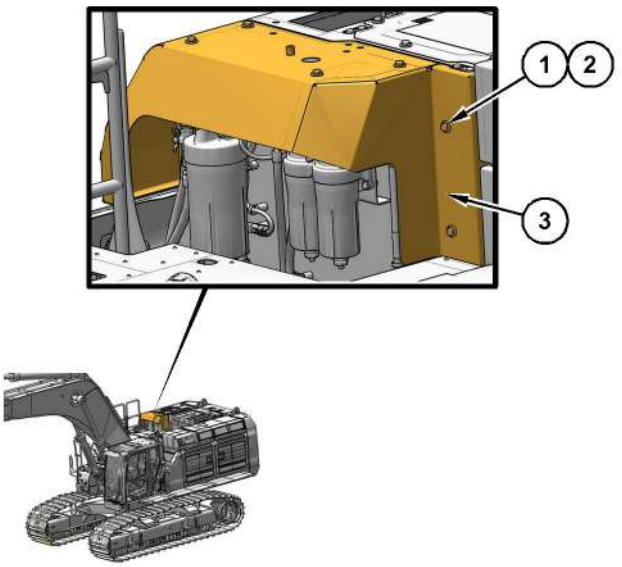


Illustration 598 g07582282

Typical example

(1) Bolt
(2) Washer
(3) Cover

1. Remove seven bolts (1) and seven washers (2). Remove cover (3) above the left side access door.

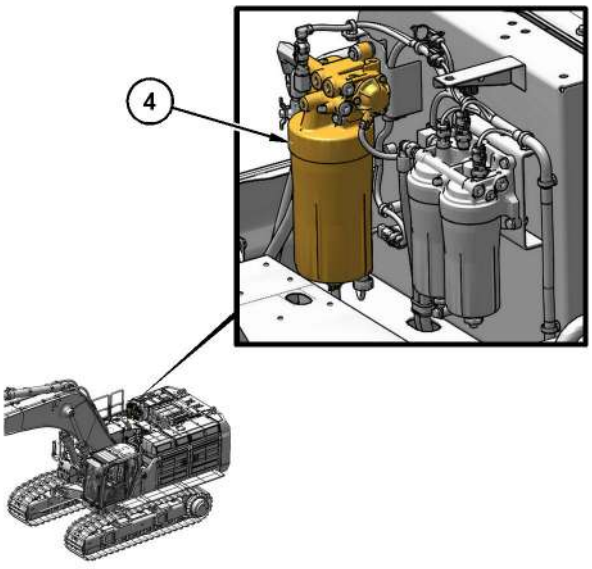


Illustration 599 g07582283

Typical example

(4) Fuel primary filter

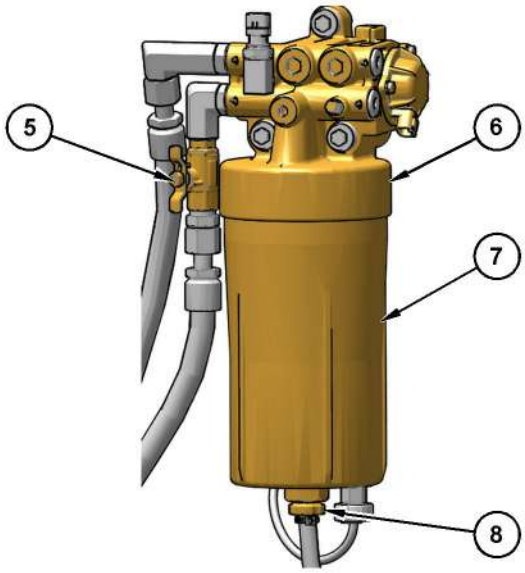


Illustration 600 g07582324

Detailed view of fuel primary filter (4)

(5) Shutoff valve
(6) Filter base
(7) Filter housing
(8) Drain valve

2. Turn OFF the fuel supply to the fuel filter by turning shutoff valve (5) clockwise.

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Fuel Tank Shutoff and Drain Control” for more information.

3. Turn drain valve (8) counterclockwise in order to open.

Note: Refer to “General Hazard Information“ for information that pertains to containing fluid spillage.

4. Drain the water and sediment into a suitable container.

Note: Dispose of drained fluids and used filters according to local regulations.

5. Close drain valve (8).

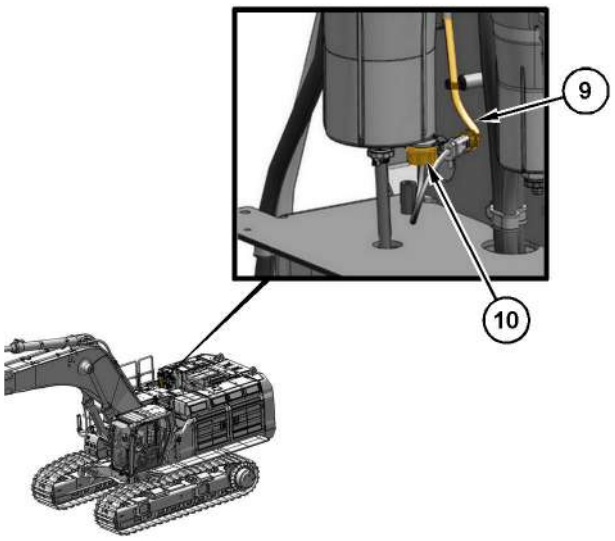


Illustration 601 g07585659

Typical example

(9) Harness
(10) Water in fuel (WIF) sensor

6. Disconnect harness (9).

Note: Do not remove WIF sensor (10). Do not cut the cable straps.

7. Remove the filter housing (7) from filter base (6). A filter wrench may be used to loosen the filter.

8. Remove the filter element. Discard the used filter element.

9. Clean the inside surface of the filter housing (7).

10. Inspect the O-ring seal on the filter housing (7). Replace these seals if the seals are worn or damaged.

11. Clean filter base (6).

12. Lubricate the O-ring seal on the new filter element with clean diesel fuel.

13. Install the new filter element into filter housing (7).

Instructions for the installation of the filter are printed on the side of each Cat ® spin-on filter. For non-Caterpillar filters, refer to the installation instructions that are provided by the supplier of the filter.

14. Tighten filter housing (7) on filter base (6) and tighten until filter housing (7) flange touches filter base (6).

Note: Do not use tools to tighten filter housing (7) to filter base (6).

15. Tighten drain valve (8).

16. Turn ON the fuel supply to the filter by turning the shutoff valve (5) counterclockwise.

Note: Do not start the engine until all service to the fuel system is complete. For instructions about priming the fuel system, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Fuel System - Prime”.

17. Install seven bolts (1) and seven washers (2).

Refer to Specifications, SENR3130, “Torque Specifications”.

18. Install cover (3).

i09801740

Fuel System Secondary Filter - Replace

SMCS Code: 1261-510

WARNING

Crush Hazard!

Machine access doors can pinch, trap, or crush personnel when being closed.

Use caution while closing machine access doors. Ensure that all personnel are clear of the machine before closing the access doors.

WARNING

Access to this service point may require climbing on the equipment. Slipping or falling while climbing on the equipment could result in personal injury or death. Refer to the Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Mounting and Dismounting” topic, for safety information.

WARNING

Personal injury or death can result from a fire.

Fuel leaked or spilled onto hot surfaces or electrical components can cause a fire.

Clean up all leaked or spilled fuel. Do not smoke while working on the fuel system.

Turn the disconnect switch OFF or disconnect the battery when changing fuel filters.

⚠ WARNING

Accidental machine starting can cause injury or death to personnel working on the machine.

To avoid accidental machine starting, turn the battery disconnect switch to the OFF position and remove the key. If the machine is not equipped with a battery disconnect switch, disconnect the battery cables from the battery and tape the battery clamps.

Place a do not operate tag at the battery disconnect switch location to inform personnel that the machine is being worked on.

NOTICE
Keep all parts clean from contaminants.

Contaminants may cause rapid wear and shortened component life.

NOTICE
Not following the recommendations found in this manual can lead to reduced performance and compartment failure.

NOTICE
Turn the disconnect switch OFF or disconnect the battery when changing fuel filters.

Do not fill fuel filters with fuel before installing them. Contaminated fuel will cause accelerated wear to fuel system parts.

Prepare the machine for maintenance. Refer to “Prepare the Machine for Maintenance“.

This machine has two secondary fuel filters. Replace both secondary fuel filters at the same time by following the instructions below:

Refer to Specifications, SENR3130, “Torque Specifications”.

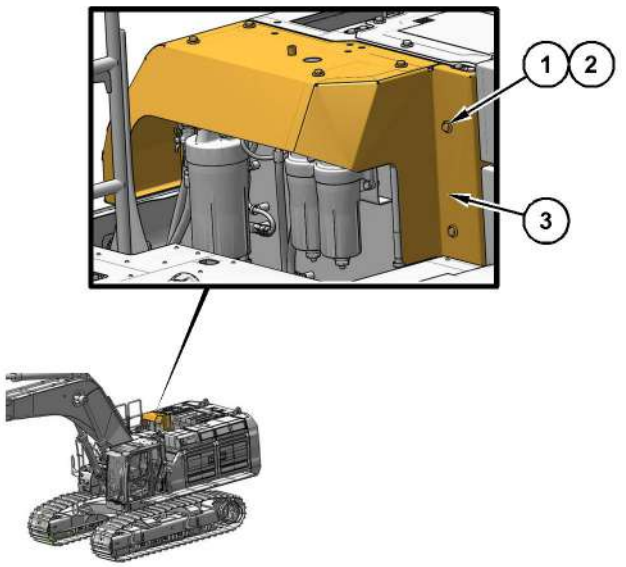


Illustration 602 g07582282

Typical example

(1) Bolt
(2) Washer
(3) Cover

1. Remove seven bolts (1) and seven washers (2).

2. Remove cover (3) on top of the machine.

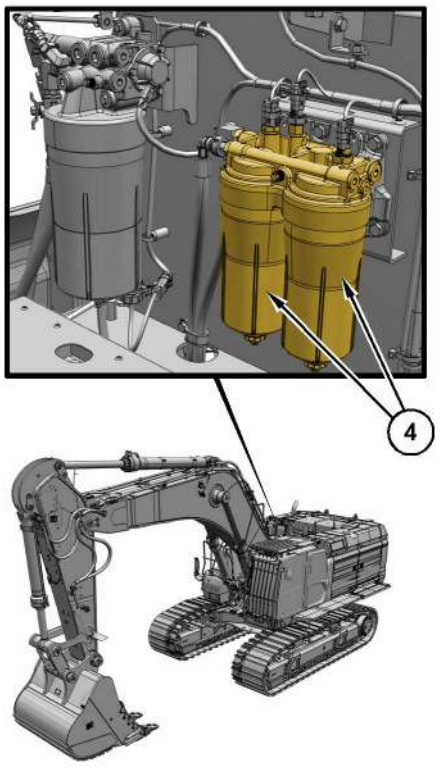


Illustration 603 g07599194

Some parts removed for better clarity

(4) Secondary fuel filter

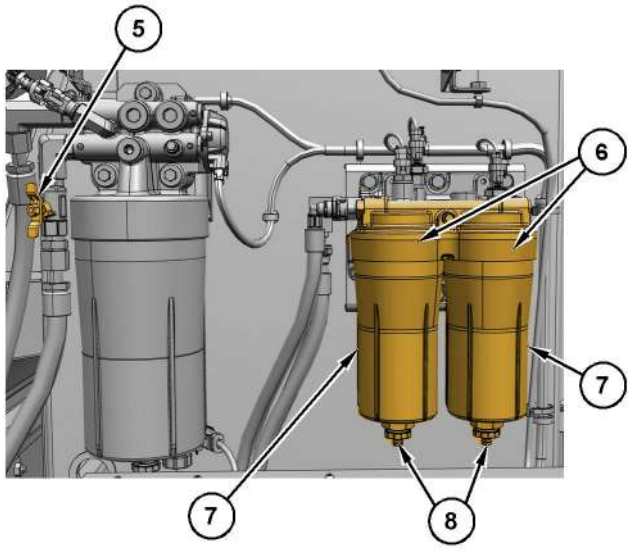


Illustration 604 g07599226

Detailed view of secondary fuel filters (4)

(5) Fuel shutoff valve
(6) Filter base
(7) Filter housing
(8) Drain valve

3. Turn OFF the fuel supply to secondary fuel filters (4) by turning fuel shutoff valve (5) clockwise. Refer to “Fuel Tank Shutoff and Drain Control“ for more information.

4. Turn drain valves (8) counterclockwise to open.

Note: Refer to “General Hazard Information“ for information that pertains to containing fluid spillage.

5. Drain the water and sediment into a suitable container.

Note: Dispose of drained fluids according to local regulations.

6. Remove filter housing (7) from filter base (6). A filter wrench may be used to loosen the filter.

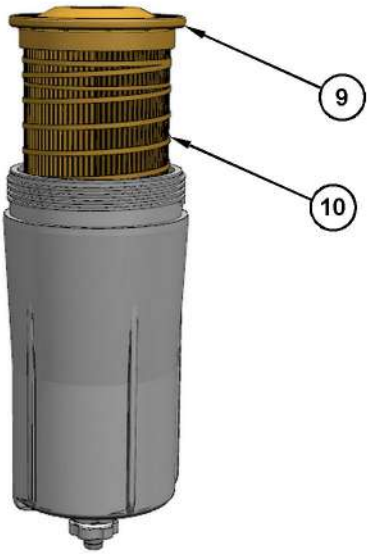


Illustration 605 g07599259

Typical example

(9) O-ring seal
(10) Filter element

7. Remove filter element (10) from filter housing (7). Discard the used filter element (10).

Note: Dispose of used filters according to local regulations.

8. Clean filter housing (7).

9. Remove O-ring seal (9) from top of filter element (10).

10. Clean filter base (6). Make sure that none of the material from used O-ring seal (9) remains in filter base (7).

Note: Do not fill secondary fuel filters (4) before installing secondary fuel filters (6).

11. Install new filter element (10) into filter housing (7).

Instructions for the installation of the filter are printed on the side of each Cat ® spin-on filter. For non-Caterpillar filters, refer to the installation instructions that are provided by the supplier of the filter.

12. Lubricate O-ring seal (9) of new filter element (10) with clean diesel fuel.

Note: New O-ring seal (9) for secondary fuel filters (4) is supplied with new filter element (10).

13. Tighten filter housing (7) to filter base (6) by hand until new O-ring seal (9) contacts filter base (6).

Note: Do not use tools to tighten filter housing (7) to filter base (6).

14. Tighten two drain valves (8).

15. Turn ON the fuel supply to secondary fuel filters (4) by turning fuel shutoff valve (5) counterclockwise. Refer to “Fuel Tank Shutoff and Drain Control“ for more information.

Note: Do not start the engine until all service to the fuel system is complete.

16. Prime the fuel system. Refer to Operation and Maintenance, “Fuel System - Prime”.

17. Start the engine and check for leaks, then stop the engine. Refer to Operation and Maintenance, “Engine Starting” and , “Stopping the Engine".

18. Install cover (3).

19. Install seven bolts (1) and seven washers (2).

Refer to Specifications, SENR3130, “Torque Specifications”.

i05065911

Fuel System Water Separator - Drain

SMCS Code: 1263

1. Remove the cover above the access door on the left side of the machine.

2. Provide a suitable container for used fluid.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “General Hazard Information” for information on Containing Fluid Spillage.

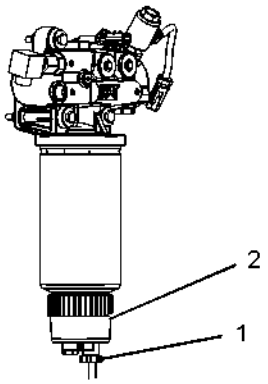


Illustration 606 g02022485

(1) Drain valve
(2) Bowl

3. Check bowl (2) in the bottom of the water separator. Open drain valve (1). Drain the water and sediment in the bowl.

Note: Dispose of used fluids according to local regulations.

4. Close drain valve (1).

5. Replace cover over filters.

i08187518

Fuel Tank Cap Filter - Replace

SMCS Code: 1273-510-Z2; 1273-510-FI

1. Prepare the machine for maintenance. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Prepare the Machine for Maintenance”.

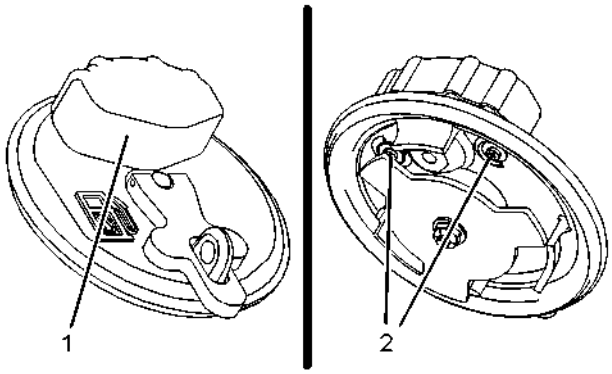


Illustration 607 g02612539

2. Remove the fuel cap.

3. Remove filter element screws (2) from the underside of the fuel cap and remove old filter element (1).

4. Wash the fuel tank cap in a clean, nonflammable solvent.

5. Install a new fuel cap filter element.

6. Install filter element screws (2) to secure filter element (1) to the fuel cap.

7. Install the fuel tank cap

i04462462

Fuel Tank Strainer - Clean

SMCS Code: 1273-070-STR

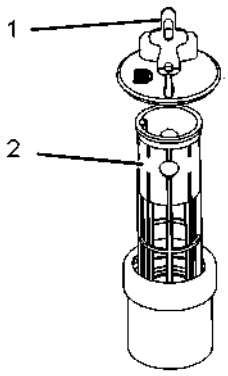


Illustration 608 g02609604

1. Remove fuel tank cap (1).

2. Remove strainer (2) from the filler opening.

3. Wash the strainer in a clean, nonflammable solvent.

4. Install the strainer into the filler opening.

5. Install the fuel tank cap.

i06061288

Fuel Tank Water and Sediment - Drain

SMCS Code: 1273-543

The fuel tank drain valve is located on the right side of the machine under the fuel tank.

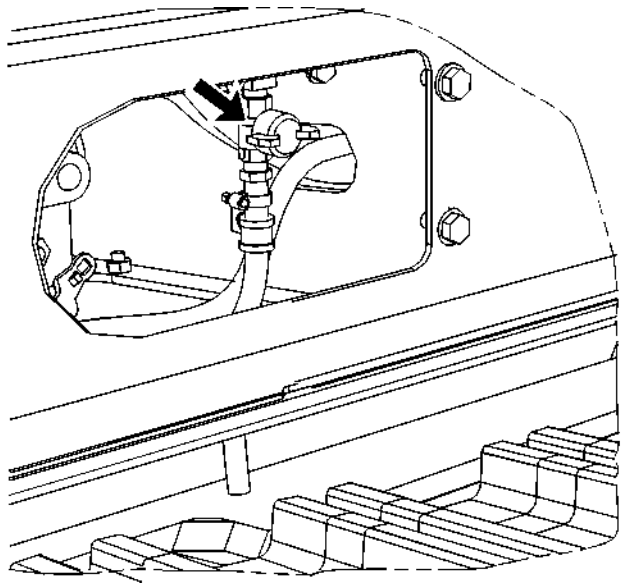


Illustration 609 g03795583

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “General Hazard Information” for information on containing fluid spillage.

1. Open the drain valve by turning the valve counterclockwise. Allow the water and the sediment to drain into a suitable container.

Note: Dispose of drained fluids according to local regulations.

2. Close the drain valve by turning the valve clockwise.

Fill the Fuel Tank

You can now add fuel to the fuel tank, if necessary. Remove the fuel tank cap and pump fuel through the opening.

Make sure that you lock the fuel tank cap after the refueling is complete.

Note: For machines equipped with fast fill fuel attachment, when the fuel is refilled from the top fuel port, stop refilling as the indicator starts to appear in order to avoid fuel spilling from the breather.

i09018262

Fuses - Replace

SMCS Code: 1417-510

NOTICE
Always replace fuses with the same type and capacity fuse that was removed. Otherwise, electrical damage could result.

NOTICE
If it is necessary to replace fuses frequently, an electrical problem may exist.

Contact your Cat ® dealer.

Prepare the machine for maintenance. Refer to “Prepare the Machine for Maintenance“.

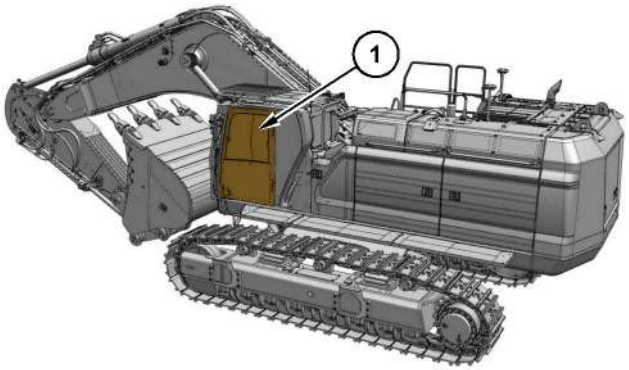


Illustration 610 g06984877

(1) Cab door

Open cab door (1) on the left side of the machine. Refer to “Access Door and Cover Locations“ for more information.

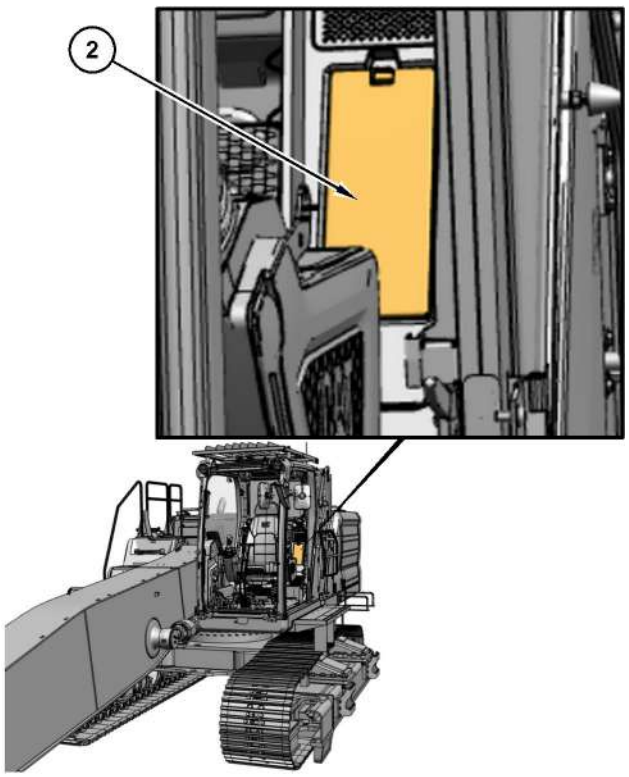


Illustration 611 g06954058

Typical example

Some parts removed for better clarity

(2) Cover

The fuse panel is on the left side of the interior storage box. Remove cover (2) of interior storage box to access the fuse panel.

Fuses – Fuses protect the electrical system from damage that is caused by overloaded circuits. Change a fuse if the element separates. If the element of a new fuse separates, check the circuit and/or repair the circuit.

NOTICE
Always replace fuses with the same type and capacity fuse that was removed. Otherwise, electrical damage could result.

NOTICE
If it is necessary to replace fuses frequently, an electrical problem may exist.

Contact your Cat ® dealer.

To replace a fuse, use the puller that is stored in the fuse panel.

The following list identifies the circuits that are protected by each fuse. The amperage for each fuse is included with each circuit.

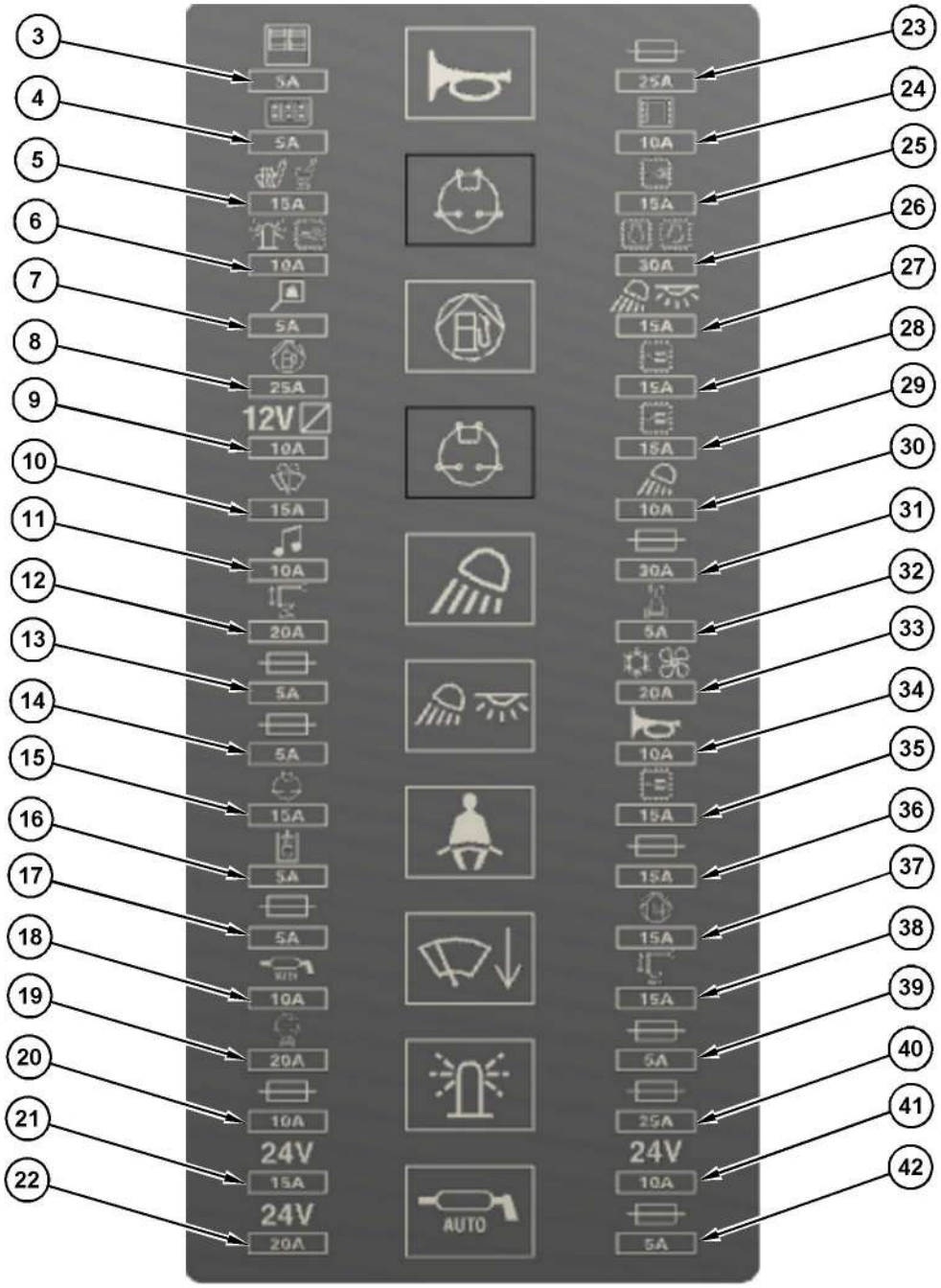


Illustration 612 g06966411

(3) Key ON – 5 Amp

(4) Electronic Switch Control Panel – 5 Amp

(5) Seat Heater, and Air Suspension Seat – 15 Amp

(6) Beacon – 10 Amp

(7) Counterweight Removal – 5 Amp

(8) Electric Refueling Pump – 25 Amp

(9) DC-DC Converter – 10 Amp

(10) Window Wiper and Window Washer – 15 Amp

(11) Radio – 10 Amp

(12) Cat Inertial Measurement Unit, Grade Control – 20 Amp

(13) Spare – 5 Amp

(14) Spare – 5 Amp

(15) Spare – 15 Amp

(16) Hydraulic Lock – 5 Amp

(17) Spare – 5 Amp

(18) Auto Lube – 10 Amp

(19) Spare – 20 Amp

(20) Spare – 10 Amp

(21) AUX (w/ bullet connector) – 15 Amp

(22) AUX (w/ bullet connector) – 20 Amp

(23) Spare – 25 Amp

(24) Display and ET Connector – 10 Amp

(25) BCM,PTS,MSS – 15 Amp

(26) Engine Electronic Control Module/Purge Lamp – 30 Amp

(27) Chas/Cab/Dome Light – 15 Amp

(28) Primary Electronic Control Module – 15 Amp

(29) Secondary Electronic Control Module – 15 Amp

(30) Boom Lamp – 10 Amp

(31) Spare – 30 Amp

(32) Product Link Module – 5 Amp

(33) Air Conditioner and Heater Blower – 20 Amp

(34) Horn – 10 Amp

(35) Machine ECM – 15 Amp

(36) Spare – 15 Amp

(37) Priming Pump – 15 Amp

(38) Cat Grade Control (R2 Sensor) – 15 Amp

(39) Spare – 5 Amp

(40) Spare – 25 Amp

(41) AUX (w/ bullet connector) – 10 Amp

(42) Spare – 5 Amp

Relays

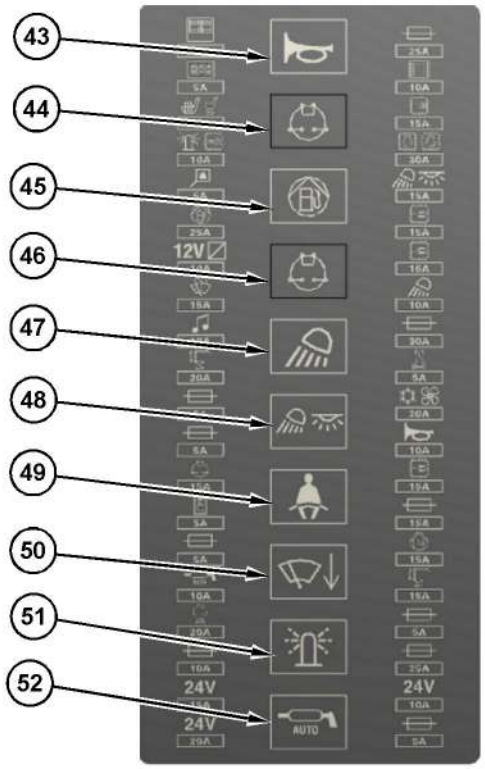


Illustration 613 g06988224

(43) Horn – Relay

(44) Spare – Relay

(45) Refueling Pump – Relay

(46) Spare – Relay

(47) Boom Light – Relay

(48) Chassis Light and Cab Light – Relay

(49) Seat Belt Alarm – Relay

(50) Lower Wiper – Relay

(51) Beacon – Relay

(52) Auto Lube – Relay

Power Fuse Module

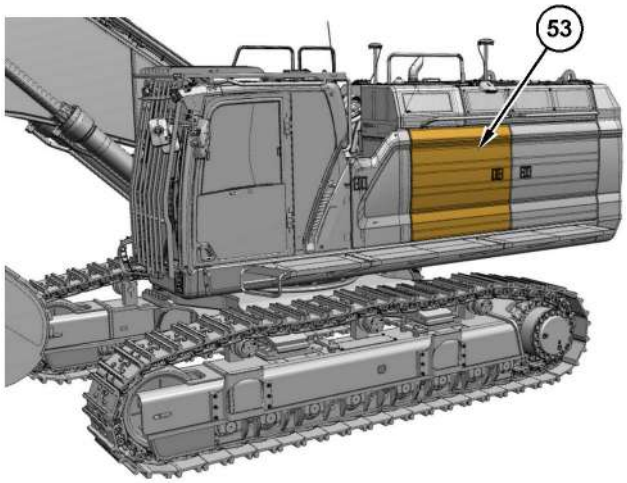


Illustration 614 g06988238

(53) Left middle access door

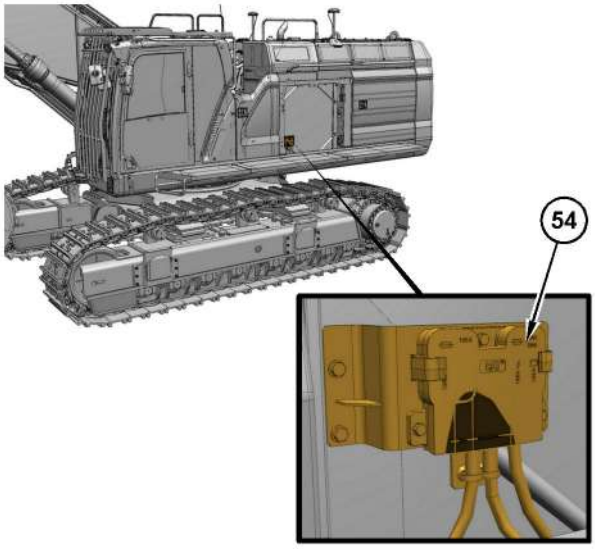


Illustration 615 g06988243

(54) Cover

The power fuse module is located behind left middle access door (53) on the left side of the machine. Refer to “Access Door and Cover Locations“. Remove cover (54) to access the fuses.

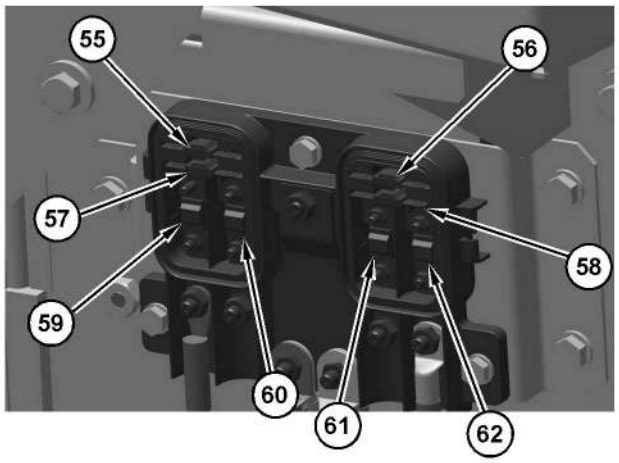


Illustration 616 g06988236

Spare (55 - 58) – The fuse module also includes spare fuses (5) which can be used if one of the installed fuses opens. One spare fuse is provided for each fuse in use.

Main Circuit 100 Amp (59) – This fuse is designed to protect the wires between the batteries and the fuses. If the wires are shorted to the machine body, this fuse would minimize the damage to the wires.

Glow Plug Circuit 40 Amp (60) – This fuse is designed to protect the glow plugs.

Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF IF Equipped) Pump Circuit 40 Amp (61) – This fuse is designed to protect the DEF pump circuit (If Equipped).

Alternator Circuit 150 Amp (62) – This fuse is designed to protect the alternator. If the batteries are installed with reversed polarity, the fuse would prevent the alternator from damaging the rectifier.

i08424662

Hydraulic System - Purge
(Air - Purge)

SMCS Code: 5050-542

Prepare the machine for maintenance. Refer to “Prepare the Machine for Maintenance“.

Purging air from the hydraulic system is required in any of the following instances:

- If hydraulic oil level is too low, under level 0, while the machine is parked.
- After hydraulic components are repaired, disassembled, or assembled.
- If the inlet hose is removed from any of the hydraulic pumps.

Note: Make sure that a qualified mechanic performs the hydraulic system air purge. Special tools and training are required.

Refer to the following procedures in the Service Manual for detailed instructions on purging air from the hydraulic system:

- Testing and Adjusting, M0109906, “374 Excavator”, “Main Hydraulic Pump Air - Purge"
- Testing and Adjusting, M0109906, “374 Excavator”, “Hydraulic System Air - Purge - Fan Pump and Charge Pump"
- Testing and Adjusting, M0109906, “374 Excavator”, “Hydraulic System Air - Purge - Swing Pump"

i08424664

Hydraulic System Oil - Change

SMCS Code: 5056-044

WARNING

Hot oil and hot components can cause personal injury. Do not allow hot oil or hot components to contact skin.

WARNING

Pressurized system!

The hydraulic tank contains hot oil under pressure. To prevent burns from the sudden release of hot oil, relieve the tank pressure with the engine off by slowly turning the cap approximately 1/8 of a turn until the cap reaches the secondary stop.

Hydraulic Hammer Use

The use of hydraulic hammers shortens the life of hydraulic oil. If a hydraulic hammer is used, the maintenance interval is shortened, refer to Table 58 for the intervals.

Table 58

Percentage of Hammer Use	Hydraulic System Oil - Change
50%	Every 1000 service hours
100%	Every 600 service hours

Cat HYDO Advanced 10 Oil Change Interval

The standard Cat HYDO Advanced 10 oil change interval is every 3000 service hours or 18 months.

A maintenance interval of 6000 service hours or 3 years for changing the hydraulic oil is available. The extended interval requires S·O·S monitoring of the hydraulic oil. The interval for S·O·S monitoring is every 500 hours. The maintenance interval for the hydraulic oil filter is not changed.

Machines with hammers are not included in the maintenance interval of 6000 service hours or 3 years . Machines with hammers must use the intervals that are listed in the Maintenance Interval Schedule. Machines that are used in severe conditions are not included in the maintenance interval of 6000 service hours or 3 years. Machines that are used in severe conditions must use the interval in the Maintenance Interval Schedule.

Drain the Oil

1. Park the machine in the servicing position on level ground.
2. Clean the top of the hydraulic tank thoroughly in order to keep dirt out of the hydraulic tank.

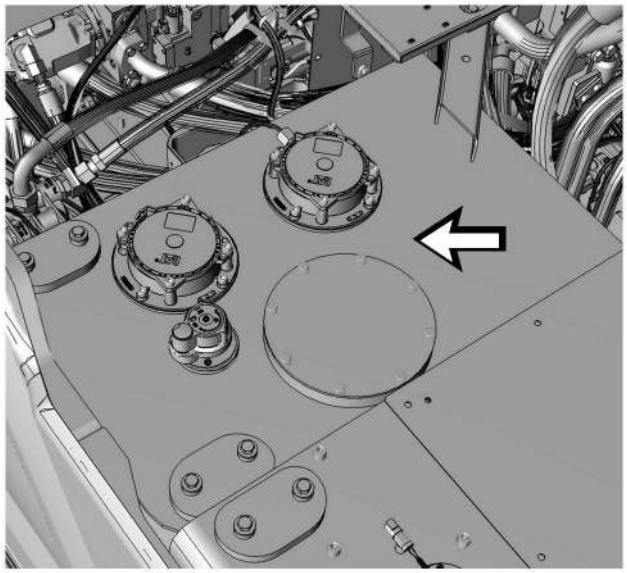


Illustration 617 g06591594

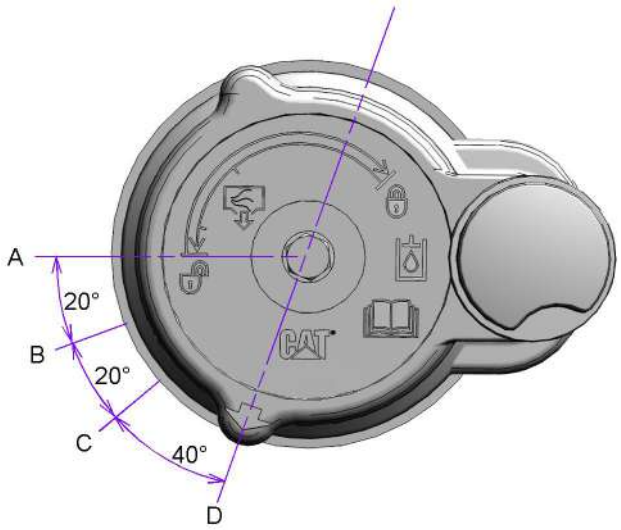


Illustration 618 g06591637

Filler cap

(A) LOCK position
(B) PRESSURE RELEASE - START position
(C) PRESSURE RELEASE - END position
(D) OPEN position

3. Release the pressure that may be present in the return hydraulic circuit with the following procedure. Refer to Illustration 618 for filler cap positions.

a. Turn the filler cap counterclockwise, with no downward force applied, and move the arrow from position (A) to position (B).

b. Release the pressure for a minimum of 45 seconds by moving the arrow from position (B) to position (C).

c. Push the center of the filler cap down. Without tilting the filler cap, move the arrow from position (C) to position (D).

d. The hydraulic tank pressure is relieved. The filler cap can now be removed if needed.

e. Tighten the filler cap on the hydraulic tank to position (A).

4. After the pressure is relieved, tighten the filler cap.

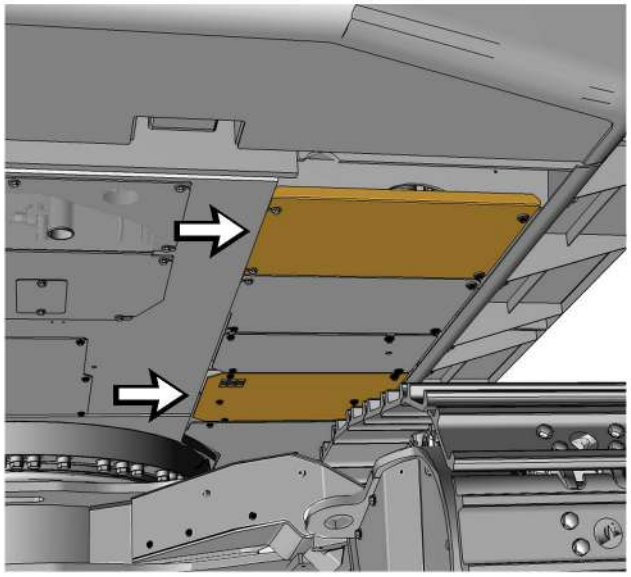


Illustration 619 g06591859

5. Remove the two access covers that are located under the hydraulic tank. This will allow access to the drain valve and the pipe.

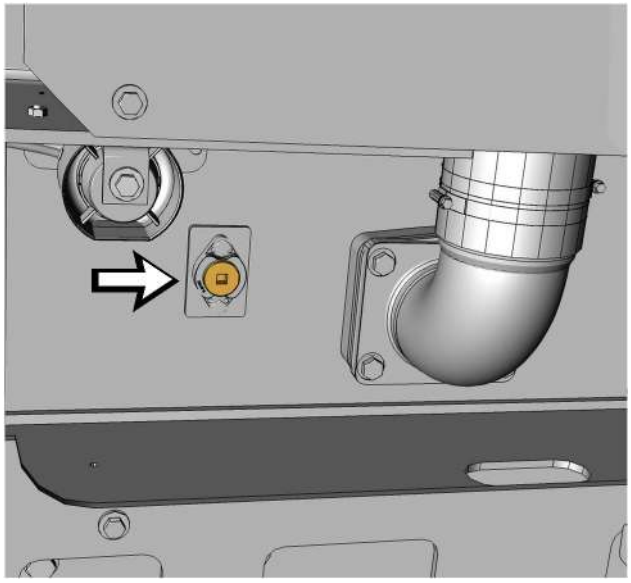


Illustration 620 g06591863

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “General Hazard Information” for information that pertains to containing fluid spillage.

6. Remove plug (1).

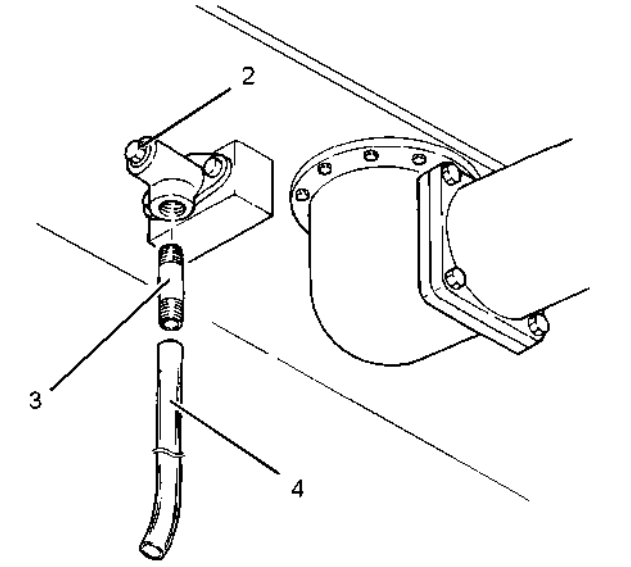


Illustration 621 g01137580

(2) Drain plug
(3) Pipe Nipple
(4) Tube

7. Install a pipe nipple (3) with a clear plastic tube (4) into the hole on the bottom of the hydraulic tank.

8. Loosen drain plug (2) in order to drain the oil.

9. Drain the oil into a suitable container.

10. After the oil has been drained, tighten drain plug (7) to a torque of 110 ± 15 N·m (81 ± 11 lb ft).

11. Remove the pipe nipple.

12. Clean plug (1) and install the plug. Tighten the plug to a torque of 75 ± 5 N·m (55 ± 48 lb ft).

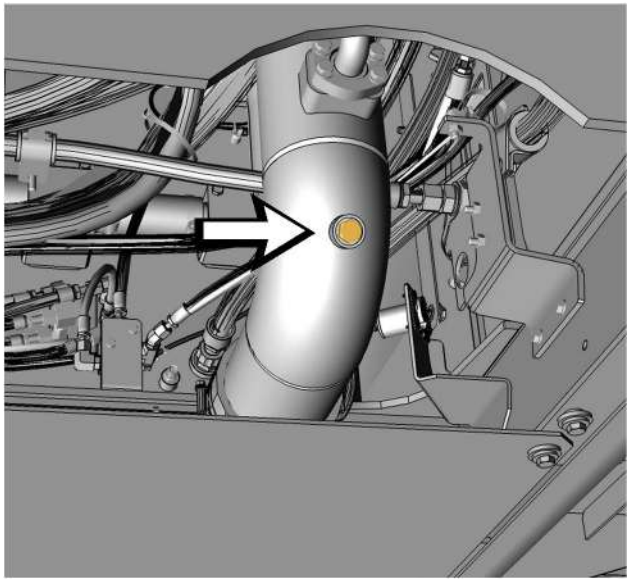


Illustration 622 g06591865

13. Remove the plug from the tube. Allow the oil to drain into a container.

14. Inspect the O-ring. Replace the O-ring if wear or damage is evident.

15. Clean the plug. Install the plug and the O-ring into the drain port.

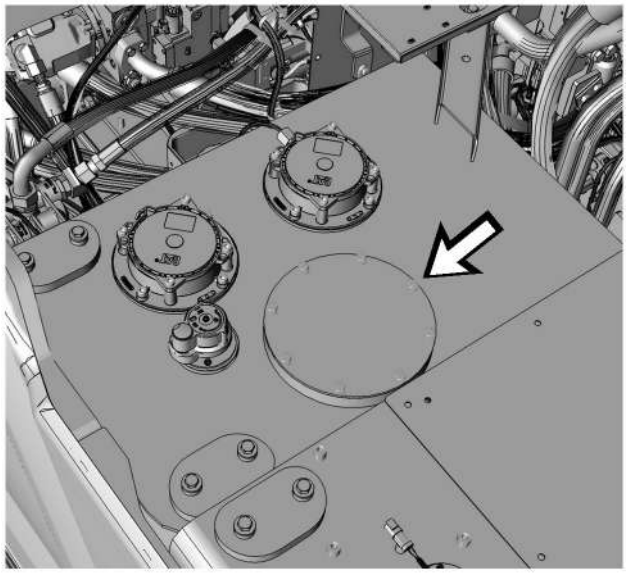


Illustration 623 g06591855

16. Remove the cover to the hydraulic tank screen.

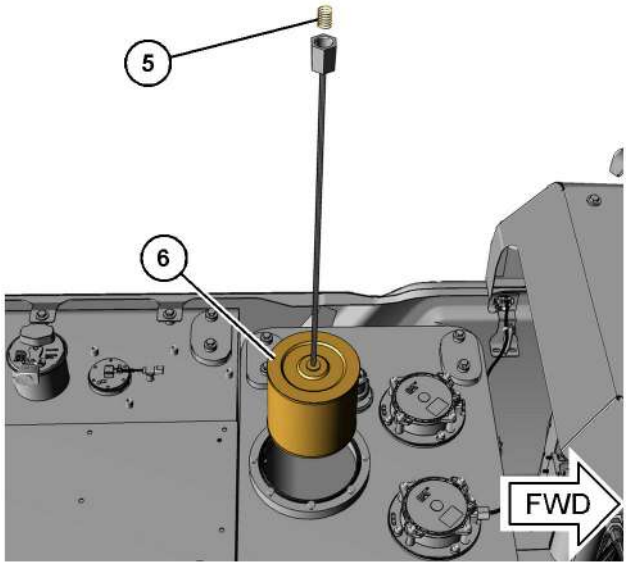


Illustration 624 g06591887

(5) Spring
(6) Screen

Note: Do not allow spring (5) to fall back into the tank.

17. Remove spring (5) and screen (6).

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance, “General Hazard Information” for information on containing fluid spillage.

18. Wash the screen in a clean nonflammable solvent. Allow the screen to dry. Inspect the screen. Replace the screen, if the screen is damaged.

19. There is an O-ring seal on the bottom of the screen. There is also an O-ring seal on the hydraulic tank around the opening for the screen. Inspect the O-ring seals. Replace the O-ring seals if wear or damage is evident.

20. Install the screen and the spring. Then install the cover.

Note: Make sure that the O-ring seals and the spring are properly positioned during installation.

Service the Hydraulic System Filters

Note: The hydraulic oil system must be empty when the filters are being serviced. Service the filters before refilling the machine with hydraulic oil.

Note: Dispose of used filters and used fluids according to local regulations.

Refer to the following topics in order to service the hydraulic system filters:

- Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Hydraulic System Filter Element (Fine Filtration) - Replace (If Equipped)”
- Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Hydraulic System Oil Filter (Return) - Replace”
- Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Hydraulic System Oil Filter (Case Drain) - Replace”
- Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Hydraulic System Oil Filter (Pilot) - Replace”

Fill the Hydraulic Tank

1. Fill the hydraulic system oil tank. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Capacities (Refill)”.

2. Inspect the O-ring seal on the filler plug for damage. Replace the O-ring, if necessary. Clean the filler plug. Install the filler plug.

Note: Make no attempt to start the engine until the pump has been filled with hydraulic oil. Serious damage to the hydraulic components can result.

When the hydraulic oil has been replaced, the air must be removed from the hydraulic oil system. To remove the air from the hydraulic oil system, follow Step 2a through Step 2d.

a. Start the engine.

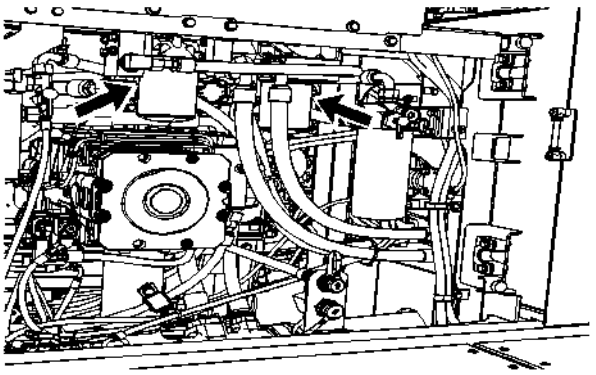


Illustration 625 g03573781

b. Slowly loosen the vent plug on top of the case drain filter until hydraulic oil flows out of the vent plug.

c. After oil flows out of the vent plug without any air bubbles, tighten the vent plug. This indicates that the air has been purged from the drain lines for the main pump and the drain line for the swing pump. Tighten the vent plug to a torque of 11 ± 1 N·m (97 ± 9 lb in).

d. Stop the engine.

3. Start the engine. Operate the engine at idling speed for five minutes.

4. Operate the joysticks in order to circulate the hydraulic oil. Return the machine to the servicing position. Stop the engine.

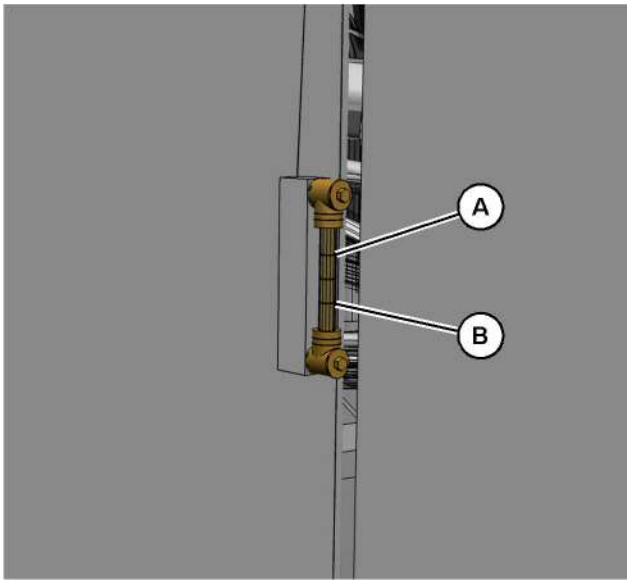


Illustration 626 g06591937

(A) High temperature range
(B) Low temperature range

5. Maintain the oil level between the marks on the sight gauge in the appropriate temperature range.

Note: Purging air from the hydraulic system is recommended following a hydraulic system oil change. Refer to “Hydraulic System - Purge“ for information on purging air from the hydraulic system.

i08537260

Hydraulic System Oil Filter (Return) - Replace

SMCS Code: 5068-510-RJ

WARNING

Access to this service point may require climbing on the equipment. Slipping or falling while climbing on the equipment could result in personal injury or death. Refer to the Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Mounting and Dismounting” topic, for safety information.

WARNING

Hot oil and hot components can cause personal injury. Do not allow hot oil or hot components to contact skin.

⚠ WARNING

Pressurized system!

The hydraulic tank contains hot oil under pressure. To prevent burns from the sudden release of hot oil, relieve the tank pressure with the engine off. Relieve pressure by slowly turning the cap until the cap reaches the secondary stop.

NOTICE
Never remove the fill/vent plug from the hydraulic tank if the oil is hot.

Air can enter the system and cause pump damage.

NOTICE
If the machine is filled with non-biodegradable hydraulic oil and biodegradable hydraulic oil is wanting to be used, consult a Cat dealer. Biodegradable hydraulic oil can NOT be added to the system by performing an ordinary hydraulic oil change. Damage to the hydraulic system can occur.

NOTICE
Care must be taken to ensure that fluids are contained during performance of inspection, maintenance, testing, adjusting, and repair of the product. Be prepared to collect the fluid with suitable containers before opening any compartment or disassembling any component containing fluids.

Refer to Special Publication, PERJ1017, “Dealer Service Tool Catalog” for tools and supplies suitable to collect and contain fluids on Cat ® products.

Dispose of all fluids according to local regulations and mandates.

NOTICE
Keep all parts clean from contaminants.

Contaminants may cause rapid wear and shortened component life.

NOTICE
Not following the recommendations found in this manual can lead to reduced performance and compartment failure.

Prepare the machine for maintenance. Refer to “Prepare the Machine for Maintenance“.

The return filter is a cartridge type filter. The amount of foreign material that enters the hydraulic system is reduced when the return filter element is replaced.

Two different filters are available for the return filter. One filter is used for standard applications such as digging and normal use of a hammer. The second filter is used for an application such as demolishing a ceiling in a tunnel with a hammer.

Note: If the message display shows that the hydraulic return filter is plugged, turn OFF the machine. Refer to “Stopping the Machine“ for more information. Start the machine and run the machine on level ground for approximately 10 minutes after the warning is turned OFF in monitor display. Refer to “Engine Starting“ and “Monitoring System“ for more information. If the warning still appears in the monitor display, inspect the return filter and replace the return filter.

Hydraulic Hammer Use

The use of hydraulic hammers shortens the life of hydraulic oil. If a hydraulic hammer is used, the maintenance interval is shortened, refer to Table59 for the intervals.

Table 59

Percentage of Hammer Use	Hydraulic System Oil Filter (Return) - Replace
50%	Every 500 service hours
100%	Every 250 service hours

Return Filter Replacement Procedure

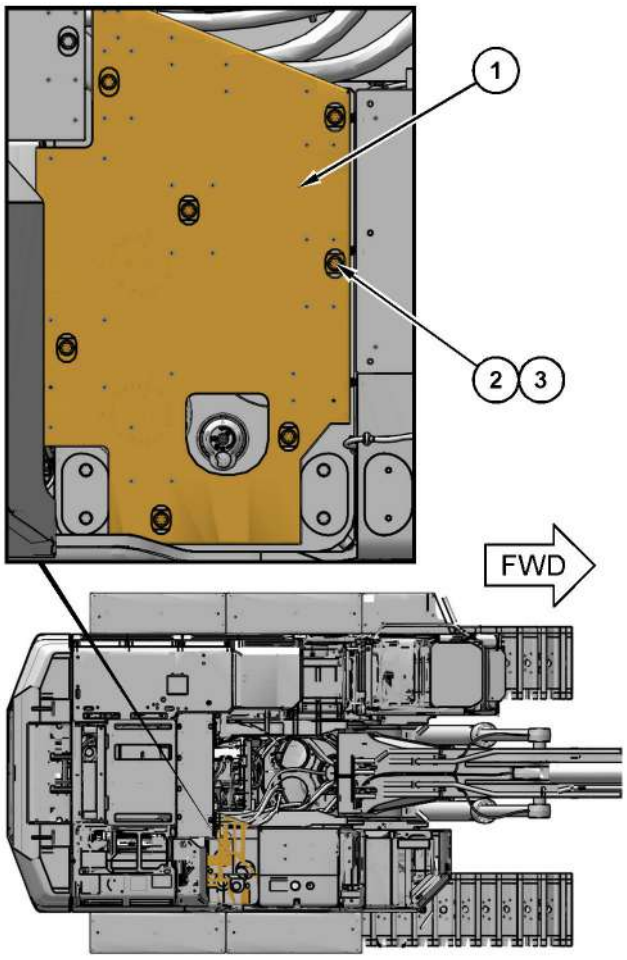


Illustration 627 g06705369

Top view of the machine

(1) Cover
(2) Bolt
(3) Washer

1. Remove seven bolts (2) and seven washers (3) that secures cover (1) on top of the machine.

2. Remove cover (1).

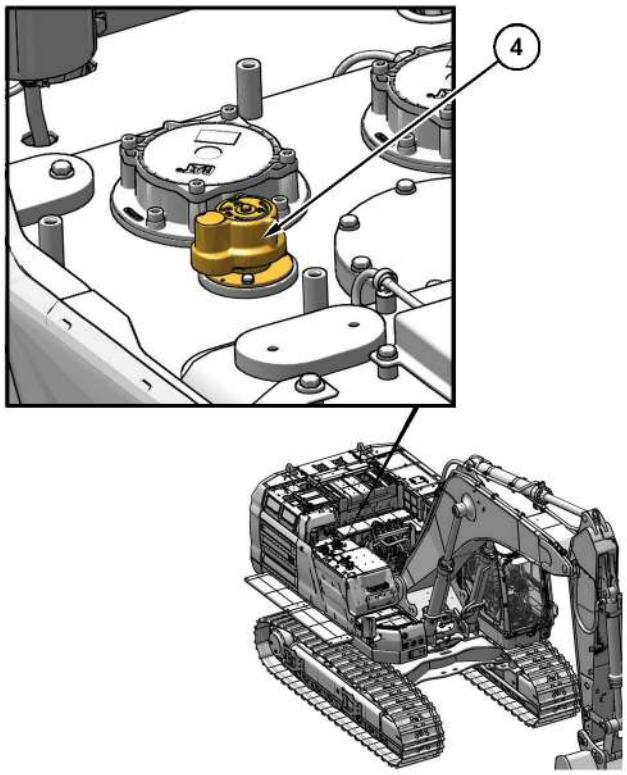


Illustration 628 g06705376

(4) Filler cap

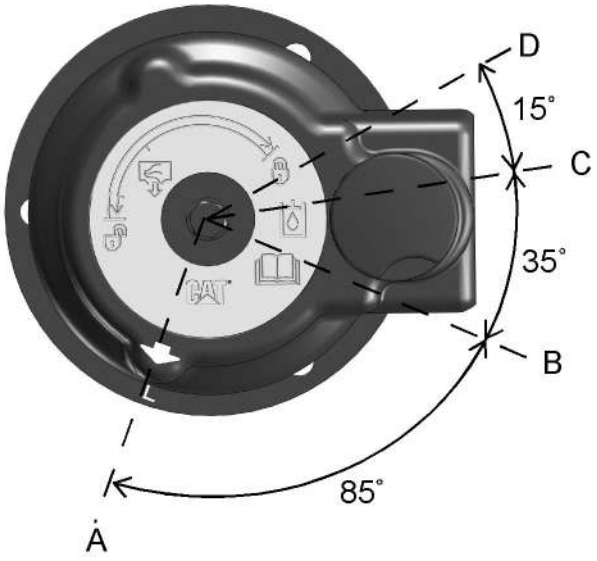


Illustration 629 g06184990

Filler cap

(A) LOCK position
(B) PRESSURE RELEASE : START position
(C) PRESSURE RELEASE : END position
(D) OPEN position

3. Clean the area thoroughly to keep dirt out of the return filter and filler cap (4).

4. Release the pressure that is present in the return hydraulic circuit with the following procedure. Refer to Illustration 629 for filler cap (4) positions.

a. Turn filler cap (4) counterclockwise and move the arrow from position (A) to position (B).

b. Release the pressure for a minimum of 45 seconds by moving the arrow from position (B) to position (C).

c. Move the arrow from position (C) to position (D).

d. After the hydraulic tank pressure is relieved, tighten filler cap (4) on the hydraulic tank to position (A).

e. Refer to “System Pressure Release“ for more information on releasing the hydraulic pressure.

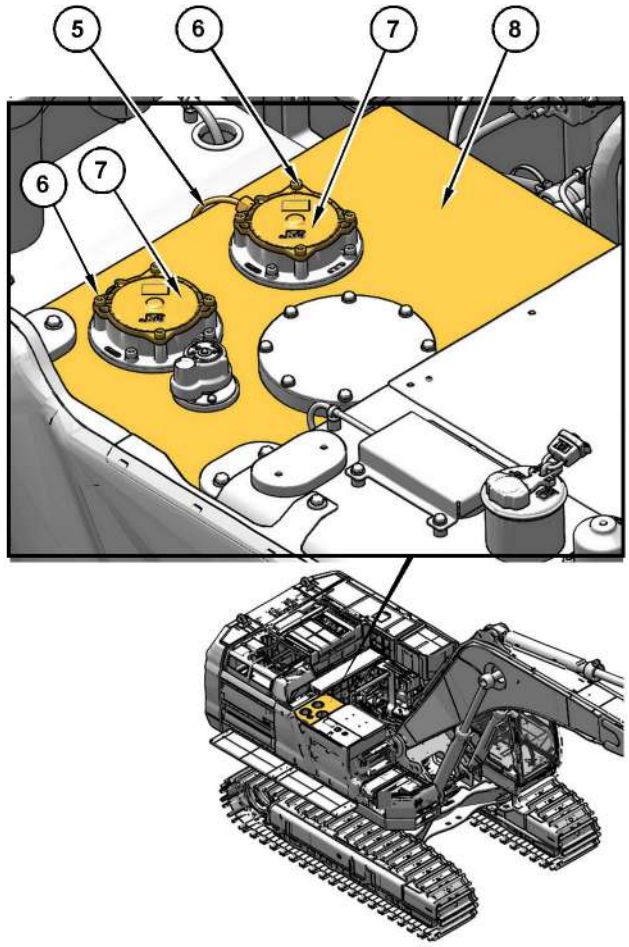


Illustration 630 g06705431

(5) Harness connector
(6) Bolt
(7) Cover
(8) Hydraulic tank

5. Remove four bolts (6) from cover (7) on top of hydraulic tank (8).

6. Remove cover (7).

7. Clean the area thoroughly to keep dirt out of hydraulic tank (8).

8. Disconnect harness connector (5) from hydraulic return filter assembly. Refer to Illustration 630 for more information.

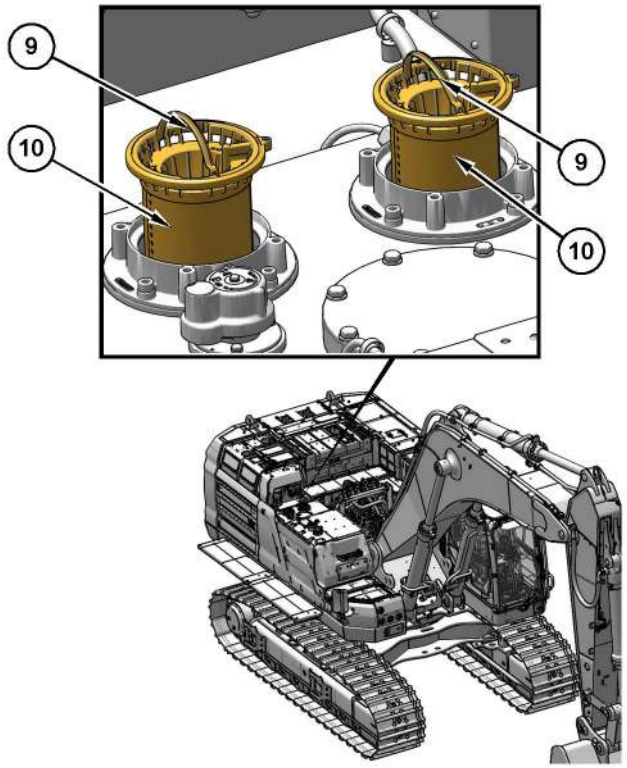


Illustration 631 g06705439

(9) Handle
(10) Filter element

9. Refer to “General Hazard Information“ for information that pertains to containing fluid spillage.

Remove filter element (10) from hydraulic tank (8) using handle (9).

Note: Discard drained fluids according to local regulations.

10. Replace the used filter element (10) with new filter element (10).

Note: Discard the used filter element (10) according to local regulations.

11. Install new filter element (10) inside hydraulic tank (8).

12. Secure hydraulic tank (8) with cover (7).

13. Install four bolts (6) in cover (7) and tighten to torque of 30 ± 7 N·m (22 ± 5 lb ft). Refer to Illustration 630 for more information.

14. Install harness connector (5) from hydraulic return filter assembly. Refer to Illustration 630 for more information.

15. Check the level of hydraulic oil in hydraulic tank (8). Add hydraulic oil if necessary. Refer to “Hydraulic System Oil Level - Check“ for more information on hydraulic oil fill procedure. Refer to “Lubricant Viscosities“ and “Capacities (Refill)“ for more information.

16. Install seven bolts (2) and seven washers (3) that secures cover (1) on top of the machine. Refer to Specifications, SENR3130, “Torque Specifications” for the recommended torque.

17. Install cover (1). Refer to Illustration 627 for location of cover (1).

i10053477

Hydraulic System Oil Filter - Replace

SMCS Code: 5068-510

S/N: JGP1–10113

S/N: TNX1–10059

WARNING

Access to this service point may require climbing on the equipment. Slipping or falling while climbing on the equipment could result in personal injury or death. Refer to the Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Mounting and Dismounting” topic, for safety information.

WARNING

Crush Hazard!

Machine access doors can pinch, trap, or crush personnel when being closed.

Use caution while closing machine access doors. Ensure that all personnel are clear of the machine before closing the access doors.

WARNING

Hot oil and hot components can cause personal injury. Do not allow hot oil or hot components to contact skin.

NOTICE
Keep all parts clean from contaminants.

Contaminants may cause rapid wear and shortened component life.

NOTICE
Not following the recommendations found in this manual can lead to reduced performance and compartment failure.

Prepare the machine for maintenance. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Prepare the Machine for Maintenance” and Operation and Maintenance Manual, “System Pressure Release” for more information.

Hydraulic Hammer Use

The use of hydraulic hammers shortens the life of hydraulic oil. If a hydraulic hammer is used, the maintenance interval is shortened, refer to Table 60 for the intervals.

Table 60

Percentage of Hammer Use	Hydraulic System Oil Filter (Case Drain) - Replace
50%	Every 500 service hours
100%	Every 250 service hours

Filter Replacement Procedure

1. Prepare the machine for maintenance. Refer to “Prepare the Machine for Maintenance“. Lower the bucket to the ground so that the stick is vertical.

2. Move the hydraulic lockout control to the UNLOCKED position. Refer to “Operator Controls“.

3. Turn the engine start switch to the ON position. Refer to “Engine Starting“.

4. Move the joysticks and the travel levers/pedals to the full stroke positions in order to relieve the pressure in the pilot lines. Refer to “Joystick Controls“.

5. Turn the engine start switch to the OFF position and return the lever for the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position.

WARNING

Pressurized system!

The hydraulic tank contains hot oil under pressure. To prevent burns from the sudden release of hot oil, relieve the tank pressure with the engine off. Relieve pressure by slowly turning the cap until the cap reaches the secondary stop.

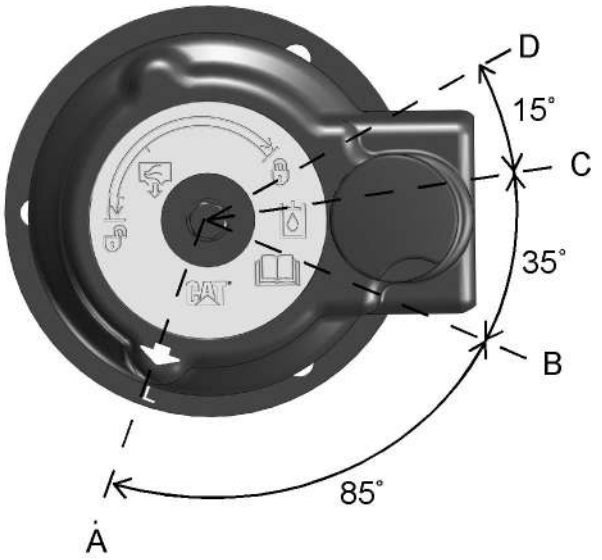


Illustration 632 g06184990

Filler cap is located on top of the machine

(A) LOCK position
(B) PRESSURE RELEASE - START position
(C) PRESSURE RELEASE - END position
(D) OPEN position

6. Release the pressure that may be present in the return hydraulic circuit with the following procedure. Refer to Illustration 632 for filler cap positions.

a. Turn the filler cap counterclockwise and move the arrow from position (A) to position (B).

b. Release the pressure for a minimum of 45 seconds by moving the arrow from position (B) to position (C).

c. Move the arrow from position (C) to position (D).

d. After the tank pressure is relieved, tighten the filler cap.

7. After the pressure is relieved, tighten the filler cap.

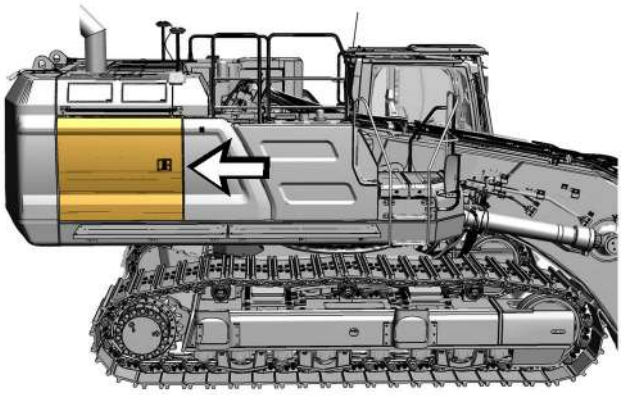


Illustration 633 g06592451

8. Open the access door on the right side of the machine.

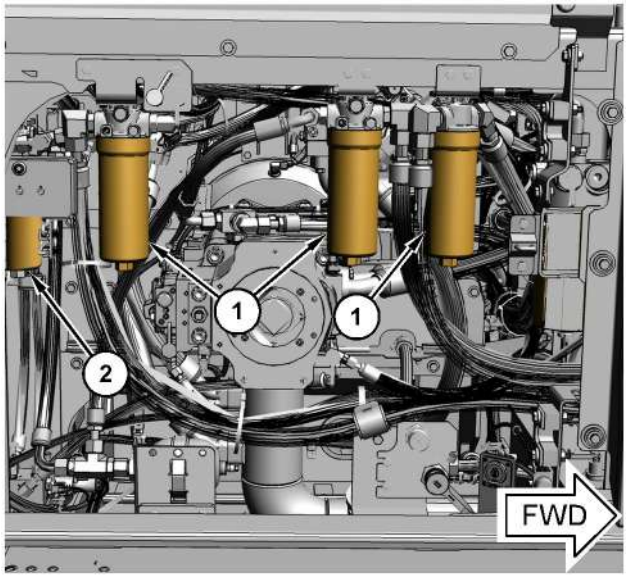


Illustration 634 g06742596

(1) Case drain filter
(2) Charge filter

9. Clean the area in order to keep dirt out of the filter base.

10. Remove the used case drain filters (1) and charge filter (2) from the filter base. Refer to “General Hazard Information“

Note: Dispose of used filters according to local regulations.

11. Clean the filter base.

12. Coat the seal of a new case drain filters and charge filter with clean hydraulic oil.

13. Install the new case drain filters and charge filter by hand.

Instructions for the installation of the filter are printed on the side of each Cat ® spin-on filter. For filters that are not Cat branded, refer to the installation instructions that are provided by the supplier of the filter.

14. Start the engine and operate the machine slowly for 10 to 15 minutes. Refer to “Engine Starting“. Move each cylinder evenly through several cycles.

15. Return the machine to the maintenance position. Check the machine for oil leaks.

16. Stop the engine.

17. Check the hydraulic oil level. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Capacities (Refill)”.

Reference: For the correct procedure, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Hydraulic System Oil Level - Check”.

18. Close the access door.

i10053492

Hydraulic System Oil Filter - Replace

SMCS Code: 5068-510

S/N: NLN1–Up

S/N: JGP10114–Up

S/N: TNX10060–Up

WARNING

Hot oil and hot components can cause personal injury. Do not allow hot oil or hot components to contact skin.

WARNING

Pressurized system!

The hydraulic tank contains hot oil under pressure. To prevent burns from the sudden release of hot oil, relieve the tank pressure with the engine off. Relieve pressure by slowly turning the cap until the cap reaches the secondary stop.

⚠ WARNING

Pressurized system!

The hydraulic tank contains hot oil under pressure. To prevent burns from the sudden release of hot oil, relieve the tank pressure with the engine off. Relieve pressure by slowly turning the cap until the cap reaches the secondary stop.

NOTICE
Care must be taken to ensure that fluids are contained during performance of inspection, maintenance, testing, adjusting, and repair of the product. Be prepared to collect the fluid with suitable containers before opening any compartment or disassembling any component containing fluids.

Refer to Special Publication, PERJ1017, “Dealer Service Tool Catalog” for tools and supplies suitable to collect and contain fluids on Cat ® products.

Dispose of all fluids according to local regulations and mandates.

NOTICE
Never remove the fill/vent plug from the hydraulic tank if the oil is hot.

Air can enter the system and cause pump damage.

NOTICE
Keep all parts clean from contaminants.

Contaminants may cause rapid wear and shortened component life.

NOTICE
Not following the recommendations found in this manual can lead to reduced performance and compartment failure.

Prepare the machine for maintenance. Refer to “Prepare the Machine for Maintenance“. Lower the bucket to the ground so that the stick is vertical.

Hydraulic Hammer Use

The use of hydraulic hammers shortens the life of hydraulic oil. If a hydraulic hammer is used, the maintenance interval is shortened, refer to Table 61 for the intervals.

Table 61

Percentage of Hammer Use	Hydraulic System Oil Filter (Case Drain) - Replace
50%	Every 500 service hours
100%	Every 250 service hours

Filter Replacement Procedure

1. Move the hydraulic lockout control to the UNLOCKED position. Refer to “Operator Controls“.
2. Turn the engine start switch to the ON position. Refer to “Engine Starting“.
3. Move the joysticks and the travel levers/pedals to the full stroke positions in order to relieve the pressure in the pilot lines. Refer to “Joystick Controls“.
4. Turn the engine start switch to the OFF position and return the lever for the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position. Refer to “Operator Controls“.

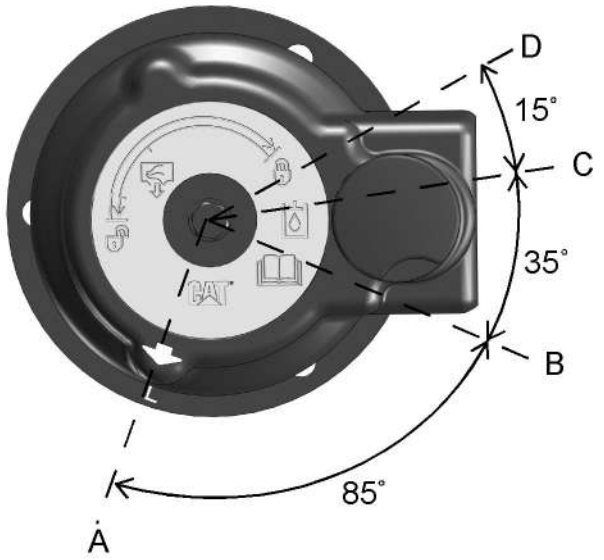


Illustration 635 g06184990

Filler cap is located on top of the machine

(A) LOCK position
(B) PRESSURE RELEASE - START position
(C) PRESSURE RELEASE - END position
(D) OPEN position

5. Refer to “Hydraulic System Oil Filter (Return) - Replace“ to access the filler cap.

Release the pressure that may be present in the return hydraulic circuit with the following procedure. Refer to Illustration 635 for filler cap positions.

a. Turn the filler cap counterclockwise and move the arrow from position (A) to position (B).

b. Release the pressure for a minimum of 45 seconds by moving the arrow from position (B) to position (C).

c. Move the arrow from position (C) to position (D).

d. After the tank pressure is relieved, tighten the filler cap.

6. After the pressure is relieved, tighten the filler cap.

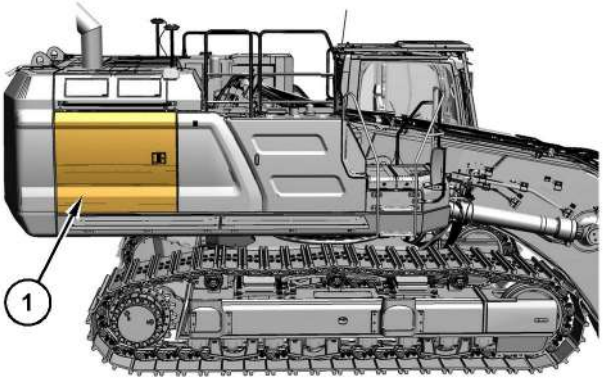


Illustration 636 g07583575

(1) Access door

7. Open access door (1) on the right side of the machine. Refer to “Access Door and Cover Locations“ for more information.

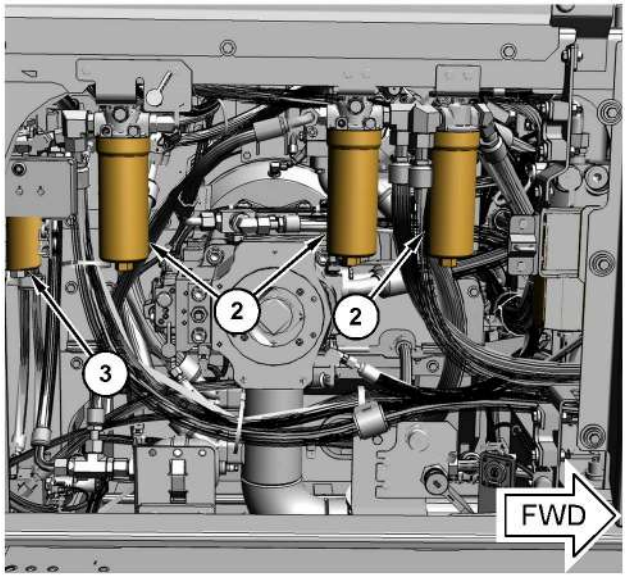


Illustration 637 g07583583

(2) Case drain filter
(3) Charge filter

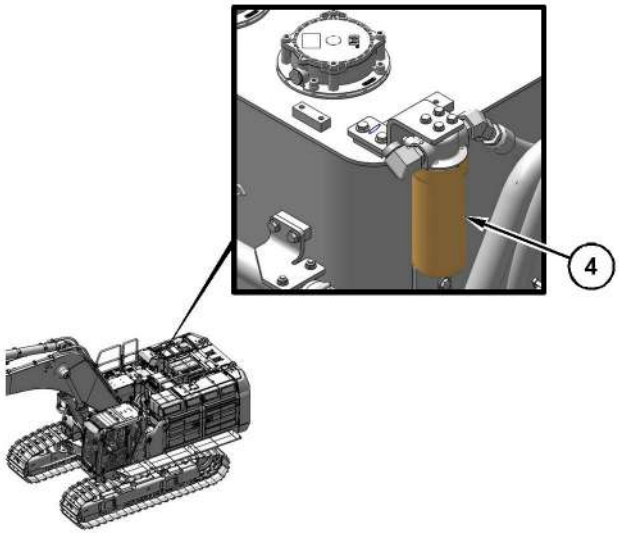


Illustration 638 g07583589

(4) Drain filter

8. Clean the area in order to keep dirt out of the filter base.

9. Remove two case drain filters (2), charge filter (3), and drain filter (4) from the filter base by using filter wrench. Refer to “General Hazard Information“

Note: Dispose of used filters according to local regulations.

10. Clean the filter base.

11. Coat the seal of two new case drain filters (2), charge filter (3), and drain filter (4) with clean hydraulic oil.

12. Install two new case drain filters (2), charge filter (3), and drain filter (4) by hand.

Instructions for the installation of the filter are printed on the side of each Cat ® spin-on filter. For filters that are not Cat branded, refer to the installation instructions that are provided by the supplier of the filter.

13. Start the engine and operate the machine slowly for 10 minutes to 15 minutes. Refer to “Engine Starting“. Move each cylinder evenly through several cycles.

14. Return the machine to the maintenance position. Check the machine for oil leaks.

15. Stop the engine. Refer to “Stopping the Engine“ for more information.

16. Check the hydraulic oil level. Refer to “Capacities (Refill)“.

Reference: For the correct procedure, refer to “Hydraulic System Oil Level - Check“.

17. Close access door (1). Refer to “Access Door and Cover Locations“ for more information.

i08217412

Hydraulic System Oil Level - Check

SMCS Code: 5050-535

NOTICE
Never remove the fill/vent plug from the hydraulic tank if the oil is hot.

Air can enter the system and cause pump damage.

1. Park the machine in the servicing position on level ground.

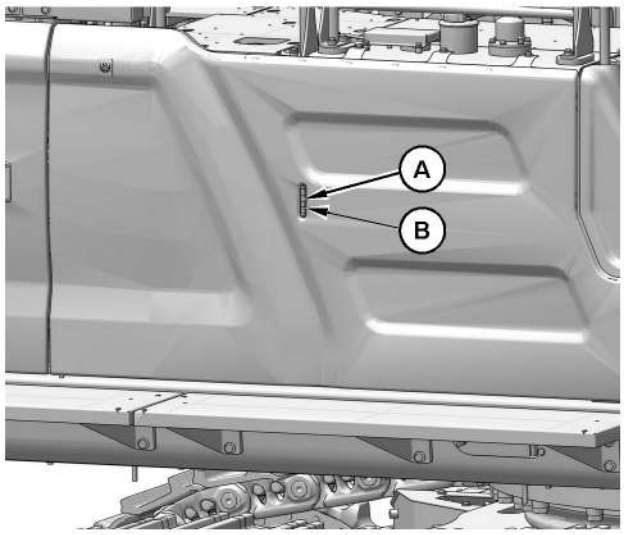


Illustration 639 g06590226

(A) High temperature range
(B) Low temperature range

2. For a machine that is at normal operating temperature, maintain the hydraulic oil level in the high temperature range. For a cold machine, maintain the hydraulic oil level in the low temperature range.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “General Hazard Information” for information on containing fluid spillage.

3. The Hydraulic fill cap is on top of the Hydraulic tank.

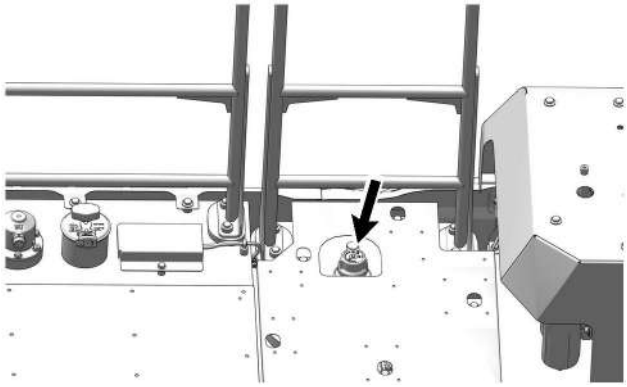


Illustration 640 g06590238

⚠ WARNING

Pressurized system!

The hydraulic tank contains hot oil under pressure. To prevent burns from the sudden release of hot oil, relieve the tank pressure with the engine off by slowly turning the cap approximately 1/8 of a turn until the cap reaches the secondary stop.

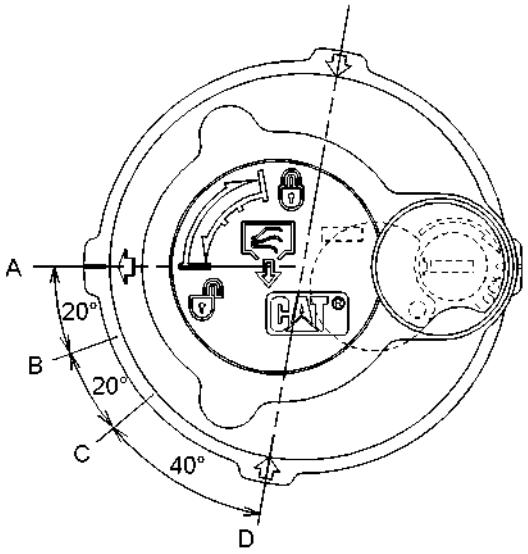


Illustration 641 g02275615

Filler cap

(A) LOCK position
(B) PRESSURE RELEASE - START position
(C) PRESSURE RELEASE - END position
(D) OPEN position

4. Release the pressure that may be present in the return hydraulic circuit with the following procedure. Refer to Illustration 641 for filler cap positions.

a. Turn the filler cap counterclockwise, with no downward force applied, and move the arrow from position (A) to position (B).

b. Release the pressure for a minimum of 45 seconds by moving the arrow from position (B) to position (C).

c. Push the center of the filler cap down. Without tilting the filler cap, move the arrow from position (C) to position (D).

d. The hydraulic tank pressure is relieved. The filler cap can now be removed if needed.

e. Tighten the filler cap on the hydraulic tank to position (A).

5. After the pressure is relieved, tighten the filler cap.

i08217376

Hydraulic System Oil Sample - Obtain

SMCS Code: 5050-008-OC; 5095-008; 5095-SM; 7542-008; 7542

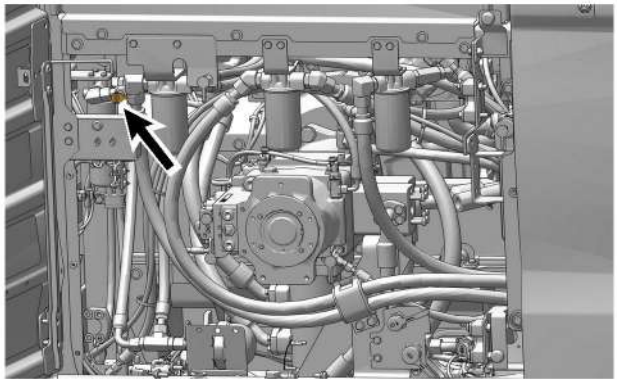


Illustration 642 g06590186

The hydraulic oil sampling valve is near the swing pump in the right rear access compartment. Obtain a sample of the hydraulic oil from the hydraulic oil sampling valve. Refer to Special Publication, SEBU6250, “S·O·S Oil Analysis” for information that pertains to obtaining a sample of the hydraulic oil. Refer to Special Publication, PEGJ0047, “How To Take A Good Oil Sample” for more information about obtaining a sample of the hydraulic oil.

i09710070

Hydraulic Tank Breather - Replace
(Element)

SMCS Code: 5050-510-BRE; 5056-510-BRE; 5118-510

WARNING

Access to this service point may require climbing on the equipment. Slipping or falling while climbing on the equipment could result in personal injury or death. Refer to the Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Mounting and Dismounting" topic, for safety information.

WARNING

Personal injury or death can result from sudden machine movement.

Sudden movement of the machine can cause injury to persons on or near the machine.

To prevent injury or death, make sure that the area around the machine is clear of personnel and obstructions before operating the machine.

WARNING

Hot oil and hot components can cause personal injury. Do not allow hot oil or hot components to contact skin.

WARNING

Personal injury can result from hydraulic oil pressure and hot oil.

Hydraulic oil pressure can remain in the hydraulic system after the engine has been stopped. Serious injury can be caused if this pressure is not released before any service is done on the hydraulic system.

Make sure all of the work tools have been lowered to the ground, and the oil is cool before removing any components or lines. Remove the oil filler cap only when the engine is stopped, and the filler cap is cool enough to touch with your bare hand.

NOTICE
Care must be taken to ensure that fluids are contained during performance of inspection, maintenance, testing, adjusting, and repair of the product. Be prepared to collect the fluid with suitable containers before opening any compartment or disassembling any component containing fluids.

Refer to Special Publication, PERJ1017, "Dealer Service Tool Catalog" for tools and supplies suitable to collect and contain fluids on Cat ® products.

Dispose of all fluids according to local regulations and mandates.

Prepare the machine for maintenance. Refer to "Prepare the Machine for Maintenance" and "System Pressure Release" for more information.

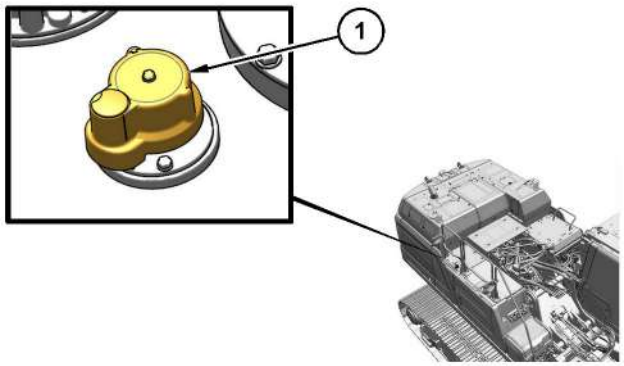


Illustration 643 g07562284

(1) Breather

1. Clean the area thoroughly to keep dirt out of breather cap (1). Refer to "System Pressure Release" for more information on removing breather (1).

   Remove breather (1) from the hydraulic tank by hand.

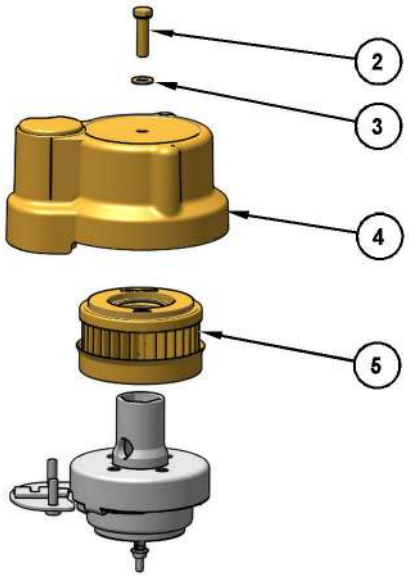


Illustration 644 g07562359

Exploded view of breather (1)

(2) Bolt
(3) Washer
(4) Breather cap
(5) Element

2. Remove bolt (2) and washer (3).

3. Remove breather cap (4).

4. Remove existing element (5)

5. Install new element (5).

6. Position and install breather cap (4).

7. Install bolt (2) and washer (3).

8. Tighten bolt (2) to a torque of 6.0 ± 1.5 N·m (53.1 ± 13.2 lb in).

9. Install breather (1) on hydraulic tank by hand.

i03753191

Indicators and Gauges - Test

SMCS Code: 7450-081; 7490-081

1. Look for broken lenses on the gauges, broken indicator lights, broken switches, and other broken components in the cab.

2. Start the engine.

3. Look for inoperative gauges.

4. Turn on all machine lights. Check for proper operation.

5. Move the machine forward. Release the travel levers and the travel pedals. The machine should stop.

6. Stop the engine.

7. Make any repairs that are required before operating the machine.

i08066994

Light Emitting Diode Lamp (LED) - Replace

SMCS Code: 1434-510

1. Remove the electrical power from the light emitting diode (LED) lamp.

2. Disassemble the housing for the LED lamp to have access to the bulb.

Note: On some LED lamps, the bulb is a part of the lens assembly. The bulb is not removed separately from the lens assembly. Replace the entire lens assembly on these LED lamps.

3. Remove the bulb from the LED lamp.

4. Install the replacement bulb in the LED lamp.

If the bulb is a part of the lens assembly, install the replacement lens assembly in the LED lamp.

5. Reassemble the housing for the LED lamp. Ensure that any printing on the lens is oriented correctly for the LED lamp mounting position on the machine.

6. Reattach the electrical power to the LED lamp.

7. Check the LED lamp for proper operation.

Note: Consult your Cat dealer for additional information on LED lamps.

i08159724

Oil Filter (Hydraulic Hammer) - Replace

SMCS Code: 5068-510

WARNING

Hot oil and hot components can cause personal injury. Do not allow hot oil or hot components to contact skin.

The use of hydraulic hammers shortens the life of hydraulic oil. If a hydraulic hammer is used, the maintenance interval is shortened, refer to Table 62 for the intervals.

Table 62

Percentage of Hammer Use	Oil Filter (Hydraulic Hammer) - Replace
50%	Every 250 service hours
100%	Every 100 service hours

Prepare the machine for maintenance. Refer to “Prepare the Machine for Maintenance“.

1. Park the machine on level ground in the service position.

2. Move the hydraulic lockout control to the UNLOCKED position.

3. Turn the engine start switch to the ON position.

4. Move the joysticks and the travel levers/pedals to the full stroke positions in order to relieve the pressure in the hydraulic lines.

5. Turn the engine start switch to the OFF position and return the lever for the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position.

⚠ WARNING

Pressurized system!

The hydraulic tank contains hot oil under pressure. To prevent burns from the sudden release of hot oil, relieve the tank pressure with the engine off by slowly turning the cap approximately 1/8 of a turn until the cap reaches the secondary stop.

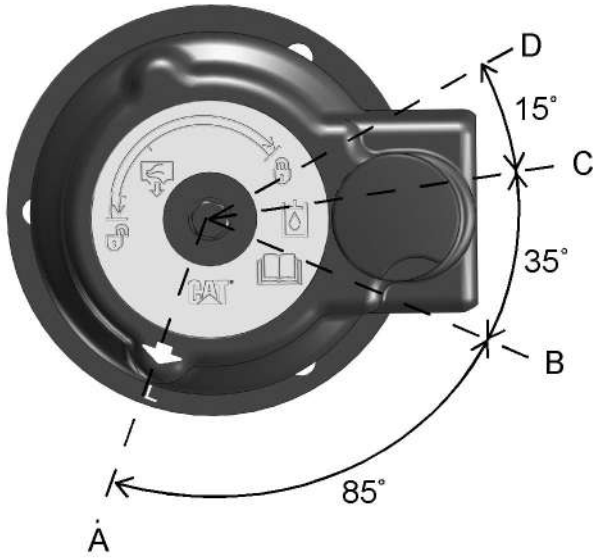


Illustration 645 g06184990

Filler cap

(A) LOCK position
(B) PRESSURE RELEASE - START position
(C) PRESSURE RELEASE - END position
(D) OPEN position

6. Release the pressure that may be present in the return hydraulic circuit with the following procedure. Refer to Illustration 645 for filler cap positions.

a. Turn the filler cap counterclockwise, with no downward force applied, and move the arrow from position (A) to position (B).

b. Release the pressure for a minimum of 45 seconds by moving the arrow from position (B) to position (C).

c. Push the center of the filler cap down. Without tilting the filler cap, move the arrow from position (C) to position (D).

d. The hydraulic tank pressure is relieved. Tighten the filler cap on the hydraulic tank to position (A).

7. The oil filter for the hammer is located near the base of the boom.

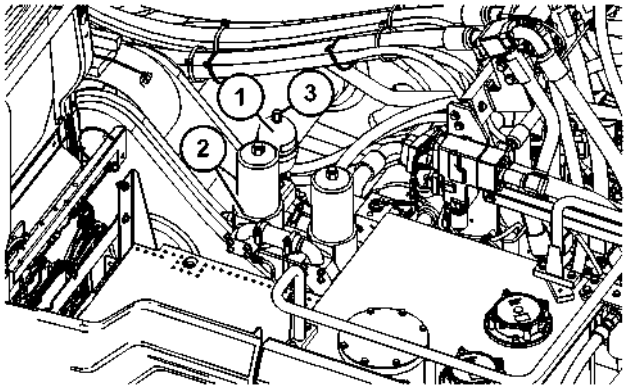


Illustration 646 g06589973

(1) Filter case
(2) Filter base
(3) Plug

8. Position a suitable container in order to contain the oil.

Note: Refer to“General Hazard Information“ for information on containing fluid spillage.

9. Loosen filter case (1).

10. Lift filter case (1) in order to remove filter element.

11. Remove the used filter element from filter base (2).

Note: The element cannot be reused.

Note: Used filter elements should always be disposed of according to local regulations.

12. Clean filter case (1) and inspect the O-ring for damage. Replace the O-ring if necessary.

13. Install the new filter element.

14. Assemble filter case (1). Tighten the nut on the filter case to a torque of 100 ± 10 N·m (74 ± 7 lb ft).

15. Remove plug (3) and inspect O-ring for damage. Replace the O-ring if necessary. Tighten plug (3) to a torque of 13 ± 2 N·m (115 ± 18 lb in)

16. Start the engine and operate the machine slowly for 10 to 15 minutes. Move each cylinder evenly through several cycles and operate the hammer.

17. Return the machine to the service position. Check the machine for oil leaks.

18. Stop the engine.

19. Check the hydraulic oil level.

Reference: For the correct procedure, refer to “Hydraulic System Oil Level - Check“.

i07349186

Oil Filter - Inspect

SMCS Code: 1308-507; 5068-507

Inspect a Used Filter for Debris

Illustration 647 g06224663

The element is shown with debris.

Use a filter cutter to cut the filter element open. Spread apart the pleats and inspect the element for metal and for other debris. An excessive amount of debris in the filter element can indicate a possible failure.

If metals are found in the filter element, a magnet can be used to differentiate between ferrous metals and nonferrous metals.

Ferrous metals can indicate wear from steel parts and on cast iron parts.

Nonferrous metals can indicate wear from the aluminum parts of the engine such as main bearings, rod bearings, or turbocharger bearings.

Small amounts of debris may be found in the filter element. This debris could be caused by friction and by normal wear. Consult your Cat dealer to arrange for further analysis if an excessive amount of debris is found.

Using an oil filter element that is not recommended by Caterpillar can result in severe engine damage to engine bearings, to the crankshaft, and to other parts. This can result in larger particles in unfiltered oil. The particles could enter the lubricating system and the particles could cause damage.

i07660361

Radiator, Aftercooler and Oil Cooler Cores - Clean

SMCS Code: 1063-070-KO; 1353-070-KO; 1374-070-KO

1. Open the rear access door's on the left side of the machine.

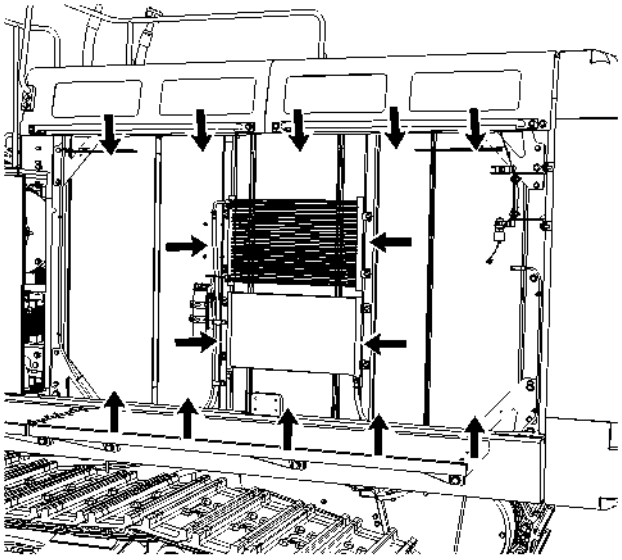


Illustration 648 g03390696

2. Check all the core fins for debris.

3. Remove dust and debris from all the core fins and from the screens.

Compressed air is preferred, but high-pressure water or steam can be used to remove dust and general debris from a core.

See Special Publication, SEBD0518, “Know Your Cooling System” for more detailed information about cleaning core fins.

4. Close the rear access door's on the left side of the machine.

i08192239

Receiver Dryer (Refrigerant) - Replace

SMCS Code: 7322-710; 7322-510

⚠ WARNING

Personal injury can result from contact with refrigerant.

Contact with refrigerant can cause frost bite. Keep face and hands away to help prevent injury.

Protective goggles must always be worn when refrigerant lines are opened, even if the gauges indicate the system is empty of refrigerant.

Always use precaution when a fitting is removed. Slowly loosen the fitting. If the system is still under pressure, release it slowly in a well ventilated area.

Personal injury or death can result from inhaling refrigerant through a lit cigarette.

Inhaling air conditioner refrigerant gas through a lit cigarette or other smoking method or inhaling fumes released from a flame contacting air conditioner refrigerant gas, can cause bodily harm or death.

Do not smoke when servicing air conditioners or wherever refrigerant gas may be present.

Use a certified recovery and recycling cart to properly remove the refrigerant from the air conditioning system.

NOTICE
If the refrigerant system has been open to the outside air (without being plugged) for more than 30 minutes, the receiver-dryer must be replaced. Moisture will enter an open refrigerant system and cause corrosion which will lead to component failure.

Prepare the machine for maintenance. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Prepare the Machine for Maintenance”.

Refer to Service Manual, “Air Conditioning and Heating R-134a for All Caterpillar Machines” for the proper procedure to change the receiver-dryer assembly and for the procedure to reclaim the refrigerant gas.

i05252968

Rollover Protective Structure (ROPS) - Inspect

SMCS Code: 7323-040; 7325-040

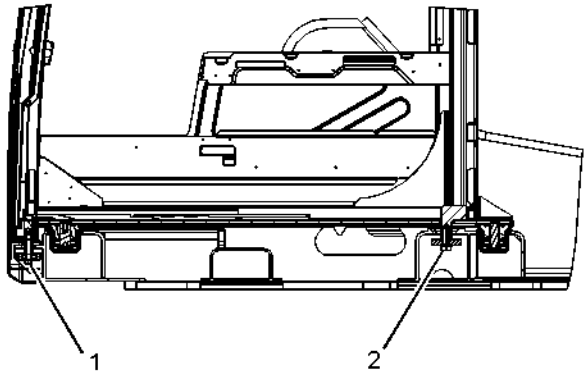


Illustration 649 g02008734

Inspect the ROPS for loose bolts or for damaged bolts. Replace any damaged bolts or missing bolts with original equipment parts only.

- Tighten the M16 bolt (1) to125 ± 20 N·m (92 ± 15 lb ft).
- Tighten the M24 bolt (2) to 425 ± 50 N·m (315 ± 40 lb ft).

Do not straighten the ROPS. Do not repair the ROPS by welding reinforcement plates to the ROPS.

Consult your Cat dealer for inspection of any potential damage or repair of any damage to any operator protective structure. (Including ROPS, FOPS, TOPS, OPS, and OPG) Refer to Special Instruction, SEHS6929 , “Inspection, Maintenance, and Repair of Operator Protective Structures (OPS) and Attachment Installation Guidelines for All Earthmoving Machinery”

i07103309

Seat Belt - Inspect

SMCS Code: 7327-040

Always inspect the condition of the seat belt and the condition of the seat belt mounting hardware before you operate the machine. Replace any parts that are damaged or worn before you operate the machine.

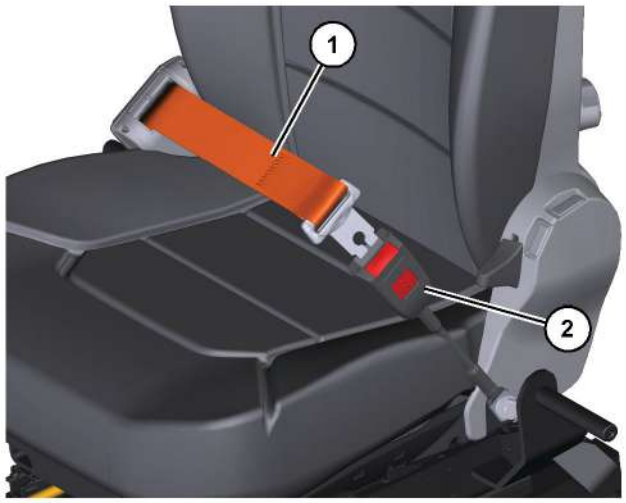


Illustration 650 g06224278
Typical example

Inspect buckle (2) for wear or for damage. If the buckle is worn or damaged, replace the seat belt.

Inspect seat belt (1) for webbing that is worn or frayed. Replace the seat belt if the webbing is worn or frayed.

Inspect all seat belt mounting hardware for wear or for damage. Replace any mounting hardware that is worn or damaged. Make sure that the mounting bolts are tight.

If your machine is equipped with a seat belt extension, also perform this inspection procedure for the seat belt extension.

Contact your Cat dealer for the replacement of the seat belt and the mounting hardware.

Note: The seat belt should be replaced within 3 years of the date of installation. A date of installation label is attached to the seat belt retractor and buckle. If the date of installation label is missing, replace belt within 3 years from the year of manufacture as indicated on belt webbing label, buckle housing, or installation tags (non-retractable belts).

i06970675

Seat Belt - Replace

SMCS Code: 7327-510

The seat belt should be replaced within 3 years of the date of installation. A date of installation label is attached to the seat belt retractor and buckle. If the date of installation label is missing, replace the belt within 3 years from the year of manufacture as indicated on the belt webbing label, buckle housing, or installation tags (non-retractable belts).

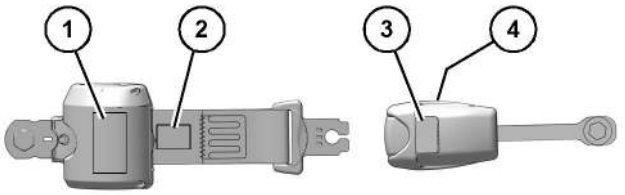


Illustration 651 g06183390

(1) Date of installation (retractor)
(2) Year of manufacture (tag) (fully extended web)
(3) Date of installation (buckle)
(4) Year of manufacture (underside) (buckle)

Consult your Cat dealer for the replacement of the seat belt and the mounting hardware.

Determine the age of a new seat belt before installing on seat. A manufacture label is on the belt webbing and imprinted on the belt buckle. Do not exceed the install by date on the label.

A complete seat belt system should be installed with new mounting hardware.

Date of installation labels should be marked and affixed to the seat belt retractor and buckle.

Note: Date of installation labels should be permanently marked by punch (retractable belt) or stamp (non-retractable belt).

If your machine is equipped with a seat belt extension, also perform this replacement procedure for the seat belt extension.

i03867596

Swing Bearing - Lubricate

SMCS Code: 7063-086

Note: Caterpillar recommends the use of multipurpose lithium grease NLGI Grade 2 for lubricating the swing bearing. Refer to Special Publication, SEBU6250, “Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations” for more information on multipurpose lithium grease.

Note: Do not overgrease the swing bearings. Do not grease more than the recommended maintenance interval. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Maintenance Interval Schedule” for more information.

Wipe the fittings before you lubricate the swing bearings.

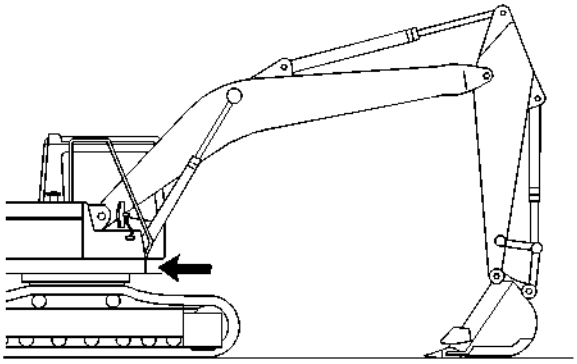


Illustration 652 g02110713

The swing bearings are under the base of the boom.

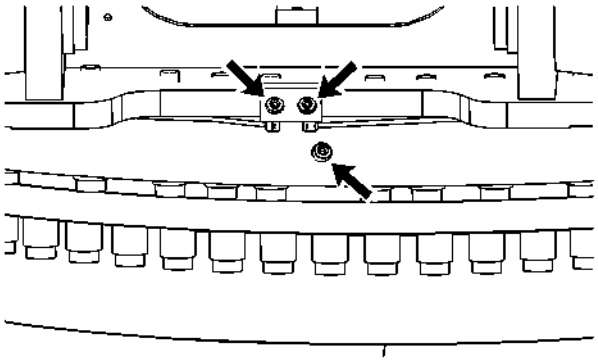


Illustration 653 g01106319

Apply lubricant through the fittings until the lubricant overflows the bearing seals.

i08205744

Swing Drive Oil - Change

SMCS Code: 5459-044

Drain the Swing Drives

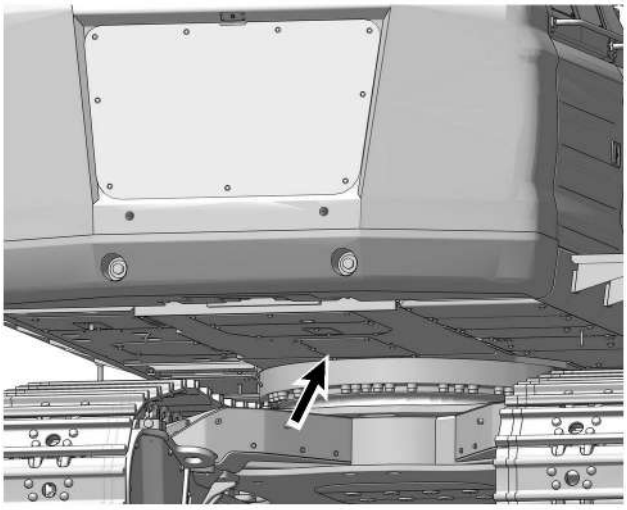


Illustration 654 g06589169

1. Remove the access cover that is located under the machine, near the swing gear.

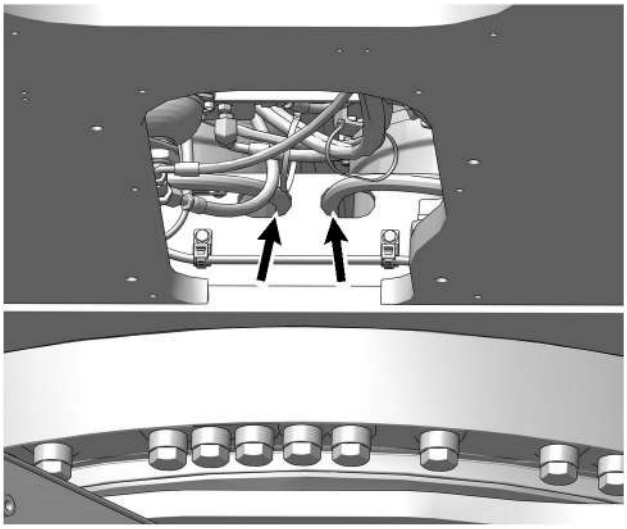


Illustration 655 g06589181

2. Pull out the ends of the drain hoses from the upper frame. Face the ends of the hoses toward the container.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “General Hazard Information” for information that pertains to containing fluid spillage.

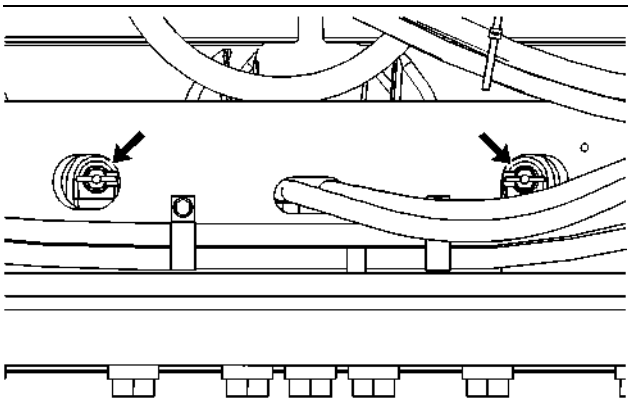


Illustration 656 g01131534

3. Reach through the access holes and open the drain valves. Drain the oil into a suitable container.

Note: Dispose of drained fluids according to local regulations.

4. Tighten the drain valves.

5. Return the ends of the drain hoses to the upper frame. Make sure that the ends of the hoses are facing upward.

6. Install the access cover.

Refill the Swing Drives

Note: Perform this procedure for each swing drive.

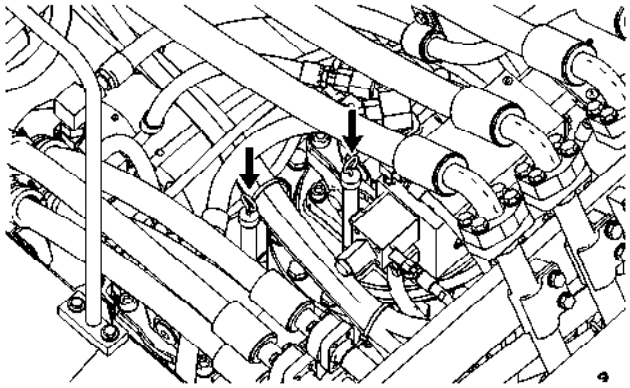


Illustration 657 g01100385

1. Remove the dipstick.

2. Add the specified quantity of oil through the dipstick tube. See Operation and Maintenance, “Capacities (Refill)”.

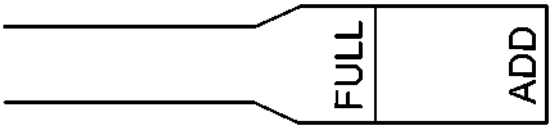


Illustration 658 g01106973

3. Make sure that the oil level is maintained between the marks on the dipstick.

4. Check the oil that has been drained for metal chips or metal particles. Consult your Caterpillar dealer if any metal chips or metal particles are found.

Note: Dispose of drained materials according to local regulations.

i08205473

Swing Drive Oil Level - Check

SMCS Code: 5459-535-FLV

The dipstick for the swing drive oil is on the swing drive near the right rear corner of the cab.

Note: There are two swing drives that are located between the swivel joint and the main control valve. Perform the same procedure for both swing drives.

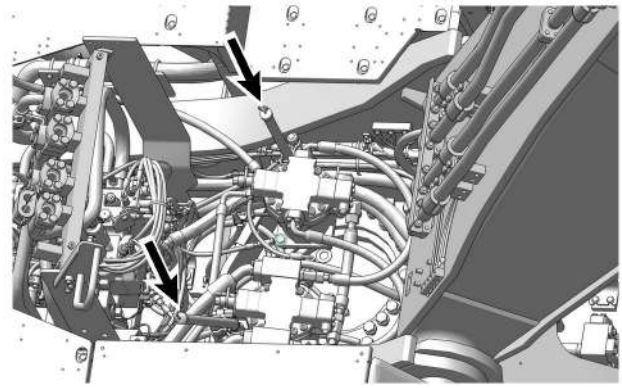


Illustration 659 g06588579

1. Remove the dipstick.

Illustration 660 g06588627

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “General Hazard Information” for information that pertains to containing fluid spillage.

2. Check the dipstick. Maintain the oil level between the marks on the dipstick. Add oil through the dipstick tube, if necessary.

3. Insert the dipstick.

4. Check the dipstick again.

5. Reinsert the dipstick.

i08205445

Swing Drive Oil Sample - Obtain

SMCS Code: 5459-008; 5459-008-OC; 5459-554-OC; 5459-OC; 7542-008

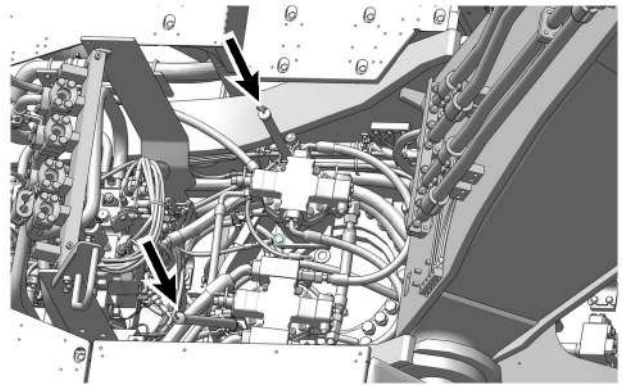


Illustration 661 g06588579

Obtain an oil sample of the swing drive oil through the opening for the dipstick. Refer to Special Publication, SEBU6250, “S·O·S Oil Analysis” for information that pertains to obtaining an oil sample from the swing drive housing. Refer to Special Publication, PEGJ0047, “How To Take A Good Oil Sample” for more information about obtaining an oil sample from the swing drive housing.

i03804517

Swing Gear - Lubricate

SMCS Code: 7063-086

NOTICE
Improper lubrication can cause damage to machine components.

To avoid damage, make sure that the proper amount of grease is applied to the swing drive.

When the amount of grease in the compartment becomes too large, the agitation loss becomes large, thereby accelerating grease deterioration.

Grease deterioration can cause damage to the pinion gear of the swing drive and swing internal gear.

Not enough grease will result in poor gear lubrication.

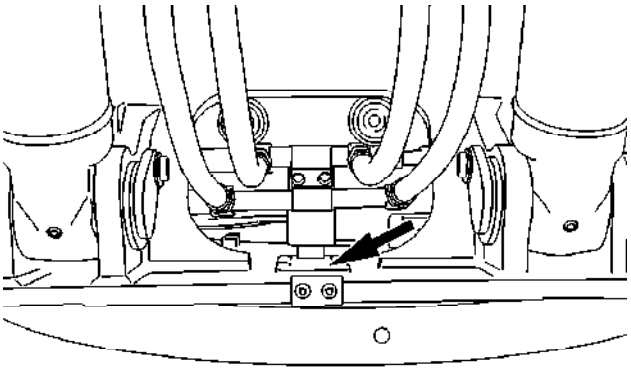


Illustration 662 g00834990

Remove the inspection cover that is located near the boom base. Inspect the grease.

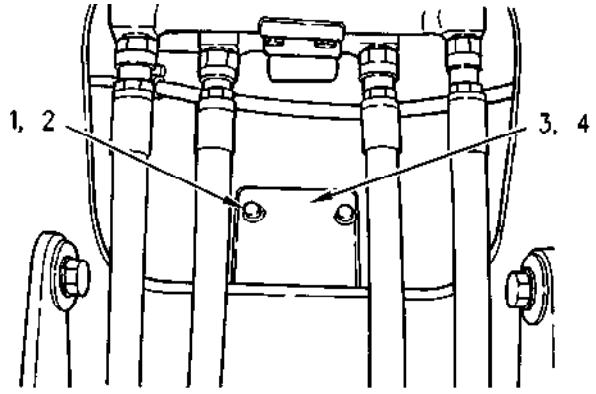


Illustration 663 g00688056

1. Remove bolts (1) and washers (2). Remove cover (3) and gasket (4).

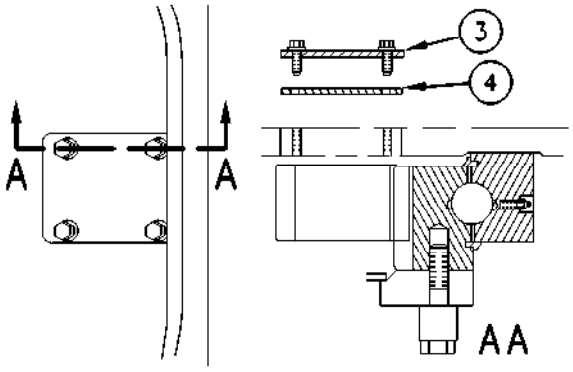


Illustration 664 g00115464

2. Inspect gasket (4). Replace the gasket if damage is evident.

3. Check the level of the grease. The grease should be evenly distributed on the floor of the pan.

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Capacities (Refill)” for the capacity of the swing gear.

Add grease, as needed. Remove grease, as needed. Too much grease will result in the deterioration of the grease that is caused by excessive movement of the grease. Too little grease will result in poor lubrication of the swing gear.

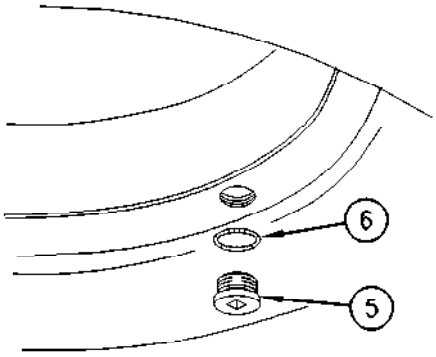


Illustration 665 g00101653

4. Check for contamination and for discolored grease.

5. If the grease is contaminated or discolored with water, change the grease. Remove plug (5) in order to allow the water to drain. When you reinstall plug (5), inspect O-ring seal (6). Replace the O-ring seal if damage is evident.

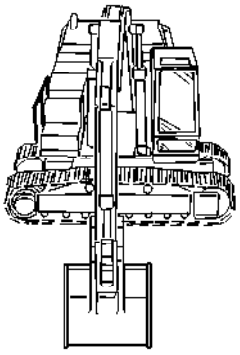


Illustration 666 g00101644

6. Raise the boom and turn the upper structure by 90 degrees. Lower the bucket to the ground.

7. Repeat Step 6 at every 90 degrees in 4 places. Add grease, as needed.

i08159705

Track Adjustment - Adjust

SMCS Code: 4170-025

⚠ WARNING

Personal injury or death can result from grease under pressure.

Grease coming out of the relief valve under pressure can penetrate the body causing injury or death.

Do not watch the relief valve to see if grease is escaping. Watch the track or track adjustment cylinder to see if the track is being loosened.

Loosen the relief valve one turn only.

If track does not loosen, close the relief valve and contact your Caterpillar dealer.

Prepare the machine for maintenance. Refer to “Prepare the Machine for Maintenance“.

NOTICE
Keeping the track properly adjusted will increase the service life of the track and drive components.

Note: The track tension must be adjusted according to the current operating conditions. Keep the track as slack as possible if the soil is heavy.

Measuring Track Tension

1. Operate the machine in the direction of the idlers.

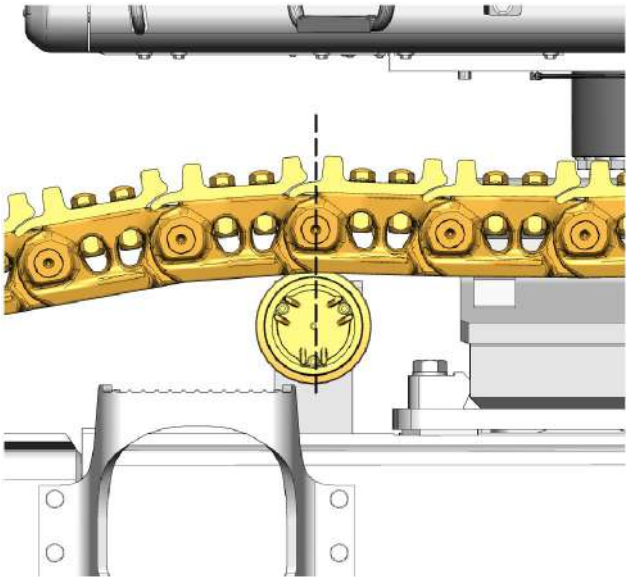


Illustration 667 g06545100

2. Stop with one track pin directly over the front carrier roller. Park the machine and turn off the engine.

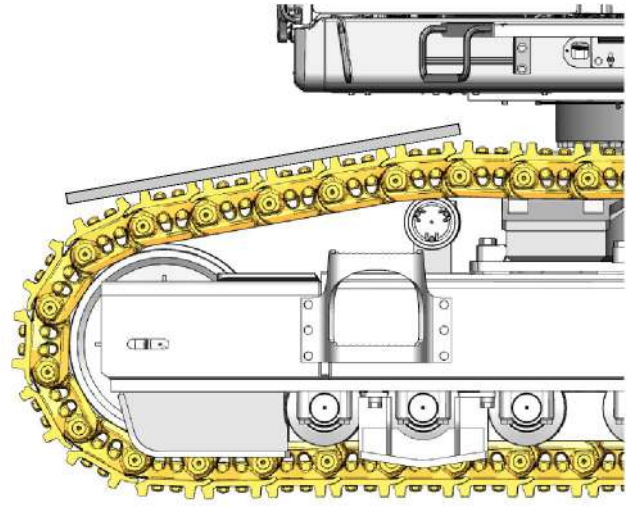


Illustration 668 g06545118

3. Place a straight edge on top of the track grousers between the front carrier roller and the idler. The straight edge should be long enough to reach from the front carrier roller to the idler.

Note: If your machine is equipped with three carrier rollers, place a straight edge on the tracks between the carrier rollers. The straight edge should be long enough to reach from one carrier roller to another carrier roller.

4. Measure the maximum amount of sag in the track. The sag is measured from the highest point of the track grouser to the bottom of the straight edge. A track that is properly adjusted will have a sag of 40.0 to 55.0 mm (1.57 to 2.17 inch).

5. If the track is too tight, or if the track is too loose, adjust the track tension according to the appropriate procedure below.

Adjusting Track Tension

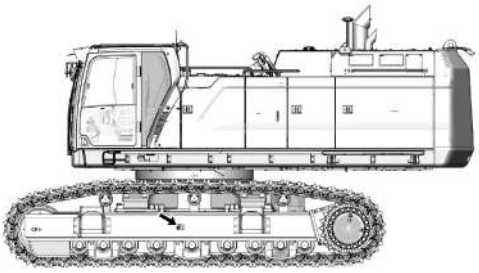


Illustration 669 g06545107

Typical example

The track adjuster is located on the track frame.

Tightening the Track

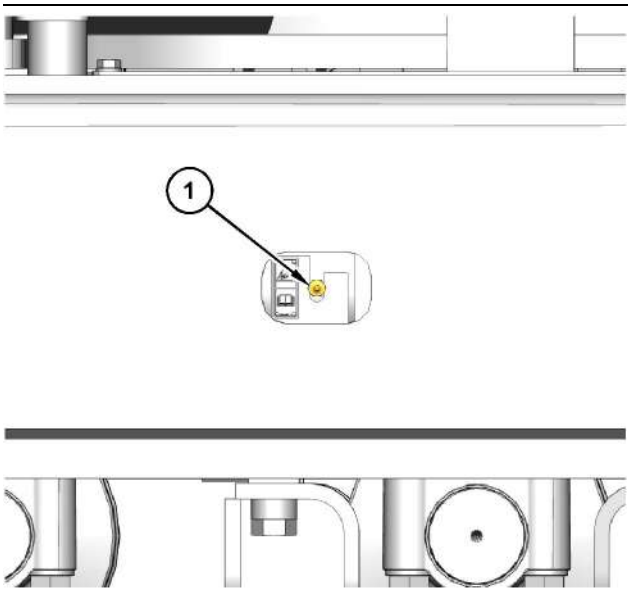


Illustration 670 g06545114

(1) Grease fitting

Wipe the fitting before you add grease.

1. Add grease through grease fitting (1) until the correct track tension is reached.
2. Operate the machine back and forth in order to equalize the pressure.
3. Check the amount of sag. Adjust the track, as needed.

Loosening the Track

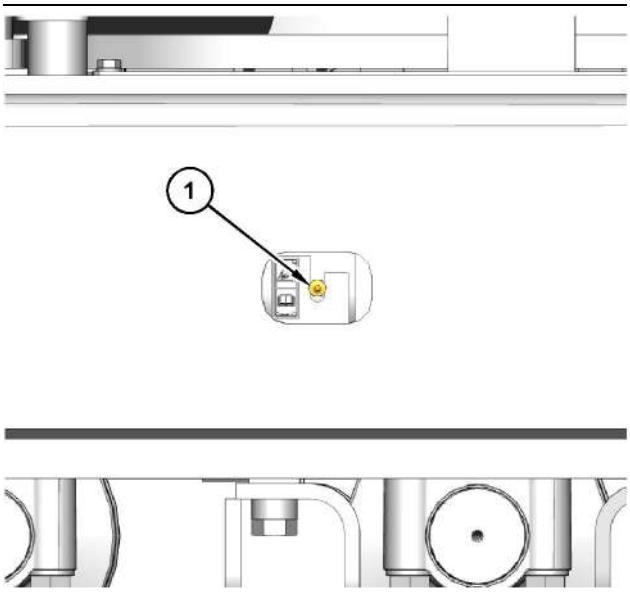


Illustration 671 g06545114

(1) Grease fitting

1. Loosen relief valve (2) carefully until the track begins to loosen. One turn should be the maximum.
2. Tighten relief valve (2) to 34 ± 5 N·m (25 ± 4 lb ft) when the desired track tension is reached.
3. Operate the machine back and forth in order to equalize the pressure.
4. Check the amount of sag. Adjust the track, as needed.

i08159704

Track Adjustment - Inspect

SMCS Code: 4170-040

Prepare the machine for maintenance. Refer to “Prepare the Machine for Maintenance“.

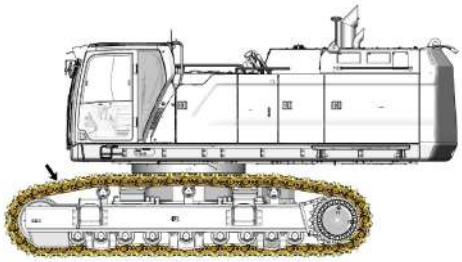


Illustration 672 g06545088

Check the track adjustment. Check the track for wear and for excessive dirt buildup.

If the track appears to be too tight or too loose, refer to “Track Adjustment - Adjust“.

i06954313

Travel Alarm - Test (If Equipped)

SMCS Code: 7429-081

Move the machine to test the travel alarm.

1. Start the engine. Move the hydraulic lockout control to the UNLOCKED position.
2. Raise the work tool to avoid any obstacles. Make sure that there is adequate overhead clearance.

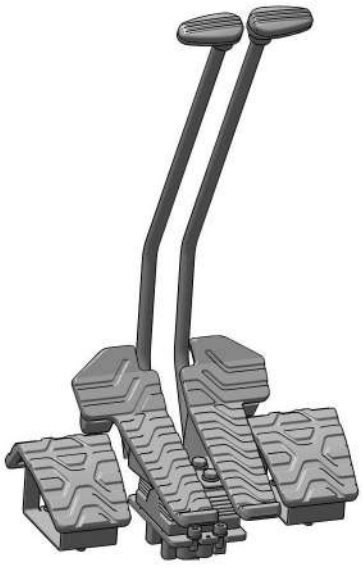


Illustration 673 g06181402

3. Use the travel levers or the travel pedals to move the machine forward. The travel alarm should sound.

4. Release the travel levers and the travel pedals to stop the machine.
5. Use the travel levers and the travel pedals to move the machine backward. The travel alarm should sound.

Illustration 674 g06181631

6. Press the alarm mute button. The travel alarm should shut off.
7. Stop the machine. Lower the work tool to the ground. Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position. Stop the engine.

i08233399

Undercarriage - Check

SMCS Code: 4150-535

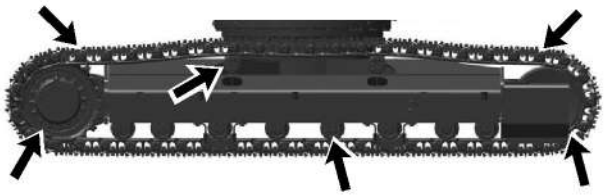


Illustration 675 g06182923

1. Check the carrier rollers, the track rollers, and the idler wheels for possible leakage.
2. Check the surface of the track, the carrier rollers, the track rollers, the idler wheels, the track shoes, and the drive sprockets. Look for signs of wear and loose mounting bolts.
3. Listen for any abnormal noises while you are moving slowly in an open area.
4. If required, clean the undercarriage to keep excess material from building up and solidifying.
5. If abnormal wear exists or abnormal noises or leaks are found, consult your Cat ® dealer.

i03898951

Window - Check

SMCS Code: 7310-535

Check the polycarbonate windows of the cab for the following conditions.

- yellow or haze
- scratches on either side of the window that can be felt with a fingernail
- small cracks that come from the edges or mounting holes
- contact with fluids that result in haze or clouds on the window such as brake fluid

When any of the above conditions exist, contact your Caterpillar dealer for replacement.

i03754181

Window Washer Reservoir - Fill

SMCS Code: 7306-544-KE

NOTICE
When operating in freezing temperatures, use Caterpillar or any commercially available nonfreezing window washer solvent.

1. Open the rear access door on the left side of the machine.

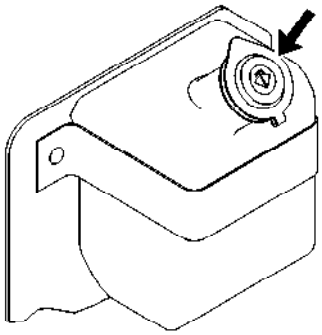


Illustration 676 g00688996

2. Remove the filler cap.
3. Fill the window washer reservoir with washer fluid through the filler opening.
4. Install the filler cap.
5. Close the access door.

i01258249

Window Wiper - Inspect/ Replace

SMCS Code: 7305-040; 7305-510

Inspect the condition of the wiper blades. Replace the wiper blades if the wiper blades are worn or damaged or if streaking occurs.

i07103291

Windows - Clean

SMCS Code: 7310-070; 7340-070

Clean the outside of the windows from the ground, unless handholds are available.

Illustration 677 g06224268
Typical example

Cleaning Methods

Aircraft Window Cleaner

Apply the cleaner with a soft cloth. Rub the window with moderate pressure until all the dirt is removed. Allow the cleaner to dry. Wipe off the cleaner with a clean soft cloth.

Soap and Water

Use a clean sponge or a soft cloth. Wash the windows with a mild soap or with a mild detergent. Also use plenty of lukewarm water. Rinse the windows thoroughly. Dry the windows with a moist chamois or with a moist cellulose sponge.

Stubborn Dirt and Grease

Wash the windows with a good grade of naphtha, of isopropyl alcohol, or of Butyl Cellosolve. Then, wash the windows with soap and with water.

Polycarbonate Windows (If equipped)

Special care is needed to clean polycarbonate windows.

Wash polycarbonate windows with mild soap and warm water that does not exceed 50° C (122° F). Use a soft sponge, or damp cloth. Never use a dry cloth or paper towels on polycarbonate windows. Rinse the windows with a sufficient amount of clean cold water.

Note: Naphtha or kerosene can be used to remove labels, films, paint, or marking pen from polycarbonate windows.

Note: Do not use abrasive, or highly alkaline cleaners. Do not use sharp instruments, such as squeegees or razor blades on polycarbonate windows. Do not clean polycarbonate windows in the hot sun or at elevated temperatures.

Warranty Section

Warranty Information

i08769122

Emissions Warranty Information

SMCS Code: 1000

The certifying engine manufacturer warrants to the ultimate purchaser and each subsequent purchaser that:

1. New non-road diesel engines and stationary diesel engines less than 10 L per cylinder (including Tier 1 and Tier 2 marine engines < 37 kW, but excluding locomotive and other marine engines) operated and serviced in the United States and Canada, including all parts of their emission control systems (“emission related components”), are:

a. Designed, built, and equipped so as to conform, at the time of sale, with applicable emission standards prescribed by the United States Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) by way of regulation.

b. Free from defects in materials and workmanship in emission-related components that can cause the engine to fail to conform to applicable emission standards for the warranty period.

2. New non-road diesel engines (including Tier 1 and Tier 2 marine propulsion engines < 37 kW and Tier 1 through Tier 4 marine auxiliary engines < 37 kW, but excluding locomotive and other marine engines) operated and serviced in the state of California, including all parts of their emission control systems (“emission related components”), are:

a. Designed, built, and equipped so as to conform, at the time of sale, to all applicable regulations adopted by the California Air Resources Board (ARB).

b. Free from defects in materials and workmanship which cause the failure of an emission-related component to be identical in all material respects to the component as described in the engine manufacturer's application for certification for the warranty period.

3. New non-road diesel engines installed in construction machines conforming to the South Korean regulations for construction machines manufactured after January 1, 2015, and operated and serviced in South Korea, including all parts of their emission control systems (“emission related components”), are:

a. Designed, built, and equipped so as to conform, at the time of sale, with applicable emission standards prescribed in the Enforcement Rule of the Clean Air Conservation Act promulgated by South Korea MOE.

b. Free from defects in materials and workmanship in emission-related components that can cause the engine to fail to conform to applicable emission standards for the warranty period.

4. New China non-road 4 mobile diesel engines operated and serviced in China, including all parts of their emission control systems (“emission related components”), are:

a. Designed, built, and equipped so as to conform, at the time of manufacture, sale, and import with applicable emission standards in the promulgated by Enforcement Rule of the Clean Air Conservation Act Ministry of Ecology and Environment (MEE).

b. Free from defects in materials and workmanship in emission-related components that can cause the engine to fail to conform to applicable emission standards for the warranty period.

A detailed explanation of the Emission Control Warranty that is applicable to new non-road and stationary diesel engines, including the components covered and the warranty period, is found in the Emission Control Warranty statement available at the Cat Warranty website. Consult your authorized Cat dealer to determine if your engine is subject to an Emission Control Warranty, and to obtain a copy of the applicable warranty publication.

Reference Information Section

Reference Materials

i08292374

Reference Material

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

Additional literature regarding your product may be purchased from your local Cat dealer or by visiting publications.cat.com. Use the product name, sales model, and serial number to obtain the correct information for your product.

publications.cat.com

i08292382

Decommissioning and Disposal

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

When the product is removed from service, local regulations for the product decommissioning will vary. Disposal of the product will vary with local regulations.

Improperly disposing of waste can threaten the environment. Obey all local regulations for the decommissioning and disposal of materials.

Utilize appropriate personal protective equipment when decommissioning and disposing product.

Consult the nearest Cat dealer for additional information. Including information for component remanufacturing and recycling options.

Index

A

Access Door and Cover Locations 317
Engine Hood 317
Left Front Access Door 317
Left Middle Access Door 317
Left Rear Access Door 318
Right Access Door 318
Additional Messages 21
Air Conditioner (10) 26
Alternate Exit (7) 25
DEF Purge Indicator Lamp (9) 26
Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) (12) 27
Diesel Fuel Requirements (13) 27
Engine Oil Requirements (11) 27
Front Window Usage (1) 23
Hammer Operation (2) 24
Hose Burst (5) 25
Hose Burst (6) 25
Hydraulic Oil Level Check (14) 28
Joystick Controls Alternate Patterns (4) 24
No Step (8) 25
Product Link (3) 24
Adjustable Gauge Undercarriage Frame 291
Extending 292
Retracting 291
Air Cleaner Dust Valve - Clean/Inspect 340
Air Conditioner/Cab Heater Filter (Recirculation) - Inspect/Replace 340
Air Conditioning and Heating Control 210
Operation 212
Selection Method 211
Alternate Exit 161
Rear Window with Lever (If Equipped) 162
Rear Window with Ring Seal (If Equipped) 161
ARD Spark Plug - Clean (Emission-Related Component) 339
Assist and E-Fence 42
Lifting operations with the machine 43
Operation Guidance 43

B

Battery - Clean 341
Battery Disconnect Switch 189
Battery Disconnect Switch (Type 1) 190
Battery Disconnect Switch (Type 2) 190
Battery Electrolyte Level - Check 341
Battery Hold-Down - Tighten 341
Battery or Battery Cable - Inspect/Replace 341
Before Operation 41, 158
Before Starting Engine 38
Belt - Inspect/Adjust/Replace 342
Boom and Stick Linkage - Lubricate 344
Boom, Stick and Bucket Operation 252
Digging 252
Lifting Objects 254
Machines that are Equipped with a Long Reach Configuration 255
Boom, Stick, and Frame - Inspect 345
Boom 347
Lower Frame 352
Stick 348
Upper Frame 349
Boom/Stick/Bucket Combinations 68
Bucket - Remove and Install 257
Installation Procedure 258
Removal Procedure 257
Bucket Lifting Eye - Inspect 353
Bucket Linkage - Inspect/Adjust 354
Bucket Linkage - Lubricate 355
Bucket Tips - Inspect/Replace 356
Bucket Tips (Cat® Advansys) - If Equipped 359
J Series GET Bucket Tips 357
K Series GET Drive-through System Bucket Tips 356
Side Cutters 360
Side Protectors (If Equipped) 361
Burn Prevention 32
Batteries 32
Coolant 32
Oils 32

C

Cab Air Filter (Fresh Air) - Clean/Replace 362
Cab Door 218
Camera 201
Rear View Camera 201
Right Side View Camera (If Equipped) 201
Camera - Clean (If Equipped) 362
Capacities (Refill) 328
Compartment Light (If Equipped) 232
Condenser (Refrigerant) - Clean 363
Cooling System Coolant (ELC) - Change 363

Cooling System Coolant Extender (ELC) - Add 365
Cooling System Coolant Level - Check..... 366
Cooling System Coolant Sample - Obtain 367
Counterweight Removal and Installation 294
Machines Equipped with Counterweight Removal System..... 295
Machines Equipped without Counterweight Removal System..... 294
Crushing Prevention and Cutting Prevention.. 31

D

Daily Inspection 158
Every 10 Service Hours or Daily..... 159
Every 10 Service Hours or Daily for First 50 Hours 159
Inspection Points On Cylinders 159
Inspection Points On Hydraulic System 160
Inspection Points On Walkways and Handholds..... 160
Declaration of Conformity (European Union)..... 156
Declaration of Conformity (Great Britain)..... 157
Decommissioning and Disposal..... 434
DEF Filler Screen - Clean (Emission Related Component) 369
DEF Manifold Filters - Replace (Emission Related Component) 369
Demolition 47
Diesel Exhaust Fluid - Drain (Emission Related Component) 371
Diesel Exhaust Fluid - Fill (Emission Related Component) 372
Diesel Exhaust Fluid Filter - Replace 373
Diesel Exhaust Fluid Injector - Replace (Emission Related Component) 374
Diesel Particulate Filter - Clean (Emission Related Component) 375
Diesel Particulate Filter Regeneration 171
Modes of Regeneration 171
Regeneration 171
Regeneration Indicators 171
Regeneration Switch 171
Regeneration System Warning Indicators 172
Regeneration Triggers..... 172

E

Electrical Storm Injury Prevention..... 38
Emissions Certification Film..... 154–155
Emissions Warranty Information 433
Engine Air Filter Primary and/or Secondary Element - Replace 375
Primary Air Filter Element - Replace 375
Secondary Air Filter Element - Replace 377
Engine and Machine Warm-Up 235
Hydraulic System..... 236
Improve Cold-Weather Performance 236
Engine Oil and Filter - Change 380
Fast Fill (If Equipped)..... 386
Procedure for Changing Engine Oil and Filter 381
Selection of the Oil Change Interval..... 380
Engine Oil Level - Check..... 378
Engine Oil Sample - Obtain..... 379
Engine Starting..... 41, 234
Engine Oil Level Monitoring System (If Equipped)..... 235
Engine Starting (Alternate Methods)..... 313
Engine Starting with Auxiliary Start Receptacle (If Equipped)..... 315
Engine Starting with Jump Start Cables (If Equipped) 313
Engine Stopping 46
Engine Valve Lash - Check 387
Equipment Lowering with Engine Stopped 49, 240
Machines Equipped with Boom Lowering Control Valves..... 240
Machines without a Boom Lowering Control Valve 241
Pressure Release of Auxiliary Lines..... 244
Ether Starting Aid Cylinder - Replace (If Equipped) 387

F

Film (Product Identification) - Clean..... 388
Cleaning of the Films 388
Final Drive Oil - Change 389
Final Drive Oil Level - Check..... 389
Final Drive Oil Sample - Obtain..... 390
Final Drive Sun Gear Removal 311
Fire Extinguisher Location..... 37
Fire Prevention and Explosion Prevention..... 33
Battery and Battery Cables..... 34
Ether 36
Fire Extinguisher..... 36
General 33
Lines, Tubes, and Hoses 35
Regeneration 33

Wiring 35
Fire Safety 36
Foreword 5
California Proposition 65 Warning 5
Certified Engine Maintenance 6
Literature Information 5
Machine Capacity 6
Maintenance 5
Operation 5
Product Identification Number 6
Safety 5
Freezing Conditions 285
Frozen Ground Conditions 239
Fuel System - Prime 391
Fuel System Primary Filter (Water Separator) Element - Replace 391
Fuel System Secondary Filter - Replace 393
Fuel System Water Separator - Drain 396
Fuel Tank Cap Filter - Replace 396
Fuel Tank Shutoff and Drain Control 232
Fuel Tank Strainer - Clean 397
Fuel Tank Water and Sediment - Drain 397
Fill the Fuel Tank 397
Fuel Transfer Pump (Refueling) (If Equipped) 206
Fuses - Replace 398
Power Fuse Module 401
Relays 400

G

General Hazard Information 28
Containing Fluid Spillage 30
Dispose of Waste Properly 31
Fluid Penetration 29
Inhalation 30
Pressurized Air and Water 29
Trapped Pressure 29
General Information 54
Guards 52
Guards (Operator Protection)
Other Guards (If Equipped) 53
Rollover Protective Structure (ROPS), Falling Object Protective Structure (FOPS) or Tip Over Protection Structure (TOPS) 52

H

High Pressure Fuel Lines 37
Hydraulic System - Purge (Air - Purge) 401
Hydraulic System Oil - Change 402
Cat HYDO Advanced 10 Oil Change Interval 402
Drain the Oil 402
Fill the Hydraulic Tank 405
Hydraulic Hammer Use 402
Service the Hydraulic System Filters 405
Hydraulic System Oil Filter - Replace ... 410, 412
Filter Replacement Procedure 411, 413
Hydraulic Hammer Use 411, 413
Hydraulic System Oil Filter (Return) - Replace 406
Hydraulic Hammer Use 407
Return Filter Replacement Procedure 408
Hydraulic System Oil Level - Check 415
Hydraulic System Oil Sample - Obtain 416
Hydraulic Tank Breather - Replace (Element) 417

I

Identification Information 151
Important Safety Information 2
Indicators and Gauges - Test 418

J

Joystick Controls 220
Dual Slider Joystick Controls (If Equipped) 223
Medium Pressure (If Equipped) 224
Vertical Slider Joystick Controls 222
Joystick Controls (Joystick Steering) 224
Joystick Steering 224
Joystick Controls Alternate Patterns 230
Changing Machine Control Pattern(If Equipped) 230

L

Leaving the Machine 287
Lifting and Tying Down the Machine 304
Lifting the machine 305
Lifting the Machine Segments 309
Tying Down the Machine 306
Lifting Capacities 88
Mass Boom 113
Reach Boom 89
Symbols Found in the Lifting Capacity Charts 89
Lifting Capacities (374 Excavator with Removal Type Counterweight) 125

374 Excavator with Removal Type Counterweight 126
Symbols Found in the Lifting Capacity Charts 126
Lifting Objects 47
Light Emitting Diode Lamp (LED) - Replace 418
Lubricant Viscosities (Fluids Recommendations) 319
Biodiesel Fuel Recommendations 325
Coolant Information 326
Diesel Exhaust Fluid 323
Diesel Fuel Recommendations 322
Engine Oil 319
Fuel Additives 325
General Information for Lubricants 319
Hydraulic Systems 320
Other Fluid Applications 321
Selecting the Viscosity 319
Special Lubricants 322
Lubricant Viscosities and Refill Capacities ... 319

M

Machine Operation 161
Machine Security System 192
Activating Bluetooth Functionality 193
Armed 194
Components 193
Disarmed 195
Engine Start Switch Troubleshooting 200
General Information 192
Grace Period 195
Navigating the User Interface Touchscreen Display 195
Operation of Status Indicator 196
Operator Login 197
Pairing Your Device to the Machine 194
Reading the ID of a Key 194
System Overview 193
Machine Storage and Specified Storage Period 287
Machine Storage 287
Specified Storage Period 287
Maintenance Access 317
Maintenance Interval Schedule 337
Every 10 000 Service Hours 338
Every 10 Service Hours or Daily 337
Every 10 Service Hours or Daily for First 50 Hours 337
Every 1000 Service Hours 338
Every 12 000 Service Hours or 6 Years 338
Every 2000 Service Hours 338
Every 2500 Service Hours 338
Every 3 Years 338
Every 3000 Service Hours 338
Every 50 Service Hours 338
Every 500 Service Hours 338
Every 5000 Service Hours 338
Every 6000 Service Hours or 3 Years 338
Initial 500 Service Hours 338
When Required 337
Maintenance Section 317
Maintenance Support 329
Mirror 212
Mirror Adjustment 213
Monitoring System 202
General Information 202
Logging In 205
Machine Warnings 204
Navigation 205
Mounting and Dismounting 158
Alternate Exit 158
Machine Access System Specifications 158

O

Oil Filter - Inspect 420
Inspect a Used Filter for Debris 420
Oil Filter (Hydraulic Hammer) - Replace 418
Operating Technique Information 245
Coaching Tips 245
Grade and Assist Operating Tips 249
Operating Precaution 248
Restricted Operation 247
Smart Boom 251
Operating Techniques 245
Operation 43, 238
Critical Failures 44
Limiting Conditions and Criteria 43
Machine Operating Temperature Range 43
Machine Operation 45
Machine Operation when the Machine is not Completely Assembled 46
Operation Information 238
Lifting Objects 239
Operation Section 158
Operator Controls 178
12V Power Receptacle (24) & (25) 188
Cat Grade Monitor (6) (if equipped) 182
Dome Light (27) 189

Engine Start Switch (Machines equipped with Delayed Engine Shutdown 8) 182
Engine Start Switch (Machines not equipped with Delayed Engine Shutdown 8)..... 183
Hydraulic Lockout Control (1)..... 179
Joystick Controls (3)..... 180
Left Side Switch Panel (2) 179
Monitor (5) 182
Operator's Seat (9) 184
Right Side Switch Panel (7)..... 185
Service Port (26)..... 188
Tilt-Up Console (9A) 184
Travel Control (4)..... 180
USB/Aux Ports (23) (If equipped)..... 188
Operator Station 52

P

Parking 47, 285
Plate Locations and Film Locations 151
Clean Emissions Model (CEM) Serial Number 154
Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) Serial Number 154
Electromagnetic Emissions 152
Engine Serial Number 153
Product Identification Number (PIN) Plate..... 151
ROPS/FOPS Plate 153
Sound Certification 153
Prepare the Machine for Maintenance..... 329
Product Information Section..... 54
Product Link 191
Data Broadcasts 191
Operation in a Blast Site for Product Link Radios..... 191

Q

Quick Coupler Operation (Circuit for CW Coupler Hold to Run (If Equipped))..... 259
Coupling the Work Tool..... 260
Electric Switch Operation 260
General Operation 259
Uncoupling the Work Tool..... 262
Quick Coupler Operation (Circuit for CW Coupler with Alarm (If Equipped)) 272
Coupling the Work Tool..... 273
Electric Switch Operation 273
General Operation 272
Uncoupling the Work Tool..... 276
Quick Coupler Operation (Hydraulic Pin Grabber Quick Coupler (If Equipped)) 264
General Operation 264
Quick Coupler Operation 265

R

Radiator, Aftercooler and Oil Cooler Cores - Clean 421
Radio 207
Audio Setting (13)..... 208
Radio Operation..... 209
Selection Method..... 209
USB / AUX / Bluetooth Operation (If Equipped)..... 209
Receiver Dryer (Refrigerant) - Replace 421
Reference Information Section 434
Reference Material..... 434
Reference Materials 434
Regulatory Information (Japan) 54
Industrial Safety and Health Act 58
Operation of Construction Equipment and the Governing Laws and Regulations..... 55
Qualifications for Machine Operation 54
Standard Certificate of Transfer 57
Trailer Transportation 54
Restricted Visibility 39
Rollover Protective Structure (ROPS) - Inspect 422
Roof Hatch..... 217

S

S·O·S Information 328
Safety Messages..... 7
Aerosol Starting Aid (11)..... 16
Crushing Hazard (15) 18
Crushing Hazard (17) 19
Crushing Hazard (4) 12
Crushing Hazard (7C)..... 14
Crushing Hazard (7D)..... 14
Crushing Hazard (Counterweight) (19) 19
Crushing Injury (3) 11
Do Not Lift Over Personnel (8) 15
Do Not Operate (7A)..... 13
Do Not Weld or Drill on Operator Protective Structure (OPS) (9)..... 15
Electrical Power Lines (7F)..... 15
Falling Object Guard Structure (21) 20
Flying Debris (12) 17
High-Pressure Gas (14)..... 17
Hot Surface (10) 16

Joystick Controls Alternate Patterns (7E) ... 15
Jump-Start Cables (13) ... 17
Lifting Level Warning (1) ... 11
Lifting Notice (5) ... 12
Overload Warning Device (2) ... 11
Product Link (6) ... 12
Relieve Hydraulic Tank Pressure (18) ... 19
Rotating Fan (20) ... 20
Seat Belt (7B) ... 13
Vapor Explosion (16) ... 18
Safety Section ... 7
Seat ... 164
Comfort Level Seat (If Equipped) ... 164
Deluxe Level Seat (If Equipped) ... 165
Premium Level Seat (If Equipped) ... 167
Seat Belt ... 169
Extension of the Seat Belt ... 170
Seat Belt Adjustment for Retractable Seat Belts ... 170
Seat Belt - Inspect ... 422
Seat Belt - Replace ... 423
Securing the Machine ... 289
Selective Catalytic Reduction Warning System ... 173
Definitions ... 173
Inducement Emergency Override for Cat Engines Equipped with Selective Catalytic Reduction Systems (If Equipped) ... 176
Inducement Strategy for DEF Level (European Union and China) ... 174
Inducement Strategy for DEF Quality, Tampering, SCR System Fault, and Impeded EGR ... 175
Service Interval Chart ... 329
Severe Service Application ... 335
Improper Maintenance Procedures (Maintenance Procedures Which May Contribute to a Severe Service Application) ... 335
Severe Environmental Factors ... 335
Severe Operating Conditions ... 335
Shipping the Machine ... 288
Shipping a Machine that is not Completely Assembled ... 289
Slope Operation ... 48
SmartBoom Control (If Equipped) ... 225
SmartBoom Operation (If Equipped) ... 255
Advantages ... 256
Excavation and Loading ... 256
Hammering ... 256
Sound Information and Vibration Information ... 49
Sound Level Information ... 49
Sound Level Information for Machines Required by the Applicable Regional Regulations ... 49
Sources ... 52
Vibration Information Applicable to Regional Regulations ... 50
Specifications ... 59
Application/Configuration Restrictions ... 60
Basic Machine ... 63
Boom Cylinders ... 67
Boom with Stick Cylinder ... 65
Bucket ... 66
Carbody ... 63
Counterweight ... 64
Expected Life ... 59
Intended Use ... 59
Lightweight Towing ... 68
Specification Data ... 60
Stick with Bucket Cylinder ... 65
Track Frame ... 64
Walkway ... 67
Working Ranges ... 62
Stopping the Engine ... 286
Engine Shutdown Switch ... 286
Stop the Engine if an Electrical Malfunction Occurs ... 286
Stopping the Machine ... 285
Sun Screen ... 216
Swing Bearing - Lubricate ... 423
Swing Drive Oil - Change ... 424
Drain the Swing Drives ... 424
Refill the Swing Drives ... 425
Swing Drive Oil Level - Check ... 425
Swing Drive Oil Sample - Obtain ... 426
Swing Gear - Lubricate ... 426
System Pressure Release ... 331
Coolant System ... 331
Hydraulic System ... 331
Purge Screws (Boom, Stick and/or Bucket Hydraulic Circuits) ... 333

T

Table of Contents ... 3
Towing Information ... 310
Towing the Machine ... 310
Lightweight Towing ... 311
Retrieval and Towing of Machine ... 311

Track Adjustment - Adjust 427
Adjusting Track Tension 428
Measuring Track Tension 427
Track Adjustment - Inspect..... 429
Track Information 37
Transportation Information 288
Travel Alarm - Test (If Equipped)..... 429
Travel Control (Straight Travel Pedal (If Equipped)) 219
Travel in Water and Mud 251
Procedure for Removing the Machine from Water or Mud 251

U

Undercarriage - Check 430

V

Visibility Information 38

W

Warranty Information..... 433
Warranty Section..... 433
Welding on Machines and Engines with Electronic Controls 334
Window - Check 430
Window (Front)..... 215
Window Washer Reservoir - Fill 431
Window Wiper - Inspect/Replace..... 431
Windows - Clean 431
Cleaning Methods..... 431
Polycarbonate Windows (If equipped) 431
Work Tool Control (One-Way Flow) (If Equipped) 227
Joystick 227
Work Tool Pedal..... 228
Work Tool Control (Two-Way Flow) (If Equipped) 229
Joystick 229
Work Tool Pedal..... 229
Work Tool Operation (If Equipped)..... 278
Crusher Operation (If Equipped) 281
Hammer Operation (If Equipped) 278
Shear Operation (If Equipped) 280
Work Tools..... 42

Product and Dealer Information

Note: For product identification plate locations, see the section “Product Identification Information” in the Operation and Maintenance Manual.

Delivery Date: _____

Product Information

Model: _____

Product Identification Number: _____

Engine Serial Number: _____

Transmission Serial Number: _____

Generator Serial Number: _____

Attachment Serial Numbers: _____

Attachment Information: _____

Customer Equipment Number: _____

Dealer Equipment Number: _____

Dealer Information

Name: _____ Branch: _____

Address: _____

_____

_____

	Dealer Contact	Phone Number	Hours
Sales:	_____	_____	_____
Parts:	_____	_____	_____
Service:	_____	_____	_____

M0101823
©2024 Caterpillar
All Rights Reserved

CAT, CATERPILLAR, LET'S DO THE WORK, their respective logos, "Caterpillar Corporate Yellow", the "Power Edge" and Cat "Modern Hex" trade dress as well as corporate and product identity used herein, are trademarks of Caterpillar and may not be used without permission.